



# **PIC16F913/914/916/917/946**

## **Data Sheet**

28/40/44/64-Pin Flash-Based,  
8-Bit CMOS Microcontrollers with  
LCD Driver and nanoWatt Technology

---

**Note the following details of the code protection feature on Microchip devices:**

- Microchip products meet the specification contained in their particular Microchip Data Sheet.
- Microchip believes that its family of products is one of the most secure families of its kind on the market today, when used in the intended manner and under normal conditions.
- There are dishonest and possibly illegal methods used to breach the code protection feature. All of these methods, to our knowledge, require using the Microchip products in a manner outside the operating specifications contained in Microchip's Data Sheets. Most likely, the person doing so is engaged in theft of intellectual property.
- Microchip is willing to work with the customer who is concerned about the integrity of their code.
- Neither Microchip nor any other semiconductor manufacturer can guarantee the security of their code. Code protection does not mean that we are guaranteeing the product as "unbreakable."

Code protection is constantly evolving. We at Microchip are committed to continuously improving the code protection features of our products. Attempts to break Microchip's code protection feature may be a violation of the Digital Millennium Copyright Act. If such acts allow unauthorized access to your software or other copyrighted work, you may have a right to sue for relief under that Act.

---

Information contained in this publication regarding device applications and the like is provided only for your convenience and may be superseded by updates. It is your responsibility to ensure that your application meets with your specifications. MICROCHIP MAKES NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WRITTEN OR ORAL, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, RELATED TO THE INFORMATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ITS CONDITION, QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR PURPOSE. Microchip disclaims all liability arising from this information and its use. Use of Microchip devices in life support and/or safety applications is entirely at the buyer's risk, and the buyer agrees to defend, indemnify and hold harmless Microchip from any and all damages, claims, suits, or expenses resulting from such use. No licenses are conveyed, implicitly or otherwise, under any Microchip intellectual property rights.

#### **Trademarks**

The Microchip name and logo, the Microchip logo, Accuron, dsPIC, KEELOQ, KEELOQ logo, microID, MPLAB, PIC, PICmicro, PICSTART, PRO MATE, PowerSmart, rfPIC, and SmartShunt are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

Amplab, FilterLab, Linear Active Thermistor, Migratable Memory, MXDEV, MXLAB, PS logo, SEEVAL, SmartSensor and The Embedded Control Solutions Company are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A.

Analog-for-the-Digital Age, Application Maestro, CodeGuard, dsPICDEM, dsPICDEM.net, dsPICworks, ECAN, ECONOMONITOR, FanSense, FlexROM, fuzzyLAB, In-Circuit Serial Programming, ICSP, ICEPIC, Mindi, MiWi, MPASM, MPLAB Certified logo, MPLIB, MPLINK, PICkit, PICDEM, PICDEM.net, PICLAB, PICtail, PowerCal, PowerInfo, PowerMate, PowerTool, REAL ICE, rFLAB, rfPICDEM, Select Mode, Smart Serial, SmartTel, Total Endurance, UNI/O, WiperLock and ZENA are trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.

SQTP is a service mark of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A.

All other trademarks mentioned herein are property of their respective companies.

© 2007, Microchip Technology Incorporated, Printed in the U.S.A., All Rights Reserved.

 Printed on recycled paper.

*Microchip received ISO/TS-16949:2002 certification for its worldwide headquarters, design and wafer fabrication facilities in Chandler and Tempe, Arizona; Gresham, Oregon and design centers in California and India. The Company's quality system processes and procedures are for its PIC® MCUs and dsPIC® DSCs, KEELOQ® code hopping devices, Serial EEPROMs, microperipherals, nonvolatile memory and analog products. In addition, Microchip's quality system for the design and manufacture of development systems is ISO 9001:2000 certified.*

**QUALITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM**  
**CERTIFIED BY DNV**  
**== ISO/TS 16949:2002 ==**



# MICROCHIP

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

## 28/40/44/64-Pin Flash-Based, 8-Bit CMOS Microcontrollers with LCD Driver and nanoWatt Technology

---

### High-Performance RISC CPU:

- Only 35 instructions to learn:
  - All single-cycle instructions except branches
- Operating speed:
  - DC – 20 MHz oscillator/clock input
  - DC – 200 ns instruction cycle
- Program Memory Read (PMR) capability
- Interrupt capability
- 8-level deep hardware stack
- Direct, Indirect and Relative Addressing modes

### Special Microcontroller Features:

- Precision Internal Oscillator:
  - Factory calibrated to  $\pm 1\%$ , typical
  - Software selectable frequency range of 8 MHz to 125 kHz
  - Software tunable
  - Two-Speed Start-up mode
  - External Oscillator fail detect for critical applications
  - Clock mode switching during operation for power savings
- Software selectable 31 kHz internal oscillator
- Power-Saving Sleep mode
- Wide operating voltage range (2.0V-5.5V)
- Industrial and Extended temperature range
- Power-on Reset (POR)
- Power-up Timer (PWRT) and Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
- Brown-out Reset (BOR) with software control option
- Enhanced Low-Current Watchdog Timer (WDT) with on-chip oscillator (software selectable nominal 268 seconds with full prescaler) with software enable
- Multiplexed Master Clear with pull-up/input pin
- Programmable code protection
- High-Endurance Flash/EEPROM cell:
  - 100,000 write Flash endurance
  - 1,000,000 write EEPROM endurance
  - Flash/Data EEPROM retention: > 40 years

### Low-Power Features:

- Standby Current:
  - <100 nA @ 2.0V, typical
- Operating Current:
  - 11  $\mu$ A @ 32 kHz, 2.0V, typical
  - 220  $\mu$ A @ 4 MHz, 2.0V, typical
- Watchdog Timer Current:
  - 1  $\mu$ A @ 2.0V, typical

### Peripheral Features:

- Liquid Crystal Display module:
  - Up to 60/96/168 pixel drive capability on 28/40/64-pin devices, respectively
  - Four commons
- Up to 24/35/53 I/O pins and 1 input-only pin:
  - High-current source/sink for direct LED drive
  - Interrupt-on-change pin
  - Individually programmable weak pull-ups
- In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) via two pins
- Analog comparator module with:
  - Two analog comparators
  - Programmable on-chip voltage reference (CVREF) module (% of VDD)
  - Comparator inputs and outputs externally accessible
- A/D Converter:
  - 10-bit resolution and up to 8 channels
- Timer0: 8-bit timer/counter with 8-bit programmable prescaler
- Enhanced Timer1:
  - 16-bit timer/counter with prescaler
  - External Timer1 Gate (count enable)
  - Option to use OSC1 and OSC2 as Timer1 oscillator if INTOSCIO or LP mode is selected
- Timer2: 8-bit timer/counter with 8-bit period register, prescaler and postscaler
- Addressable Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (AUSART)
- Up to 2 Capture, Compare, PWM modules:
  - 16-bit Capture, max. resolution 12.5 ns
  - 16-bit Compare, max. resolution 200 ns
  - 10-bit PWM, max. frequency 20 kHz
- Synchronous Serial Port (SSP) with I<sup>2</sup>C™

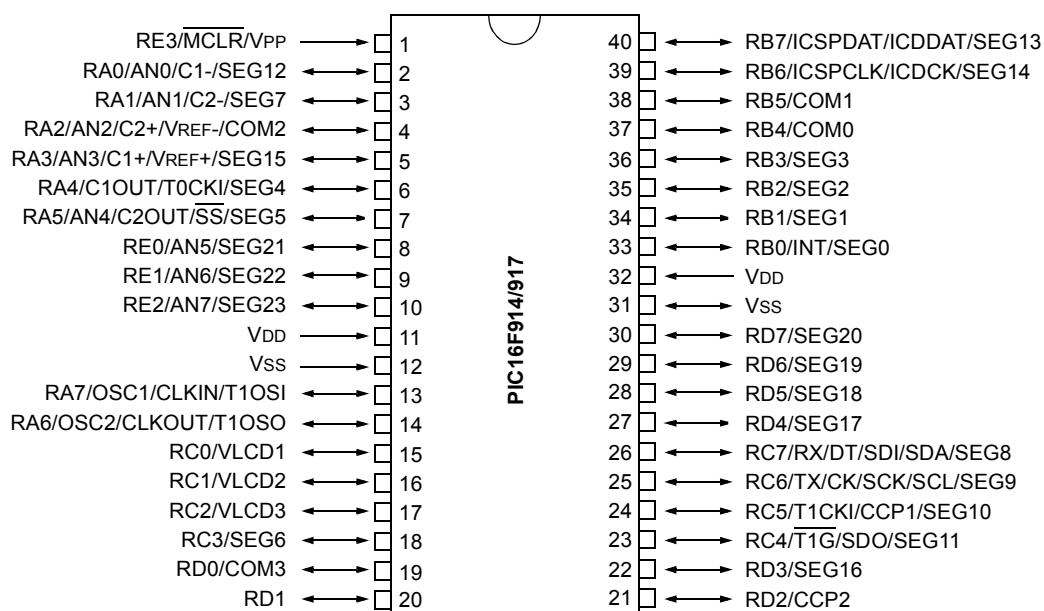
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

| Device    | Program Memory      | Data Memory  |                | I/O | 10-bit A/D (ch) | LCD (segment drivers) | CCP | Timers 8/16-bit |
|-----------|---------------------|--------------|----------------|-----|-----------------|-----------------------|-----|-----------------|
|           | Flash (words/bytes) | SRAM (bytes) | EEPROM (bytes) |     |                 |                       |     |                 |
| PIC16F913 | 4K/7K               | 256          | 256            | 24  | 5               | 16 <sup>(1)</sup>     | 1   | 2/1             |
| PIC16F914 | 4K/7K               | 256          | 256            | 35  | 8               | 24                    | 2   | 2/1             |
| PIC16F916 | 8K/14K              | 352          | 256            | 24  | 5               | 16 <sup>(1)</sup>     | 1   | 2/1             |
| PIC16F917 | 8K/14K              | 352          | 256            | 35  | 8               | 24                    | 2   | 2/1             |
| PIC16F946 | 8K/14K              | 336          | 256            | 53  | 8               | 42                    | 2   | 2/1             |

**Note 1:** COM3 and SEG15 share the same physical pin on the PIC16F913/916, therefore SEG15 is not available when using 1/4 multiplex displays.

## Pin Diagrams – PIC16F914/917, 40-Pin

### 40-pin PDIP



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 1: PIC16F914/917 40-PIN SUMMARY**

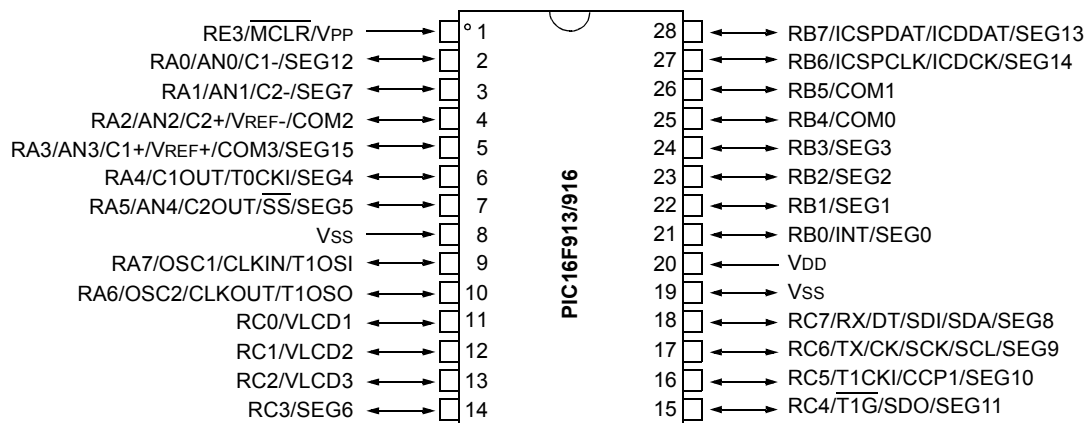
| I/O | Pin | A/D       | LCD   | Comparators | Timers           | CCP  | AUSART | SSP             | Interrupt | Pull-Up          | Basic                    |
|-----|-----|-----------|-------|-------------|------------------|------|--------|-----------------|-----------|------------------|--------------------------|
| RA0 | 2   | AN0       | SEG12 | C1-         | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RA1 | 3   | AN1       | SEG7  | C2-         | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RA2 | 4   | AN2/VREF- | COM2  | C2+         | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RA3 | 5   | AN3/VREF+ | SEG15 | C1+         | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RA4 | 6   | —         | SEG4  | C1OUT       | T0CKI            | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RA5 | 7   | AN4       | SEG5  | C2OUT       | —                | —    | —      | $\overline{SS}$ | —         | —                | —                        |
| RA6 | 14  | —         | —     | —           | T1OSO            | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | OSC2/CLKOUT              |
| RA7 | 13  | —         | —     | —           | T1OSI            | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | OSC1/CLKIN               |
| RB0 | 33  | —         | SEG0  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | INT       | Y                | —                        |
| RB1 | 34  | —         | SEG1  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | Y                | —                        |
| RB2 | 35  | —         | SEG2  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | Y                | —                        |
| RB3 | 36  | —         | SEG3  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | Y                | —                        |
| RB4 | 37  | —         | COM0  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | IOC       | Y                | —                        |
| RB5 | 38  | —         | COM1  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | IOC       | Y                | —                        |
| RB6 | 39  | —         | SEG14 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | IOC       | Y                | ICSPCLK/ICDCK            |
| RB7 | 40  | —         | SEG13 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | IOC       | Y                | ICSPDAT/ICDDAT           |
| RC0 | 15  | —         | VLCD1 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC1 | 16  | —         | VLCD2 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC2 | 17  | —         | VLCD3 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC3 | 18  | —         | SEG6  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC4 | 23  | —         | SEG11 | —           | $\overline{T1G}$ | —    | —      | SDO             | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC5 | 24  | —         | SEG10 | —           | T1CKI            | CCP1 | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC6 | 25  | —         | SEG9  | —           | —                | —    | TX/CK  | SCK/SCL         | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC7 | 26  | —         | SEG8  | —           | —                | —    | RX/DT  | SDI/SDA         | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD0 | 19  | —         | COM3  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD1 | 20  | —         | —     | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD2 | 21  | —         | —     | —           | —                | CCP2 | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD3 | 22  | —         | SEG16 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD4 | 27  | —         | SEG17 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD5 | 28  | —         | SEG18 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD6 | 29  | —         | SEG19 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD7 | 30  | —         | SEG20 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RE0 | 8   | AN5       | SEG21 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RE1 | 9   | AN6       | SEG22 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RE2 | 10  | AN7       | SEG23 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RE3 | 1   | —         | —     | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | Y <sup>(1)</sup> | $\overline{MCLR}/V_{PP}$ |
| —   | 11  | —         | —     | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | V <sub>DD</sub>          |
| —   | 32  | —         | —     | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | V <sub>DD</sub>          |
| —   | 12  | —         | —     | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | V <sub>SS</sub>          |
| —   | 31  | —         | —     | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | V <sub>SS</sub>          |

**Note 1:** Pull-up enabled only with external  $\overline{MCLR}$  configuration.

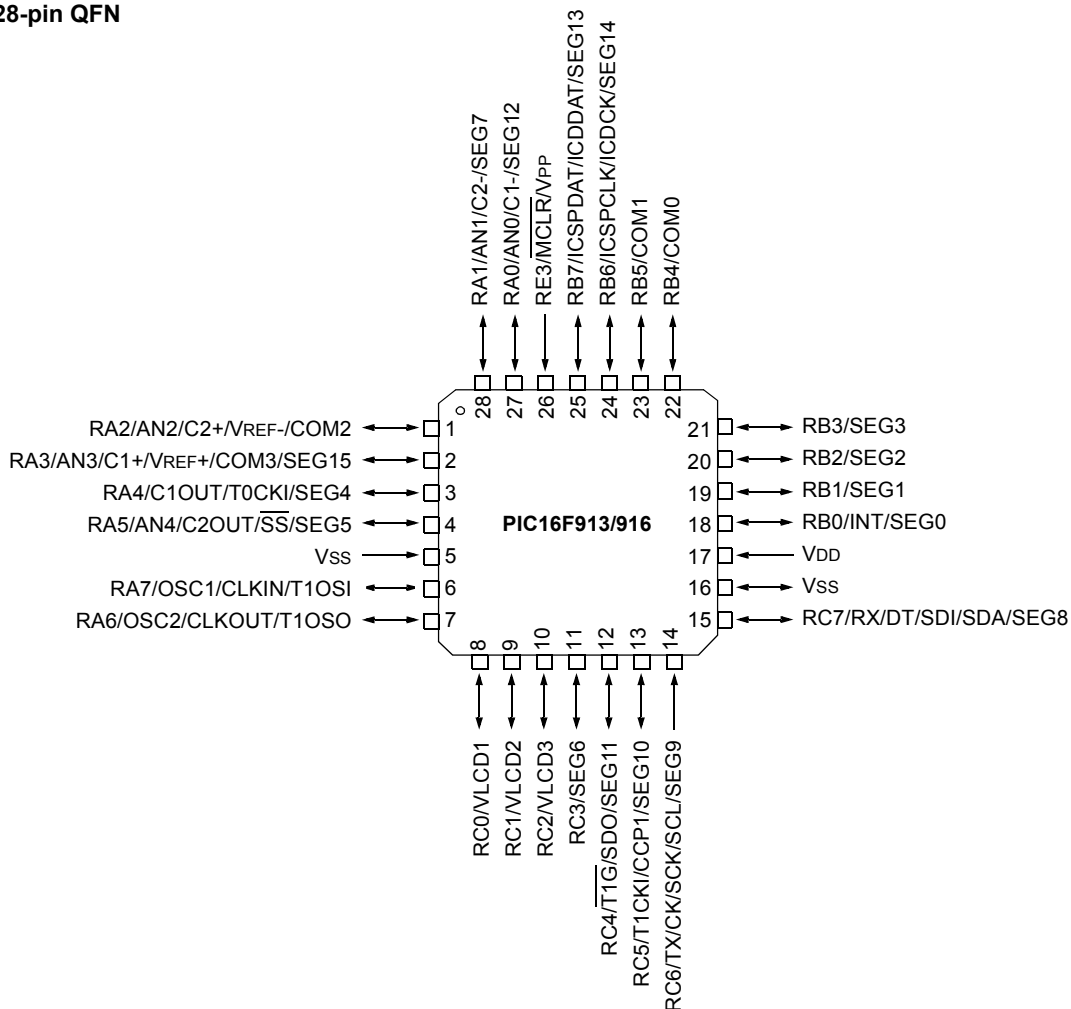
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## Pin Diagrams – PIC16F913/916, 28-Pin

### 28-pin PDIP, SOIC, SSOP



### 28-pin QFN



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 2: PIC16F913/916 28-PIN (PDIP, SOIC, SSOP) SUMMARY**

| I/O | Pin | A/D       | LCD            | Comparators | Timers | CCP  | AUSART | SSP     | Interrupt | Pull-Up          | Basic          |
|-----|-----|-----------|----------------|-------------|--------|------|--------|---------|-----------|------------------|----------------|
| RA0 | 2   | AN0       | SEG12          | C1-         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA1 | 3   | AN1       | SEG7           | C2-         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA2 | 4   | AN2/VREF- | COM2           | C2+         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA3 | 5   | AN3/VREF+ | SEG15/<br>COM3 | C1+         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA4 | 6   | —         | SEG4           | C1OUT       | T0CKI  | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA5 | 7   | —         | SEG5           | C2OUT       | —      | —    | —      | SS      | —         | —                | —              |
| RA6 | 10  | —         | —              | —           | T1OSO  | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | OSC2/CLKOUT    |
| RA7 | 9   | —         | —              | —           | T1OSI  | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | OSC1/CLKIN     |
| RB0 | 21  | —         | SEG0           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | INT       | Y                | —              |
| RB1 | 22  | —         | SEG1           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y                | —              |
| RB2 | 23  | —         | SEG2           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y                | —              |
| RB3 | 24  | —         | SEG3           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y                | —              |
| RB4 | 25  | —         | COM0           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | —              |
| RB5 | 26  | —         | COM1           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | —              |
| RB6 | 27  | —         | SEG14          | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | ICSPCLK/ICDCK  |
| RB7 | 28  | —         | SEG13          | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | ICSPDAT/ICDDAT |
| RC0 | 11  | —         | VLCD1          | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC1 | 12  | —         | VLCD2          | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC2 | 13  | —         | VLCD3          | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC3 | 14  | —         | SEG6           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC4 | 15  | —         | SEG11          | —           | T1G    | —    | —      | SDO     | —         | —                | —              |
| RC5 | 16  | —         | SEG10          | —           | T1CKI  | CCP1 | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC6 | 17  | —         | SEG9           | —           | —      | —    | TX/CK  | SCK/SCL | —         | —                | —              |
| RC7 | 18  | —         | SEG8           | —           | —      | —    | RX/DT  | SDI/SDA | —         | —                | —              |
| RE3 | 1   | —         | —              | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y <sup>(1)</sup> | MCLR/VPP       |
| —   | 20  | —         | —              | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VDD            |
| —   | 8   | —         | —              | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VSS            |
| —   | 19  | —         | —              | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VSS            |

**Note 1:** Pull-up enabled only with external MCLR configuration.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 3: PIC16F913/916 28-PIN (QFN) SUMMARY**

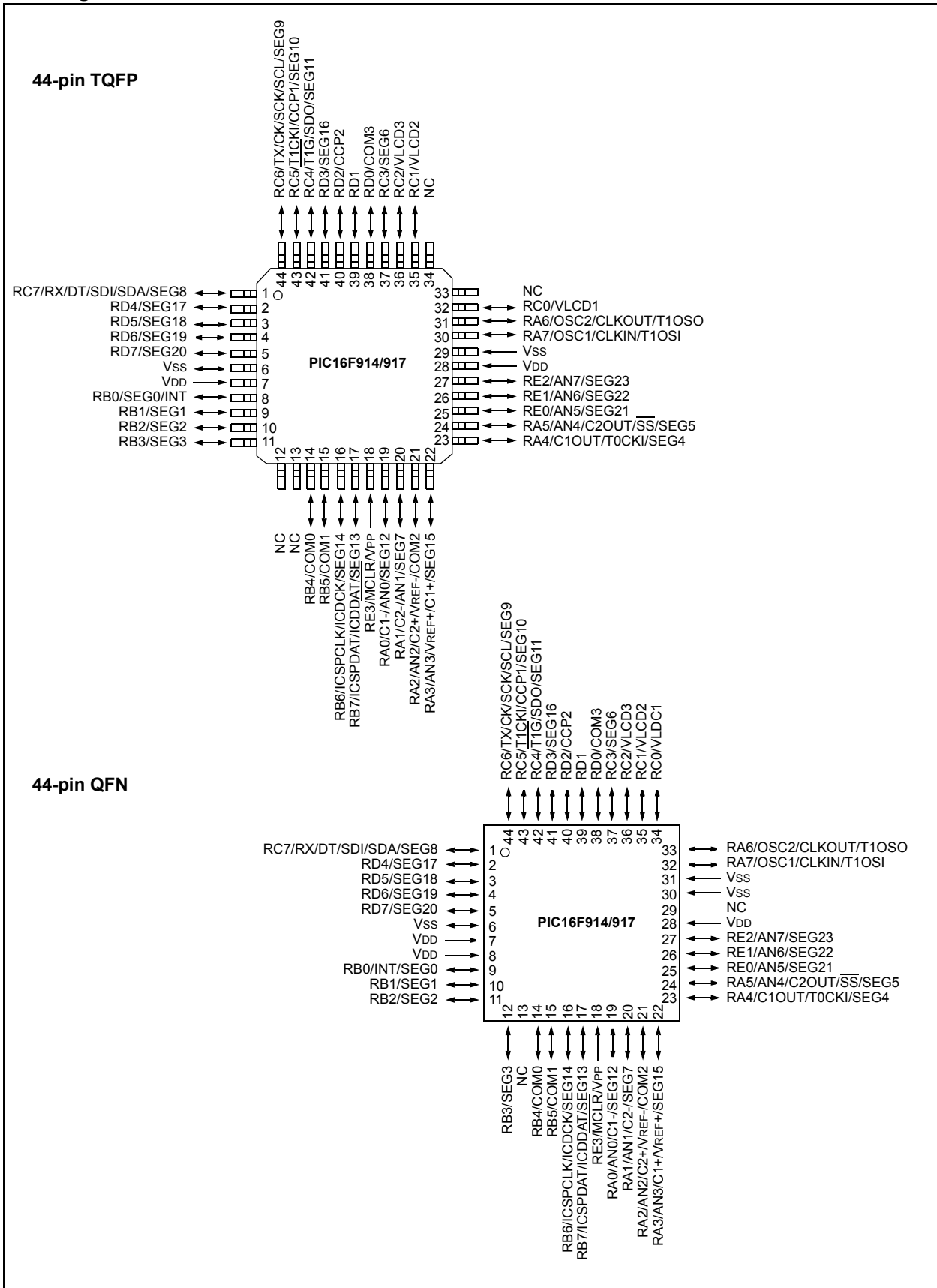
| I/O | Pin | A/D       | LCD            | Comparators | Timers | CCP  | AUSART | SSP     | Interrupt | Pull-Up          | Basic          |
|-----|-----|-----------|----------------|-------------|--------|------|--------|---------|-----------|------------------|----------------|
| RA0 | 27  | AN0       | SEG12          | C1-         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA1 | 28  | AN1       | SEG7           | C2-         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA2 | 1   | AN2/VREF- | COM2           | C2+         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA3 | 2   | AN3/VREF+ | SEG15/<br>COM3 | C1+         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA4 | 3   | —         | SEG4           | C1OUT       | T0CKI  | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA5 | 4   | AN4       | SEG5           | C2OUT       | —      | —    | —      | SS      | —         | —                | —              |
| RA6 | 7   | —         | —              | —           | T1OSO  | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | OSC2/CLKOUT    |
| RA7 | 6   | —         | —              | —           | T1OSI  | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | OSC1/CLKIN     |
| RB0 | 18  | —         | SEG0           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | INT       | Y                | —              |
| RB1 | 19  | —         | SEG1           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y                | —              |
| RB2 | 20  | —         | SEG2           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y                | —              |
| RB3 | 21  | —         | SEG3           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y                | —              |
| RB4 | 22  | —         | COM0           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | —              |
| RB5 | 23  | —         | COM1           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | —              |
| RB6 | 24  | —         | SEG14          | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | ICSPCLK/ICDCK  |
| RB7 | 25  | —         | SEG13          | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | ICSPDAT/ICDDAT |
| RC0 | 8   | —         | VLCD1          | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC1 | 9   | —         | VLCD2          | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC2 | 10  | —         | VLCD3          | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC3 | 11  | —         | SEG6           | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC4 | 12  | —         | SEG11          | —           | T1G    | —    | —      | SDO     | —         | —                | —              |
| RC5 | 13  | —         | SEG10          | —           | T1CKI  | CCP1 | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC6 | 14  | —         | SEG9           | —           | —      | —    | TX/CK  | SCK/SCL | —         | —                | —              |
| RC7 | 15  | —         | SEG8           | —           | —      | —    | RX/DT  | SDI/SDA | —         | —                | —              |
| RE3 | 26  | —         | —              | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y <sup>(1)</sup> | MCLR/VPP       |
| —   | 17  | —         | —              | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VDD            |
| —   | 5   | —         | —              | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VSS            |
| —   | 16  | —         | —              | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VSS            |

**Note 1:** Pull-up enabled only with external MCLR configuration.



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## Pin Diagrams – PIC16F914/917, 44-Pin



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 4: PIC16F914/917 44-PIN (TQFP) SUMMARY**

| I/O | Pin | A/D       | LCD   | Comparators | Timers | CCP  | AUSART | SSP     | Interrupt | Pull-Up          | Basic          |
|-----|-----|-----------|-------|-------------|--------|------|--------|---------|-----------|------------------|----------------|
| RA0 | 19  | AN0       | SEG12 | C1-         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA1 | 20  | AN1       | SEG7  | C2-         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA2 | 21  | AN2/VREF- | COM2  | C2+         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA3 | 22  | AN3/VREF+ | SEG15 | C1+         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA4 | 23  | —         | SEG4  | C1OUT       | T0CKI  | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA5 | 24  | AN4       | SEG5  | C2OUT       | —      | —    | —      | SS      | —         | —                | —              |
| RA6 | 31  | —         | —     | —           | T1OSO  | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | OSC2/CLKOUT    |
| RA7 | 30  | —         | —     | —           | T1OSI  | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | OSC1/CLKIN     |
| RB0 | 8   | —         | SEG0  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | INT       | Y                | —              |
| RB1 | 9   | —         | SEG1  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y                | —              |
| RB2 | 10  | —         | SEG2  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y                | —              |
| RB3 | 11  | —         | SEG3  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y                | —              |
| RB4 | 14  | —         | COM0  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | —              |
| RB5 | 15  | —         | COM1  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | —              |
| RB6 | 16  | —         | SEG14 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | ICSPCLK/ICDCK  |
| RB7 | 17  | —         | SEG13 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | ICSPDAT/ICDDAT |
| RC0 | 32  | —         | VLCD1 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC1 | 35  | —         | VLCD2 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC2 | 36  | —         | VLCD3 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC3 | 37  | —         | SEG6  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC4 | 42  | —         | SEG11 | —           | T1G    | —    | —      | SDO     | —         | —                | —              |
| RC5 | 43  | —         | SEG10 | —           | T1CKI  | CCP1 | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC6 | 44  | —         | SEG9  | —           | —      | —    | TX/CK  | SCK/SCL | —         | —                | —              |
| RC7 | 1   | —         | SEG8  | —           | —      | —    | RX/DT  | SDI/SDA | —         | —                | —              |
| RD0 | 38  | —         | COM3  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD1 | 39  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD2 | 40  | —         | —     | —           | —      | CCP2 | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD3 | 41  | —         | SEG16 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD4 | 2   | —         | SEG17 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD5 | 3   | —         | SEG18 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD6 | 4   | —         | SEG19 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD7 | 5   | —         | SEG20 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RE0 | 25  | AN5       | SEG21 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RE1 | 26  | AN6       | SEG22 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RE2 | 27  | AN7       | SEG23 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RE3 | 18  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y <sup>(1)</sup> | MCLR/VPP       |
| —   | 7   | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VDD            |
| —   | 28  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VDD            |
| —   | 6   | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VSS            |
| —   | 29  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VSS            |
| —   | 12  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | NC             |
| —   | 13  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | NC             |
| —   | 33  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | NC             |
| —   | 34  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | NC             |

**Note 1:** Pull-up enabled only with external MCLR configuration.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 5: PIC16F914/917 44-PIN (QFN) SUMMARY**

| I/O | Pin | A/D       | LCD   | Comparators | Timers | CCP  | AUSART | SSP     | Interrupt | Pull-Up          | Basic          |
|-----|-----|-----------|-------|-------------|--------|------|--------|---------|-----------|------------------|----------------|
| RA0 | 19  | AN0       | SEG12 | C1-         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA1 | 20  | AN1       | SEG7  | C2-         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA2 | 21  | AN2/VREF- | COM2  | C2+         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA3 | 22  | AN3/VREF+ | SEG15 | C1+         | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA4 | 23  | —         | SEG4  | C1OUT       | T0CKI  | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RA5 | 24  | AN4       | SEG5  | C2OUT       | —      | —    | —      | SS      | —         | —                | —              |
| RA6 | 33  | —         | —     | —           | T1OSO  | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | OSC2/CLKOUT    |
| RA7 | 32  | —         | —     | —           | T1OSI  | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | OSC1/CLKIN     |
| RB0 | 9   | —         | SEG0  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | INT       | Y                | —              |
| RB1 | 10  | —         | SEG1  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y                | —              |
| RB2 | 11  | —         | SEG2  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y                | —              |
| RB3 | 12  | —         | SEG3  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y                | —              |
| RB4 | 14  | —         | COM0  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | —              |
| RB5 | 15  | —         | COM1  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | —              |
| RB6 | 16  | —         | SEG14 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | ICSPCLK/ICDCK  |
| RB7 | 17  | —         | SEG13 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | IOC       | Y                | ICSPDAT/ICDDAT |
| RC0 | 34  | —         | VLCD1 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC1 | 35  | —         | VLCD2 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC2 | 36  | —         | VLCD3 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC3 | 37  | —         | SEG6  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC4 | 42  | —         | SEG11 | —           | T1G    | —    | —      | SDO     | —         | —                | —              |
| RC5 | 43  | —         | SEG10 | —           | T1CKI  | CCP1 | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RC6 | 44  | —         | SEG9  | —           | —      | —    | TX/CK  | SCK/SCL | —         | —                | —              |
| RC7 | 1   | —         | SEG8  | —           | —      | —    | RX/DT  | SDI/SDA | —         | —                | —              |
| RD0 | 38  | —         | COM3  | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD1 | 39  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD2 | 40  | —         | —     | —           | —      | CCP2 | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD3 | 41  | —         | SEG16 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD4 | 2   | —         | SEG17 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD5 | 3   | —         | SEG18 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD6 | 4   | —         | SEG19 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RD7 | 5   | —         | SEG20 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RE0 | 25  | AN5       | SEG21 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RE1 | 26  | AN6       | SEG22 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RE2 | 27  | AN7       | SEG23 | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | —              |
| RE3 | 18  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | Y <sup>(1)</sup> | MCLR/VPP       |
| —   | 7   | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VDD            |
| —   | 8   | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VDD            |
| —   | 28  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VDD            |
| —   | 6   | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VSS            |
| —   | 30  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | VSS            |
| —   | 13  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | NC             |
| —   | 29  | —         | —     | —           | —      | —    | —      | —       | —         | —                | NC             |

**Note 1:** Pull-up enabled only with external MCLR configuration.



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 6: PIC16F946 64-PIN (TQFP) SUMMARY**

| I/O | Pin | A/D       | LCD   | Comparators | Timers           | CCP  | AUSART | SSP             | Interrupt | Pull-Up          | Basic                    |
|-----|-----|-----------|-------|-------------|------------------|------|--------|-----------------|-----------|------------------|--------------------------|
| RA0 | 27  | AN0       | SEG12 | C1-         | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RA1 | 28  | AN1       | SEG7  | C2-         | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RA2 | 29  | AN2/VREF- | COM2  | C2+         | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RA3 | 30  | AN3/VREF+ | SEG15 | C1+         | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RA4 | 31  | —         | SEG4  | C1OUT       | T0CKI            | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RA5 | 32  | AN4       | —     | C2OUT       | —                | —    | —      | $\overline{SS}$ | —         | —                | —                        |
| RA6 | 40  | SEG5      | —     | —           | T1OSO            | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | OSC2/CLKOUT              |
| RA7 | 39  | —         | —     | —           | T1OSI            | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | OSC1/CLKIN               |
| RB0 | 15  | —         | SEG0  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | INT       | Y                | —                        |
| RB1 | 16  | —         | SEG1  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | Y                | —                        |
| RB2 | 17  | —         | SEG2  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | Y                | —                        |
| RB3 | 18  | —         | SEG3  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | Y                | —                        |
| RB4 | 21  | —         | COM0  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | IOC       | Y                | —                        |
| RB5 | 22  | —         | COM1  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | IOC       | Y                | —                        |
| RB6 | 23  | —         | SEG14 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | IOC       | Y                | ICSPCLK/ICDCK            |
| RB7 | 24  | —         | SEG13 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | IOC       | Y                | ICSPDAT/ICDDAT           |
| RC0 | 49  | —         | VLCD1 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC1 | 50  | —         | VLCD2 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC2 | 51  | —         | VLCD3 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC3 | 52  | —         | SEG6  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC4 | 59  | —         | SEG11 | —           | $\overline{T1G}$ | —    | —      | SDO             | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC5 | 60  | —         | SEG10 | —           | T1CKI            | CCP1 | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC6 | 61  | —         | SEG9  | —           | —                | —    | TX/CK  | SCK/SCL         | —         | —                | —                        |
| RC7 | 62  | —         | SEG8  | —           | —                | —    | RX/DT  | SDI/SDA         | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD0 | 53  | —         | COM3  | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD1 | 54  | —         | —     | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD2 | 55  | —         | —     | —           | —                | CCP2 | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD3 | 58  | —         | SEG16 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD4 | 63  | —         | SEG17 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD5 | 64  | —         | SEG18 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD6 | 1   | —         | SEG19 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RD7 | 2   | —         | SEG20 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RE0 | 33  | AN5       | SEG21 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RE1 | 34  | AN6       | SEG22 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RE2 | 35  | AN7       | SEG23 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RE3 | 36  | —         | —     | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | Y <sup>(1)</sup> | $\overline{MCLR}/V_{PP}$ |
| RE4 | 37  | —         | SEG24 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RE5 | 42  | —         | SEG25 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RE6 | 43  | —         | SEG26 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RE7 | 44  | —         | SEG27 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RF0 | 11  | —         | SEG32 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RF1 | 12  | —         | SEG33 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |
| RF2 | 13  | —         | SEG34 | —           | —                | —    | —      | —               | —         | —                | —                        |

**Note 1:** Pull-up enabled only with external  $\overline{MCLR}$  configuration.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 6: PIC16F946 64-PIN (TQFP) SUMMARY (CONTINUED)**

| I/O | Pin | A/D | LCD   | Comparators | Timers | CCP | AUSART | SSP | Interrupt | Pull-Up | Basic |
|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------------|--------|-----|--------|-----|-----------|---------|-------|
| RF3 | 14  | —   | SEG35 | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | —     |
| RF4 | 45  | —   | SEG28 | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | —     |
| RF5 | 46  | —   | SEG29 | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | —     |
| RF6 | 47  | —   | SEG30 | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | —     |
| RF7 | 48  | —   | SEG31 | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | —     |
| RG0 | 3   | —   | SEG36 | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | —     |
| RG1 | 4   | —   | SEG37 | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | —     |
| RG2 | 5   | —   | SEG38 | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | —     |
| RG3 | 6   | —   | SEG39 | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | —     |
| RG4 | 7   | —   | SEG40 | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | —     |
| RG5 | 8   | —   | SEG41 | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | —     |
| —   | 26  | —   | —     | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | AVDD  |
| —   | 25  | —   | —     | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | AVSS  |
| —   | 10  | —   | —     | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | VDD   |
| —   | 19  | —   | —     | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | VDD   |
| —   | 38  | —   | —     | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | VDD   |
| —   | 57  | —   | —     | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | VDD   |
| —   | 9   | —   | —     | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | VSS   |
| —   | 20  | —   | —     | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | VSS   |
| —   | 41  | —   | —     | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | VSS   |
| —   | 56  | —   | —     | —           | —      | —   | —      | —   | —         | —       | VSS   |

**Note 1:** Pull-up enabled only with external MCLR configuration.

## Table of Contents

|      |                                                                                    |     |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1.0  | Device Overview .....                                                              | 15  |
| 2.0  | Memory Organization .....                                                          | 23  |
| 3.0  | I/O Ports .....                                                                    | 43  |
| 4.0  | Oscillator Module (With Fail-Safe Clock Monitor).....                              | 87  |
| 5.0  | Timer0 Module .....                                                                | 99  |
| 6.0  | Timer1 Module with Gate Control.....                                               | 102 |
| 7.0  | Timer2 Module .....                                                                | 107 |
| 8.0  | Comparator Module.....                                                             | 109 |
| 9.0  | Addressable Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (AUSART) ..... | 121 |
| 10.0 | Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) Driver Module.....                                    | 143 |
| 11.0 | Programmable Low-Voltage Detect (PLVD) Module.....                                 | 171 |
| 12.0 | Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) Module .....                                     | 175 |
| 13.0 | Data EEPROM and Flash Program Memory Control.....                                  | 187 |
| 14.0 | SSP Module Overview .....                                                          | 193 |
| 15.0 | Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) Module .....                                             | 211 |
| 16.0 | Special Features of the CPU .....                                                  | 219 |
| 17.0 | Instruction Set Summary.....                                                       | 241 |
| 18.0 | Development Support.....                                                           | 251 |
| 19.0 | Electrical Specifications.....                                                     | 255 |
| 20.0 | DC and AC Characteristics Graphs and Tables.....                                   | 283 |
| 21.0 | Packaging Information.....                                                         | 305 |
|      | Appendix A: Data Sheet Revision History.....                                       | 315 |
|      | Appendix B: Migrating From Other PIC® Devices.....                                 | 315 |
|      | Appendix C: Conversion Considerations .....                                        | 316 |
|      | Index .....                                                                        | 317 |
|      | The Microchip Web Site .....                                                       | 325 |
|      | Customer Change Notification Service .....                                         | 325 |
|      | Customer Support.....                                                              | 325 |
|      | Reader Response .....                                                              | 327 |
|      | Product Identification System .....                                                | 328 |

## TO OUR VALUED CUSTOMERS

It is our intention to provide our valued customers with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip products. To this end, we will continue to improve our publications to better suit your needs. Our publications will be refined and enhanced as new volumes and updates are introduced.

If you have any questions or comments regarding this publication, please contact the Marketing Communications Department via E-mail at [docerrors@microchip.com](mailto:docerrors@microchip.com) or fax the **Reader Response Form** in the back of this data sheet to (480) 792-4150. We welcome your feedback.

### Most Current Data Sheet

To obtain the most up-to-date version of this data sheet, please register at our Worldwide Web site at:

<http://www.microchip.com>

You can determine the version of a data sheet by examining its literature number found on the bottom outside corner of any page. The last character of the literature number is the version number, (e.g., DS30000A is version A of document DS30000).

### Errata

An errata sheet, describing minor operational differences from the data sheet and recommended workarounds, may exist for current devices. As device/documentation issues become known to us, we will publish an errata sheet. The errata will specify the revision of silicon and revision of document to which it applies.

To determine if an errata sheet exists for a particular device, please check with one of the following:

- Microchip's Worldwide Web site; <http://www.microchip.com>
- Your local Microchip sales office (see last page)

When contacting a sales office, please specify which device, revision of silicon and data sheet (include literature number) you are using.

### Customer Notification System

Register on our web site at [www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com) to receive the most current information on all of our products.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

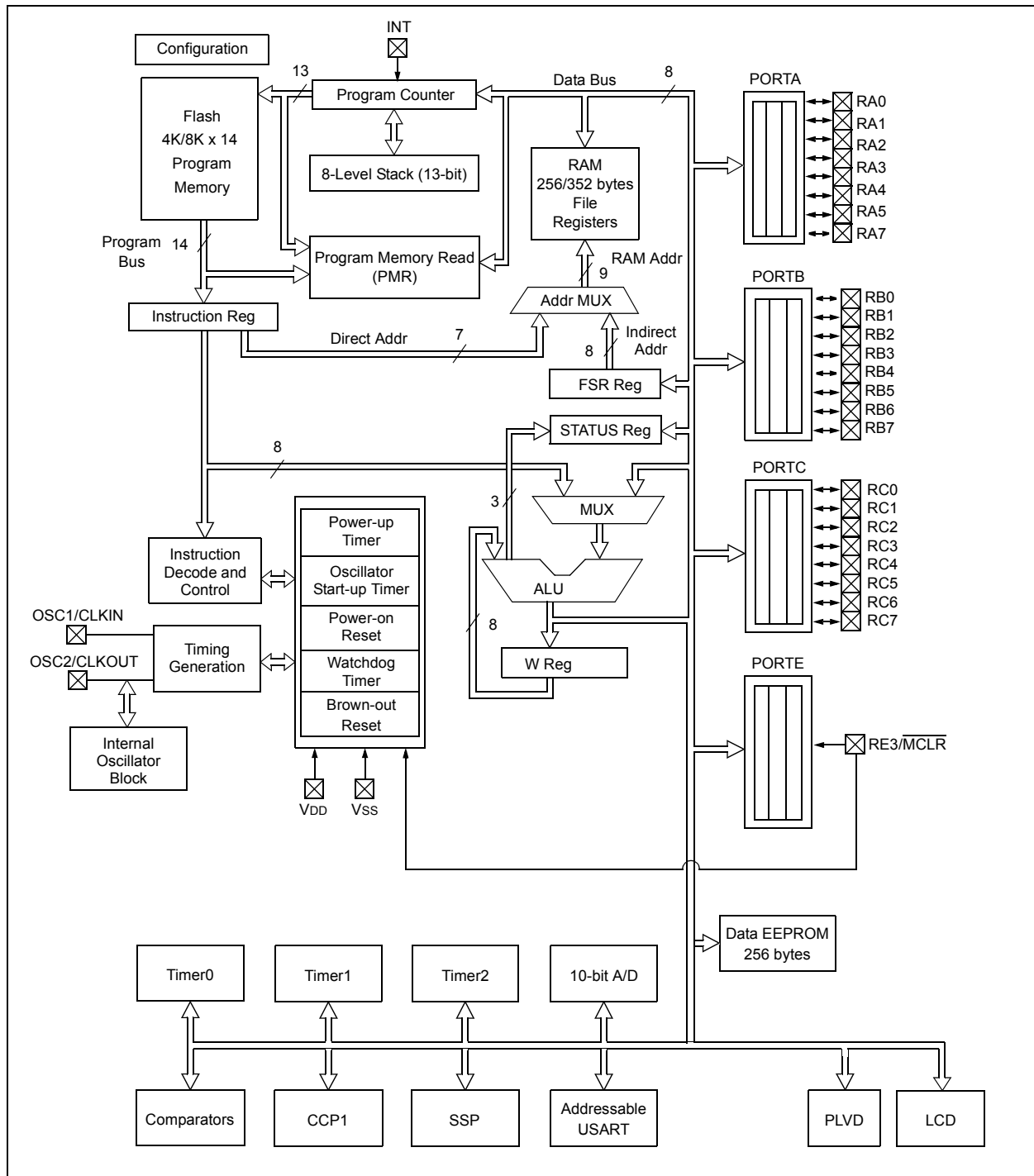
NOTES:



## 1.0 DEVICE OVERVIEW

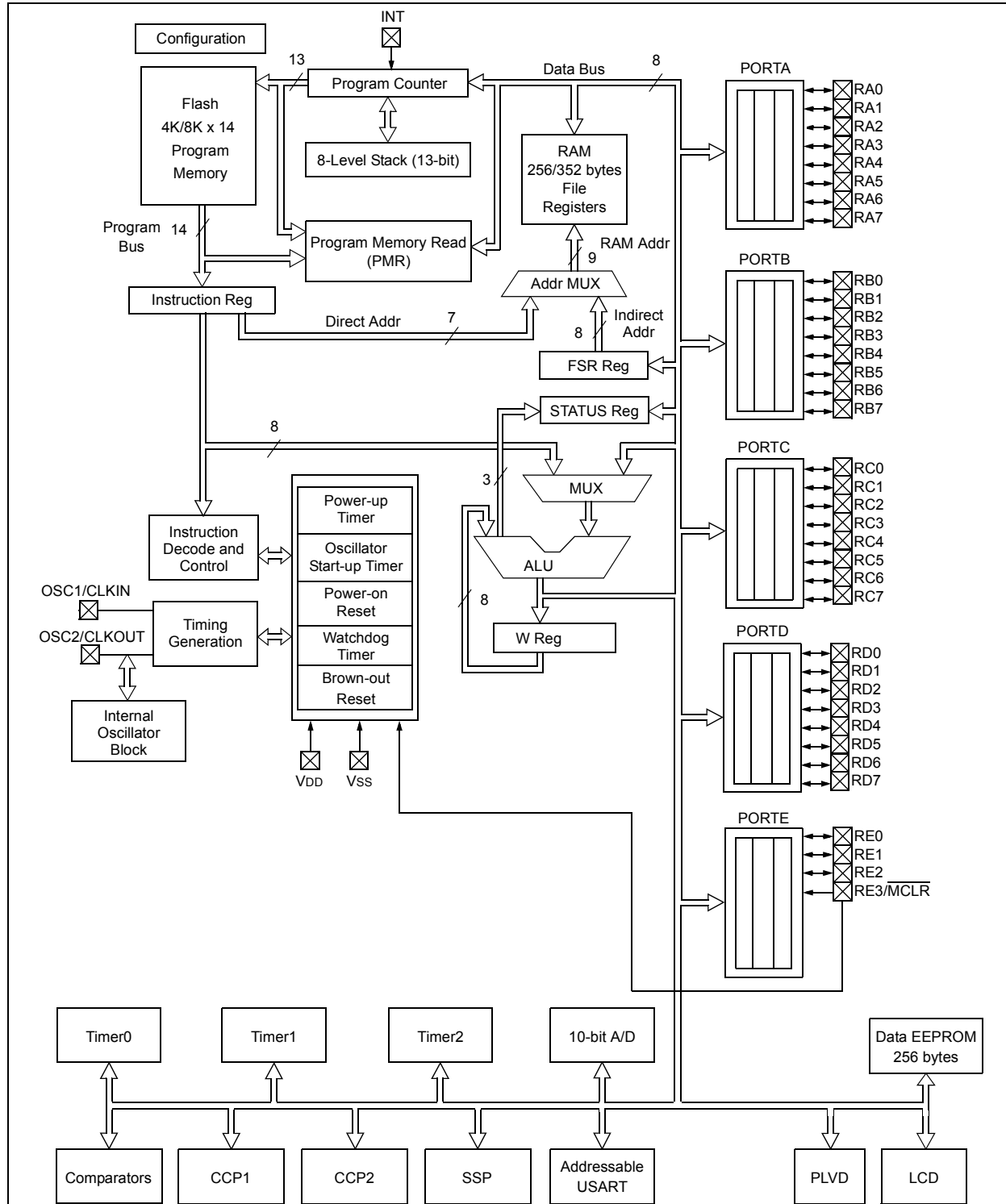
The PIC16F91X/946 devices are covered by this data sheet. They are available in 28/40/44/64-pin packages. Figure 1-1 shows a block diagram of the PIC16F913/916 device, Figure 1-2 shows a block diagram of the PIC16F914/917 device, and Figure 1-3 shows a block diagram of the PIC16F946 device. Table 1-1 shows the pinout descriptions.

**FIGURE 1-1: PIC16F913/916 BLOCK DIAGRAM**



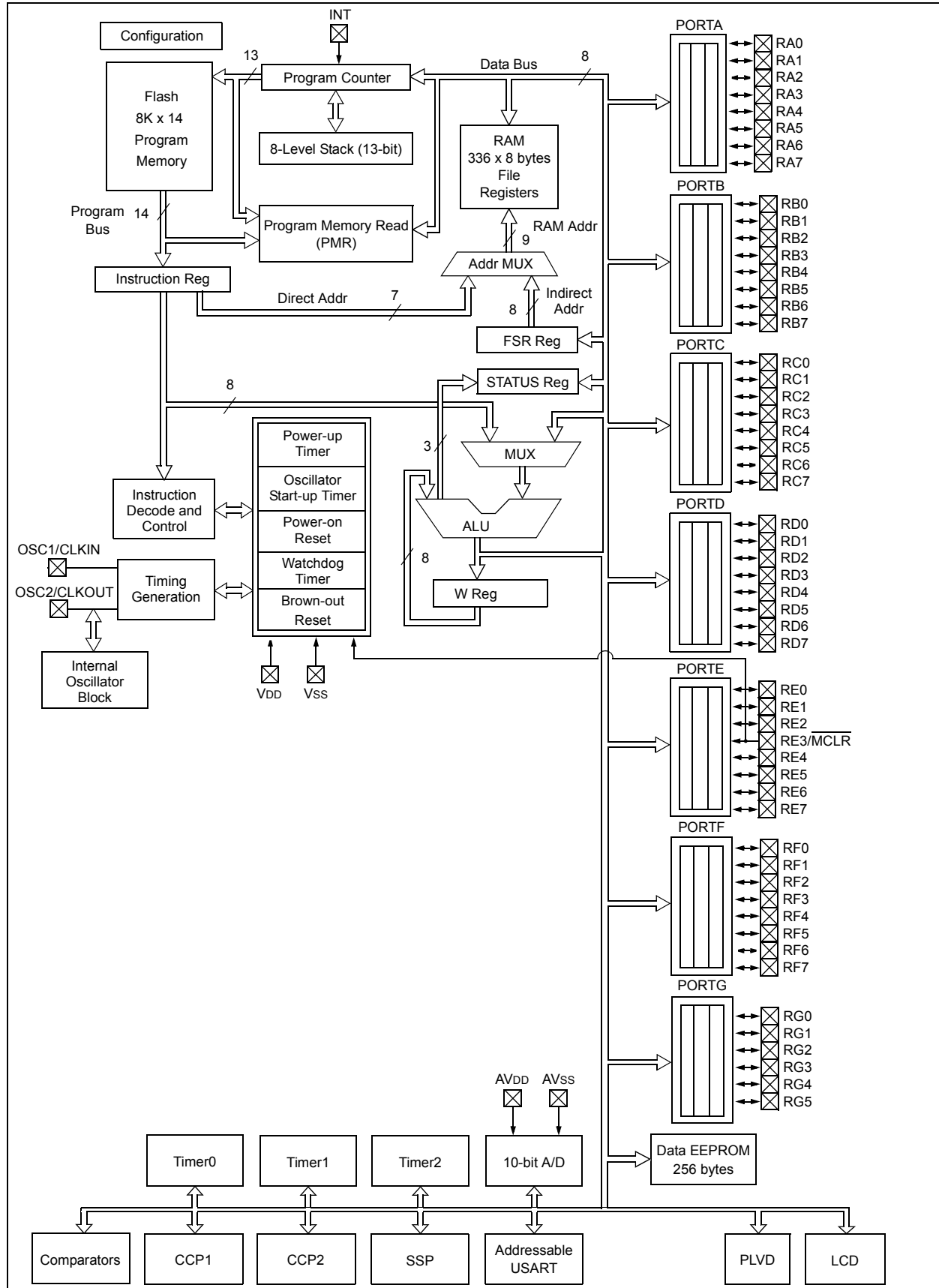
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 1-2: PIC16F914/917 BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 1-3: PIC16F946 BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 1-1: PIC16F91X/946 PINOUT DESCRIPTIONS**

| Name                                         | Function            | Input Type | Output Type | Description                                        |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------|------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| RA0/AN0/C1-/SEG12                            | RA0                 | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                               |
|                                              | AN0                 | AN         | —           | Analog input Channel 0.                            |
|                                              | C1-                 | AN         | —           | Comparator 1 negative input.                       |
|                                              | SEG12               | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                 |
| RA1/AN1/C2-/SEG7                             | RA1                 | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                               |
|                                              | AN1                 | AN         | —           | Analog input Channel 1.                            |
|                                              | C2-                 | AN         | —           | Comparator 2 negative input.                       |
|                                              | SEG7                | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                 |
| RA2/AN2/C2+/VREF-/COM2                       | RA2                 | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                               |
|                                              | AN2                 | AN         | —           | Analog input Channel 2.                            |
|                                              | C2+                 | AN         | —           | Comparator 2 positive input.                       |
|                                              | VREF-               | AN         | —           | External A/D Voltage Reference – negative.         |
|                                              | COM2                | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                 |
| RA3/AN3/C1+/VREF+/COM3 <sup>(1)</sup> /SEG15 | RA3                 | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                               |
|                                              | AN3                 | AN         | —           | Analog input Channel 3.                            |
|                                              | C1+                 | AN         | —           | Comparator 1 positive input.                       |
|                                              | VREF+               | AN         | —           | External A/D Voltage Reference – positive.         |
|                                              | COM3 <sup>(1)</sup> | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                 |
|                                              | SEG15               | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                 |
| RA4/C1OUT/T0CKI/SEG4                         | RA4                 | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                               |
|                                              | C1OUT               | —          | CMOS        | Comparator 1 output.                               |
|                                              | T0CKI               | ST         | —           | Timer0 clock input.                                |
|                                              | SEG4                | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                 |
| RA5/AN4/C2OUT/ $\overline{SS}$ /SEG5         | RA5                 | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                               |
|                                              | AN4                 | AN         | —           | Analog input Channel 4.                            |
|                                              | C2OUT               | —          | CMOS        | Comparator 2 output.                               |
|                                              | $\overline{SS}$     | TTL        | —           | Slave select input.                                |
|                                              | SEG5                | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                 |
| RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT/T1OSO                        | RA6                 | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                               |
|                                              | OSC2                | —          | XTAL        | Crystal/Resonator.                                 |
|                                              | CLKOUT              | —          | CMOS        | Tosc/4 reference clock.                            |
|                                              | T1OSO               | —          | XTAL        | Timer1 oscillator output.                          |
| RA7/OSC1/CLKIN/T1OSI                         | RA7                 | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                               |
|                                              | OSC1                | XTAL       | —           | Crystal/Resonator.                                 |
|                                              | CLKIN               | ST         | —           | Clock input.                                       |
|                                              | T1OSI               | XTAL       | —           | Timer1 oscillator input.                           |
| RB0/INT/SEG0                                 | RB0                 | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O. Individually enabled pull-up. |
|                                              | INT                 | ST         | —           | External interrupt pin.                            |
|                                              | SEG0                | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                 |

**Legend:** AN = Analog input or output    CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output    OD = Open Drain  
TTL = TTL compatible input    ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels    P = Power  
HV = High Voltage    XTAL = Crystal

- Note** 1: COM3 is available on RA3 for the PIC16F913/916 and on RD0 for the PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946.  
2: Pins available on PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.  
3: Pins available on PIC16F946 only.  
4: I<sup>2</sup>C Schmitt trigger inputs have special input levels.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 1-1: PIC16F91X/946 PINOUT DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)**

| Name                     | Function | Input Type | Output Type | Description                                                                                     |
|--------------------------|----------|------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RB1/SEG1                 | RB1      | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O. Individually enabled pull-up.                                              |
|                          | SEG1     | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                                                              |
| RB2/SEG2                 | RB2      | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O. Individually enabled pull-up.                                              |
|                          | SEG2     | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                                                              |
| RB3/SEG3                 | RB3      | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O. Individually enabled pull-up.                                              |
|                          | SEG3     | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                                                              |
| RB4/COM0                 | RB4      | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up. |
|                          | COM0     | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                                                              |
| RB5/COM1                 | RB5      | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up. |
|                          | COM1     | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                                                              |
| RB6/ICSPCLK/ICDCK/SEG14  | RB6      | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up. |
|                          | ICSPCLK  | ST         | —           | ICSP™ clock.                                                                                    |
|                          | ICDCK    | ST         | —           | ICD clock.                                                                                      |
|                          | SEG14    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                                                              |
| RB7/ICSPDAT/ICDDAT/SEG13 | RB7      | TTL        | CMOS        | General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up. |
|                          | ICSPDAT  | ST         | CMOS        | ICSP Data I/O.                                                                                  |
|                          | ICDDAT   | ST         | CMOS        | ICD Data I/O.                                                                                   |
|                          | SEG13    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                                                              |
| RC0/VLCD1                | RC0      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                                                                            |
|                          | VLCD1    | AN         | —           | LCD analog input.                                                                               |
| RC1/VLCD2                | RC1      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                                                                            |
|                          | VLCD2    | AN         | —           | LCD analog input.                                                                               |
| RC2/VLCD3                | RC2      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                                                                            |
|                          | VLCD3    | AN         | —           | LCD analog input.                                                                               |
| RC3/SEG6                 | RC3      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                                                                            |
|                          | SEG6     | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                                                              |
| RC4/T1G/SDO/SEG11        | RC4      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                                                                            |
|                          | T1G      | ST         | —           | Timer1 gate input.                                                                              |
|                          | SDO      | —          | CMOS        | Serial data output.                                                                             |
|                          | SEG11    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                                                              |
| RC5/T1CKI/CCP1/SEG10     | RC5      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                                                                            |
|                          | T1CKI    | ST         | —           | Timer1 clock input.                                                                             |
|                          | CCP1     | ST         | CMOS        | Capture 1 input/Compare 1 output/PWM 1 output.                                                  |
|                          | SEG10    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                                                                              |

**Legend:** AN = Analog input or output    CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output    OD = Open Drain  
TTL = TTL compatible input    ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels    P = Power  
HV = High Voltage    XTAL = Crystal

- Note 1:** COM3 is available on RA3 for the PIC16F913/916 and on RD0 for the PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946.  
**2:** Pins available on PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.  
**3:** Pins available on PIC16F946 only.  
**4:** I<sup>2</sup>C Schmitt trigger inputs have special input levels.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 1-1: PIC16F91X/946 PINOUT DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)**

| Name                         | Function | Input Type        | Output Type | Description                                    |
|------------------------------|----------|-------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------|
| RC6/TX/CK/SCK/SCL/SEG9       | RC6      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
|                              | TX       | —                 | CMOS        | USART asynchronous serial transmit.            |
|                              | CK       | ST                | CMOS        | USART synchronous serial clock.                |
|                              | SCK      | ST                | CMOS        | SPI clock.                                     |
|                              | SCL      | ST <sup>(4)</sup> | OD          | I <sup>2</sup> C™ clock.                       |
|                              | SEG9     | —                 | AN          | LCD analog output.                             |
| RC7/RX/DT/SDI/SDA/SEG8       | RC7      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
|                              | RX       | ST                | —           | USART asynchronous serial receive.             |
|                              | DT       | ST                | CMOS        | USART synchronous serial data.                 |
|                              | SDI      | ST                | CMOS        | SPI data input.                                |
|                              | SDA      | ST <sup>(4)</sup> | OD          | I <sup>2</sup> C™ data.                        |
|                              | SEG8     | —                 | AN          | LCD analog output.                             |
| RD0/COM3 <sup>(1, 2)</sup>   | RD0      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
|                              | COM3     | —                 | AN          | LCD analog output.                             |
| RD1 <sup>(2)</sup>           | RD1      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
| RD2/CCP2 <sup>(2)</sup>      | RD2      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
|                              | CCP2     | ST                | CMOS        | Capture 2 input/Compare 2 output/PWM 2 output. |
| RD3/SEG16 <sup>(2)</sup>     | RD3      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
|                              | SEG16    | —                 | AN          | LCD analog output.                             |
| RD4/SEG17 <sup>(2)</sup>     | RD4      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
|                              | SEG17    | —                 | AN          | LCD analog output.                             |
| RD5/SEG18 <sup>(2)</sup>     | RD5      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
|                              | SEG18    | —                 | AN          | LCD analog output.                             |
| RD6/SEG19 <sup>(2)</sup>     | RD6      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
|                              | SEG19    | —                 | AN          | LCD analog output.                             |
| RD7/SEG20 <sup>(2)</sup>     | RD7      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
|                              | SEG20    | —                 | AN          | LCD analog output.                             |
| RE0/AN5/SEG21 <sup>(2)</sup> | RE0      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
|                              | AN5      | AN                | —           | Analog input Channel 5.                        |
|                              | SEG21    | —                 | AN          | LCD analog output.                             |
| RE1/AN6/SEG22 <sup>(2)</sup> | RE1      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
|                              | AN6      | AN                | —           | Analog input Channel 6.                        |
|                              | SEG22    | —                 | AN          | LCD analog output.                             |
| RE2/AN7/SEG23 <sup>(2)</sup> | RE2      | ST                | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                           |
|                              | AN7      | AN                | —           | Analog input Channel 7.                        |
|                              | SEG23    | —                 | AN          | LCD analog output.                             |
| RE3/MCLR/VPP                 | RE3      | ST                | —           | Digital input only.                            |
|                              | MCLR     | ST                | —           | Master Clear with internal pull-up.            |
|                              | VPP      | HV                | —           | Programming voltage.                           |

**Legend:** AN = Analog input or output    CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output    OD = Open Drain  
TTL = TTL compatible input    ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels    P = Power  
HV = High Voltage    XTAL = Crystal

- Note** 1: COM3 is available on RA3 for the PIC16F913/916 and on RD0 for the PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946.  
2: Pins available on PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.  
3: Pins available on PIC16F946 only.  
4: I<sup>2</sup>C Schmitt trigger inputs have special input levels.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 1-1: PIC16F91X/946 PINOUT DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)**

| Name                     | Function | Input Type | Output Type | Description                                  |
|--------------------------|----------|------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------|
| RE4/SEG24 <sup>(3)</sup> | RE4      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG24    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RE5/SEG25 <sup>(3)</sup> | RE5      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG25    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RE6/SEG26 <sup>(3)</sup> | RE6      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG26    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RE7/SEG27 <sup>(3)</sup> | RE7      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG27    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RF0/SEG32 <sup>(3)</sup> | RF0      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG32    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RF1/SEG33 <sup>(3)</sup> | RF1      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG33    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RF2/SEG34 <sup>(3)</sup> | RF2      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG34    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RF3/SEG35 <sup>(3)</sup> | RF3      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG35    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RF4/SEG28 <sup>(3)</sup> | RF4      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG28    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RF5/SEG29 <sup>(3)</sup> | RF5      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG29    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RF6/SEG30 <sup>(3)</sup> | RF6      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG30    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RF7/SEG31 <sup>(3)</sup> | RF7      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG31    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RG0/SEG36 <sup>(3)</sup> | RG0      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG36    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RG1/SEG37 <sup>(3)</sup> | RG1      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG37    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RG2/SEG38 <sup>(3)</sup> | RG2      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG38    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RG3/SEG39 <sup>(3)</sup> | RG3      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG39    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RG4/SEG40 <sup>(3)</sup> | RG4      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG10    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| RG5/SEG41 <sup>(3)</sup> | RG5      | ST         | CMOS        | General purpose I/O.                         |
|                          | SEG41    | —          | AN          | LCD analog output.                           |
| AVDD <sup>(3)</sup>      | AVDD     | P          | —           | Analog power supply for microcontroller.     |
| AVSS <sup>(3)</sup>      | AVSS     | P          | —           | Analog ground reference for microcontroller. |
| VDD                      | VDD      | P          | —           | Power supply for microcontroller.            |

**Legend:** AN = Analog input or output    CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output    OD = Open Drain  
TTL = TTL compatible input    ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels    P = Power  
HV = High Voltage    XTAL = Crystal

- Note 1:** COM3 is available on RA3 for the PIC16F913/916 and on RD0 for the PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946.  
**2:** Pins available on PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.  
**3:** Pins available on PIC16F946 only.  
**4:** I<sup>2</sup>C Schmitt trigger inputs have special input levels.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 1-1: PIC16F91X/946 PINOUT DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)**

| Name | Function | Input Type | Output Type | Description                           |
|------|----------|------------|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| Vss  | Vss      | P          | —           | Ground reference for microcontroller. |

**Legend:** AN = Analog input or output    CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output    OD = Open Drain  
TTL = TTL compatible input    ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels    P = Power  
HV = High Voltage    XTAL = Crystal

- Note 1:** COM3 is available on RA3 for the PIC16F913/916 and on RD0 for the PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946.  
**2:** Pins available on PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.  
**3:** Pins available on PIC16F946 only.  
**4:** I<sup>2</sup>C Schmitt trigger inputs have special input levels.



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 2.0 MEMORY ORGANIZATION

### 2.1 Program Memory Organization

The PIC16F91X/946 has a 13-bit program counter capable of addressing a 4K x 14 program memory space for the PIC16F913/914 (0000h-0FFFh) and an 8K x 14 program memory space for the PIC16F916/917 and PIC16F946 (0000h-1FFFh). Accessing a location above the memory boundaries for the PIC16F913 and PIC16F914 will cause a wrap around within the first 4K x 14 space. The Reset vector is at 0000h and the interrupt vector is at 0004h.

**FIGURE 2-1: PROGRAM MEMORY MAP AND STACK FOR THE PIC16F913/914**

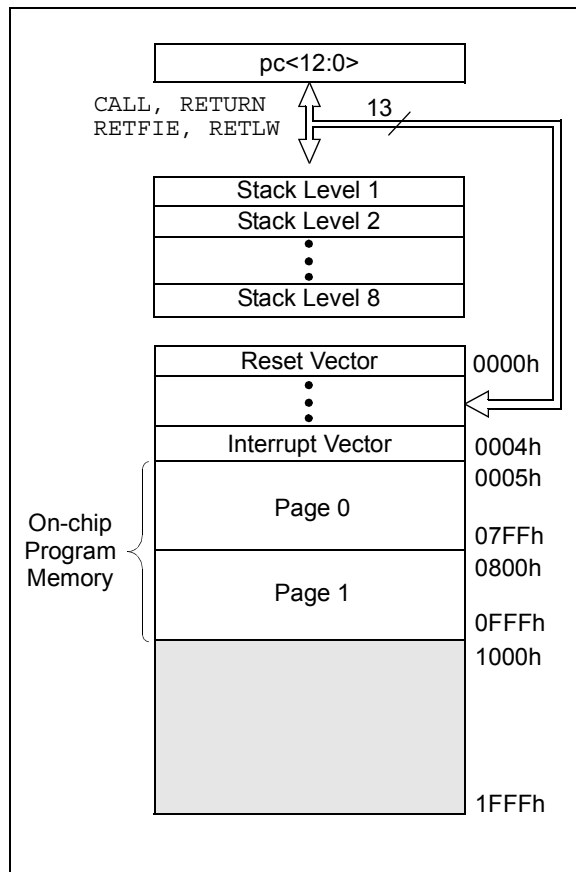
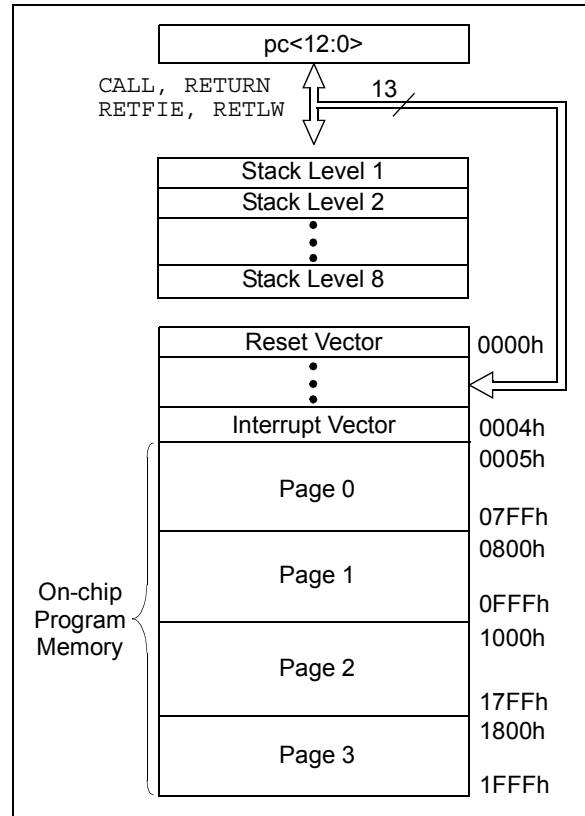


**FIGURE 2-2: PROGRAM MEMORY MAP AND STACK FOR THE PIC16F916/917/PIC16F946**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

## 2.2 Data Memory Organization

The data memory is partitioned into multiple banks which contain the General Purpose Registers (GPRs) and the Special Function Registers (SFRs). Bits RP0 and RP1 are bank select bits.

RP1   RP0

0      0      →   Bank 0 is selected

0      1      →   Bank 1 is selected

1      0      →   Bank 2 is selected

1      1      →   Bank 3 is selected

Each bank extends up to 7Fh (128 bytes). The lower locations of each bank are reserved for the Special Function Registers. Above the Special Function Registers are the General Purpose Registers, implemented as static RAM. All implemented banks contain Special Function Registers. Some frequently used Special Function Registers from one bank are mirrored in another bank for code reduction and quicker access.

### 2.2.1 GENERAL PURPOSE REGISTER FILE

The register file is organized as 256 x 8 bits in the PIC16F913/914, 352 x 8 bits in the PIC16F916/917 and 336 x 8 bits in the PIC16F946. Each register is accessed either directly or indirectly through the File Select Register (FSR) (see **Section 2.5 “Indirect Addressing, INDF and FSR Registers”**).

### 2.2.2 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

The Special Function Registers are registers used by the CPU and peripheral functions for controlling the desired operation of the device (see Tables 2-1, 2-2, 2-3 and 2-4). These registers are static RAM.

The Special Function Registers can be classified into two sets: core and peripheral. The Special Function Registers associated with the “core” are described in this section. Those related to the operation of the peripheral features are described in the section of that peripheral feature.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 2-3: PIC16F913/916 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS**

| File                          | File                          | File                          | File                          |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Address                       | Address                       | Address                       | Address                       |
| Indirect addr. <sup>(1)</sup> | Indirect addr. <sup>(1)</sup> | Indirect addr. <sup>(1)</sup> | Indirect addr. <sup>(1)</sup> |
| 00h                           | 80h                           | 100h                          | 180h                          |
| TMR0                          | OPTION_REG                    | 101h                          | OPTION_REG                    |
| 01h                           | 81h                           | 102h                          | 181h                          |
| PCL                           | PCL                           | 103h                          | PCL                           |
| 02h                           | 82h                           | 104h                          | 182h                          |
| STATUS                        | STATUS                        | 105h                          | STATUS                        |
| 03h                           | 83h                           | 106h                          | 183h                          |
| FSR                           | FSR                           | 107h                          | FSR                           |
| 04h                           | 84h                           | 108h                          | 184h                          |
| PORTA                         | TRISA                         | 109h                          | 185h                          |
| 05h                           | 85h                           | 110h                          | TRISB                         |
| PORTB                         | TRISB                         | 111h                          | 186h                          |
| 06h                           | 86h                           | 112h                          | 187h                          |
| PORTC                         | TRISC                         | 113h                          | 188h                          |
| 07h                           | 87h                           | 114h                          | 189h                          |
| 08h                           | 88h                           | 115h                          | 18Ah                          |
| PORTE                         | TRISE                         | 116h                          | PCLATH                        |
| 09h                           | 89h                           | 117h                          | INTCON                        |
| PCLATH                        | PCLATH                        | 118h                          | 18Bh                          |
| 0Ah                           | 8Ah                           | 119h                          | EECON1                        |
| INTCON                        | INTCON                        | 120h                          | EECON2 <sup>(1)</sup>         |
| 0Bh                           | 8Bh                           | 121h                          | Reserved                      |
| PIR1                          | PIE1                          | 122h                          | Reserved                      |
| 0Ch                           | 8Ch                           | 123h                          | 190h                          |
| PIR2                          | PIE2                          | 124h                          |                               |
| 0Dh                           | 8Dh                           | 125h                          |                               |
| TMR1L                         | PCON                          | 126h                          |                               |
| 0Eh                           | 8Eh                           | 127h                          |                               |
| TMR1H                         | OSCCON                        | 128h                          |                               |
| 0Fh                           | 8Fh                           | 129h                          |                               |
| T1CON                         | OSCTUNE                       | 130h                          |                               |
| 10h                           | 90h                           | 131h                          |                               |
| TMR2                          | ANSEL                         | 132h                          |                               |
| 11h                           | 91h                           | 133h                          |                               |
| T2CON                         | PR2                           | 134h                          |                               |
| 12h                           | 92h                           | 135h                          |                               |
| SSPBUF                        | SSPADD                        | 136h                          |                               |
| 13h                           | 93h                           | 137h                          |                               |
| SSPCON                        | SSPSTAT                       | 138h                          |                               |
| 14h                           | 94h                           | 139h                          |                               |
| CCPR1L                        | WPUB                          | 140h                          |                               |
| 15h                           | 95h                           | 141h                          |                               |
| CCPR1H                        | IOCB                          | 142h                          |                               |
| 16h                           | 96h                           | 143h                          |                               |
| CCP1CON                       | CMCON1                        | 144h                          |                               |
| 17h                           | 97h                           | 145h                          |                               |
| RCSTA                         | TXSTA                         | 146h                          |                               |
| 18h                           | 98h                           | 147h                          |                               |
| TXREG                         | SPBRG                         | 148h                          |                               |
| 19h                           | 99h                           | 149h                          |                               |
| RCREG                         |                               | 150h                          |                               |
| 1Ah                           | 9Ah                           | 151h                          |                               |
| 1Bh                           | 9Bh                           | 152h                          |                               |
| 1Ch                           | CMCON0                        | 153h                          |                               |
| 1Dh                           | VRCON                         | 154h                          |                               |
| ADRESH                        | ADRESL                        | 155h                          |                               |
| 1Eh                           | 9Eh                           | 156h                          |                               |
| ADCON0                        | ADCON1                        | 157h                          |                               |
| 1Fh                           | 9Fh                           | 158h                          |                               |
| 20h                           | A0h                           | 159h                          |                               |
| General Purpose Register      | General Purpose Register      | General Purpose Register      | General Purpose Register      |
| 96 Bytes                      | 80 Bytes                      | 80 Bytes                      | 96 Bytes                      |
| 7Fh                           | EFh                           | 16Fh                          | 1EFh                          |
|                               | F0h                           | 170h                          | 1F0h                          |
|                               | FFh                           | 17Fh                          | 1FFh                          |

Bank 0
Bank 1
Bank 2
Bank 3

Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

**Note 1:** Not a physical register.

**2:** On the PIC16F913, unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

---

|      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| File | File | File | File |
|------|------|------|------|

■ Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

**Note 1:** Not a physical register.

**2:** On the PIC16F914, unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 2-5: PIC16F946 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS**

| File Address                      | File Address                      | File Address                       | File Address                       |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Indirect addr. <sup>(1)</sup> 00h | Indirect addr. <sup>(1)</sup> 80h | Indirect addr. <sup>(1)</sup> 100h | Indirect addr. <sup>(1)</sup> 180h |
| TMR0 01h                          | OPTION_REG 81h                    | TMR0 101h                          | OPTION_REG 181h                    |
| PCL 02h                           | PCL 82h                           | PCL 102h                           | PCL 182h                           |
| STATUS 03h                        | STATUS 83h                        | STATUS 103h                        | STATUS 183h                        |
| FSR 04h                           | FSR 84h                           | FSR 104h                           | FSR 184h                           |
| PORTA 05h                         | TRISA 85h                         | WDTCON 105h                        | TRISF 185h                         |
| PORTB 06h                         | TRISB 86h                         | PORTB 106h                         | TRISB 186h                         |
| PORTC 07h                         | TRISC 87h                         | LCDDCON 107h                       | TRISG 187h                         |
| PORTD 08h                         | TRISD 88h                         | LCDPS 108h                         | PORTF 188h                         |
| PORTE 09h                         | TRISE 89h                         | LVDCON 109h                        | PORTG 189h                         |
| PCLATH 0Ah                        | PCLATH 8Ah                        | PCLATH 10Ah                        | PCLATH 18Ah                        |
| INTCON 0Bh                        | INTCON 8Bh                        | INTCON 10Bh                        | INTCON 18Bh                        |
| PIR1 0Ch                          | PIE1 8Ch                          | EEDATL 10Ch                        | EECON1 18Ch                        |
| PIR2 0Dh                          | PIE2 8Dh                          | EEADRL 10Dh                        | EECON2 <sup>(1)</sup> 18Dh         |
| TMR1L 0Eh                         | PCON 8Eh                          | EEDATH 10Eh                        | Reserved 18Eh                      |
| TMR1H 0Fh                         | OSCCON 8Fh                        | EEADRH 10Fh                        | Reserved 18Fh                      |
| T1CON 10h                         | OSCTUNE 90h                       | LCDDATA0 110h                      | LCDDATA12 190h                     |
| TMR2 11h                          | ANSEL 91h                         | LCDDATA1 111h                      | LCDDATA13 191h                     |
| T2CON 12h                         | PR2 92h                           | LCDDATA2 112h                      | LCDDATA14 192h                     |
| SSPBUF 13h                        | SSPADD 93h                        | LCDDATA3 113h                      | LCDDATA15 193h                     |
| SSPCON 14h                        | SSPSTAT 94h                       | LCDDATA4 114h                      | LCDDATA16 194h                     |
| CCPR1L 15h                        | WPUB 95h                          | LCDDATA5 115h                      | LCDDATA17 195h                     |
| CCPR1H 16h                        | IOCB 96h                          | LCDDATA6 116h                      | LCDDATA18 196h                     |
| CCP1CON 17h                       | CMCON1 97h                        | LCDDATA7 117h                      | LCDDATA19 197h                     |
| RCSTA 18h                         | TXSTA 98h                         | LCDDATA8 118h                      | LCDDATA20 198h                     |
| TXREG 19h                         | SPBRG 99h                         | LCDDATA9 119h                      | LCDDATA21 199h                     |
| RCREG 1Ah                         | 9Ah                               | LCDDATA10 11Ah                     | LCDDATA22 19Ah                     |
| CCPR2L 1Bh                        | 9Bh                               | LCDDATA11 11Bh                     | LCDDATA23 19Bh                     |
| CCPR2H 1Ch                        | CMCON0 9Ch                        | LCDSE0 11Ch                        | LCDSE3 19Ch                        |
| CCP2CON 1Dh                       | VRCON 9Dh                         | LCDSE1 11Dh                        | LCDSE4 19Dh                        |
| ADRESH 1Eh                        | ADRESL 9Eh                        | LCDSE2 11Eh                        | LCDSE5 19Eh                        |
| ADCON0 1Fh                        | ADCON1 9Fh                        | 11Fh                               | 19Fh                               |
| 20h                               | A0h                               | 120h                               | 1A0h                               |
| General Purpose Register          | General Purpose Register          | General Purpose Register           | General Purpose Register           |
| 96 Bytes                          | 80 Bytes                          | 80 Bytes                           | 80 Bytes                           |
| 7Fh                               | EFh                               | 16Fh                               | 1EFh                               |
|                                   | F0h                               | 170h                               | 1F0h                               |
|                                   | FFh                               | 17Fh                               | 1FFh                               |
| Bank 0                            | Bank 1                            | Bank 2                             | Bank 3                             |

 Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

**Note 1:** Not a physical register.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 2-1: PIC16F91X/946 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS SUMMARY BANK 0**

| Addr               | Name                 | Bit 7                                                                                          | Bit 6              | Bit 5              | Bit 4                                            | Bit 3           | Bit 2               | Bit 1                | Bit 0                 | Value on POR, BOR | Page    |
|--------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------|
| <b>Bank 0</b>      |                      |                                                                                                |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       |                   |         |
| 00h                | INDF                 | Addressing this location uses contents of FSR to address data memory (not a physical register) |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 41,226  |
| 01h                | TMR0                 | Timer0 Module Register                                                                         |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 99,226  |
| 02h                | PCL                  | Program Counter's (PC) Least Significant Byte                                                  |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | 0000 0000         | 40,226  |
| 03h                | STATUS               | IRP                                                                                            | RP1                | RP0                | $\overline{TO}$                                  | $\overline{PD}$ | Z                   | DC                   | C                     | 0001 1xxx         | 32,226  |
| 04h                | FSR                  | Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer                                                           |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 41,226  |
| 05h                | PORTA                | RA7                                                                                            | RA6                | RA5                | RA4                                              | RA3             | RA2                 | RA1                  | RA0                   | xxxx xxxx         | 44,226  |
| 06h                | PORTB                | RB7                                                                                            | RB6                | RB5                | RB4                                              | RB3             | RB2                 | RB1                  | RB0                   | xxxx xxxx         | 54,226  |
| 07h                | PORTC                | RC7                                                                                            | RC6                | RC5                | RC4                                              | RC3             | RC2                 | RC1                  | RC0                   | xxxx xxxx         | 62,226  |
| 08h                | PORTD <sup>(2)</sup> | RD7                                                                                            | RD6                | RD5                | RD4                                              | RD3             | RD2                 | RD1                  | RD0                   | xxxx xxxx         | 71,226  |
| 09h                | PORTE                | RE7 <sup>(3)</sup>                                                                             | RE6 <sup>(3)</sup> | RE5 <sup>(3)</sup> | RE4 <sup>(3)</sup>                               | RE3             | RE2 <sup>(2)</sup>  | RE1 <sup>(2)</sup>   | RE0 <sup>(2)</sup>    | xxxx xxxx         | 76,226  |
| 0Ah                | PCLATH               | —                                                                                              | —                  | —                  | Write Buffer for upper 5 bits of Program Counter |                 |                     |                      |                       | ---0 0000         | 40,226  |
| 0Bh                | INTCON               | GIE                                                                                            | PEIE               | TOIE               | INTE                                             | RBIE            | TOIF                | INTF                 | RBIF                  | 0000 000x         | 34,226  |
| 0Ch                | PIR1                 | EEIF                                                                                           | ADIF               | RCIF               | TXIF                                             | SSPIF           | CCP1IF              | TMR2IF               | TMR1IF                | 0000 0000         | 37,226  |
| 0Dh                | PIR2                 | OSFIF                                                                                          | C2IF               | C1IF               | LCDIF                                            | —               | LVDIF               | —                    | CCP2IF <sup>(2)</sup> | 0000 -0-0         | 38,226  |
| 0Eh                | TMR1L                | Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1                             |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 102,226 |
| 0Fh                | TMR1H                | Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1                              |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 102,226 |
| 10h                | T1CON                | T1GINV                                                                                         | TMR1GE             | T1CKPS1            | T1CKPS0                                          | T1OSCEN         | $\overline{T1SYNC}$ | TMR1CS               | TMR1ON                | 0000 0000         | 105,226 |
| 11h                | TMR2                 | Timer2 Module Register                                                                         |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | 0000 0000         | 107,226 |
| 12h                | T2CON                | —                                                                                              | TOUTPS3            | TOUTPS2            | TOUTPS1                                          | TOUTPS0         | TMR2ON              | T2CKPS1              | T2CKPS0               | -000 0000         | 108,226 |
| 13h                | SSPBUF               | Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register                                       |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 196,226 |
| 14h                | SSPCON               | WCOL                                                                                           | SSPOV              | SSPEN              | CKP                                              | SSPM3           | SSPM2               | SSPM1                | SSPM0                 | 0000 0000         | 195,226 |
| 15h                | CCPR1L               | Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (LSB)                                                           |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 213,226 |
| 16h                | CCPR1H               | Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (MSB)                                                           |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 213,226 |
| 17h                | CCP1CON              | —                                                                                              | —                  | CCP1X              | CCP1Y                                            | CCP1M3          | CCP1M2              | CCP1M1               | CCP1M0                | --00 0000         | 212,226 |
| 18h                | RCSTA                | SPEN                                                                                           | RX9                | SREN               | CREN                                             | ADDEN           | FERR                | OERR                 | RX9D                  | 0000 000x         | 131,226 |
| 19h                | TXREG                | USART Transmit Data Register                                                                   |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | 0000 0000         | 130,226 |
| 1Ah                | RCREG                | USART Receive Data Register                                                                    |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | 0000 0000         | 128,227 |
| 1Bh <sup>(2)</sup> | CCPR2L               | Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 (LSB)                                                           |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 213,227 |
| 1Ch <sup>(2)</sup> | CCPR2H               | Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 (MSB)                                                           |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 213,227 |
| 1Dh <sup>(2)</sup> | CCP2CON              | —                                                                                              | —                  | CCP2X              | CCP2Y                                            | CCP2M3          | CCP2M2              | CCP2M1               | CCP2M0                | --00 0000         | 212,227 |
| 1Eh                | ADRESH               | A/D Result Register High Byte                                                                  |                    |                    |                                                  |                 |                     |                      |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 182,227 |
| 1Fh                | ADCON0               | ADFM                                                                                           | VCFG1              | VCFG0              | CHS2                                             | CHS1            | CHS0                | $\overline{GO/DONE}$ | ADON                  | 0000 0000         | 180,227 |

**Legend:** — = Unimplemented locations read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown, q = value depends on condition, shaded = unimplemented

- Note**
- 1: Other (non Power-up) Resets include MCLR Reset and Watchdog Timer Reset during normal operation.
  - 2: PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only, forced '0' on PIC16F913/916.
  - 3: PIC16F946 only, forced to '0' on PIC16F91X.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 2-2: PIC16F91X/946 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS SUMMARY BANK 1**

| Addr          | Name                 | Bit 7                                                                                          | Bit 6                 | Bit 5                 | Bit 4                                                    | Bit 3                 | Bit 2                 | Bit 1                 | Bit 0                 | Value on POR, BOR | Page    |
|---------------|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------|
| <b>Bank 1</b> |                      |                                                                                                |                       |                       |                                                          |                       |                       |                       |                       |                   |         |
| 80h           | INDF                 | Addressing this location uses contents of FSR to address data memory (not a physical register) |                       |                       |                                                          |                       |                       |                       |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 41,226  |
| 81h           | OPTION_REG           | RBP $\overline{U}$                                                                             | INTEDG                | T0CS                  | T0SE                                                     | PSA                   | PS2                   | PS1                   | PS0                   | 1111 1111         | 33,227  |
| 82h           | PCL                  | Program Counter's (PC) Least Significant Byte                                                  |                       |                       |                                                          |                       |                       |                       |                       | 0000 0000         | 40,226  |
| 83h           | STATUS               | IRP                                                                                            | RP1                   | RP0                   | T0                                                       | P $\overline{D}$      | Z                     | DC                    | C                     | 0001 1xxx         | 32,226  |
| 84h           | FSR                  | Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer                                                           |                       |                       |                                                          |                       |                       |                       |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 41,226  |
| 85h           | TRISA                | TRISA7                                                                                         | TRISA6                | TRISA5                | TRISA4                                                   | TRISA3                | TRISA2                | TRISA1                | TRISA0                | 1111 1111         | 44,227  |
| 86h           | TRISB                | TRISB7                                                                                         | TRISB6                | TRISB5                | TRISB4                                                   | TRISB3                | TRISB2                | TRISB1                | TRISB0                | 1111 1111         | 54,227  |
| 87h           | TRISC                | TRISC7                                                                                         | TRISC6                | TRISC5                | TRISC4                                                   | TRISC3                | TRISC2                | TRISC1                | TRISC0                | 1111 1111         | 62,227  |
| 88h           | TRISD <sup>(3)</sup> | TRISD7                                                                                         | TRISD6                | TRISD5                | TRISD4                                                   | TRISD3                | TRISD2                | TRISD1                | TRISD0                | 1111 1111         | 71,227  |
| 89h           | TRISE                | TRISE7 <sup>(2)</sup>                                                                          | TRISE6 <sup>(2)</sup> | TRISE5 <sup>(2)</sup> | TRISE4 <sup>(2)</sup>                                    | TRISE3 <sup>(5)</sup> | TRISE2 <sup>(3)</sup> | TRISE1 <sup>(3)</sup> | TRISE0 <sup>(3)</sup> | 1111 1111         | 76,227  |
| 8Ah           | PCLATH               | —                                                                                              | —                     | —                     | Write Buffer for the upper 5 bits of the Program Counter |                       |                       |                       |                       | ---0 0000         | 40,226  |
| 8Bh           | INTCON               | GIE                                                                                            | PEIE                  | T0IE                  | INTE                                                     | RBIE                  | T0IF                  | INTF                  | RBIF                  | 0000 000x         | 34,226  |
| 8Ch           | PIE1                 | EEIE                                                                                           | ADIE                  | RCIE                  | TXIE                                                     | SSPIE                 | CCP1IE                | TMR2IE                | TMR1IE                | 0000 0000         | 35,227  |
| 8Dh           | PIE2                 | OSFIE                                                                                          | C2IE                  | C1IE                  | LCDIE                                                    | —                     | LVDIE                 | —                     | CCP2IE <sup>(3)</sup> | 0000 -0-0         | 36,227  |
| 8Eh           | PCON                 | —                                                                                              | —                     | —                     | SBOREN                                                   | —                     | —                     | POR                   | BOR                   | ---1 --qg         | 39,227  |
| 8Fh           | OSCCON               | —                                                                                              | IRCF2                 | IRCF1                 | IRCF0                                                    | OSTS <sup>(4)</sup>   | HTS                   | LTS                   | SCS                   | -110 q000         | 88,227  |
| 90h           | OSCTUNE              | —                                                                                              | —                     | —                     | TUN4                                                     | TUN3                  | TUN2                  | TUN1                  | TUN0                  | ---0 0000         | 92,227  |
| 91h           | ANSEL                | ANS7 <sup>(3)</sup>                                                                            | ANS6 <sup>(3)</sup>   | ANS5 <sup>(3)</sup>   | ANS4                                                     | ANS3                  | ANS2                  | ANS1                  | ANS0                  | 1111 1111         | 43,227  |
| 92h           | PR2                  | Timer2 Period Register                                                                         |                       |                       |                                                          |                       |                       |                       |                       | 1111 1111         | 107,227 |
| 93h           | SSPADD               | Synchronous Serial Port (I <sup>2</sup> C mode) Address Register                               |                       |                       |                                                          |                       |                       |                       |                       | 0000 0000         | 202,227 |
| 94h           | SSPSTAT              | SMP                                                                                            | CKE                   | D/A                   | P                                                        | S                     | R/W                   | UA                    | BF                    | 0000 0000         | 194,227 |
| 95h           | WPUB                 | WPUB7                                                                                          | WPUB6                 | WPUB5                 | WPUB4                                                    | WPUB3                 | WPUB2                 | WPUB1                 | WPUB0                 | 1111 1111         | 55,227  |
| 96h           | IOCB                 | IOCB7                                                                                          | IOCB6                 | IOCB5                 | IOCB4                                                    | —                     | —                     | —                     | —                     | 0000 ----         | 54,227  |
| 97h           | CMCON1               | —                                                                                              | —                     | —                     | —                                                        | —                     | —                     | T1GSS                 | C2SYNC                | ---- --10         | 117,227 |
| 98h           | TXSTA                | CSRC                                                                                           | TX9                   | TXEN                  | SYNC                                                     | —                     | BRGH                  | TRMT                  | TX9D                  | 0000 -010         | 130,227 |
| 99h           | SPBRG                | SPBRG7                                                                                         | SPBRG6                | SPBRG5                | SPBRG4                                                   | SPBRG3                | SPBRG2                | SPBRG1                | SPBRG0                | 0000 0000         | 132,227 |
| 9Ah           | —                    | Unimplemented                                                                                  |                       |                       |                                                          |                       |                       |                       |                       | —                 | —       |
| 9Bh           | —                    | Unimplemented                                                                                  |                       |                       |                                                          |                       |                       |                       |                       | —                 | —       |
| 9Ch           | CMCON0               | C2OUT                                                                                          | C1OUT                 | C2INV                 | C1INV                                                    | CIS                   | CM2                   | CM1                   | CM0                   | 0000 0000         | 116,227 |
| 9Dh           | VRCON                | VREN                                                                                           | —                     | VRR                   | —                                                        | VR3                   | VR2                   | VR1                   | VR0                   | 0-0- 0000         | 118,227 |
| 9Eh           | ADRESL               | A/D Result Register Low Byte                                                                   |                       |                       |                                                          |                       |                       |                       |                       | xxxx xxxx         | 182,227 |
| 9Fh           | ADCON1               | —                                                                                              | ADCS2                 | ADCS1                 | ADCS0                                                    | —                     | —                     | —                     | —                     | -000 ----         | 181,227 |

**Legend:** — = Unimplemented locations read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown, q = value depends on condition, shaded = unimplemented

- Note**
- 1: Other (non Power-up) Resets include MCLR Reset and Watchdog Timer Reset during normal operation.
  - 2: PIC16F946 only, forced '0' on PIC16F91X.
  - 3: PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only, forced '0' on PIC16F913/916.
  - 4: The value of the OSTS bit is dependent on the value of the Configuration Word (CONFIG) of the device. See **Section 4.2 "Oscillator Control"**.
  - 5: Bit is read-only; TRISE3 = 1 always.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 2-3: PIC16F91X/946 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS SUMMARY BANK 2**

| Addr          | Name                     | Bit 7                                                                                          | Bit 6              | Bit 5      | Bit 4                                                    | Bit 3           | Bit 2      | Bit 1      | Bit 0      | Value on POR, BOR | Page    |
|---------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------|------------|------------|-------------------|---------|
| <b>Bank 2</b> |                          |                                                                                                |                    |            |                                                          |                 |            |            |            |                   |         |
| 100h          | INDF                     | Addressing this location uses contents of FSR to address data memory (not a physical register) |                    |            |                                                          |                 |            |            |            | xxxx xxxx         | 41,226  |
| 101h          | TMR0                     | Timer0 Module Register                                                                         |                    |            |                                                          |                 |            |            |            | xxxx xxxx         | 99,226  |
| 102h          | PCL                      | Program Counter's (PC) Least Significant Byte                                                  |                    |            |                                                          |                 |            |            |            | 0000 0000         | 40,226  |
| 103h          | STATUS                   | IRP                                                                                            | RP1                | RP0        | $\overline{TO}$                                          | $\overline{PD}$ | Z          | DC         | C          | 0001 1xxx         | 32,226  |
| 104h          | FSR                      | Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer                                                           |                    |            |                                                          |                 |            |            |            | xxxx xxxx         | 41,226  |
| 105h          | WDTCN                    | —                                                                                              | —                  | —          | WDTPS3                                                   | WDTPS2          | WDTPS1     | WDTPS0     | SWDTEN     | --0 1000          | 235,227 |
| 106h          | PORTB                    | RB7                                                                                            | RB6                | RB5        | RB4                                                      | RB3             | RB2        | RB1        | RB0        | xxxx xxxx         | 54,226  |
| 107h          | LCDCON                   | LCDEN                                                                                          | $\overline{SLPEN}$ | WERR       | VLCDEN                                                   | CS1             | CS0        | LMUX1      | LMUX0      | 0001 0011         | 145,227 |
| 108h          | LCDPS                    | WFT                                                                                            | BIASMD             | LCDA       | WA                                                       | LP3             | LP2        | LP1        | LP0        | 0000 0000         | 146,227 |
| 109h          | LVDCON                   | —                                                                                              | —                  | IRVST      | LVDEN                                                    | —               | LVDL2      | LVDL1      | LVDL0      | --00 -100         | 145,228 |
| 10Ah          | PCLATH                   | —                                                                                              | —                  | —          | Write Buffer for the upper 5 bits of the Program Counter |                 |            |            | ---        | 0000              | 40,226  |
| 10Bh          | INTCON                   | GIE                                                                                            | PEIE               | TOIE       | INTE                                                     | RBIE            | TOIF       | INTF       | RBI        | 0000 000x         | 34,226  |
| 10Ch          | EEDATL                   | EEDATL7                                                                                        | EEDATL6            | EEDATL5    | EEDATL4                                                  | EEDATL3         | EEDATL2    | EEDATL1    | EEDATL0    | 0000 0000         | 188,228 |
| 10Dh          | EEADRL                   | EEADRL7                                                                                        | EEADRL6            | EEADRL5    | EEADRL4                                                  | EEADRL3         | EEADRL2    | EEADRL1    | EEADRL0    | 0000 0000         | 188,228 |
| 10Eh          | EEDATH                   | —                                                                                              | —                  | EEDATH5    | EEDATH4                                                  | EEDATH3         | EEDATH2    | EEDATH1    | EEDATH0    | --00 0000         | 188,228 |
| 10Fh          | EEADRH                   | —                                                                                              | —                  | —          | EEADRH4                                                  | EEADRH3         | EEADRH2    | EEADRH1    | EEADRH0    | ---0 0000         | 188,228 |
| 110h          | LCDDATA0                 | SEG7 COM0                                                                                      | SEG6 COM0          | SEG5 COM0  | SEG4 COM0                                                | SEG3 COM0       | SEG2 COM0  | SEG1 COM0  | SEG0 COM0  | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 111h          | LCDDATA1                 | SEG15 COM0                                                                                     | SEG14 COM0         | SEG13 COM0 | SEG12 COM0                                               | SEG11 COM0      | SEG10 COM0 | SEG9 COM0  | SEG8 COM0  | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 112h          | LCDDATA2 <sup>(2)</sup>  | SEG23 COM0                                                                                     | SEG22 COM0         | SEG21 COM0 | SEG20 COM0                                               | SEG19 COM0      | SEG18 COM0 | SEG17 COM0 | SEG16 COM0 | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 113h          | LCDDATA3                 | SEG7 COM1                                                                                      | SEG6 COM1          | SEG5 COM1  | SEG4 COM1                                                | SEG3 COM1       | SEG2 COM1  | SEG1 COM1  | SEG0 COM1  | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 114h          | LCDDATA4                 | SEG15 COM1                                                                                     | SEG14 COM1         | SEG13 COM1 | SEG12 COM1                                               | SEG11 COM1      | SEG10 COM1 | SEG9 COM1  | SEG8 COM1  | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 115h          | LCDDATA5 <sup>(2)</sup>  | SEG23 COM1                                                                                     | SEG22 COM1         | SEG21 COM1 | SEG20 COM1                                               | SEG19 COM1      | SEG18 COM1 | SEG17 COM1 | SEG16 COM1 | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 116h          | LCDDATA6                 | SEG7 COM2                                                                                      | SEG6 COM2          | SEG5 COM2  | SEG4 COM2                                                | SEG3 COM2       | SEG2 COM2  | SEG1 COM2  | SEG0 COM2  | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 117h          | LCDDATA7                 | SEG15 COM2                                                                                     | SEG14 COM2         | SEG13 COM2 | SEG12 COM2                                               | SEG11 COM2      | SEG10 COM2 | SEG9 COM2  | SEG8 COM2  | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 118h          | LCDDATA8 <sup>(2)</sup>  | SEG23 COM2                                                                                     | SEG22 COM2         | SEG21 COM2 | SEG20 COM2                                               | SEG19 COM2      | SEG18 COM2 | SEG17 COM2 | SEG16 COM2 | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 119h          | LCDDATA9                 | SEG7 COM3                                                                                      | SEG6 COM3          | SEG5 COM3  | SEG4 COM3                                                | SEG3 COM3       | SEG2 COM3  | SEG1 COM3  | SEG0 COM3  | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 11Ah          | LCDDATA10                | SEG15 COM3                                                                                     | SEG14 COM3         | SEG13 COM3 | SEG12 COM3                                               | SEG11 COM3      | SEG10 COM3 | SEG9 COM3  | SEG8 COM3  | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 11Bh          | LCDDATA11 <sup>(2)</sup> | SEG23 COM3                                                                                     | SEG22 COM3         | SEG21 COM3 | SEG20 COM3                                               | SEG19 COM3      | SEG18 COM3 | SEG17 COM3 | SEG16 COM3 | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 11Ch          | LCDSE0 <sup>(3)</sup>    | SE7                                                                                            | SE6                | SE5        | SE4                                                      | SE3             | SE2        | SE1        | SE0        | 0000 0000         | 147,228 |
| 11Dh          | LCDSE1 <sup>(3)</sup>    | SE15                                                                                           | SE14               | SE13       | SE12                                                     | SE11            | SE10       | SE9        | SE8        | 0000 0000         | 147,228 |
| 11Eh          | LCDSE2 <sup>(2,3)</sup>  | SE23                                                                                           | SE22               | SE21       | SE20                                                     | SE19            | SE18       | SE17       | SE16       | 0000 0000         | 147,228 |
| 11Fh          | —                        | Unimplemented                                                                                  |                    |            |                                                          |                 |            |            |            | —                 | —       |

**Legend:** — = Unimplemented locations read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown, q = value depends on condition, shaded = unimplemented

**Note 1:** Other (non Power-up) Resets include MCLR Reset and Watchdog Timer Reset during normal operation.

**2:** PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

**3:** This register is only initialized by a POR or BOR reset and is unchanged by other Resets.



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 2-4: PIC16F91X/946 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS SUMMARY BANK 3**

| Addr          | Name                     | Bit 7                                                                                          | Bit 6      | Bit 5      | Bit 4                                                    | Bit 3      | Bit 2      | Bit 1      | Bit 0      | Value on POR, BOR | Page    |
|---------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------|----------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|-------------------|---------|
| <b>Bank 3</b> |                          |                                                                                                |            |            |                                                          |            |            |            |            |                   |         |
| 180h          | INDF                     | Addressing this location uses contents of FSR to address data memory (not a physical register) |            |            |                                                          |            |            |            |            | xxxx xxxx         | 41,226  |
| 181h          | OPTION_REG               | RBPÜ                                                                                           | INTEDG     | T0CS       | T0SE                                                     | PSA        | PS2        | PS1        | PS0        | 1111 1111         | 33,227  |
| 182h          | PCL                      | Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte                                                    |            |            |                                                          |            |            |            |            | 0000 0000         | 40,226  |
| 183h          | STATUS                   | IRP                                                                                            | RP1        | RP0        | TÖ                                                       | PD         | Z          | DC         | C          | 0001 1xxx         | 32,226  |
| 184h          | FSR                      | Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer                                                           |            |            |                                                          |            |            |            |            | xxxx xxxx         | 41,226  |
| 185h          | TRISF <sup>(3)</sup>     | TRISF7                                                                                         | TRISF6     | TRISF5     | TRISF4                                                   | TRISF3     | TRISF2     | TRISF1     | TRISF0     | 1111 1111         | 81,228  |
| 186h          | TRISB                    | TRISB7                                                                                         | TRISB6     | TRISB5     | TRISB4                                                   | TRISB3     | TRISB2     | TRISB1     | TRISB0     | 1111 1111         | 54,227  |
| 187h          | TRISG <sup>(3)</sup>     | —                                                                                              | —          | TRISG5     | TRISG4                                                   | TRISG3     | TRISG2     | TRISG1     | TRISG0     | --11 1111         | 84,228  |
| 188h          | PORTF <sup>(3)</sup>     | RF7                                                                                            | RF6        | RF5        | RF4                                                      | RF3        | RF2        | RF1        | RF0        | xxxx xxxx         | 81,228  |
| 189h          | PORTG <sup>(3)</sup>     | —                                                                                              | —          | RG5        | RG4                                                      | RG3        | RG2        | RG1        | RG0        | --xx xxxx         | 84,228  |
| 18Ah          | PCLATH                   | —                                                                                              | —          | —          | Write Buffer for the upper 5 bits of the Program Counter |            |            |            |            | ---0 0000         | 40,226  |
| 18Bh          | INTCON                   | GIE                                                                                            | PEIE       | T0IE       | INTE                                                     | RBIE       | T0IF       | INTF       | RBIF       | 0000 000x         | 34,226  |
| 18Ch          | EECON1                   | EEPGD                                                                                          | —          | —          | —                                                        | WRERR      | WREN       | WR         | RD         | 0--- x000         | 189,229 |
| 18Dh          | EECON2                   | EEPROM Control Register 2 (not a physical register)                                            |            |            |                                                          |            |            |            |            | ---- ----         | 187     |
| 18Eh          | —                        | Reserved                                                                                       |            |            |                                                          |            |            |            |            | —                 | —       |
| 18Fh          | —                        | Reserved                                                                                       |            |            |                                                          |            |            |            |            | —                 | —       |
| 190h          | LCDDATA12 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG31 COM0                                                                                     | SEG30 COM0 | SEG29 COM0 | SEG28 COM0                                               | SEG27 COM0 | SEG26 COM0 | SEG25 COM0 | SEG24 COM0 | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 191h          | LCDDATA13 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG39 COM0                                                                                     | SEG38 COM0 | SEG37 COM0 | SEG36 COM0                                               | SEG35 COM0 | SEG34 COM0 | SEG33 COM0 | SEG32 COM0 | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 192h          | LCDDATA14 <sup>(3)</sup> | —                                                                                              | —          | —          | —                                                        | —          | —          | SEG41 COM0 | SEG40 COM0 | ---- --xx         | 147,228 |
| 193h          | LCDDATA15 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG31 COM1                                                                                     | SEG30 COM1 | SEG29 COM1 | SEG28 COM1                                               | SEG27 COM1 | SEG26 COM1 | SEG25 COM1 | SEG24 COM1 | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 194h          | LCDDATA16 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG39 COM1                                                                                     | SEG38 COM1 | SEG37 COM1 | SEG36 COM1                                               | SEG35 COM1 | SEG34 COM1 | SEG33 COM1 | SEG32 COM1 | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 195h          | LCDDATA17 <sup>(3)</sup> | —                                                                                              | —          | —          | —                                                        | —          | —          | SEG41 COM1 | SEG40 COM1 | ---- --xx         | 147,228 |
| 196h          | LCDDATA18 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG31 COM2                                                                                     | SEG30 COM2 | SEG29 COM2 | SEG28 COM2                                               | SEG27 COM2 | SEG26 COM2 | SEG25 COM2 | SEG24 COM2 | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 197h          | LCDDATA19 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG39 COM2                                                                                     | SEG38 COM2 | SEG37 COM2 | SEG36 COM2                                               | SEG35 COM2 | SEG34 COM2 | SEG33 COM2 | SEG32 COM2 | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 198h          | LCDDATA20 <sup>(3)</sup> | —                                                                                              | —          | —          | —                                                        | —          | —          | SEG41 COM2 | SEG40 COM2 | ---- --xx         | 147,228 |
| 199h          | LCDDATA21 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG31 COM3                                                                                     | SEG30 COM3 | SEG29 COM3 | SEG28 COM3                                               | SEG27 COM3 | SEG26 COM3 | SEG25 COM3 | SEG24 COM3 | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 19Ah          | LCDDATA22 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG39 COM3                                                                                     | SEG38 COM3 | SEG37 COM3 | SEG36 COM3                                               | SEG35 COM3 | SEG34 COM3 | SEG33 COM3 | SEG32 COM3 | xxxx xxxx         | 147,228 |
| 19Bh          | LCDDATA23 <sup>(3)</sup> | —                                                                                              | —          | —          | —                                                        | —          | —          | SEG41 COM3 | SEG40 COM3 | ---- --xx         | 147,228 |
| 19Ch          | LCDSE3 <sup>(2, 3)</sup> | SE31                                                                                           | SE30       | SE29       | SE28                                                     | SE27       | SE26       | SE25       | SE24       | 0000 0000         | 147,229 |
| 19Dh          | LCDSE4 <sup>(2, 3)</sup> | SE39                                                                                           | SE38       | SE37       | SE36                                                     | SE35       | SE34       | SE33       | SE32       | 0000 0000         | 147,229 |
| 19Eh          | LCDSE5 <sup>(2, 3)</sup> | —                                                                                              | —          | —          | —                                                        | —          | —          | SE41       | SE40       | ---- --00         | 147,229 |
| 19Fh          | —                        | Unimplemented                                                                                  |            |            |                                                          |            |            |            |            | —                 | —       |

**Legend:** — = Unimplemented locations read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown, q = value depends on condition, shaded = unimplemented

- Note** 1: Other (non Power-up) Resets include MCLR Reset and Watchdog Timer Reset during normal operation.  
2: This register is only initialized by a POR or BOR reset and is unchanged by other Resets.  
3: PIC16F946 only.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 2.2.2.1 STATUS Register

The STATUS register, shown in Register 2-1, contains:

- the arithmetic status of the ALU
- the Reset status
- the bank select bits for data memory (SRAM)

The STATUS register can be the destination for any instruction, like any other register. If the STATUS register is the destination for an instruction that affects the Z, DC or C bits, then the write to these three bits is disabled. These bits are set or cleared according to the device logic. Furthermore, the TO and PD bits are not writable. Therefore, the result of an instruction with the STATUS register as destination may be different than intended.

For example, `CLRF STATUS` will clear the upper three bits and set the Z bit. This leaves the STATUS register as '000u u1uu' (where u = unchanged).

It is recommended, therefore, that only `BCF`, `BSF`, `SWAPF` and `MOVWF` instructions are used to alter the STATUS register, because these instructions do not affect any Status bits. For other instructions not affecting any Status bits (see **Section 17.0 "Instruction Set Summary"**).

**Note 1:** The C and DC bits operate as Borrow and Digit Borrow out bits, respectively, in subtraction.

**REGISTER 2-1: STATUS: STATUS REGISTER**

| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R-1                    | R-1                    | R/W-x | R/W-x             | R/W-x            |
|-------|-------|-------|------------------------|------------------------|-------|-------------------|------------------|
| IRP   | RP1   | RP0   | $\overline{\text{TO}}$ | $\overline{\text{PD}}$ | Z     | DC <sup>(1)</sup> | C <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7 |       |       |                        |                        |       |                   | bit 0            |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7 **IRP:** Register Bank Select bit (used for indirect addressing)  
 1 = Bank 2, 3 (100h-1FFh)  
 0 = Bank 0, 1 (00h-FFh)
- bit 6-5 **RP<1:0>:** Register Bank Select bits (used for direct addressing)  
 00 = Bank 0 (00h-7Fh)  
 01 = Bank 1 (80h-FFh)  
 10 = Bank 2 (100h-17Fh)  
 11 = Bank 3 (180h-1FFh)
- bit 4  **$\overline{\text{TO}}$ :** Time-out bit  
 1 = After power-up, `CLRWDT` instruction or `SLEEP` instruction  
 0 = A WDT time-out occurred
- bit 3  **$\overline{\text{PD}}$ :** Power-down bit  
 1 = After power-up or by the `CLRWDT` instruction  
 0 = By execution of the `SLEEP` instruction
- bit 2 **Z:** Zero bit  
 1 = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is zero  
 0 = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is not zero
- bit 1 **DC:** Digit Carry/Borrow bit (`ADDWF`, `ADDLW`, `SUBLW`, `SUBWF` instructions)<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = A carry-out from the 4th low-order bit of the result occurred  
 0 = No carry-out from the 4th low-order bit of the result
- bit 0 **C:** Carry/Borrow bit<sup>(1)</sup> (`ADDWF`, `ADDLW`, `SUBLW`, `SUBWF` instructions)<sup>(1)</sup>  
 1 = A carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred  
 0 = No carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred

**Note 1:** For Borrow, the polarity is reversed. A subtraction is executed by adding the two's complement of the second operand. For rotate (`RRF`, `RLF`) instructions, this bit is loaded with either the high-order or low-order bit of the source register.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 2.2.2.2 OPTION register

The OPTION register, shown in Register 2-2, is a readable and writable register, which contains various control bits to configure:

- Timer0/WDT prescaler
- External RB0/INT interrupt
- Timer0
- Weak pull-ups on PORTB

**Note:** To achieve a 1:1 prescaler assignment for Timer0, assign the prescaler to the WDT by setting PSA bit of the OPTION register to '1'. See **Section 6.3 “Timer1 Prescaler”**.

### REGISTER 2-2: OPTION\_REG: OPTION REGISTER

| R/W-1              | R/W-1  | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
|--------------------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| RBP $\overline{U}$ | INTEDG | T0CS  | T0SE  | PSA   | PS2   | PS1   | PS0   |
| bit 7              |        |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7 **RBP $\overline{U}$** : PORTB Pull-up Enable bit  
1 = PORTB pull-ups are disabled  
0 = PORTB pull-ups are enabled by individual bits in the WPUB register
- bit 6 **INTEDG**: Interrupt Edge Select bit  
1 = Interrupt on rising edge of RB0/INT pin  
0 = Interrupt on falling edge of RB0/INT pin
- bit 5 **T0CS**: Timer0 Clock Source Select bit  
1 = Transition on RA4/T0CKI pin  
0 = Internal instruction cycle clock (Fosc/4)
- bit 4 **T0SE**: Timer0 Source Edge Select bit  
1 = Increment on high-to-low transition on RA4/T0CKI pin  
0 = Increment on low-to-high transition on RA4/T0CKI pin
- bit 3 **PSA**: Prescaler Assignment bit  
1 = Prescaler is assigned to the WDT  
0 = Prescaler is assigned to the Timer0 module
- bit 2-0 **PS<2:0>**: Prescaler Rate Select bits

| Bit Value | Timer0 Rate | WDT Rate |
|-----------|-------------|----------|
| 000       | 1 : 2       | 1 : 1    |
| 001       | 1 : 4       | 1 : 2    |
| 010       | 1 : 8       | 1 : 4    |
| 011       | 1 : 16      | 1 : 8    |
| 100       | 1 : 32      | 1 : 16   |
| 101       | 1 : 64      | 1 : 32   |
| 110       | 1 : 128     | 1 : 64   |
| 111       | 1 : 256     | 1 : 128  |

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 2.2.2.3 INTCON Register

The INTCON register is a readable and writable register, which contains the various enable and flag bits for TMR0 register overflow, PORTB change and external RB0/INT/SEG0 pin interrupts.

**Note:** Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit, GIE of the INTCON register. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

### REGISTER 2-3: INTCON: INTERRUPT CONTROL REGISTER

| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0               | R/W-0               | R/W-0 | R/W-x |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------------------|---------------------|-------|-------|
| GIE   | PEIE  | TOIE  | INTE  | RBIE <sup>(1)</sup> | T0IF <sup>(2)</sup> | INTF  | RBIF  |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |                     |                     |       | bit 0 |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7      **GIE:** Global Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Enables all unmasked interrupts  
0 = Disables all interrupts
- bit 6      **PEIE:** Peripheral Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Enables all unmasked peripheral interrupts  
0 = Disables all peripheral interrupts
- bit 5      **TOIE:** Timer0 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Enables the Timer0 interrupt  
0 = Disables the Timer0 interrupt
- bit 4      **INTE:** RB0/INT External Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Enables the RB0/INT external interrupt  
0 = Disables the RB0/INT external interrupt
- bit 3      **RBIE:** PORTB Change Interrupt Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Enables the PORTB change interrupt  
0 = Disables the PORTB change interrupt
- bit 2      **T0IF:** Timer0 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
1 = TMR0 register has overflowed (must be cleared in software)  
0 = TMR0 register did not overflow
- bit 1      **INTF:** RB0/INT External Interrupt Flag bit  
1 = The RB0/INT external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)  
0 = The RB0/INT external interrupt did not occur
- bit 0      **RBIF:** PORTB Change Interrupt Flag bit  
1 = When at least one of the PORTB general purpose I/O pins changed state (must be cleared in software)  
0 = None of the PORTB general purpose I/O pins have changed state

**Note 1:** The appropriate bits in the IOCB register must also be set.

**2:** T0IF bit is set when Timer0 rolls over. Timer0 is unchanged on Reset and should be initialized before clearing T0IF bit.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 2.2.2.4 PIE1 Register

The PIE1 register contains the interrupt enable bits, as shown in Register 2-4.

**Note:** Bit PEIE of the INTCON register must be set to enable any peripheral interrupt.

### REGISTER 2-4: PIE1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 1

| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| EEIE  | ADIE  | RCIE  | TXIE  | SSPIE | CCP1IE | TMR2IE | TMR1IE |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |        |        | bit 0  |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

|       |                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bit 7 | <b>EEIE:</b> EE Write Complete Interrupt Enable bit<br>1 = Enables the EE write complete interrupt<br>0 = Disables the EE write complete interrupt       |
| bit 6 | <b>ADIE:</b> A/D Converter (ADC) Interrupt Enable bit<br>1 = Enables the ADC interrupt<br>0 = Disables the ADC interrupt                                 |
| bit 5 | <b>RCIE:</b> USART Receive Interrupt Enable bit<br>1 = Enables the USART receive interrupt<br>0 = Disables the USART receive interrupt                   |
| bit 4 | <b>TXIE:</b> USART Transmit Interrupt Enable bit<br>1 = Enables the USART transmit interrupt<br>0 = Disables the USART transmit interrupt                |
| bit 3 | <b>SSPIE:</b> Synchronous Serial Port (SSP) Interrupt Enable bit<br>1 = Enables the SSP interrupt<br>0 = Disables the SSP interrupt                      |
| bit 2 | <b>CCP1IE:</b> CCP1 Interrupt Enable bit<br>1 = Enables the CCP1 interrupt<br>0 = Disables the CCP1 interrupt                                            |
| bit 1 | <b>TMR2IE:</b> TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Enable bit<br>1 = Enables the Timer2 to PR2 match interrupt<br>0 = Disables the Timer2 to PR2 match interrupt |
| bit 0 | <b>TMR1IE:</b> Timer1 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit<br>1 = Enables the Timer1 overflow interrupt<br>0 = Disables the Timer1 overflow interrupt           |

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 2.2.2.5 PIE2 Register

The PIE2 register contains the interrupt enable bits, as shown in Register 2-5.

**Note:** Bit PEIE of the INTCON register must be set to enable any peripheral interrupt.

### REGISTER 2-5: PIE2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 2

| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0                 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|-------|-----|-----------------------|
| OSFIE | C2IE  | C1IE  | LCDIE | —   | LVDIE | —   | CCP2IE <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |     |       |     | bit 0                 |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7      **OSFIE:** Oscillator Fail Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Enables oscillator fail interrupt  
0 = Disables oscillator fail interrupt
- bit 6      **C2IE:** Comparator C2 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Enables Comparator C2 interrupt  
0 = Disables Comparator C2 interrupt
- bit 5      **C1IE:** Comparator C1 Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Enables Comparator C1 interrupt  
0 = Disables Comparator C1 interrupt
- bit 4      **LCDIE:** LCD Module Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Enables LCD interrupt  
0 = Disables LCD interrupt
- bit 3      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 2      **LVDIE:** Low Voltage Detect Interrupt Enable bit  
1 = Enables LVD Interrupt  
0 = Disables LVD Interrupt
- bit 1      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 0      **CCP2IE:** CCP2 Interrupt Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Enables the CCP2 interrupt  
0 = Disables the CCP2 interrupt

**Note 1:** PIC16F914/PIC16F917/PIC16F946 only.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 2.2.2.6 PIR1 Register

The PIR1 register contains the interrupt flag bits, as shown in Register 2-6.

**Note:** Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit, GIE of the INTCON register. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

### REGISTER 2-6: PIR1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST REGISTER 1

|       |       |      |      |       |        |        |        |
|-------|-------|------|------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R-0  | R-0  | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| EEIF  | ADIF  | RCIF | TXIF | SSPIF | CCP1IF | TMR2IF | TMR1IF |
| bit 7 |       |      |      |       |        |        | bit 0  |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7      **EEIF:** EE Write Operation Interrupt Flag bit  
             1 = The write operation completed (must be cleared in software)  
             0 = The write operation has not completed or has not started
- bit 6      **ADIF:** A/D Converter Interrupt Flag bit  
             1 = A/D conversion complete (must be cleared in software)  
             0 = A/D conversion has not completed or has not been started
- bit 5      **RCIF:** USART Receive Interrupt Flag bit  
             1 = The USART receive buffer is full (cleared by reading RCREG)  
             0 = The USART receive buffer is not full
- bit 4      **TXIF:** USART Transmit Interrupt Flag bit  
             1 = The USART transmit buffer is empty (cleared by writing to TXREG)  
             0 = The USART transmit buffer is full
- bit 3      **SSPIF:** Synchronous Serial Port (SSP) Interrupt Flag bit  
             1 = The Transmission/Reception is complete (must be cleared in software)  
             0 = Waiting to Transmit/Receive
- bit 2      **CCP1IF:** CCP1 Interrupt Flag bit  
             Capture mode:  
                 1 = A TMR1 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software)  
                 0 = No TMR1 register capture occurred  
             Compare mode:  
                 1 = A TMR1 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software)  
                 0 = No TMR1 register compare match occurred  
             PWM mode  
             Unused in this mode
- bit 1      **TMR2IF:** Timer2 to PR2 Interrupt Flag bit  
             1 = A Timer2 to PR2 match occurred (must be cleared in software)  
             0 = No Timer2 to PR2 match occurred
- bit 0      **TMR1IF:** Timer1 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit  
             1 = The TMR1 register overflowed (must be cleared in software)  
             0 = The TMR1 register did not overflow

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 2.2.2.7 PIR2 Register

The PIR2 register contains the interrupt flag bits, as shown in Register 2-7.

**Note:** Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit, GIE of the INTCON register. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

**REGISTER 2-7: PIR2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST REGISTER 2**

|       |       |       |       |     |       |     |                       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|-------|-----|-----------------------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0                 |
| OSFIF | C2IF  | C1IF  | LCDIF | —   | LVDIF | —   | CCP2IF <sup>(1)</sup> |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |     |       |     | bit 0                 |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7 **OSFIF:** Oscillator Fail Interrupt Flag bit  
1 = System oscillator failed, clock input has changed to INTOSC (must be cleared in software)  
0 = System clock operating
- bit 6 **C2IF:** Comparator C2 Interrupt Flag bit  
1 = Comparator output (C2OUT bit) has changed (must be cleared in software)  
0 = Comparator output (C2OUT bit) has not changed
- bit 5 **C1IF:** Comparator C1 Interrupt Flag bit  
1 = Comparator output (C1OUT bit) has changed (must be cleared in software)  
0 = Comparator output (C1OUT bit) has not changed
- bit 4 **LCDIF:** LCD Module Interrupt bit  
1 = LCD has generated an interrupt  
0 = LCD has not generated an interrupt
- bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 2 **LVDIF:** Low Voltage Detect Interrupt Flag bit  
1 = LVD has generated an interrupt  
0 = LVD has not generated an interrupt
- bit 1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 0 **CCP2IF:** CCP2 Interrupt Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
Capture Mode:  
1 = A TMR1 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software)  
0 = No TMR1 register capture occurred  
Compare Mode:  
1 = A TMR1 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software)  
0 = No TMR1 register compare match occurred  
PWM mode:  
Unused in this mode

**Note 1:** PIC16F914/PIC16F917/PIC16F946 only.



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 2.2.2.8 PCON Register

The Power Control (PCON) register contains flag bits (see Table 16-2) to differentiate between a:

- Power-on Reset ( $\overline{\text{POR}}$ )
- Brown-out Reset ( $\overline{\text{BOR}}$ )
- Watchdog Timer Reset (WDT)
- External MCLR Reset

The PCON register also controls the software enable of the BOR.

The PCON register bits are shown in Register 2-8.

### REGISTER 2-8: PCON: POWER CONTROL REGISTER

| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1  | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0                   | R/W-x                   |
|-------|-----|-----|--------|-----|-----|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| —     | —   | —   | SBOREN | —   | —   | $\overline{\text{POR}}$ | $\overline{\text{BOR}}$ |
| bit 7 |     |     |        |     |     |                         | bit 0                   |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **SBOREN:** Software BOR Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = BOR enabled

0 = BOR disabled

bit 3-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1 **POR:** Power-on Reset Status bit

1 = No Power-on Reset occurred

0 = A Power-on Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Power-on Reset occurs)

bit 0 **BOR:** Brown-out Reset Status bit

1 = No Brown-out Reset occurred

0 = A Brown-out Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Power-on Reset or Brown-out Reset occurs)

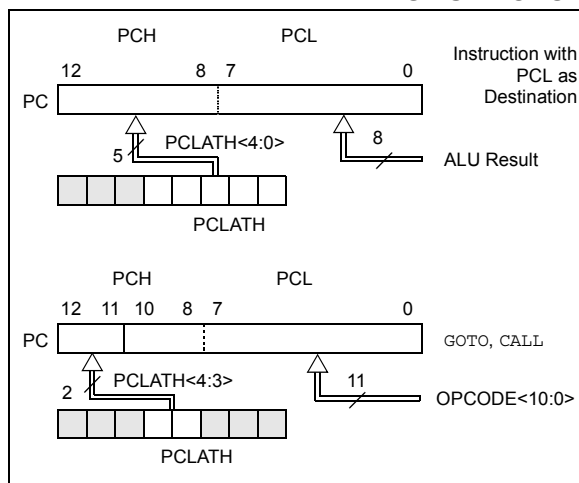
**Note 1:** Set BOREN<1:0> = 01 in the Configuration Word register for this bit to control the  $\overline{\text{BOR}}$ .

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 2.3 PCL and PCLATH

The Program Counter (PC) is 13 bits wide. The low byte comes from the PCL register, which is a readable and writable register. The high byte (PC<12:8>) is not directly readable or writable and comes from PCLATH. On any Reset, the PC is cleared. Figure 2-6 shows the two situations for the loading of the PC. The upper example in Figure 2-6 shows how the PC is loaded on a write to PCL (PCLATH<4:0> → PCH). The lower example in Figure 2-6 shows how the PC is loaded during a CALL or GOTO instruction (PCLATH<4:3> → PCH).

**FIGURE 2-6: LOADING OF PC IN DIFFERENT SITUATIONS**



### 2.3.1 COMPUTED GOTO

A computed GOTO is accomplished by adding an offset to the program counter (ADDWF PCL). When performing a table read using a computed GOTO method, care should be exercised if the table location crosses a PCL memory boundary (each 256-byte block). Refer to the Application Note AN556, "Implementing a Table Read" (DS00556).

### 2.3.2 STACK

The PIC16F91X/946 family has an 8-level x 13-bit wide hardware stack (see Figures 2-1 and 2-2). The stack space is not part of either program or data space and the Stack Pointer is not readable or writable. The PC is PUSHed onto the stack when a CALL instruction is executed or an interrupt causes a branch. The stack is POPed in the event of a RETURN, RETLW or RETFIE instruction execution. PCLATH is not affected by a PUSH or POP operation.

The stack operates as a circular buffer. This means that after the stack has been PUSHed eight times, the ninth PUSH overwrites the value that was stored from the first PUSH. The tenth PUSH overwrites the second PUSH (and so on).

**Note 1:** There are no Status bits to indicate stack overflow or stack underflow conditions.

**2:** There are no instructions/mnemonics called PUSH or POP. These are actions that occur from the execution of the CALL, RETURN, RETLW and RETFIE instructions or the vectoring to an interrupt address.

## 2.4 Program Memory Paging

All PIC16F91X/946 devices are capable of addressing a continuous 8K word block of program memory. The CALL and GOTO instructions provide only 11 bits of address to allow branching within any 2K program memory page. When doing a CALL or GOTO instruction, the upper 2 bits of the address are provided by PCLATH<4:3>. When doing a CALL or GOTO instruction, the user must ensure that the page select bits are programmed so that the desired program memory page is addressed. If a return from a CALL instruction (or interrupt) is executed, the entire 13-bit PC is POPed off the stack. Therefore, manipulation of the PCLATH<4:3> bits is not required for the RETURN instructions (which POPs the address from the stack).

**Note:** The contents of the PCLATH register are unchanged after a RETURN or RETFIE instruction is executed. The user must rewrite the contents of the PCLATH register for any subsequent subroutine calls or GOTO instructions.

Example 2-1 shows the calling of a subroutine in page 1 of the program memory. This example assumes that PCLATH is saved and restored by the Interrupt Service Routine (if interrupts are used).

### EXAMPLE 2-1: CALL OF A SUBROUTINE IN PAGE 1 FROM PAGE 0

```

ORG 500h
BCF PCLATH,4
BSF PCLATH,3 ;Select page 1
               ; (800h-FFFh)
CALL SUB1_P1  ;Call subroutine in
:             ;page 1 (800h-FFFh)
:
ORG 900h      ;page 1 (800h-FFFh)
SUB1_P1
:             ;called subroutine
               ;page 1 (800h-FFFh)
:
RETURN        ;return to
               ;Call subroutine
               ;in page 0
               ; (000h-7FFh)
    
```

## 2.5 Indirect Addressing, INDF and FSR Registers

The INDF register is not a physical register. Addressing the INDF register will cause indirect addressing.

Indirect addressing is possible by using the INDF register. Any instruction using the INDF register actually accesses data pointed to by the File Select Register (FSR). Reading INDF itself indirectly will produce 00h. Writing to the INDF register indirectly results in a no operation (although Status bits may be affected). An effective 9-bit address is obtained by concatenating the 8-bit FSR register and the IRP bit of the STATUS register, as shown in Figure 2-7.

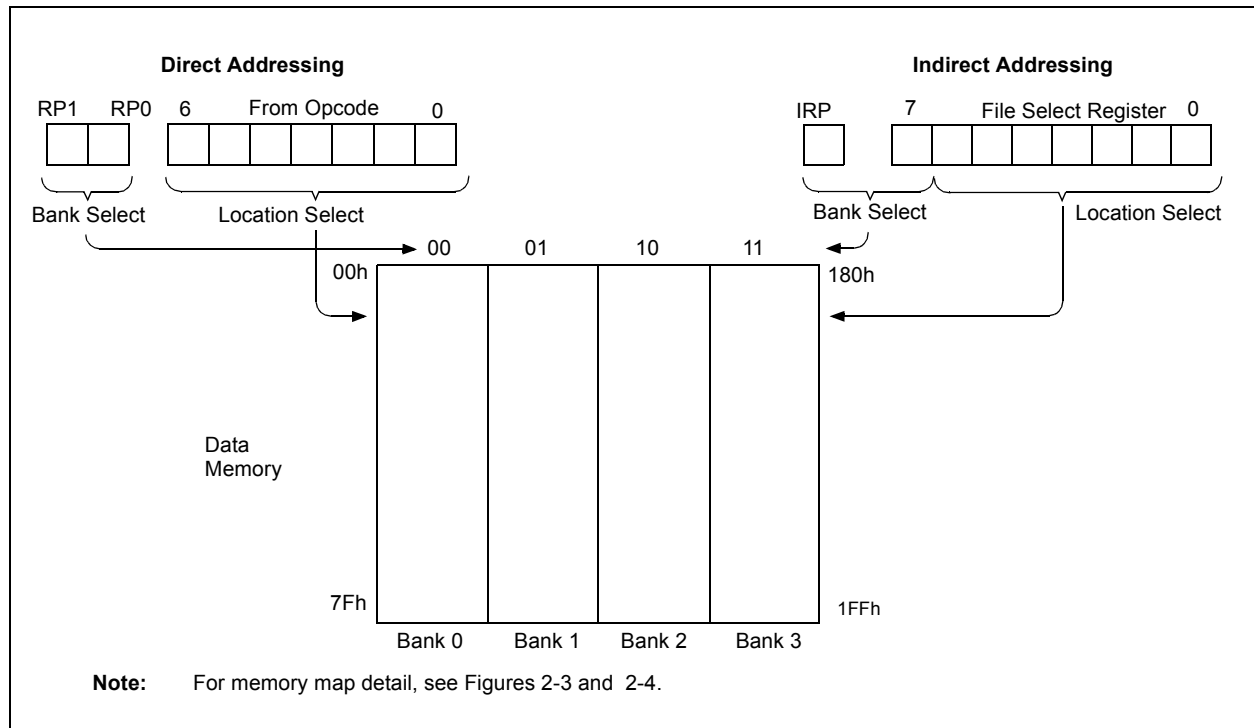
A simple program to clear RAM location 020h-02Fh using indirect addressing is shown in Example 2-2.

### EXAMPLE 2-2: INDIRECT ADDRESSING

```

MOVLW    020h    ;initialize pointer
MOVWF    FSR     ;to RAM
BANKISEL  020h
NEXT CLRF    INDF ;clear INDF register
INCF     FSR     ;inc pointer
BTFSF    FSR,4   ;all done?
GOTO     NEXT    ;no clear next
CONTINUE ;yes continue
    
```

**FIGURE 2-7: DIRECT/INDIRECT ADDRESSING PIC16F91X/946**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

NOTES:

## 3.0 I/O PORTS

The PIC16F913/914/916/917/946 family of devices includes several 8-bit PORT registers along with their corresponding TRIS registers and one four bit port:

- PORTA and TRISA
- PORTB and TRISB
- PORTC and TRISC
- PORTD and TRISD<sup>(1)</sup>
- PORTE and TRISE
- PORTF and TRISF<sup>(2)</sup>
- PORTG and TRISG<sup>(2)</sup>

**Note 1:** PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

**2:** PIC16F946 only

PORTA, PORTB, PORTC and RE3/MCLR/VPP are implemented on all devices. PORTD and RE<2:0> (PORTE) are implemented only on the PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946. RE<7:4> (PORTE), PORTF and PORTG are implemented only on the PIC16F946.

### REGISTER 3-1: ANSEL: ANALOG SELECT REGISTER

| R/W-1               | R/W-1               | R/W-1               | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ANS7 <sup>(2)</sup> | ANS6 <sup>(2)</sup> | ANS5 <sup>(2)</sup> | ANS4  | ANS3  | ANS2  | ANS1  | ANS0  |
| bit 7               |                     |                     |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**ANS<7:0>:** Analog Select bits

Analog select between analog or digital function on pins AN<7:0>, respectively.

1 = Analog input. Pin is assigned as analog input<sup>(1)</sup>.

0 = Digital I/O. Pin is assigned to port or special function.

**Note 1:** Setting a pin to an analog input automatically disables the digital input circuitry, weak pull-ups, and interrupt-on-change if available. The corresponding TRIS bit must be set to Input mode in order to allow external control of the voltage on the pin.

**2:** PIC16F914/PIC16F917/PIC16F946 only.

## 3.1 ANSEL Register

The ANSEL register (Register 3-1) is used to configure the Input mode of an I/O pin to analog. Setting the appropriate ANSEL bit high will cause all digital reads on the pin to be read as '0' and allow analog functions on the pin to operate correctly.

The state of the ANSEL bits has no effect on digital output functions. A pin with TRIS clear and ANSEL set will still operate as a digital output, but the Input mode will be analog. This can cause unexpected behavior when executing read-modify-write instructions on the affected port.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.2 PORTA and TRISA Registers

PORTA is a 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISA (Register 3-3). Setting a TRISA bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a High-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISA bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin). Example 3-1 shows how to initialize PORTA.

Five of the pins of PORTA can be configured as analog inputs. These pins, RA5 and RA<3:0>, are configured as analog inputs on device power-up and must be reconfigured by the user to be used as I/O's. This is done by writing the appropriate values to the CMCON0 and ANSEL registers (see Example 3-1).

Reading the PORTA register (Register 3-2) reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the PORT latch. All write operations are read-modify-write operations. Therefore, a write to a port means that the port pins are read, this value is modified and then written to the PORT data latch.

The TRISA register controls the direction of the PORTA pins, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user must ensure the bits in the TRISA register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs. I/O pins configured as analog inputs always read '0'.

**Note 1:** The CMCON0 and ANSEL registers must be initialized to configure an analog channel as a digital input. Pins configured as analog inputs will read '0'.

### EXAMPLE 3-1: INITIALIZING PORTA

```
BANKSEL PORTA ;
CLRF PORTA ;Init PORTA
BANKSEL TRISA ;
MOVLW 07h ;Set RA<2:0> to
MOVWF CMCON0 ;digital I/O
CLRF ANSEL ;Make all PORTA digital I/O
MOVLW 0F0h ;Set RA<7:4> as inputs
MOVWF TRISA ;and set RA<3:0> as outputs
```

### REGISTER 3-2: PORTA: PORTA REGISTER

| R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| RA7   | RA6   | RA5   | RA4   | RA3   | RA2   | RA1   | RA0   |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**RA<7:0>:** PORTA I/O Pin bits

1 = Port pin is >V<sub>IH</sub> min.

0 = Port pin is <V<sub>IL</sub> max.

### REGISTER 3-3: TRISA: PORTA TRI-STATE REGISTER

| R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| TRISA7 | TRISA6 | TRISA5 | TRISA4 | TRISA3 | TRISA2 | TRISA1 | TRISA0 |
| bit 7  |        |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**TRISA<7:0>:** PORTA Tri-State Control bits

1 = PORTA pin configured as an input (tri-stated)

0 = PORTA pin configured as an output

**Note 1:** TRISA<7:6> always reads '1' in XT, HS and LP Oscillator modes.

## 3.2.1 PIN DESCRIPTIONS AND DIAGRAMS

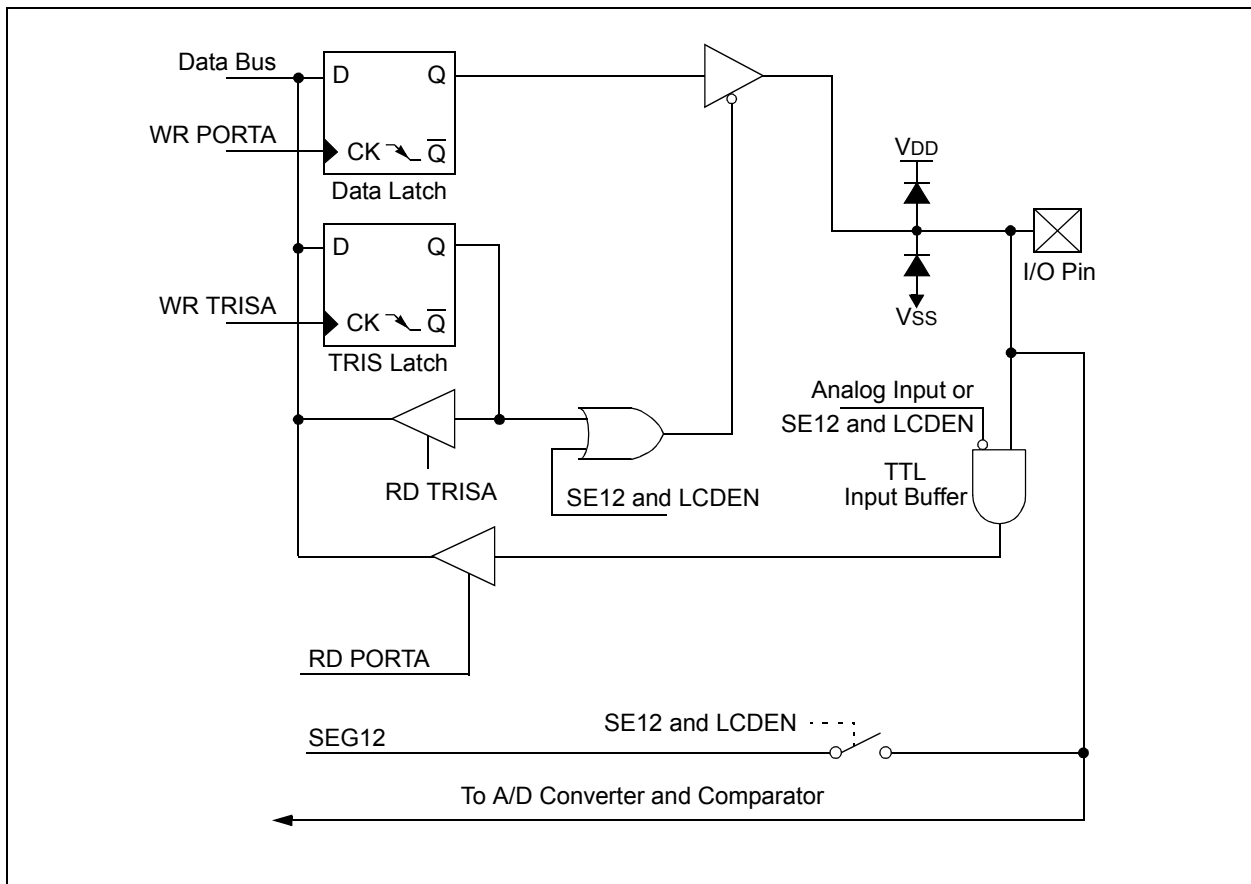
Each PORTA pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins and their combined functions are briefly described here. For specific information about individual functions, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

### 3.2.1.1 RA0/AN0/C1-/SEG12

Figure 3-1 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA0 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC
- an analog input for Comparator C1
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-1: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA0**



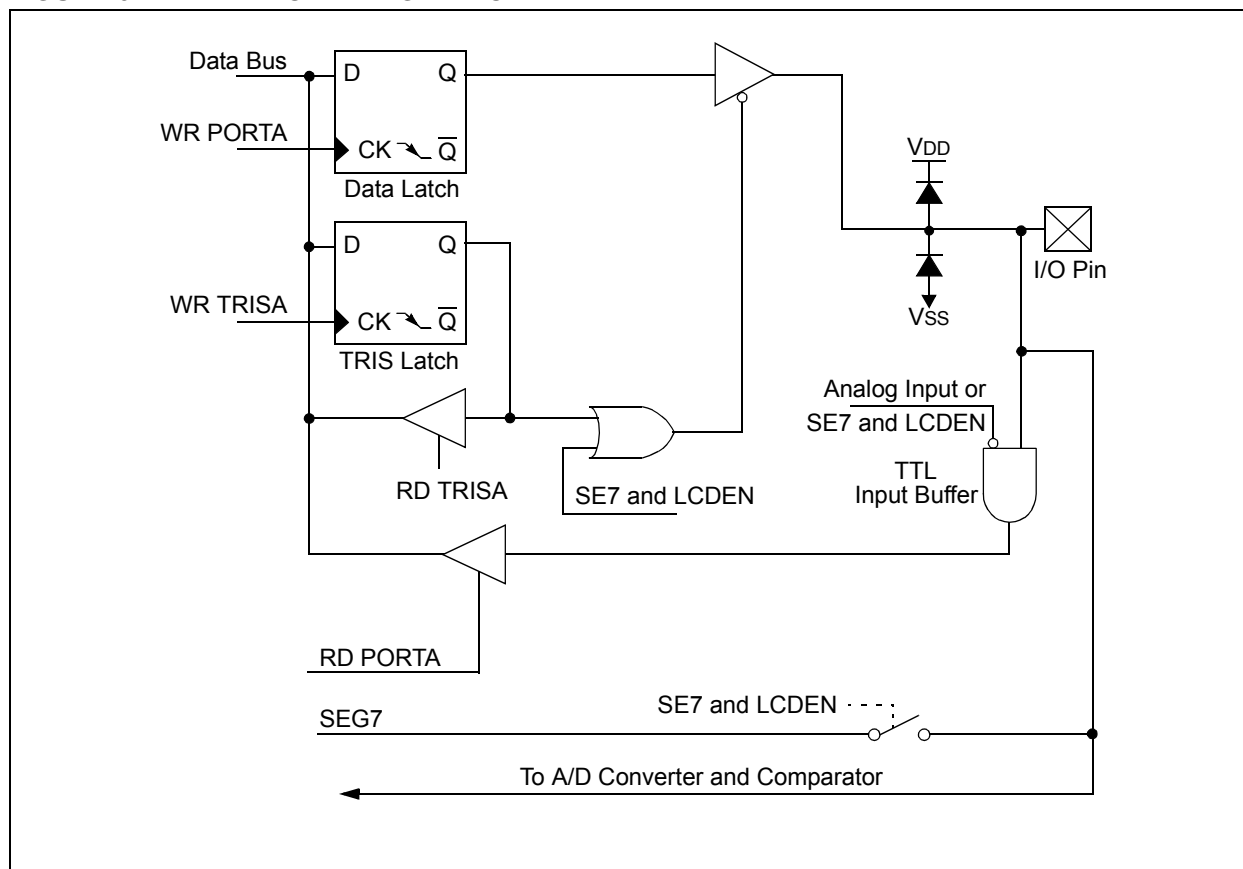
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.2.1.2 RA1/AN1/C2-/SEG7

Figure 3-2 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA1 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC
- an analog input for Comparator C2
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-2: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA1**



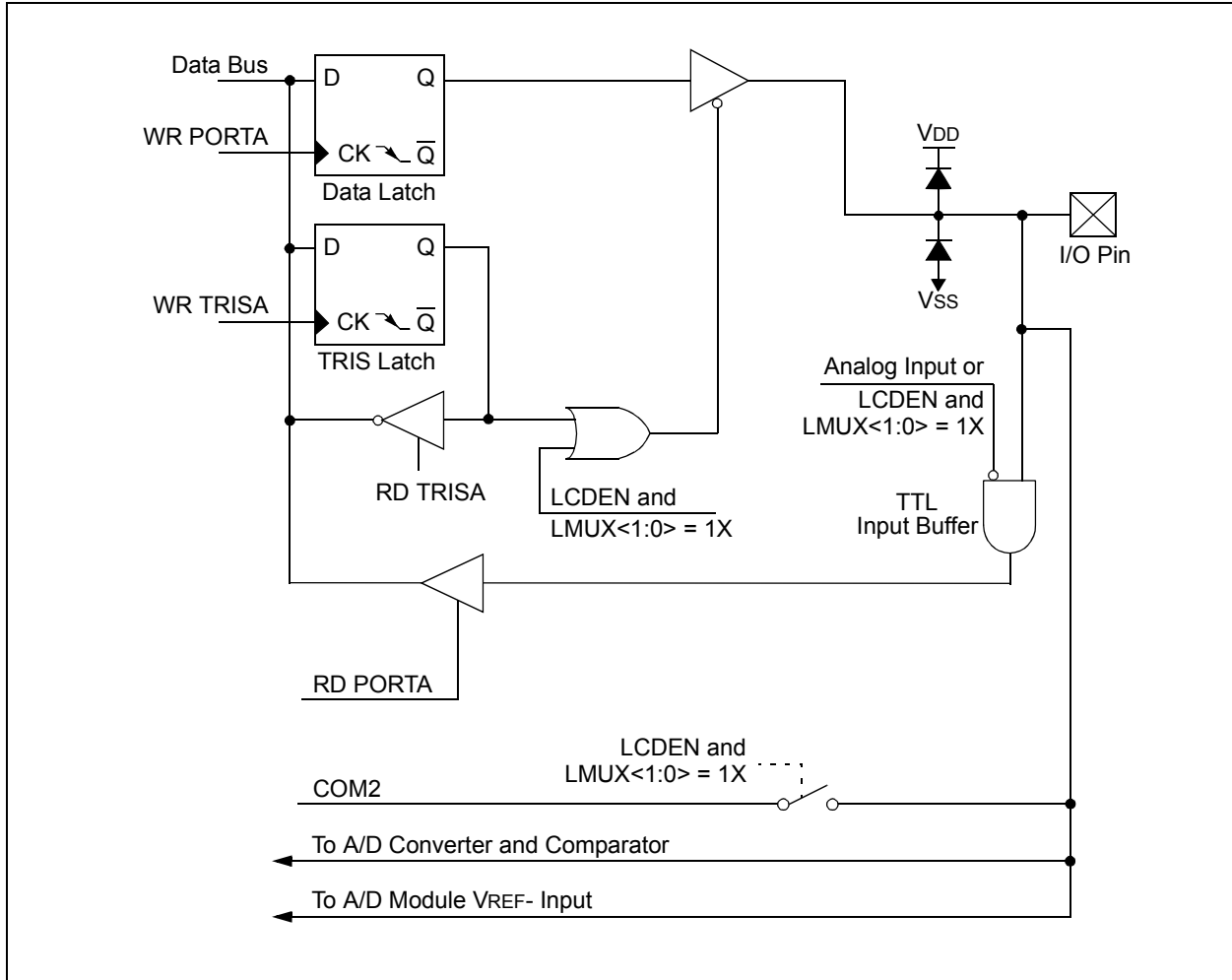


## 3.2.1.3 RA2/AN2/C2+/VREF-/COM2

Figure 3-3 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA2 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC
- an analog input for Comparator C2
- a voltage reference input for the ADC
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-3: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA2**



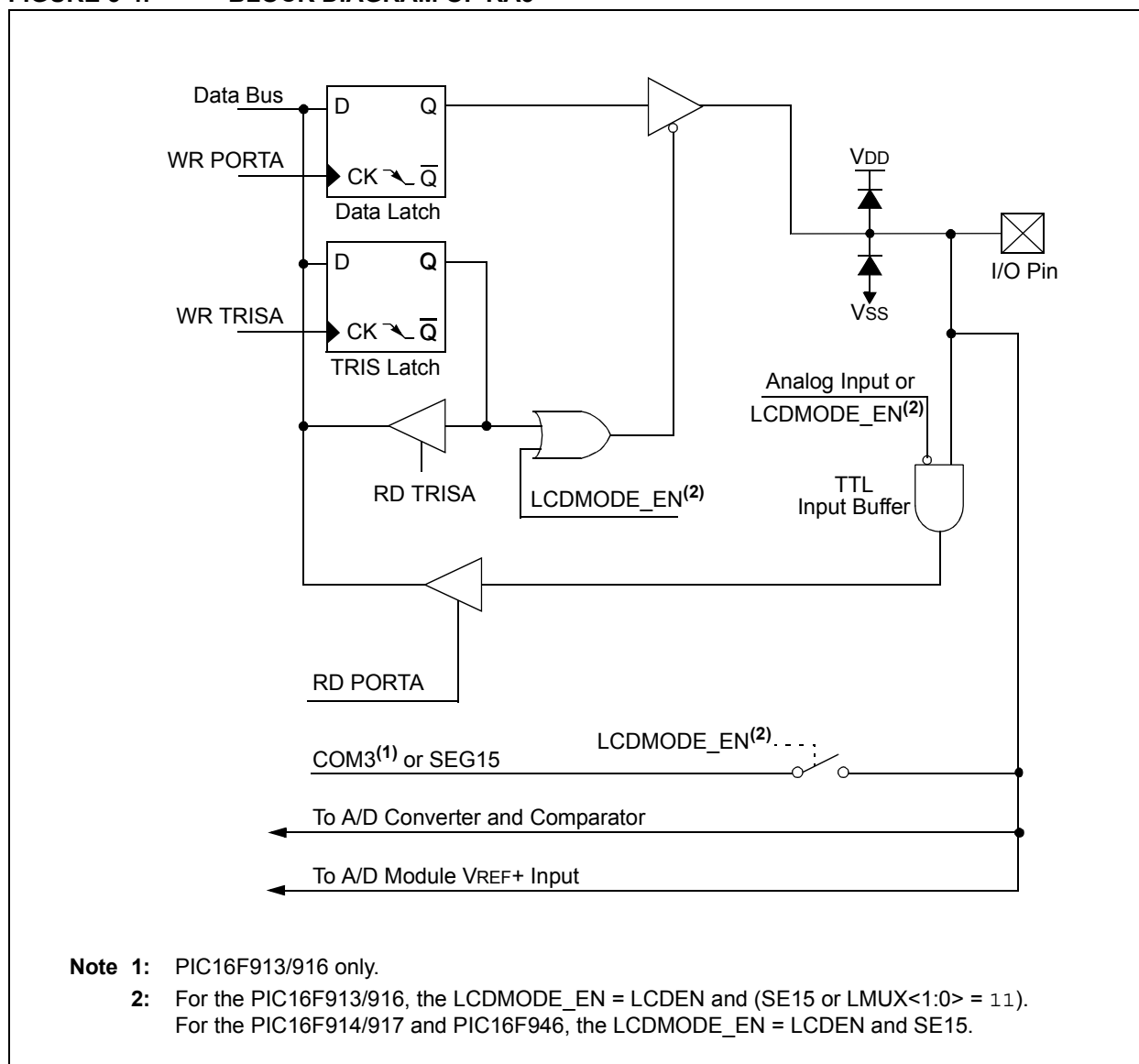
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.2.1.4 RA3/AN3/C1+/VREF+/COM3/SEG15

Figure 3-4 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA3 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose input
- an analog input for the ADC
- an analog input from Comparator C1
- a voltage reference input for the ADC
- analog outputs for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-4: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA3**

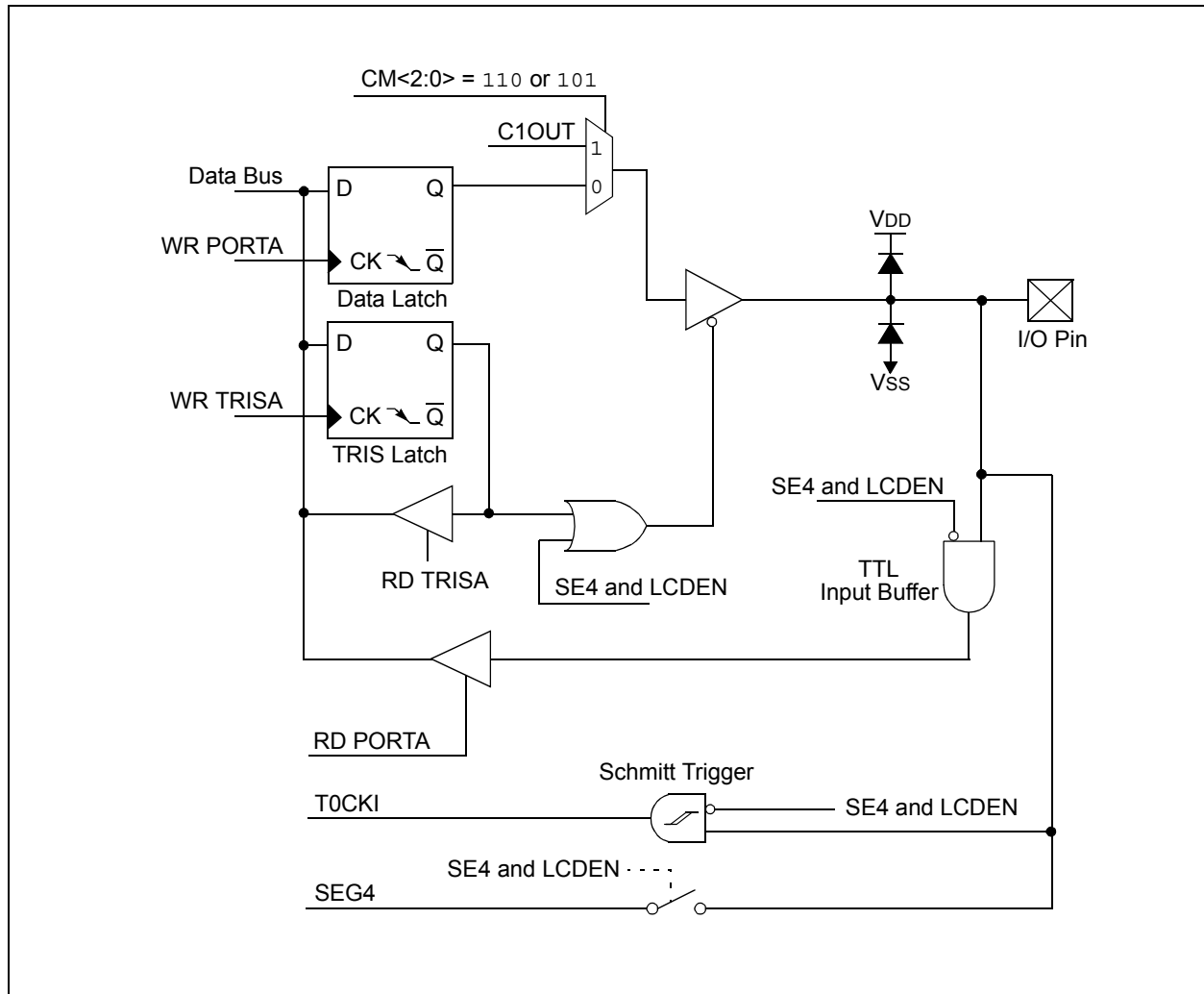


## 3.2.1.5 RA4/C1OUT/T0CKI/SEG4

Figure 3-5 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA4 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- a digital output from Comparator C1
- a clock input for Timer0
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-5: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA4**



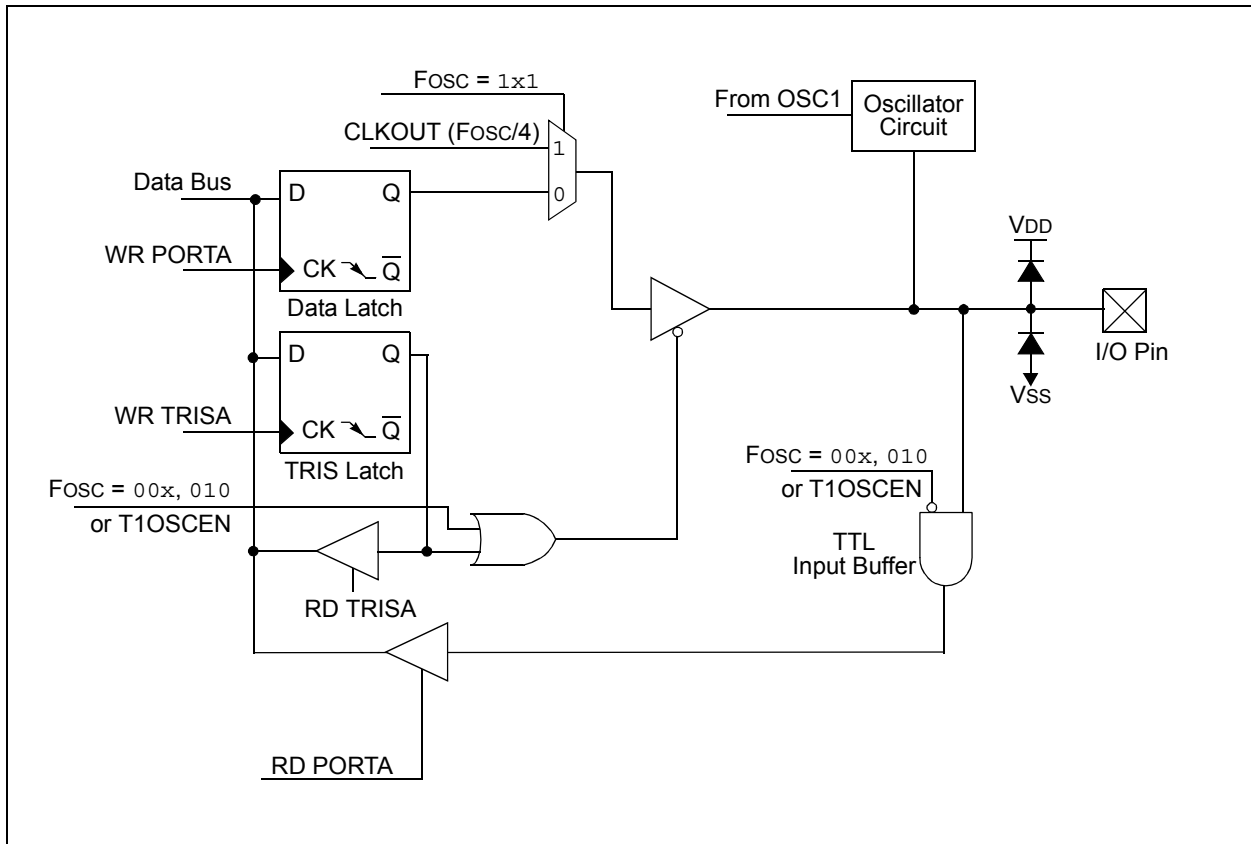


## 3.2.1.7 RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT/T1OSO

Figure 3-7 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA6 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- a crystal/resonator connection
- a clock output
- a Timer1 oscillator connection

**FIGURE 3-7: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA6**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.2.1.8 RA7/OSC1/CLKIN/T1OSI

Figure 3-8 shows the diagram for this pin. The RA7 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- a crystal/resonator connection
- a clock input
- a Timer1 oscillator connection

**FIGURE 3-8: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RA7**

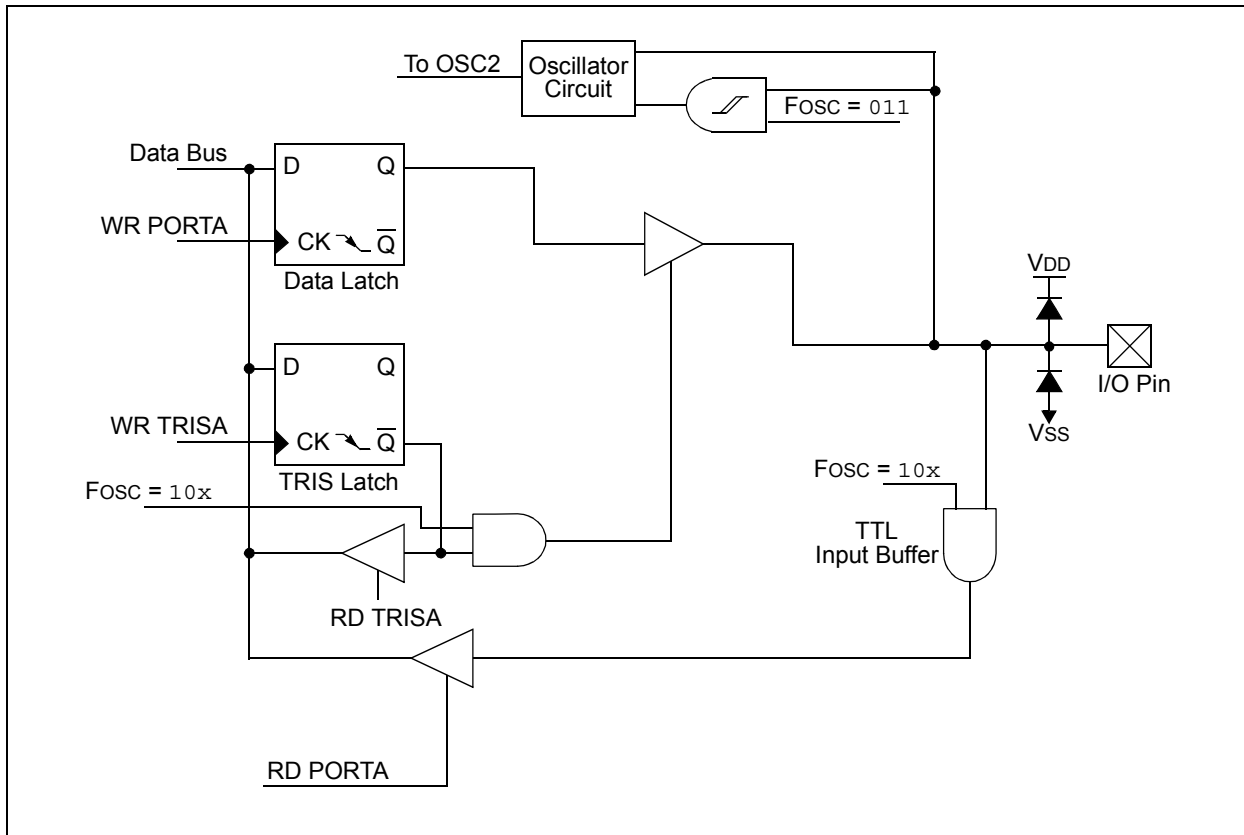


**TABLE 3-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTA**

| Name                  | Bit 7  | Bit 6  | Bit 5   | Bit 4   | Bit 3   | Bit 2  | Bit 1   | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|-----------------------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|--------|---------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| ADCON0                | ADFM   | VCFG1  | VCFG0   | CHS2    | CHS1    | CHS0   | GO/DONE | ADON   | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| ANSEL                 | ANS7   | ANS6   | ANS5    | ANS4    | ANS3    | ANS2   | ANS1    | ANS0   | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| CMCON0                | C2OUT  | C1OUT  | C2INV   | C1INV   | CIS     | CM2    | CM1     | CM0    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| CONFIG <sup>(1)</sup> | CPD    | CP     | MCLRE   | PWRTÉ   | WDTE    | FOSC2  | FOSC1   | FOSC0  | —                 | —                         |
| OPTION_REG            | RBPÜ   | INTEDG | T0CS    | T0SE    | PSA     | PS2    | PS1     | PS0    | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| LCDCON                | LCDEN  | SLPEN  | WERR    | VLCDEN  | CS1     | CS0    | LMUX1   | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE0                | SE7    | SE6    | SE5     | SE4     | SE3     | SE2    | SE1     | SE0    | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDSE1                | SE15   | SE14   | SE13    | SE12    | SE11    | SE10   | SE9     | SE8    | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| PORTA                 | RA7    | RA6    | RA5     | RA4     | RA3     | RA2    | RA1     | RA0    | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| SSPCON                | WCOL   | SSPOV  | SSPEN   | CKP     | SSPM3   | SSPM2  | SSPM1   | SSPM0  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| T1CON                 | T1GINV | TMR1GE | T1CKPS1 | T1CKPS0 | T1OSCEN | T1SYNÜ | TMR1CS  | TMR1ON | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| TRISA                 | TRISA7 | TRISA6 | TRISA5  | TRISA4  | TRISA3  | TRISA2 | TRISA1  | TRISA0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTA.

**Note 1:** See Configuration Word register (CONFIG) for operation of all register bits.

## 3.3 PORTB and TRISB Registers

PORTB is an 8-bit bidirectional I/O port. All PORTB pins can have a weak pull-up feature, and PORTB<7:4> implements an interrupt-on-input change function.

PORTB is also used for the Serial Flash programming interface and ICD interface.

### EXAMPLE 3-2: INITIALIZING PORTB

```
BANKSEL PORTB      ;
CLRF   PORTB        ;Init PORTB
BANKSEL TRISB       ;
MOVLW   0FFh        ;Set RB<7:0> as inputs
MOVWF   TRISB       ;
```

## 3.4 Additional PORTB Pin Functions

RB<7:6> are used as data and clock signals, respectively, for both serial programming and the in-circuit debugger features on the device. Also, RB0 can be configured as an external interrupt input.

### 3.4.1 WEAK PULL-UPS

Each of the PORTB pins has an individually configurable internal weak pull-up. Control bits WPUB<7:0> enable or disable each pull-up. Refer to Register 3-7. Each weak pull-up is automatically turned off when the port pin is configured as an output. The pull-ups are disabled on a Power-on Reset by the RBPU bit of the OPTION register.

### 3.4.2 INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE

Four of the PORTB pins are individually configurable as an interrupt-on-change pin. Control bits IOCB<7:4> enable or disable the interrupt function for each pin. Refer to Register 3-6. The interrupt-on-change feature is disabled on a Power-on Reset.

For enabled interrupt-on-change pins, the values are compared with the old value latched on the last read of PORTB. The 'mismatch' outputs of the last read are OR'd together to set the PORTB Change Interrupt flag bit (RBIF) in the INTCON register (Register 2-3).

This interrupt can wake the device from Sleep. The user, in the Interrupt Service Routine, clears the interrupt by:

- Any read or write of PORTB. This will end the mismatch condition.
- Clear the flag bit RBIF.

A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit RBIF. Reading or writing PORTB will end the mismatch condition and allow flag bit RBIF to be cleared. The latch holding the last read value is not affected by a MCLR nor Brown-out Reset. After these Resets, the RBIF flag will continue to be set if a mismatch is present.

**Note:** If a change on the I/O pin should occur when the read operation is being executed (start of the Q2 cycle), then the RBIF interrupt flag may not get set. Furthermore, since a read or write on a port affects all bits of that port, care must be taken when using multiple pins in Interrupt-on-change mode. Changes on one pin may not be seen while servicing changes on another pin.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 3-4: PORTB: PORTB REGISTER

| R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| RB7   | RB6   | RB5   | RB4   | RB3   | RB2   | RB1   | RB0   |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**RB<7:0>**: PORTB I/O Pin bits

1 = Port pin is >V<sub>IH</sub> min.

0 = Port pin is <V<sub>IL</sub> max.

## REGISTER 3-5: TRISB: PORTB TRI-STATE REGISTER

| R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| TRISB7 | TRISB6 | TRISB5 | TRISB4 | TRISB3 | TRISB2 | TRISB1 | TRISB0 |
| bit 7  |        |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**TRISB<7:0>**: PORTB Tri-State Control bits

1 = PORTB pin configured as an input (tri-stated)

0 = PORTB pin configured as an output

## REGISTER 3-6: IOCB: PORTB INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE REGISTER

| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0   |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| IOCB7 | IOCB6 | IOCB5 | IOCB4 | —   | —   | —   | —     |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |     |     |     | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-4

**IOCB<7:4>**: Interrupt-on-Change bits

1 = Interrupt-on-change enabled

0 = Interrupt-on-change disabled

bit 3-0

**Unimplemented**: Read as '0'



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 3-7: WPUB: WEAK PULL-UP REGISTER

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| WPUB7 | WPUB6 | WPUB5 | WPUB4 | WPUB3 | WPUB2 | WPUB1 | WPUB0 |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**WPUB<7:0>:** Weak Pull-up Register bits

1 = Pull-up enabled

0 = Pull-up disabled

**Note 1:** Global  $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$  must be enabled for individual pull-ups to be enabled.

**2:** The weak pull-up device is automatically disabled if the pin is in Output mode ( $\text{TRISx}<7:0> = 0$ ).

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.4.3 PIN DESCRIPTIONS AND DIAGRAMS

Each PORTB pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins and their combined functions are briefly described here. For specific information about individual functions such as the LCD or interrupts, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

### 3.4.3.1 RB0/INT/SEG0

Figure 3-9 shows the diagram for this pin. The RB0 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an external edge triggered interrupt
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.4.3.2 RB1/SEG1

Figure 3-9 shows the diagram for this pin. The RB1 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.4.3.3 RB2/SEG2

Figure 3-9 shows the diagram for this pin. The RB2 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

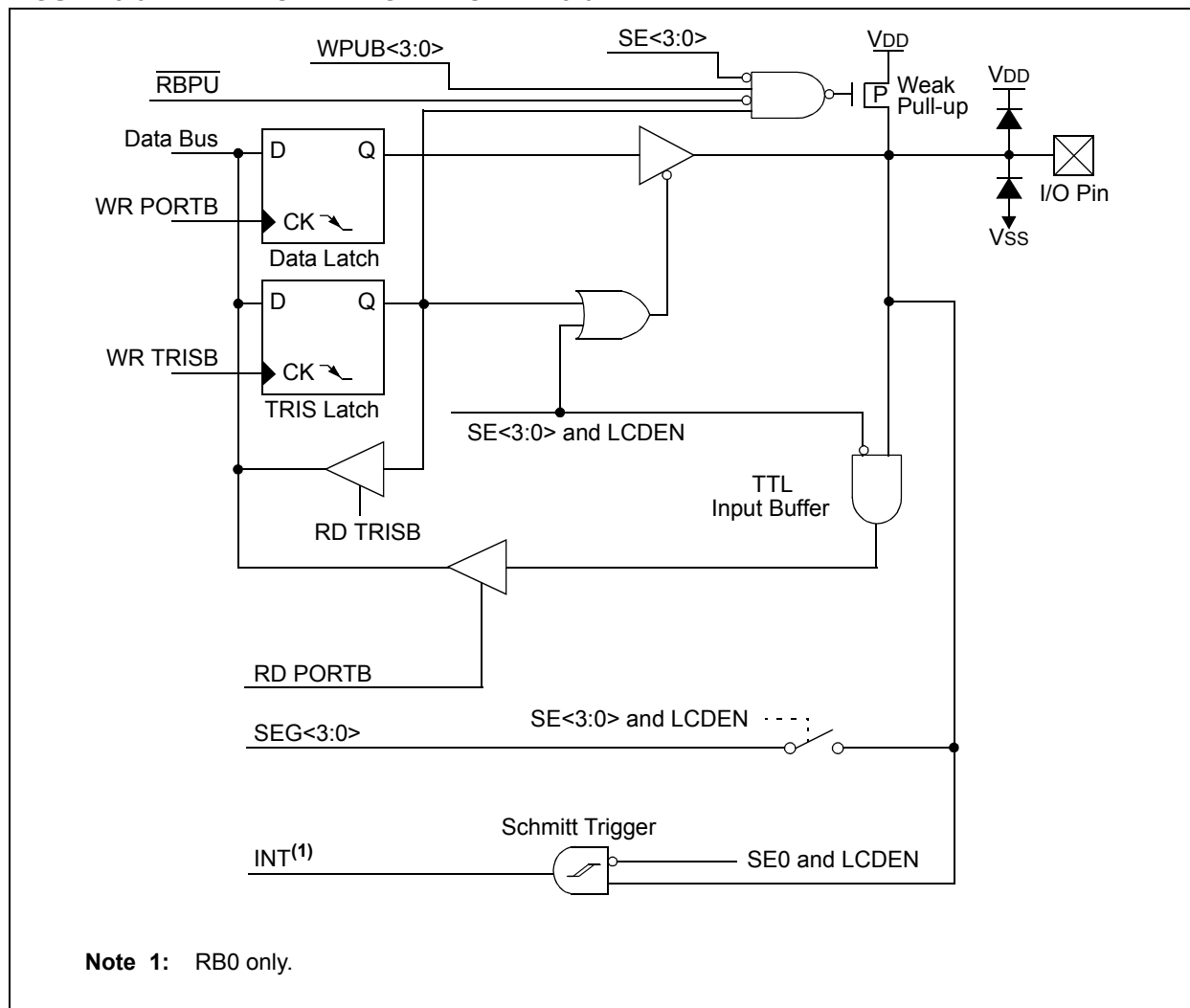
- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.4.3.4 RB3/SEG3

Figure 3-9 shows the diagram for this pin. The RB3 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-9: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB<3:0>**

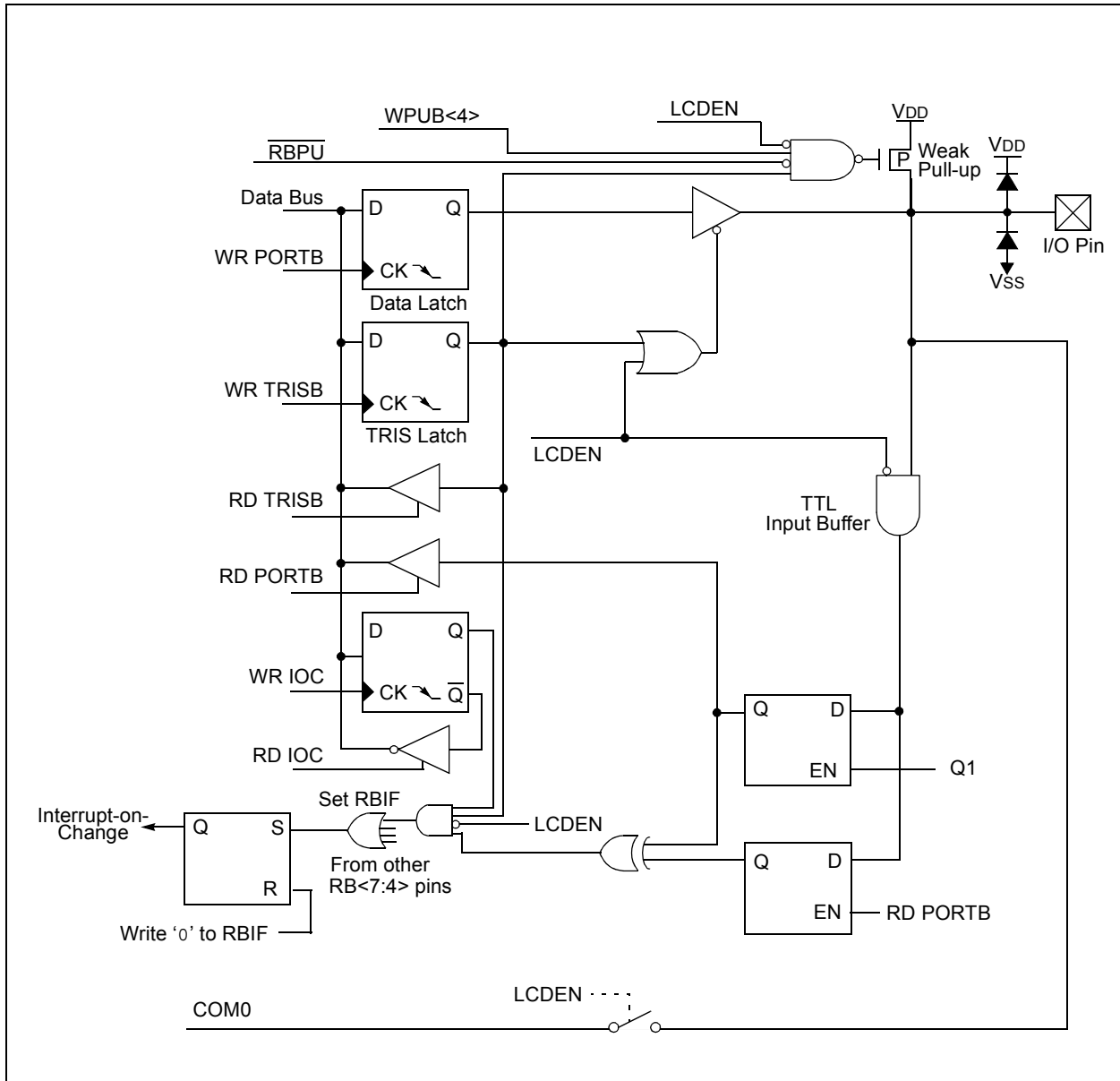


## 3.4.3.5 RB4/COM0

Figure 3-10 shows the diagram for this pin. The RB4 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-10: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB4**



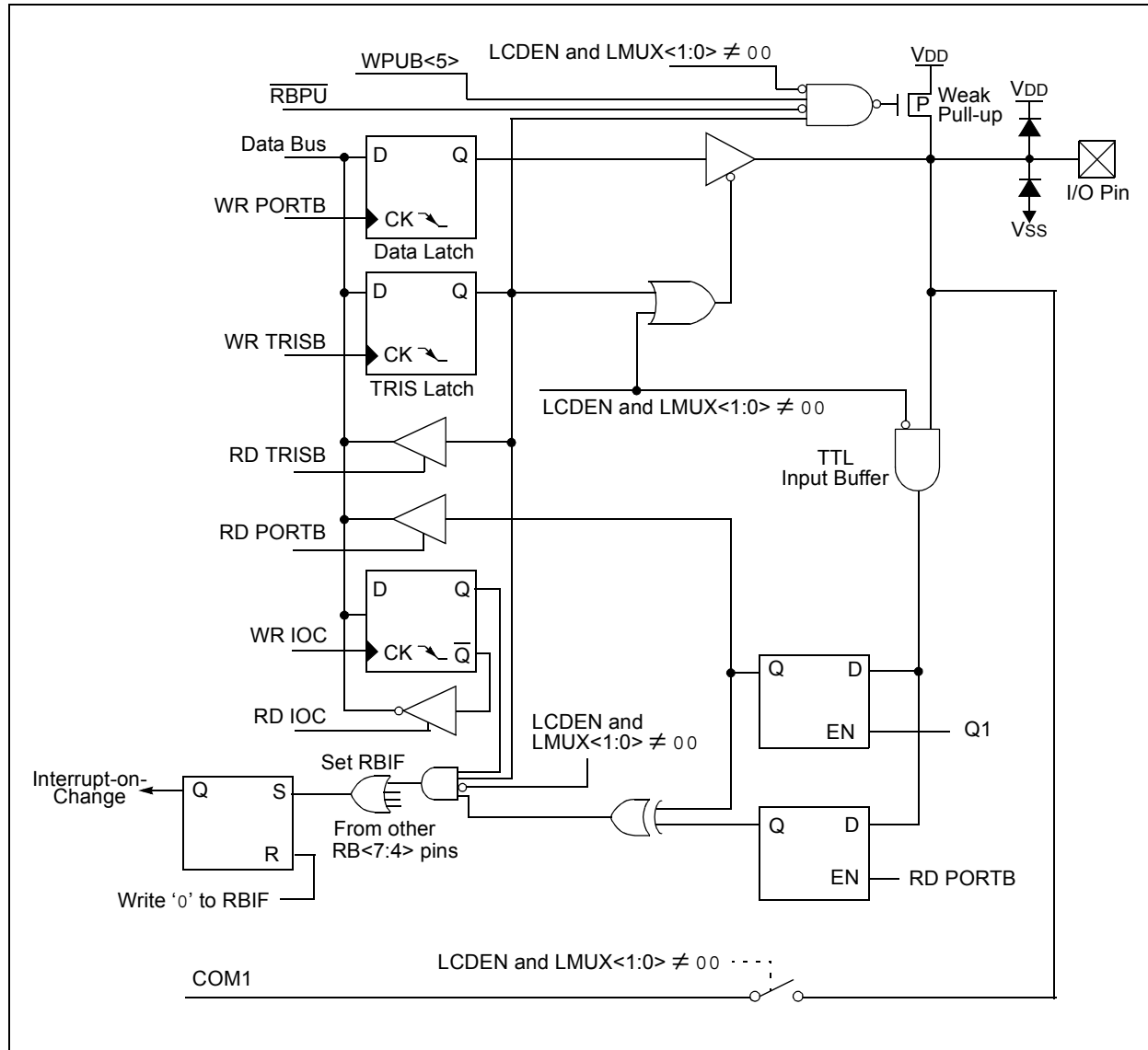
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.4.3.6 RB5/COM1

Figure 3-11 shows the diagram for this pin. The RB5 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-11: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB5**

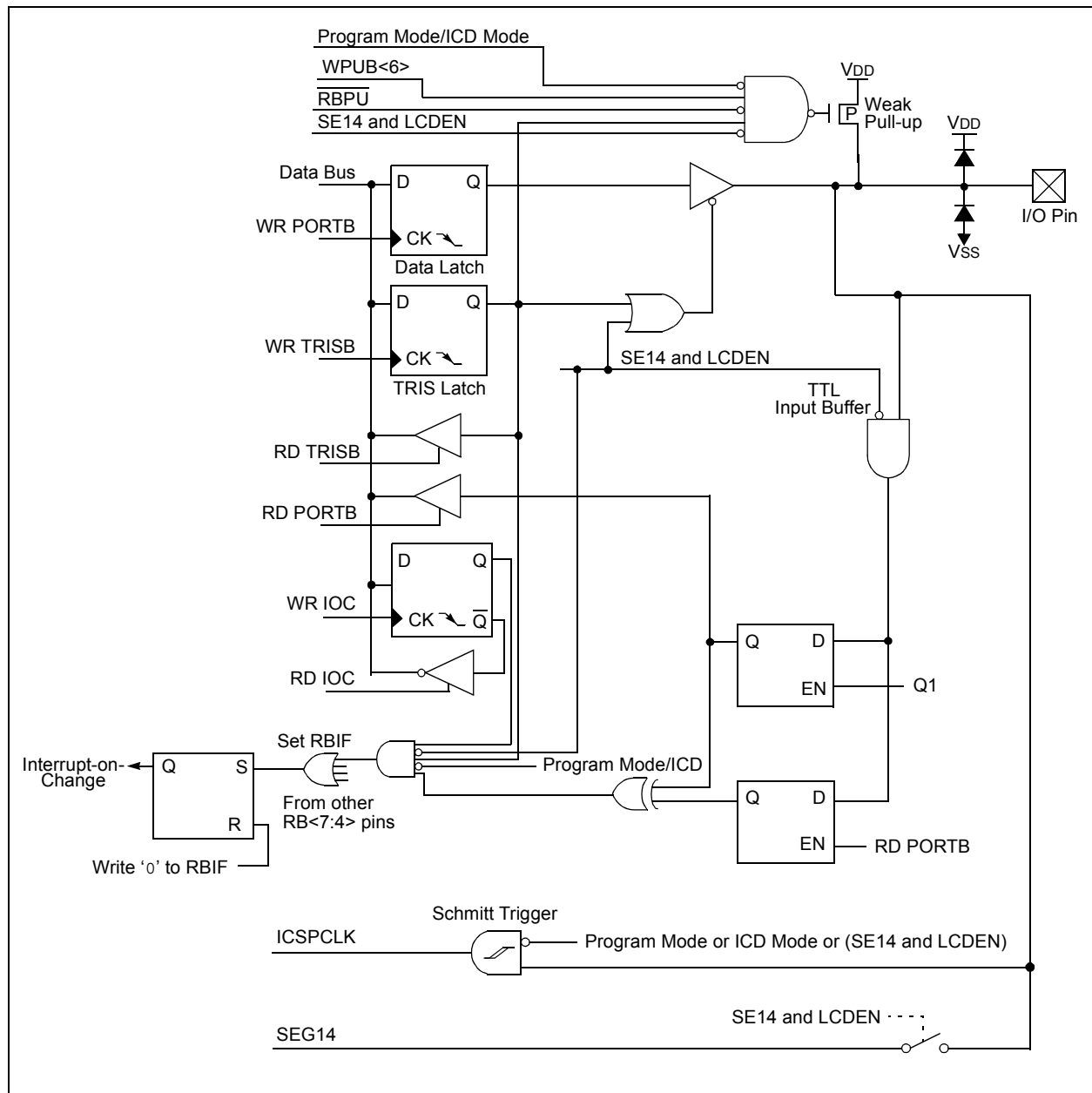


## 3.4.3.7 RB6/ICSPCLK/ICDCK/SEG14

Figure 3-12 shows the diagram for this pin. The RB6 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an In-Circuit Serial Programming™ clock
- an ICD clock input
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-12: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB6**



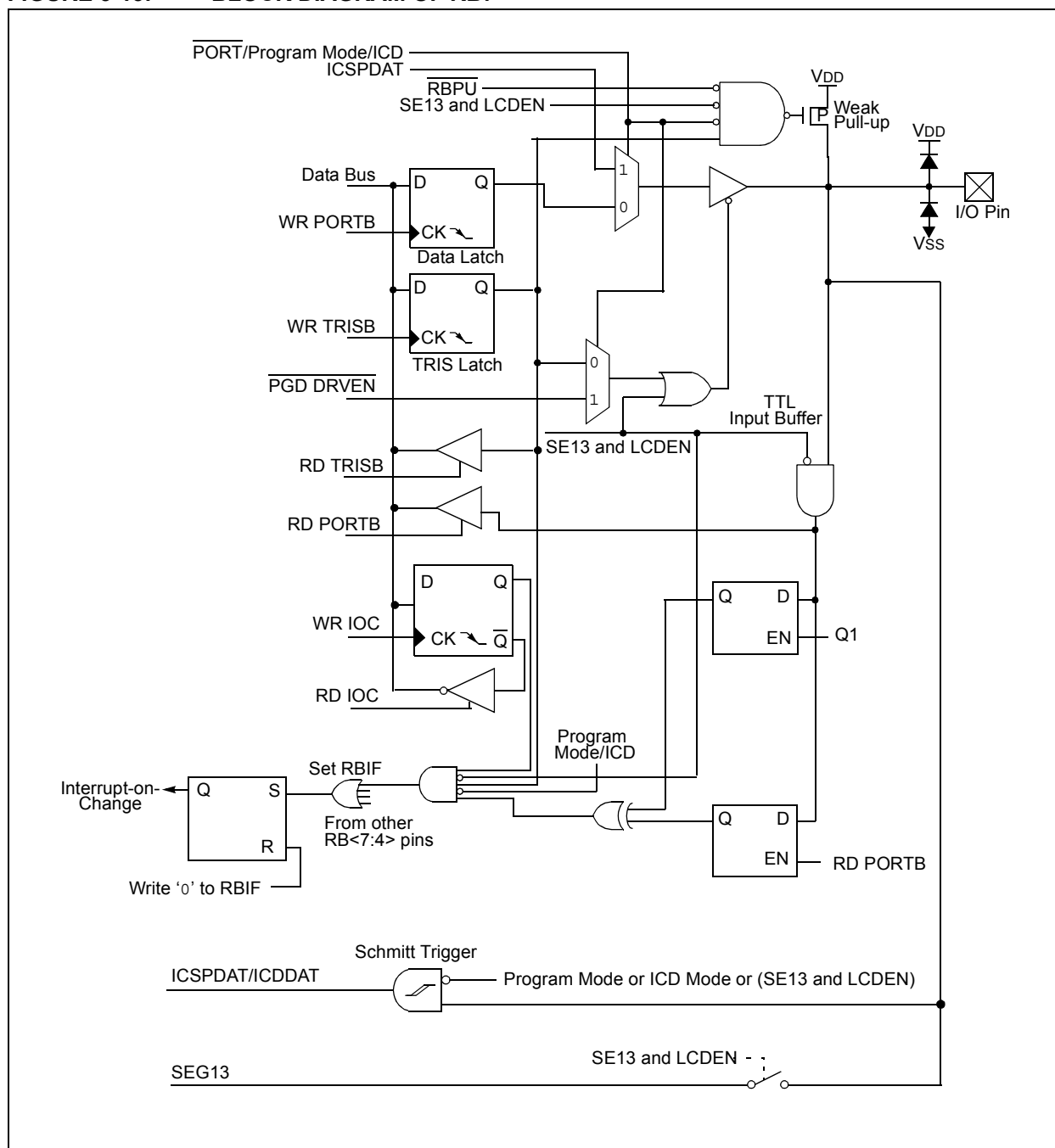
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.4.3.8 RB7/ICSPDAT/ICDDAT/SEG13

Figure 3-13 shows the diagram for this pin. The RB7 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an In-Circuit Serial Programming™ I/O
- an ICD data I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-13: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RB7**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 3-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTB**

| Name       | Bit 7              | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|------------|--------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON     | GIE                | PEIE   | T0IE   | INTE   | RBIE   | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| IOCB       | IOCB7              | IOCB6  | IOCB5  | IOCB4  | —      | —      | —      | —      | 0000 ----         | 0000 ----                 |
| LCDCON     | LCDEN              | SLPEN  | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE0     | SE7                | SE6    | SE5    | SE4    | SE3    | SE2    | SE1    | SE0    | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDSE1     | SE15               | SE14   | SE13   | SE12   | SE11   | SE10   | SE9    | SE8    | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| OPTION_REG | RBP $\overline{U}$ | INTEDG | T0CS   | T0SE   | PSA    | PS2    | PS1    | PS0    | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| PORTB      | RB7                | RB6    | RB5    | RB4    | RB3    | RB2    | RB1    | RB0    | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| TRISB      | TRISB7             | TRISB6 | TRISB5 | TRISB4 | TRISB3 | TRISB2 | TRISB1 | TRISB0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| WPUB       | WPUB7              | WPUB6  | WPUB5  | WPUB4  | WPUB3  | WPUB2  | WPUB1  | WPUB0  | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTB.

**Note 1:** This register is only initialized by a POR or BOR reset and is unchanged by other Resets.

**2:** Configuration Word register bit  $\overline{DEBUG}$  <12> is also associated with PORTB. See Register 16-1 for more details.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.5 PORTC and TRISC Registers

PORTC is an 8-bit bidirectional port. PORTC is multiplexed with several peripheral functions. PORTC pins have Schmitt Trigger input buffers.

All PORTC pins have latch bits (PORTC register). They will modify the contents of the PORTC latch (when written); thus, modifying the value driven out on a pin if the corresponding TRISC bit is configured for output.

### EXAMPLE 3-3: INITIALIZING PORTC

```
BANKSEL PORTC      ;
CLRF   PORTC        ;Init PORTC
BANKSEL TRISC       ;
MOVLW   0FFh        ;Set RC<7:0> as inputs
MOVWF   TRISC        ;
BANKSEL LDCON       ;
CLRF    LDCON        ;Disable VLCD<3:1>
                        ;inputs on RC<2:0>
```

### REGISTER 3-8: PORTC: PORTC REGISTER

| R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| RC7   | RC6   | RC5   | RC4   | RC3   | RC2   | RC1   | RC0   |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0 **RC<7:0>**: PORTC I/O Pin bits

1 = Port pin is >V<sub>IH</sub> min.

0 = Port pin is <V<sub>IL</sub> max.

### REGISTER 3-9: TRISC: PORTC TRI-STATE REGISTER

| R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| TRISC7 | TRISC6 | TRISC5 | TRISC4 | TRISC3 | TRISC2 | TRISC1 | TRISC0 |
| bit 7  |        |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0 **TRISC<7:0>**: PORTC Tri-State Control bits

1 = PORTC pin configured as an input (tri-stated)

0 = PORTC pin configured as an output



## 3.5.1 PIN DESCRIPTIONS AND DIAGRAMS

Each PORTC pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins and their combined functions are briefly described here. For specific information about individual functions such as the LCD or SSP, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

### 3.5.1.1 RC0/VLCD1

Figure 3-14 shows the diagram for this pin. The RC0 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the LCD bias voltage

### 3.5.1.2 RC1/VLCD2

Figure 3-15 shows the diagram for this pin. The RC1 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

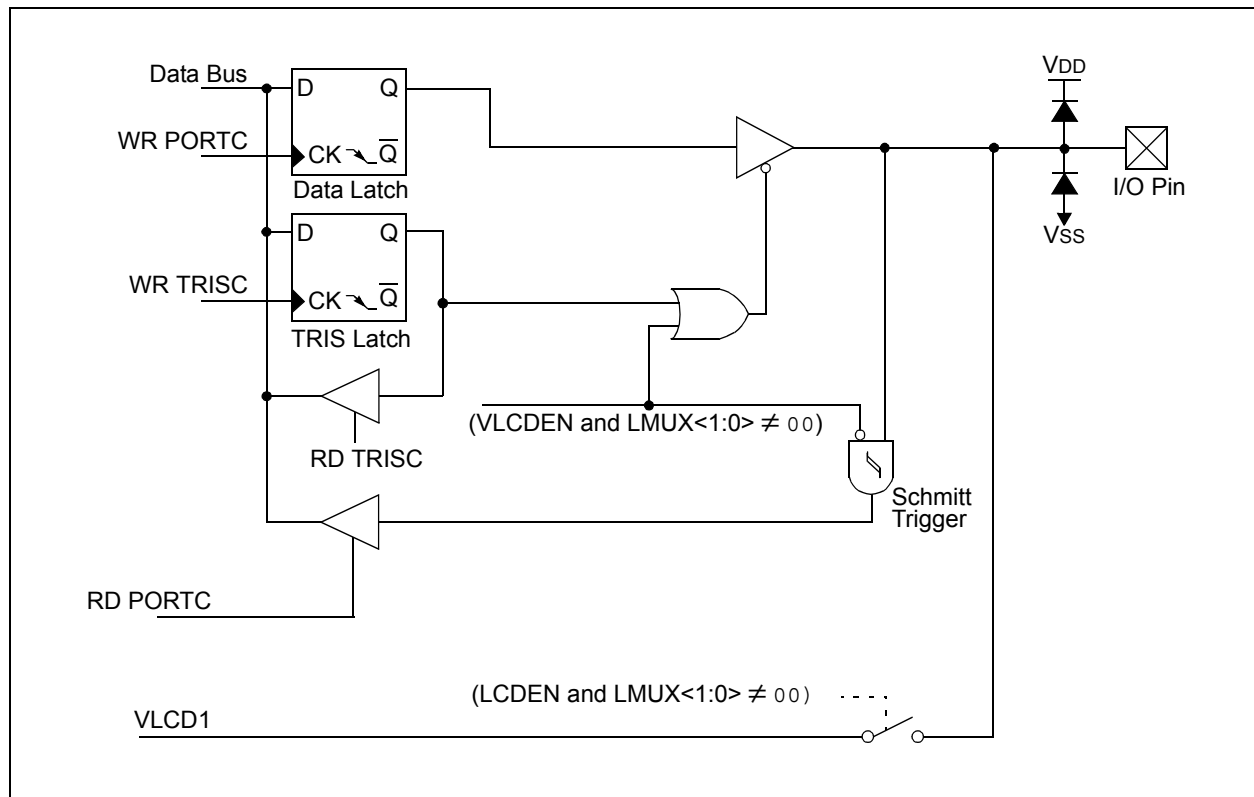
- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the LCD bias voltage

### 3.5.1.3 RC2/VLCD3

Figure 3-16 shows the diagram for this pin. The RC2 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the LCD bias voltage

**FIGURE 3-14: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC0**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 3-15: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC1**

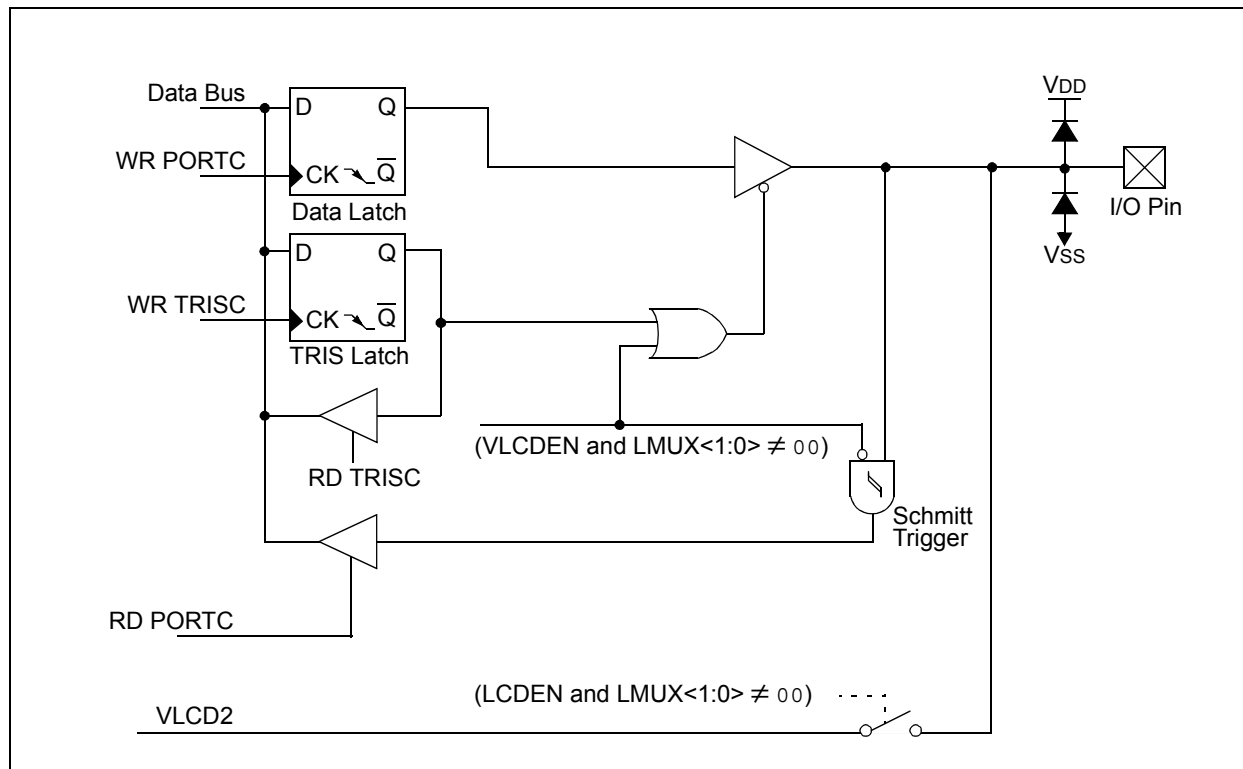
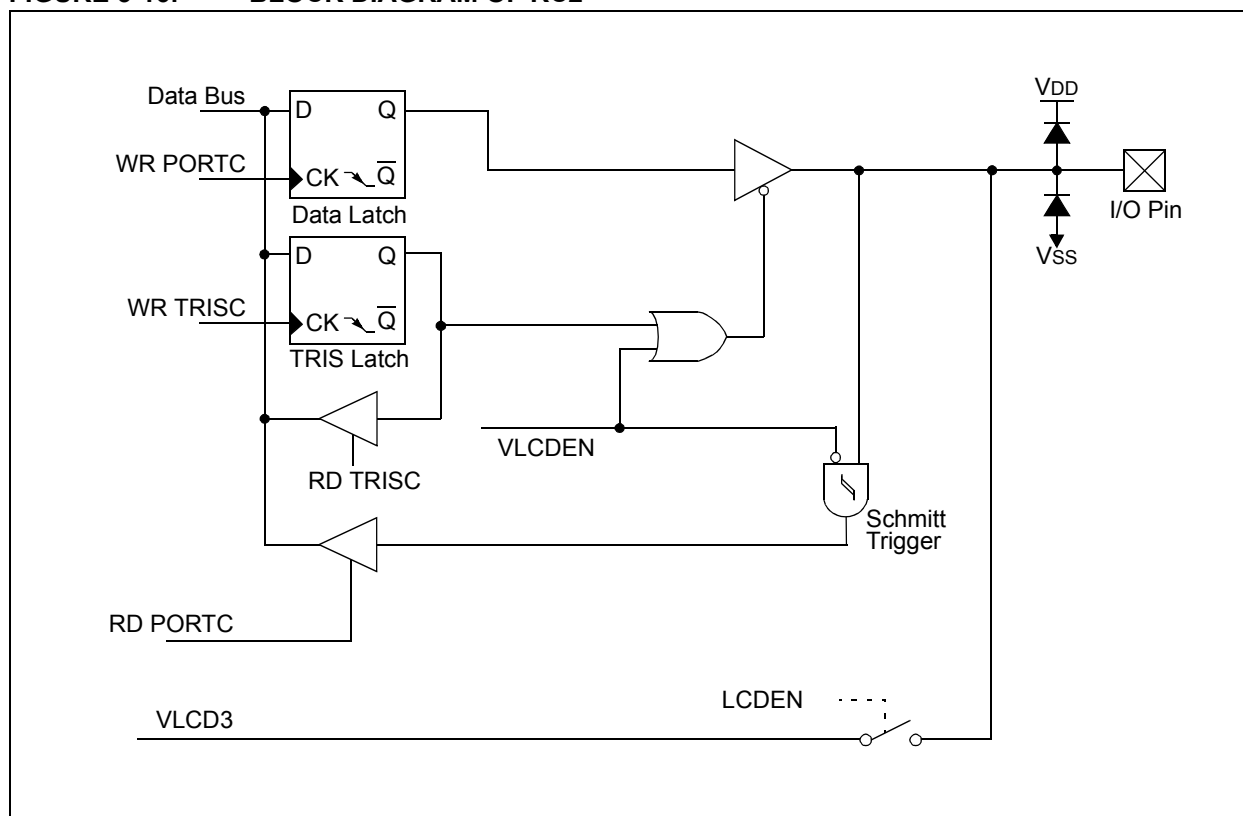


**FIGURE 3-16: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC2**

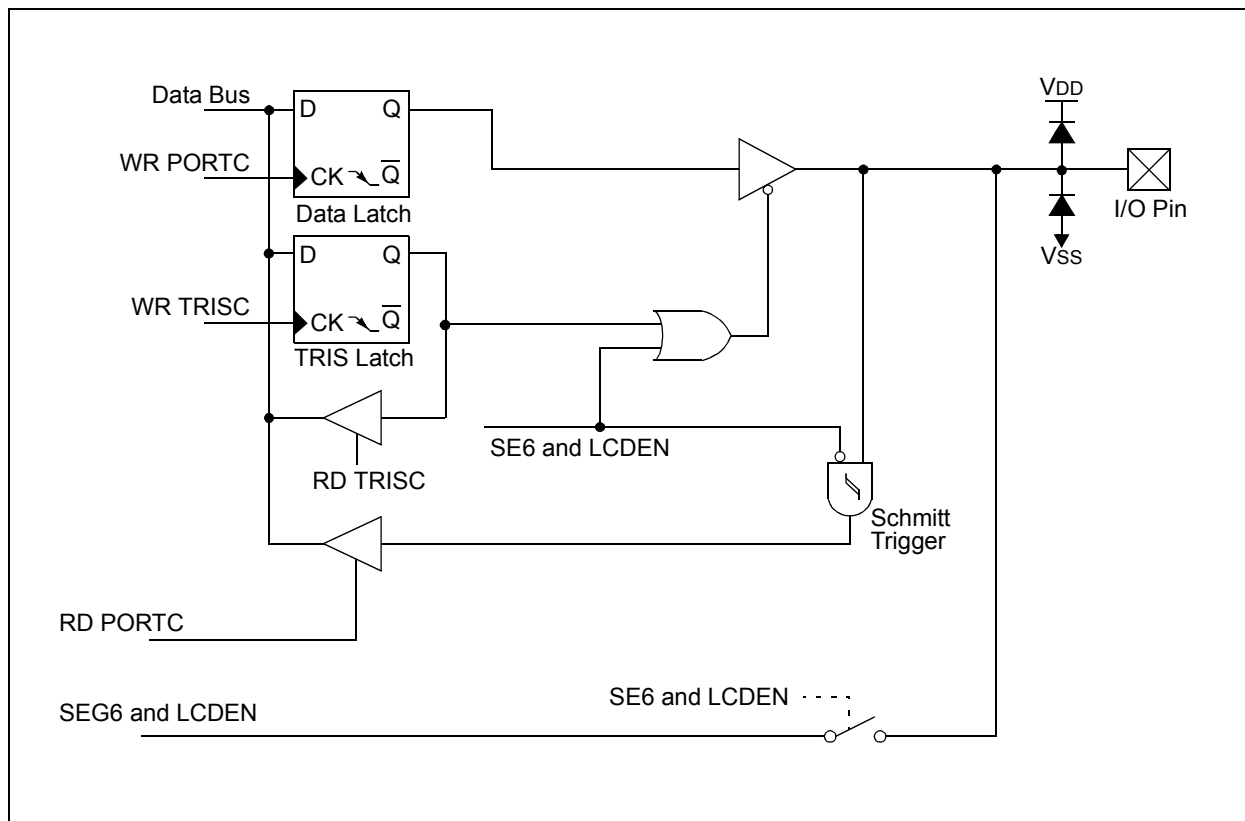


## 3.5.1.4 RC3/SEG6

Figure 3-17 shows the diagram for this pin. The RC3 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-17: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC3**



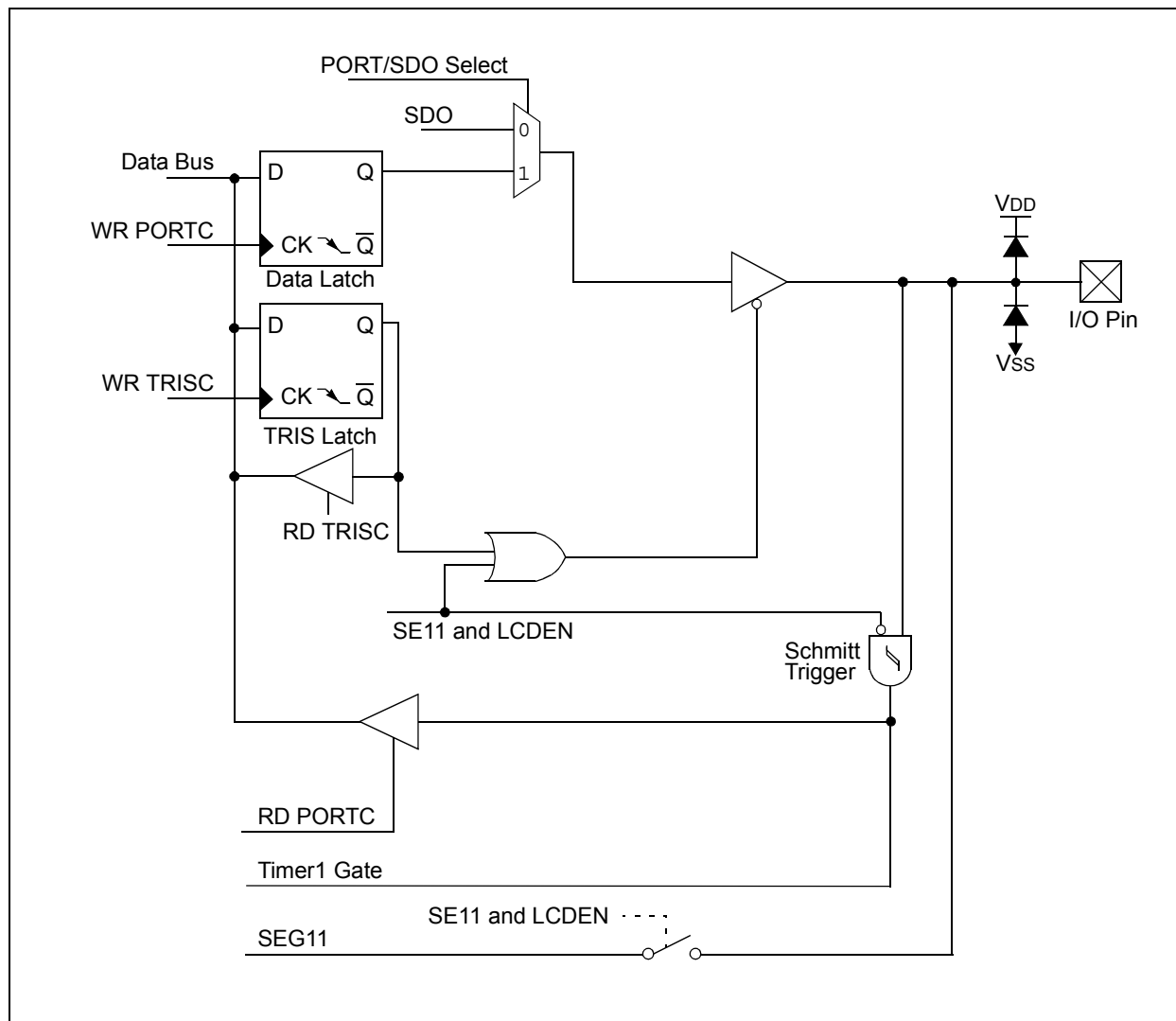
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.5.1.5 RC4/T1G/SDO/SEG11

Figure 3-18 shows the diagram for this pin. The RC4pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- a Timer1 gate input
- a serial data output
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-18: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC4**

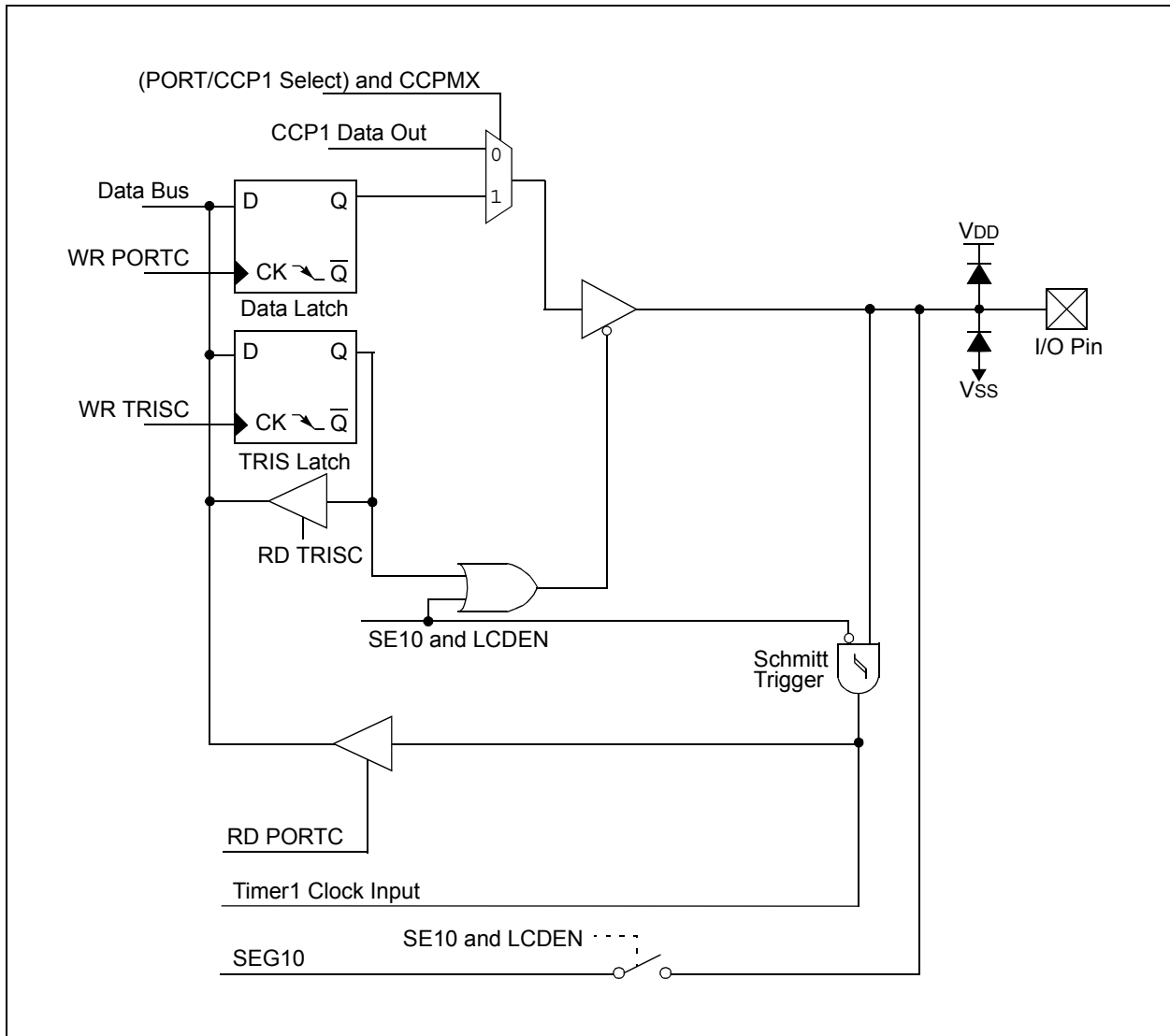


## 3.5.1.6 RC5/T1CKI/CCP1/SEG10

Figure 3-19 shows the diagram for this pin. The RC5 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- a Timer1 clock input
- a Capture input, Compare output or PWM output
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-19: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC5**



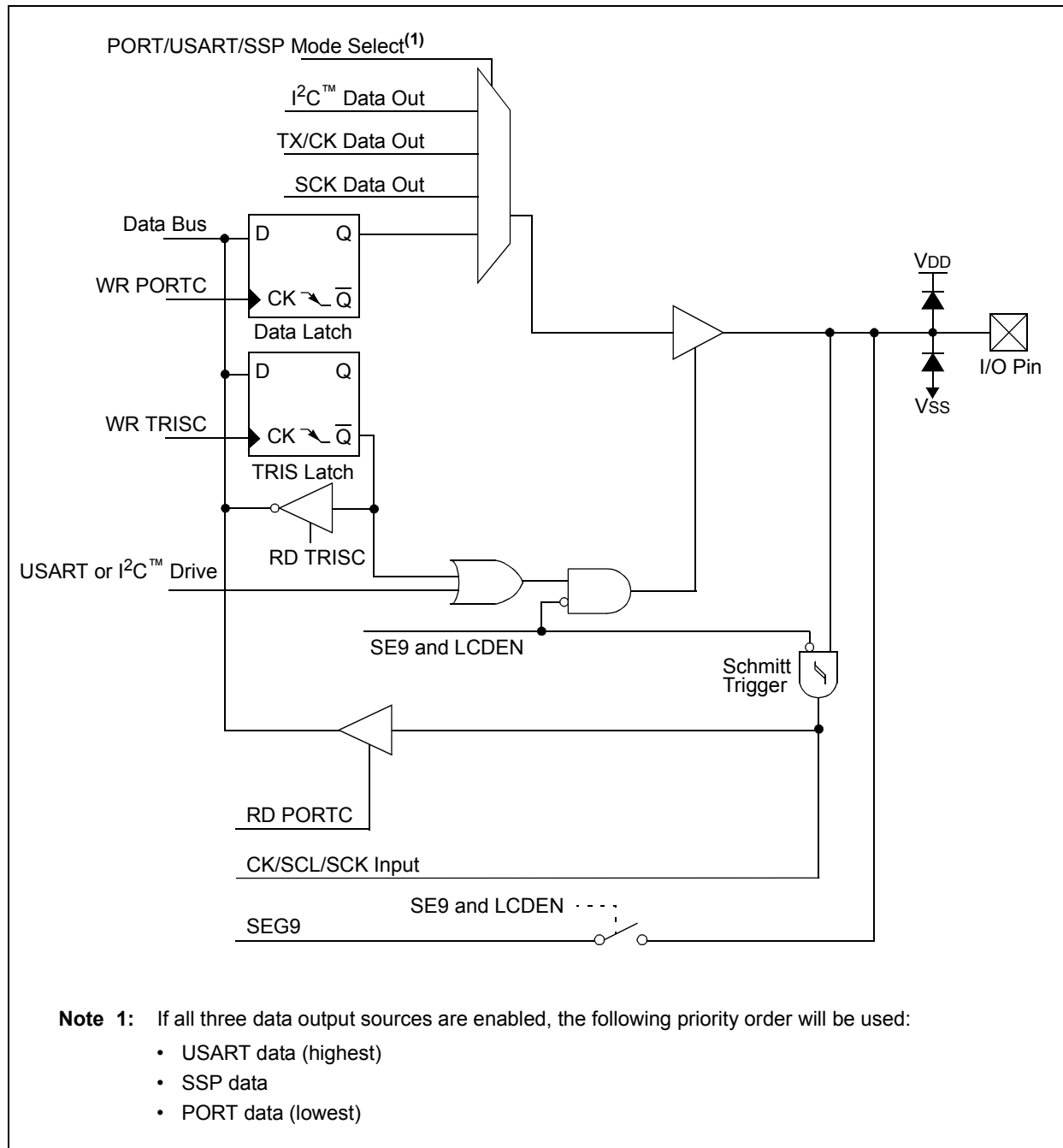
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.5.1.7 RC6/TX/CK/SCK/SCL/SEG9

Figure 3-20 shows the diagram for this pin. The RC6 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an asynchronous serial output
- a synchronous clock I/O
- a SPI clock I/O
- an I<sup>2</sup>C data I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-20: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC6**

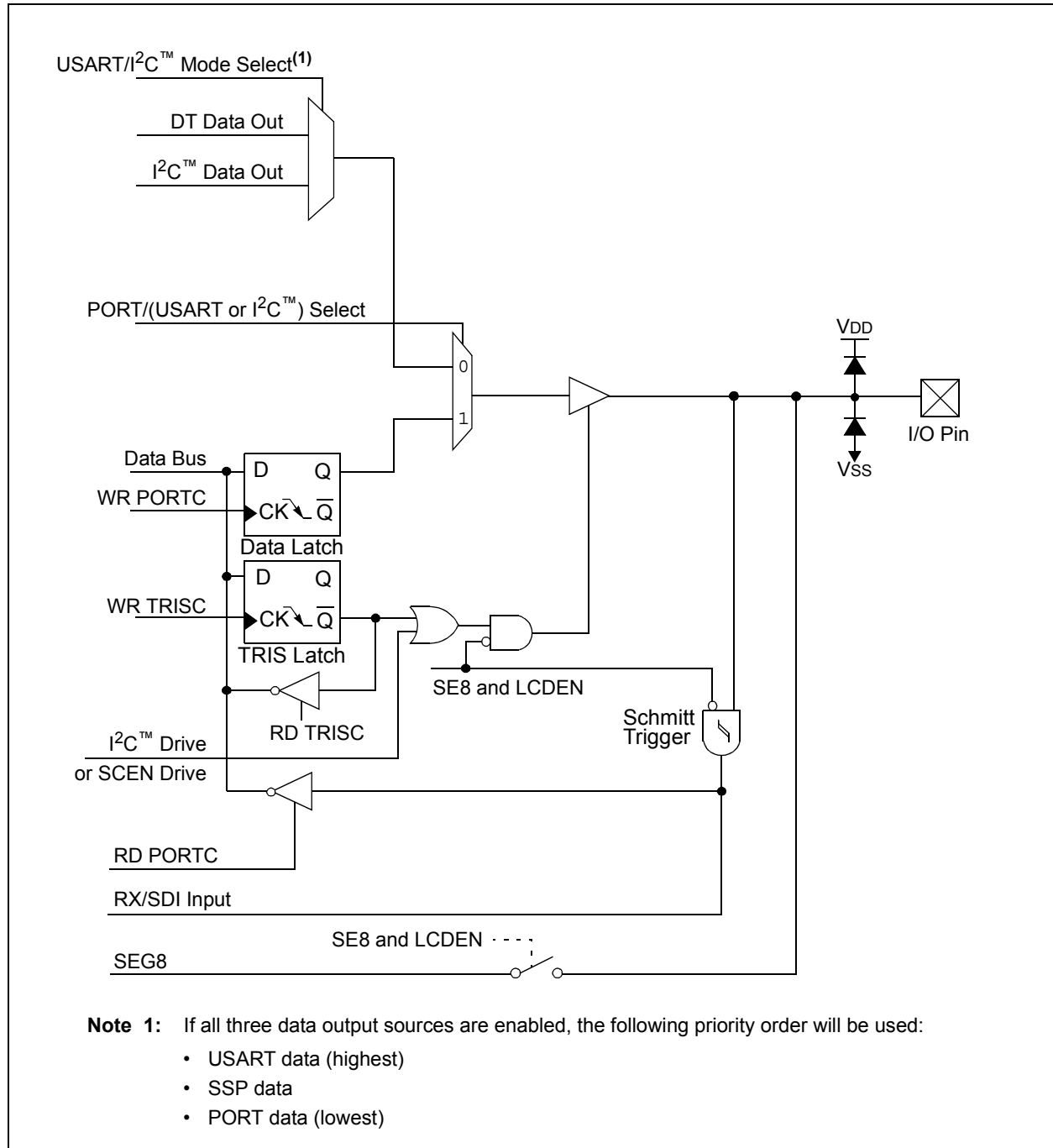


## 3.5.1.8 RC7/RX/DT/SDI/SDA/SEG8

Figure 3-21 shows the diagram for this pin. The RC7 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an asynchronous serial input
- a synchronous serial data I/O
- a SPI data input
- an I<sup>2</sup>C data I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-21: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RC7**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 3-3: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTC**

| Name    | Bit 7  | Bit 6  | Bit 5   | Bit 4   | Bit 3   | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|---------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| CCP1CON | —      | —      | CCP1X   | CCP1Y   | CCP1M3  | CCP1M2 | CCP1M1 | CCP1M0 | --00 0000         | --00 0000                 |
| LCDCON  | LCDEN  | SLPEN  | WERR    | VLCDEN  | CS1     | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE0  | SE7    | SE6    | SE5     | SE4     | SE3     | SE2    | SE1    | SE0    | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDSE1  | SE15   | SE14   | SE13    | SE12    | SE11    | SE10   | SE9    | SE8    | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| PORTC   | RC7    | RC6    | RC5     | RC4     | RC3     | RC2    | RC1    | RC0    | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| RCSTA   | SPEN   | RX9    | SREN    | CREN    | ADDEN   | FERR   | OERR   | RX9D   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| SSPCON  | WCOL   | SSPOV  | SSPEN   | CKP     | SSPM3   | SSPM2  | SSPM1  | SSPM0  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| T1CON   | T1GINV | TMR1GE | T1CKPS1 | T1CKPS0 | T1OSCEN | T1SYNC | TMR1CS | TMR1ON | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| TRISC   | TRISC7 | TRISC6 | TRISC5  | TRISC4  | TRISC3  | TRISC2 | TRISC1 | TRISC0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTC.



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.6 PORTD and TRISD Registers

PORTD is an 8-bit port with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. Each pin is individually configured as an input or output. PORTD is only available on the PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946.

### EXAMPLE 3-4: INITIALIZING PORTD

```
BANKSEL PORTD      ;  
CLRF   PORTD       ;Init PORTD  
BANKSEL TRISD      ;  
MOVLW  0FF         ;Set RD<7:0> as inputs  
MOVWF  TRISD       ;
```

### REGISTER 3-10: PORTD: PORTD REGISTER

| R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| RD7   | RD6   | RD5   | RD4   | RD3   | RD2   | RD1   | RD0   |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**RD<7:0>**: PORTD I/O Pin bits

1 = Port pin is >V<sub>IH</sub> min.

0 = Port pin is <V<sub>IL</sub> max.

### REGISTER 3-11: TRISD: PORTD TRI-STATE REGISTER

| R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| TRISD7 | TRISD6 | TRISD5 | TRISD4 | TRISD3 | TRISD2 | TRISD1 | TRISD0 |
| bit 7  |        |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**TRISD<7:0>**: PORTD Tri-State Control bits

1 = PORTD pin configured as an input (tri-stated)

0 = PORTD pin configured as an output

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

## 3.6.1 PIN DESCRIPTIONS AND DIAGRAMS

Each PORTD pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins and their combined functions are briefly described here. For specific information about individual functions such as the Comparator or the ADC, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

### 3.6.1.1 RD0/COM3

Figure 3-22 shows the diagram for this pin. The RD0 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.6.1.2 RD1

Figure 3-23 shows the diagram for this pin. The RD1 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O

### 3.6.1.3 RD2/CCP2

Figure 3-24 shows the diagram for this pin. The RD2 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- a Capture input, Compare output or PWM output

### 3.6.1.4 RD3/SEG16

Figure 3-25 shows the diagram for this pin. The RD3 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.6.1.5 RD4/SEG17

Figure 3-25 shows the diagram for this pin. The RD4 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.6.1.6 RD5/SEG18

Figure 3-25 shows the diagram for this pin. The RD5 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.6.1.7 RD6/SEG19

Figure 3-25 shows the diagram for this pin. The RD6 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.6.1.8 RD7/SEG20

Figure 3-25 shows the diagram for this pin. The RD7 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-22: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RD0**

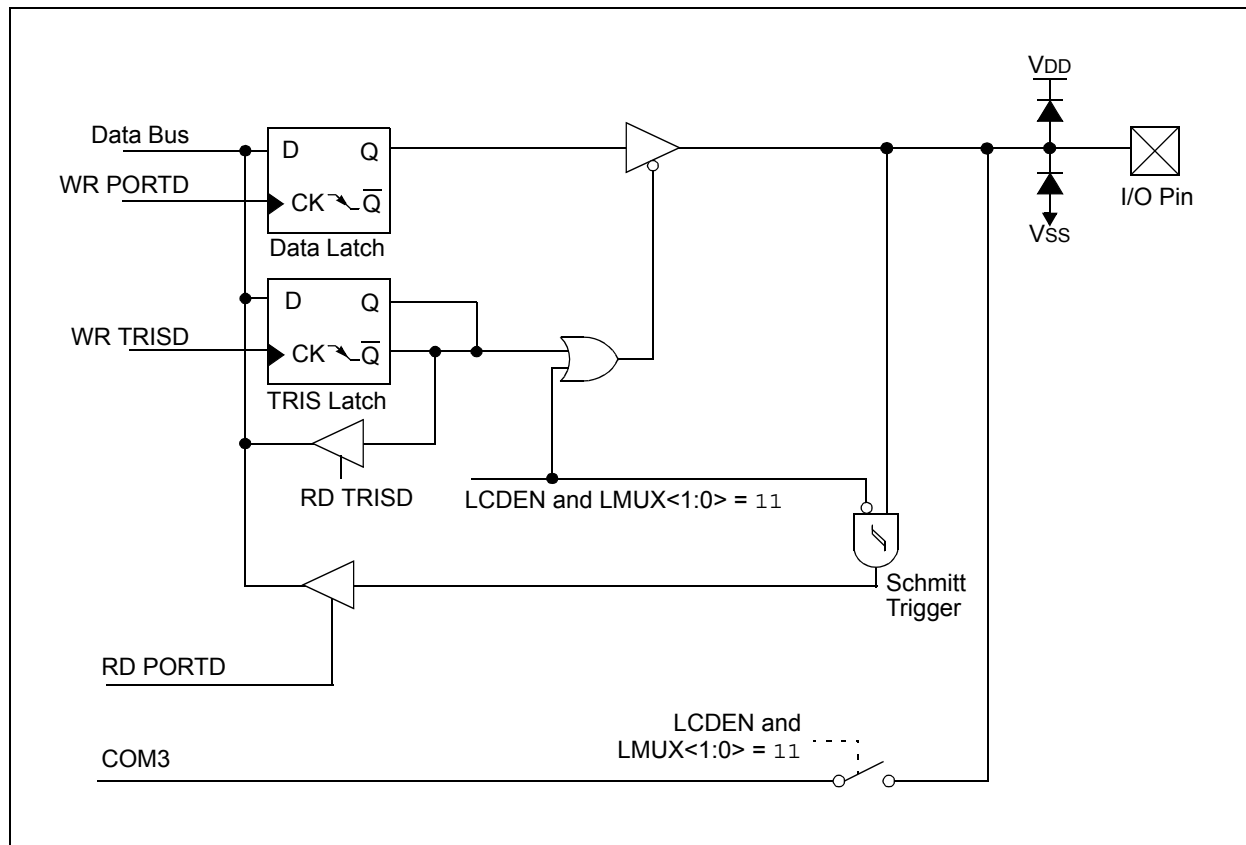
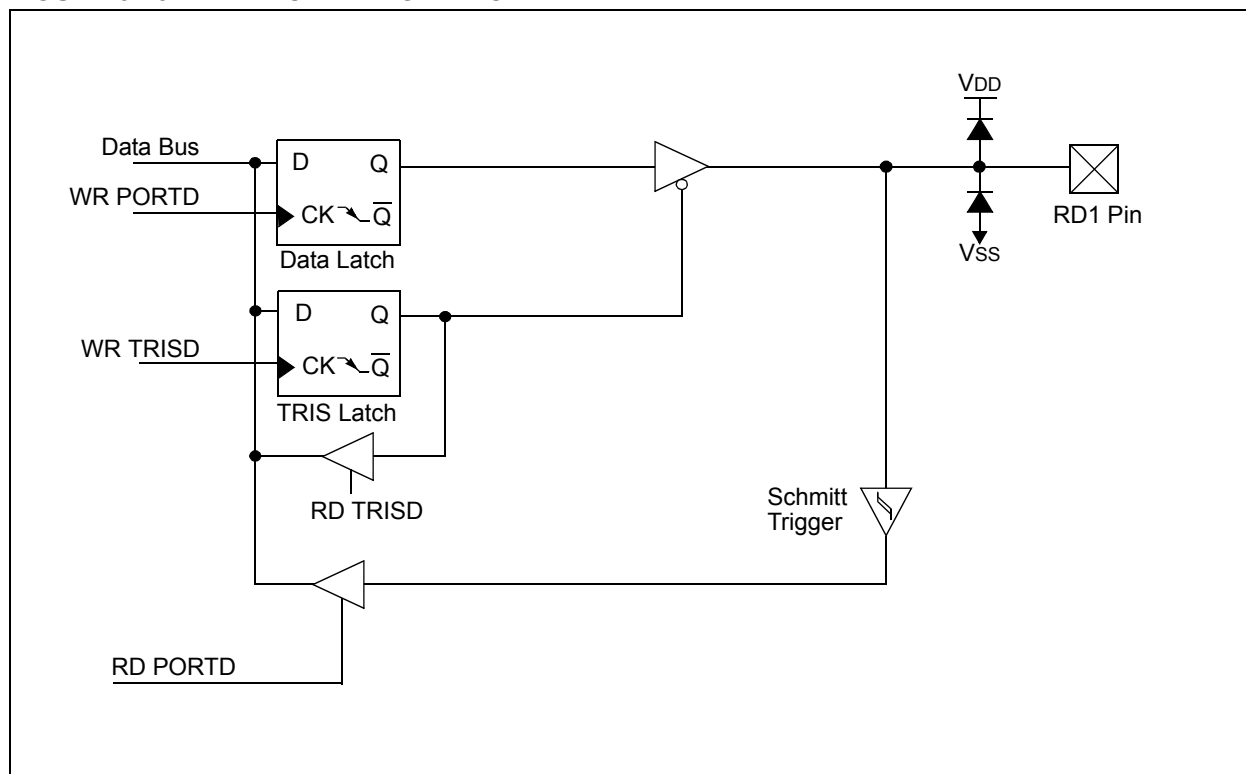


**FIGURE 3-23: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RD1**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 3-24: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RD2**

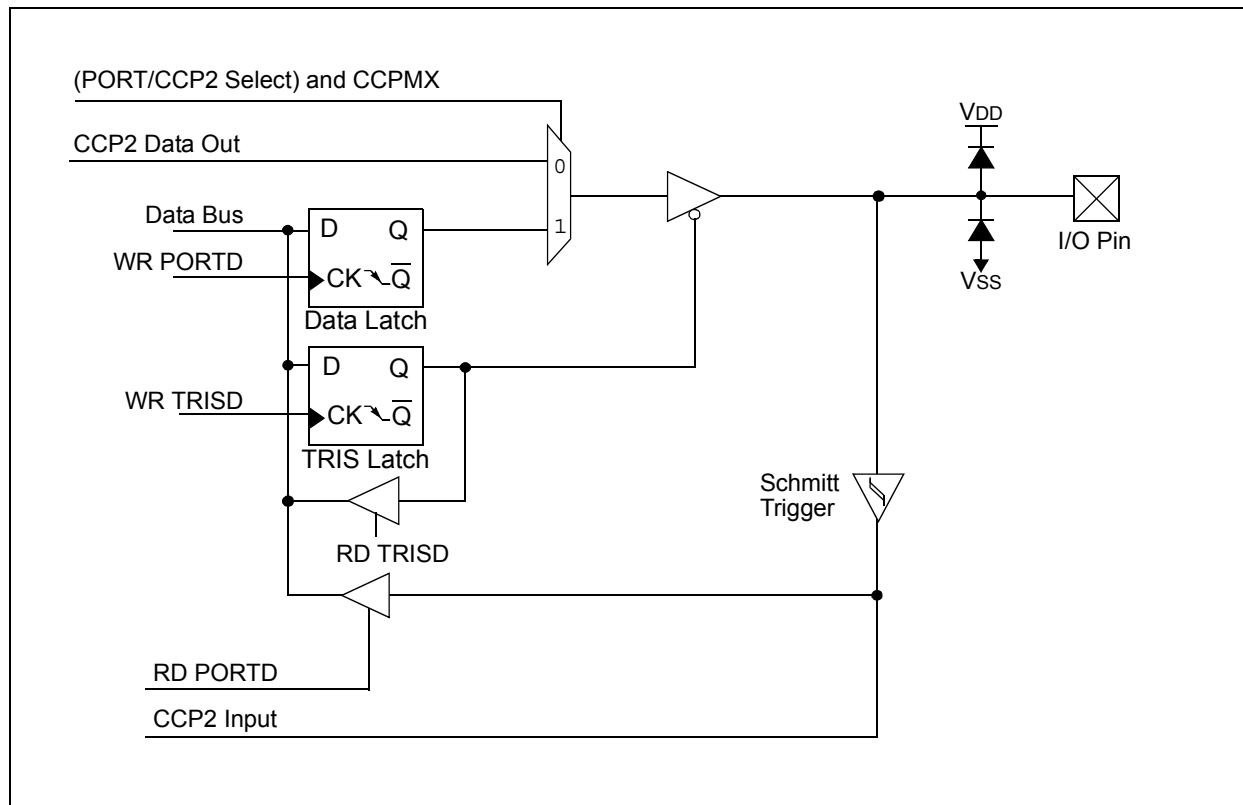
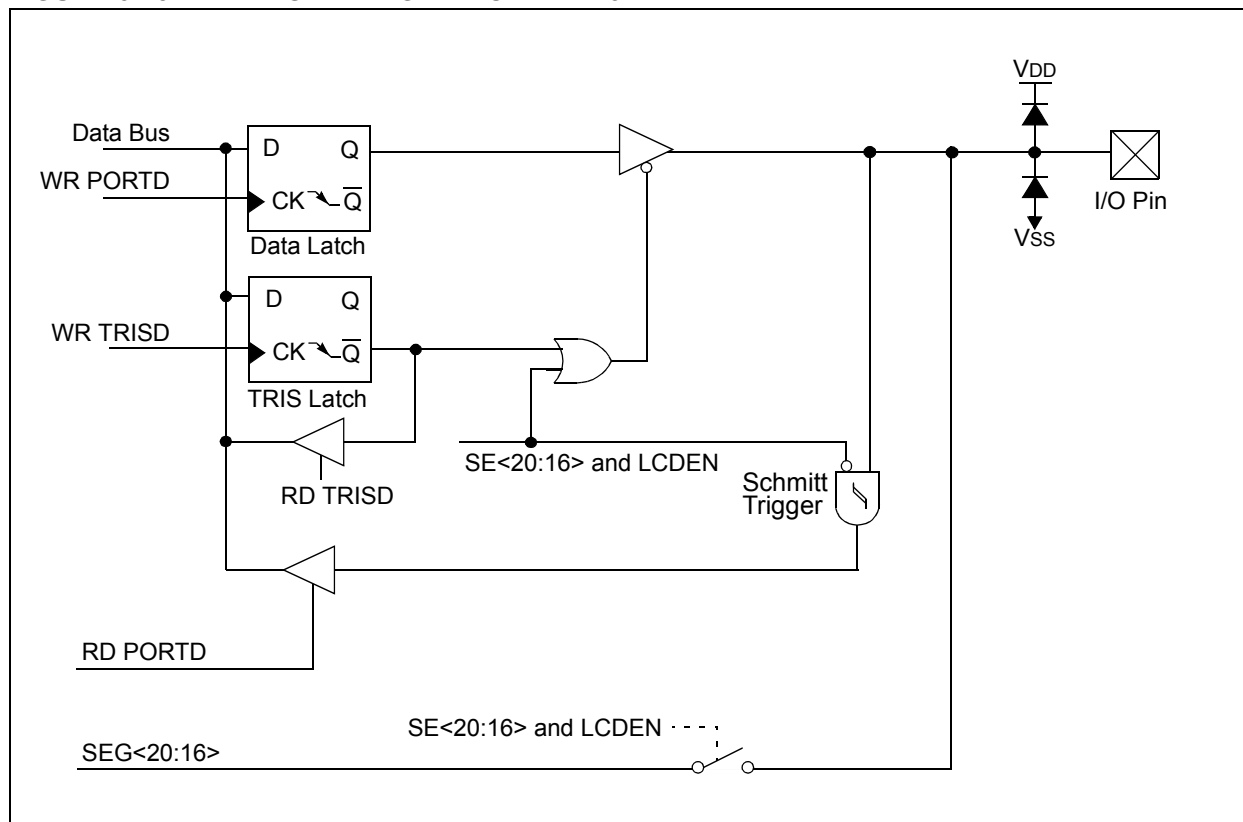


**FIGURE 3-25: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RD<7:3>**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 3-4: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTD<sup>(1)</sup>**

| Name                   | Bit 7  | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| CCP2CON <sup>(1)</sup> | —      | —      | CCP2X  | CCP2Y  | CCP2M3 | CCP2M2 | CCP2M1 | CCP2M0 | --00 0000         | --00 0000                 |
| LCDCON                 | LCDEN  | SLPEN  | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE2 <sup>(1)</sup>  | SE23   | SE22   | SE21   | SE20   | SE19   | SE18   | SE17   | SE16   | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| PORTD <sup>(1)</sup>   | RD7    | RD6    | RD5    | RD4    | RD3    | RD2    | RD1    | RD0    | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| TRISD <sup>(1)</sup>   | TRISD7 | TRISD6 | TRISD5 | TRISD4 | TRISD3 | TRISD2 | TRISD1 | TRISD0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTD.

**Note 1:** PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.7 PORTE and TRISE Registers

PORTE is a 1-bit, 4-bit or 8-bit port with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. RE<7:4, 2:0> are individually configured as inputs or outputs and RE3 is only available as an input if MCLRE is '0' in Configuration Word (Register 16-1).

RE<2:0> are only available on the PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946. RE<7:4> are only available on the PIC16F946.

### EXAMPLE 3-5: INITIALIZING PORTE

```
BANKSEL PORTE      ;
CLRF   PORTE       ;Init PORTE
BANKSEL TRISE      ;
MOVLW   0Fh        ;Set RE<3:0> as inputs
MOVWF   TRISE      ;
CLRF    ANSEL      ;Make RE<2:0> as I/O's
```

### REGISTER 3-12: PORTE: PORTE REGISTER

| R/W-x                | R/W-x                | R/W-x                | R/W-x                | R-x | R/W-x                | R/W-x                | R/W-x                |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| RE7 <sup>(1,3)</sup> | RE6 <sup>(1,3)</sup> | RE5 <sup>(1,3)</sup> | RE4 <sup>(1,3)</sup> | RE3 | RE2 <sup>(2,4)</sup> | RE1 <sup>(2,4)</sup> | RE0 <sup>(2,4)</sup> |
| bit 7                |                      |                      |                      |     |                      |                      | bit 0                |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0 **RE<7:0>**: PORTE I/O Pin bits

1 = Port pin is >V<sub>IH</sub> min.

0 = Port pin is <V<sub>IL</sub> max.

**Note 1:** PIC16F946 only.

**2:** PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

**3:** PIC16F91X, Read as '0'.

**4:** PIC16F913/916, Read as '0'.

### REGISTER 3-13: TRISE: PORTE TRI-STATE REGISTER

| R/W-1                   | R/W-1                   | R/W-1                   | R/W-1                   | R-1    | R/W-1                   | R/W-1                   | R/W-1                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| TRISE7 <sup>(1,3)</sup> | TRISE6 <sup>(1,3)</sup> | TRISE5 <sup>(1,3)</sup> | TRISE4 <sup>(1,3)</sup> | TRISE3 | TRISE2 <sup>(2,4)</sup> | TRISE1 <sup>(2,4)</sup> | TRISE0 <sup>(2,4)</sup> |
| bit 7                   |                         |                         |                         |        |                         |                         | bit 0                   |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0 **TRISE<7:0>**: PORTE Tri-State Control bits

1 = PORTE pin configured as an input (tri-stated)

0 = PORTE pin configured as an output

**Note 1:** PIC16F946 only.

**2:** PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

**3:** PIC16F91X, Read as '0'.

**4:** PIC16F913/916, Read as '0'.

## 3.7.1 PIN DESCRIPTIONS AND DIAGRAMS

Each PORTE pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins and their combined functions are briefly described here. For specific information about individual functions such as the Comparator or the ADC, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

### 3.7.1.1 RE0/AN5/SEG21<sup>(1)</sup>

Figure 3-26 shows the diagram for this pin. The RE0 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.7.1.2 RE1/AN6/SEG22<sup>(1)</sup>

Figure 3-26 shows the diagram for this pin. The RE1 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.7.1.3 RE2/AN7/SEG23<sup>(1)</sup>

Figure 3-26 shows the diagram for this pin. The RE2 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog input for the ADC
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.7.1.4 RE3/MCLR/VPP

Figure 3-27 shows the diagram for this pin. The RE3 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a digital input only
- as Master Clear Reset with weak pull-up
- a programming voltage reference input

### 3.7.1.5 RE4/SEG24<sup>(2)</sup>

Figure 3-28 shows the diagram for this pin. The RE4/SEG24 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.7.1.6 RE5/SEG25<sup>(2)</sup>

Figure 3-28 shows the diagram for this pin. The RE5/SEG25 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.7.1.7 RE6/SEG26<sup>(2)</sup>

Figure 3-28 shows the diagram for this pin. The RE6/SEG26 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.7.1.8 RE7/SEG27<sup>(2)</sup>

Figure 3-28 shows the diagram for this pin. The RE7/SEG27 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

**Note 1:** Pin is available on the PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

**2:** Pin is available on the PIC16F946 only.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 3-26: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RE<2:0> (PIC16F914/917 AND PIC16F946 ONLY)**

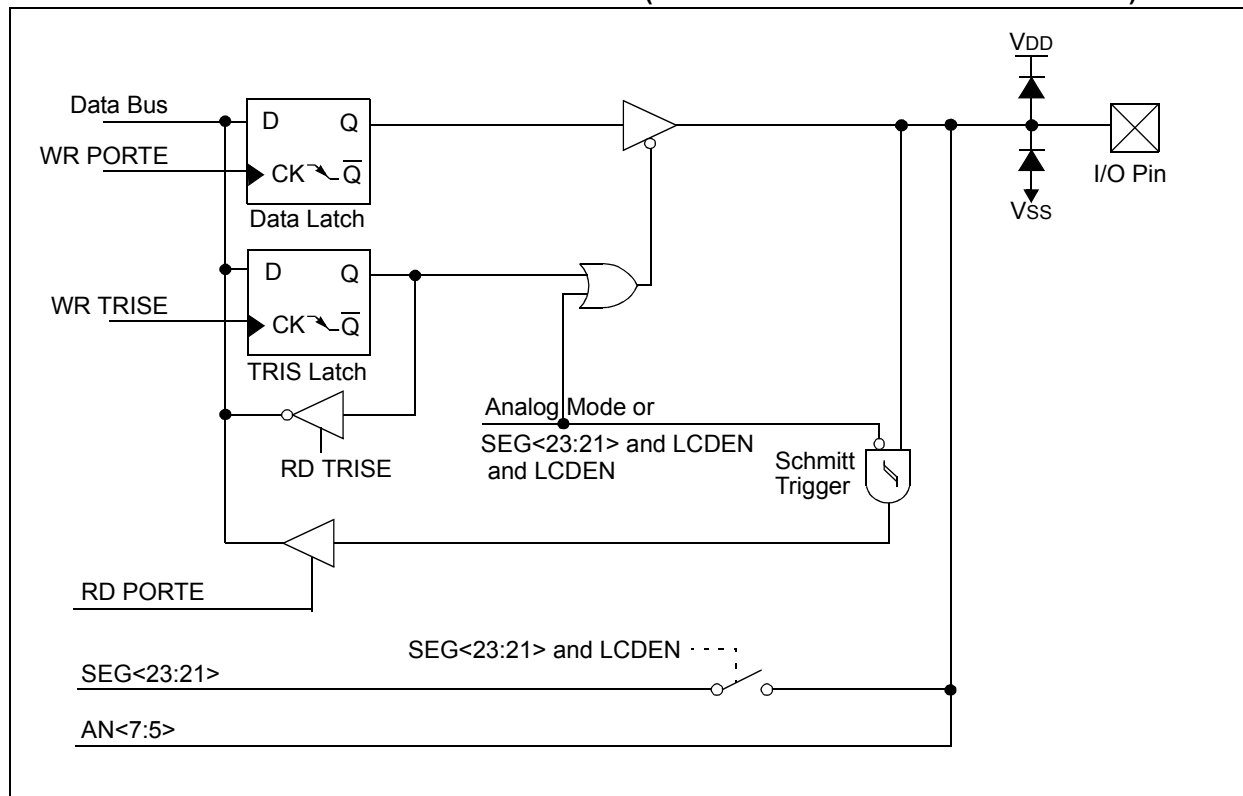


**FIGURE 3-27: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RE3**

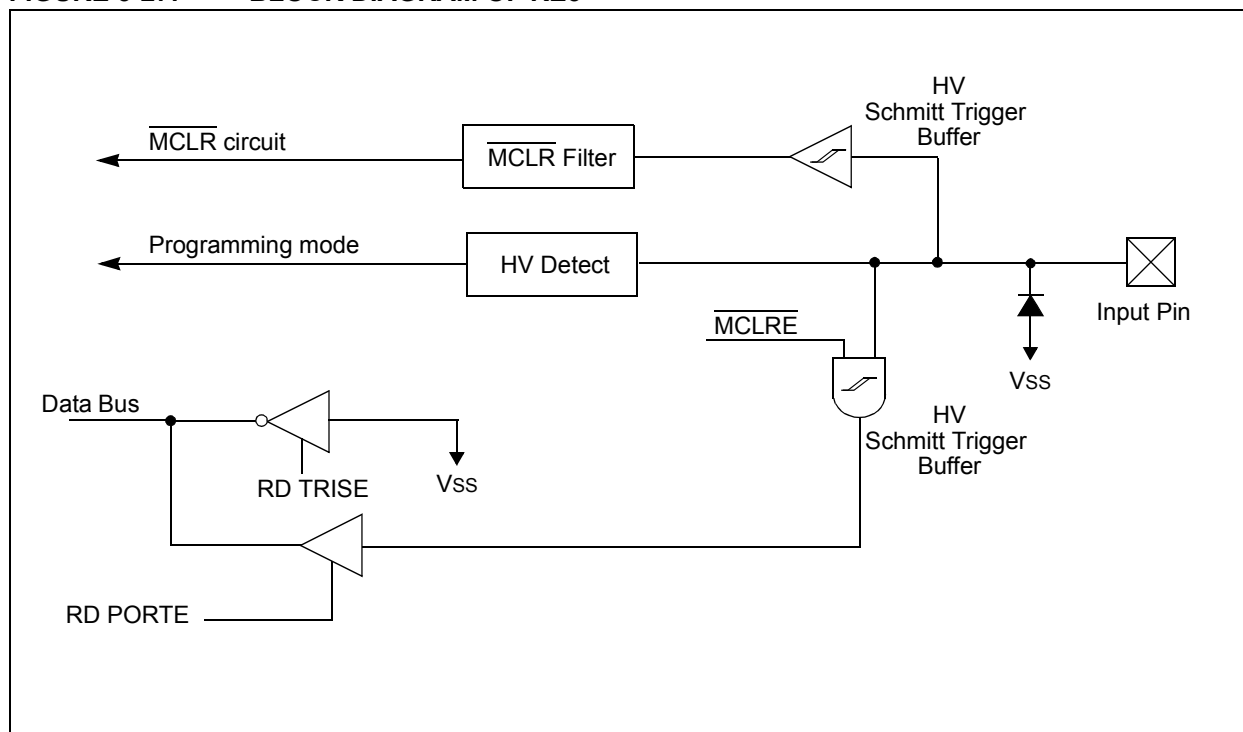
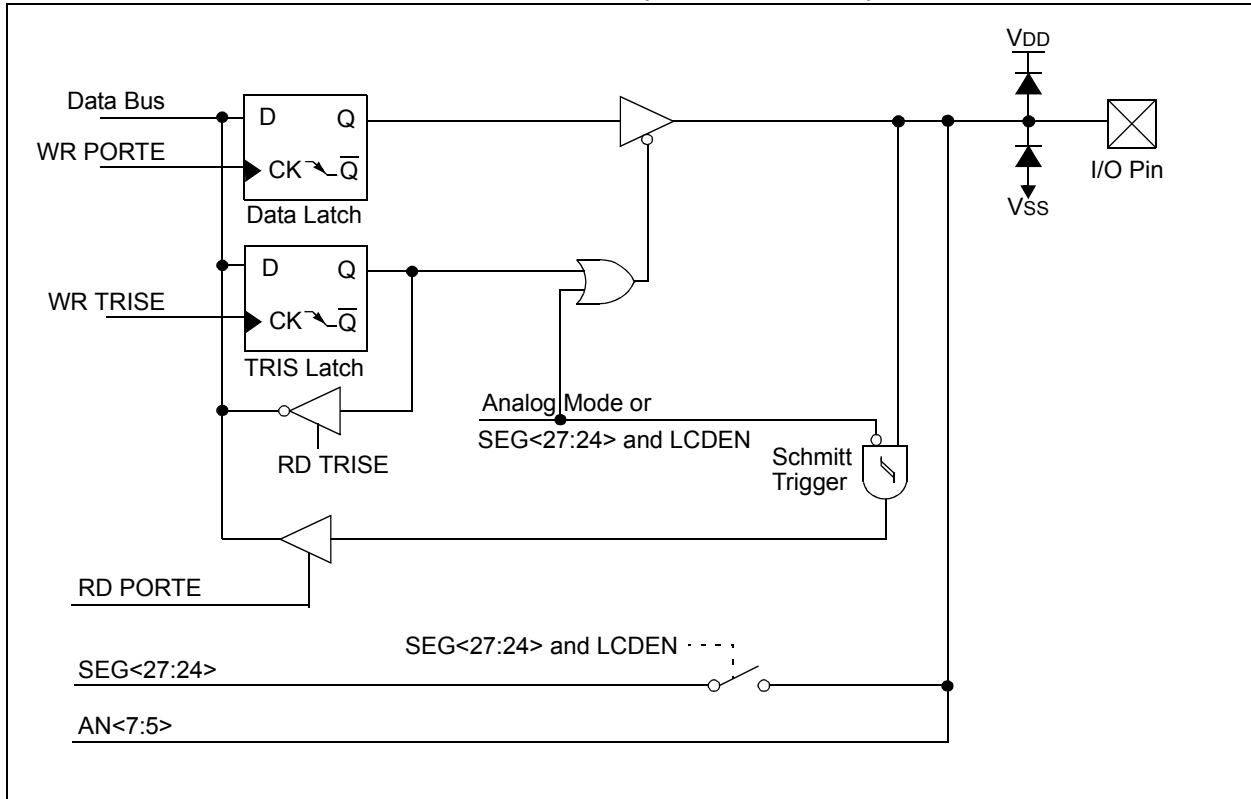




**FIGURE 3-28: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RE<7:4> (PIC16F946 ONLY)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 3-5: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTE**

| Name                    | Bit 7                 | Bit 6                 | Bit 5                 | Bit 4                 | Bit 3                 | Bit 2                 | Bit 1                 | Bit 0                 | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| ADCON0                  | ADFM                  | VCFG1                 | VCFG0                 | CHS2                  | CHS1                  | CHS0                  | GO/DONE               | ADON                  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| ANSEL                   | ANS7                  | ANS6                  | ANS5                  | ANS4                  | ANS3                  | ANS2                  | ANS1                  | ANS0                  | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| LCDCON                  | LCDEN                 | SLPEN                 | WERR                  | VLCDEN                | CS1                   | CS0                   | LMUX1                 | LMUX0                 | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE2 <sup>(1,2)</sup> | SE23                  | SE22                  | SE21                  | SE20                  | SE19                  | SE18                  | SE17                  | SE16                  | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDSE3 <sup>(1,3)</sup> | SE31                  | SE30                  | SE29                  | SE28                  | SE27                  | SE26                  | SE25                  | SE24                  | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| PORTE                   | RE7 <sup>(3)</sup>    | RE6 <sup>(3)</sup>    | RE5 <sup>(3)</sup>    | RE4 <sup>(3)</sup>    | RE3                   | RE2 <sup>(2)</sup>    | RE1 <sup>(2)</sup>    | RE0 <sup>(2)</sup>    | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| TRISE                   | TRISE7 <sup>(3)</sup> | TRISE6 <sup>(3)</sup> | TRISE5 <sup>(3)</sup> | TRISE4 <sup>(3)</sup> | TRISE3 <sup>(4)</sup> | TRISE2 <sup>(2)</sup> | TRISE1 <sup>(2)</sup> | TRISE0 <sup>(2)</sup> | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTC.

**Note 1:** This register is only initialized by a POR or BOR reset and is unchanged by other Resets.

**2:** PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

**3:** PIC16F946 only.

**4:** Bit is read-only; TRISE = 1 always.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.8 PORTF and TRISF Registers

PORTF is an 8-bit port with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. RF<7:0> are individually configured as inputs or outputs, depending on the state of the port direction. The port bits are also multiplexed with LCD segment functions. PORTF is available on the PIC16F946 only.

### EXAMPLE 3-6: INITIALIZING PORTF

```
BANKSEL PORTF      ;  
CLRF    PORTF      ;Init PORTF  
BANKSEL TRISF      ;  
MOVLW   0FFh       ;Set RF<7:0> as inputs  
MOVWF   TRISF      ;
```

### REGISTER 3-14: PORTF: PORTF REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

| R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| RF7   | RF6   | RF5   | RF4   | RF3   | RF2   | RF1   | RF0   |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0      **RF<7:0>**: PORTF I/O Pin bits

1 = Port pin is >V<sub>IH</sub> min.

0 = Port pin is <V<sub>IL</sub> max.

**Note 1:** PIC16F946 only.

### REGISTER 3-15: TRISF: PORTF TRI-STATE REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

| R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| TRISF7 | TRISF6 | TRISF5 | TRISF4 | TRISF3 | TRISF2 | TRISF1 | TRISF0 |
| bit 7  |        |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0      **TRISF<7:0>**: PORTF Tri-State Control bits

1 = PORTF pin configured as an input (tri-stated)

0 = PORTF pin configured as an output

**Note 1:** PIC16F946 only.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

## 3.8.1 PIN DESCRIPTIONS AND DIAGRAMS

Each PORTF pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins and their combined functions are briefly described here. For specific information about individual functions, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

### 3.8.1.1 RF0/SEG32

Figure 3-29 shows the diagram for this pin. The RF0 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.8.1.2 RF1/SEG33

Figure 3-29 shows the diagram for this pin. The RF1 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.8.1.3 RF2/SEG34

Figure 3-29 shows the diagram for this pin. The RF2 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.8.1.4 RF3/SEG35

Figure 3-29 shows the diagram for this pin. The RF3 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.8.1.5 RF4/SEG28

Figure 3-29 shows the diagram for this pin. The RF4 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.8.1.6 RF5/SEG29

Figure 3-29 shows the diagram for this pin. The RF5 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.8.1.7 RF6/SEG30

Figure 3-29 shows the diagram for this pin. The RF6 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

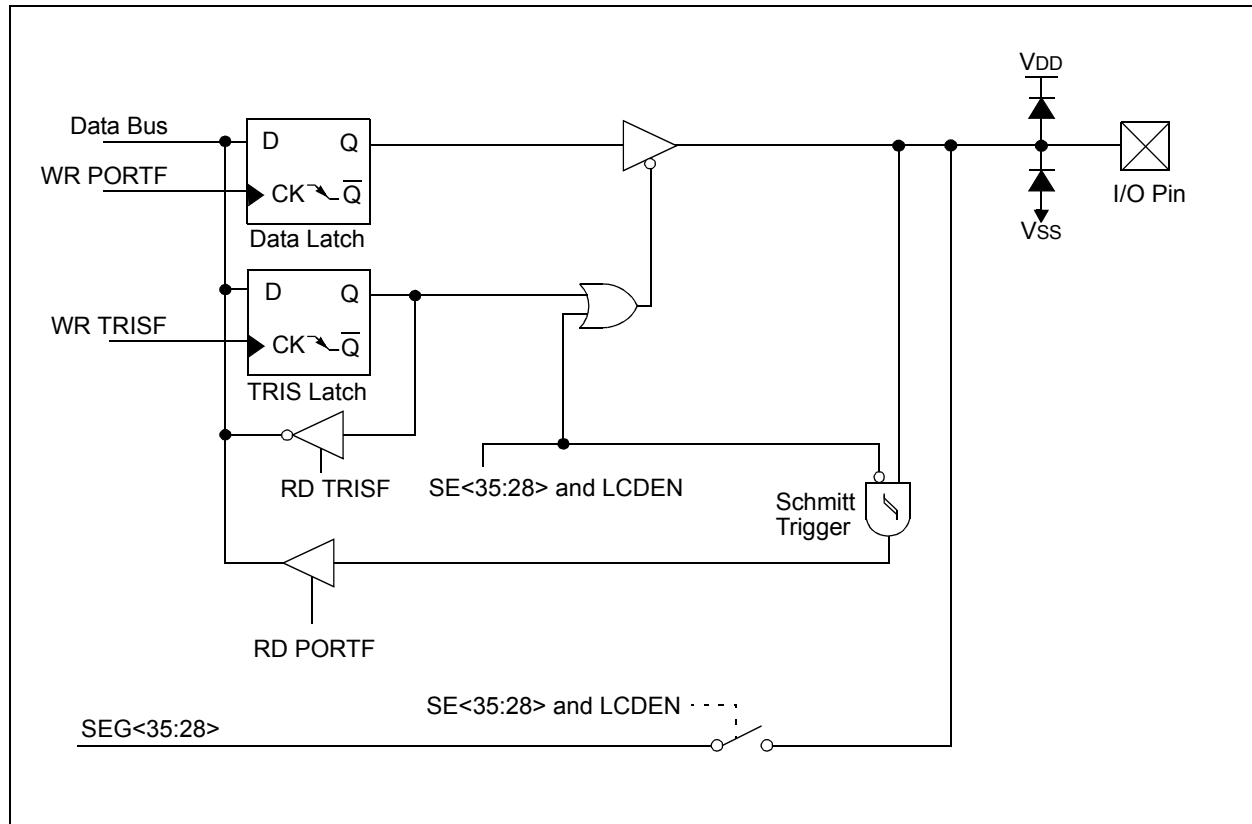
### 3.8.1.8 RF7/SEG31

Figure 3-29 shows the diagram for this pin. The RF7 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 3-29: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RF<7:0>**

**TABLE 3-6: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTF<sup>(1)</sup>**

| Name                  | Bit 7  | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| LCDCON                | LCDEN  | SLPEN  | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE3 <sup>(1)</sup> | SE31   | SE30   | SE29   | SE28   | SE27   | SE26   | SE25   | SE24   | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDSE4 <sup>(1)</sup> | SE39   | SE38   | SE37   | SE36   | SE35   | SE34   | SE33   | SE32   | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| PORTF <sup>(1)</sup>  | RF7    | RF6    | RF5    | RF4    | RF3    | RF2    | RF1    | RF0    | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| TRISF <sup>(1)</sup>  | TRISF7 | TRISF6 | TRISF5 | TRISF4 | TRISF3 | TRISF2 | TRISF1 | TRISF0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented locations read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by PORTF.

**Note 1:** PIC16F946 only.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 3.9 PORTG and TRISG Registers

PORTG is an 8-bit port with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. RG<5:0> are individually configured as inputs or outputs, depending on the state of the port direction. The port bits are also multiplexed with LCD segment functions. PORTG is available on the PIC16F946 only.

### EXAMPLE 3-7: INITIALIZING PORTG

```
BANKSEL PORTG      ;  
CLRF   PORTG       ;Init PORTG  
BANKSEL TRISG      ;  
MOVLW   3Fh        ;Set RG<5:0> as inputs  
MOVWF   TRISG      ;
```

### REGISTER 3-16: PORTG: PORTG REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| —     | —   | RG5   | RG4   | RG3   | RG2   | RG1   | RG0   |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
-n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6                      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0                      **RG<5:0>:** PORTG I/O Pin bits

1 = Port pin is >V<sub>IH</sub> min.

0 = Port pin is <V<sub>IL</sub> max.

**Note 1:** PIC16F946 only.

### REGISTER 3-17: TRISG: PORTG TRI-STATE REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  | R/W-1  |
|-------|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| —     | —   | TRISG5 | TRISG4 | TRISG3 | TRISG2 | TRISG1 | TRISG0 |
| bit 7 |     |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
-n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6                      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0                      **TRISF<5:0>:** PORTG Tri-State Control bits

1 = PORTG pin configured as an input (tri-stated)

0 = PORTG pin configured as an output

**Note 1:** PIC16F946 only.

## 3.9.1 PIN DESCRIPTIONS AND DIAGRAMS

Each PORTG pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins and their combined functions are briefly described here. For specific information about individual functions, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

### 3.9.1.1 RG0/SEG36

Figure 3-30 shows the diagram for this pin. The RG0 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.9.1.2 RG1/SEG37

Figure 3-30 shows the diagram for this pin. The RG1 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.9.1.3 RG2/SEG38

Figure 3-30 shows the diagram for this pin. The RG2 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.9.1.4 RG3/SEG39

Figure 3-30 shows the diagram for this pin. The RG3 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.9.1.5 RG4/SEG40

Figure 3-30 shows the diagram for this pin. The RG4 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

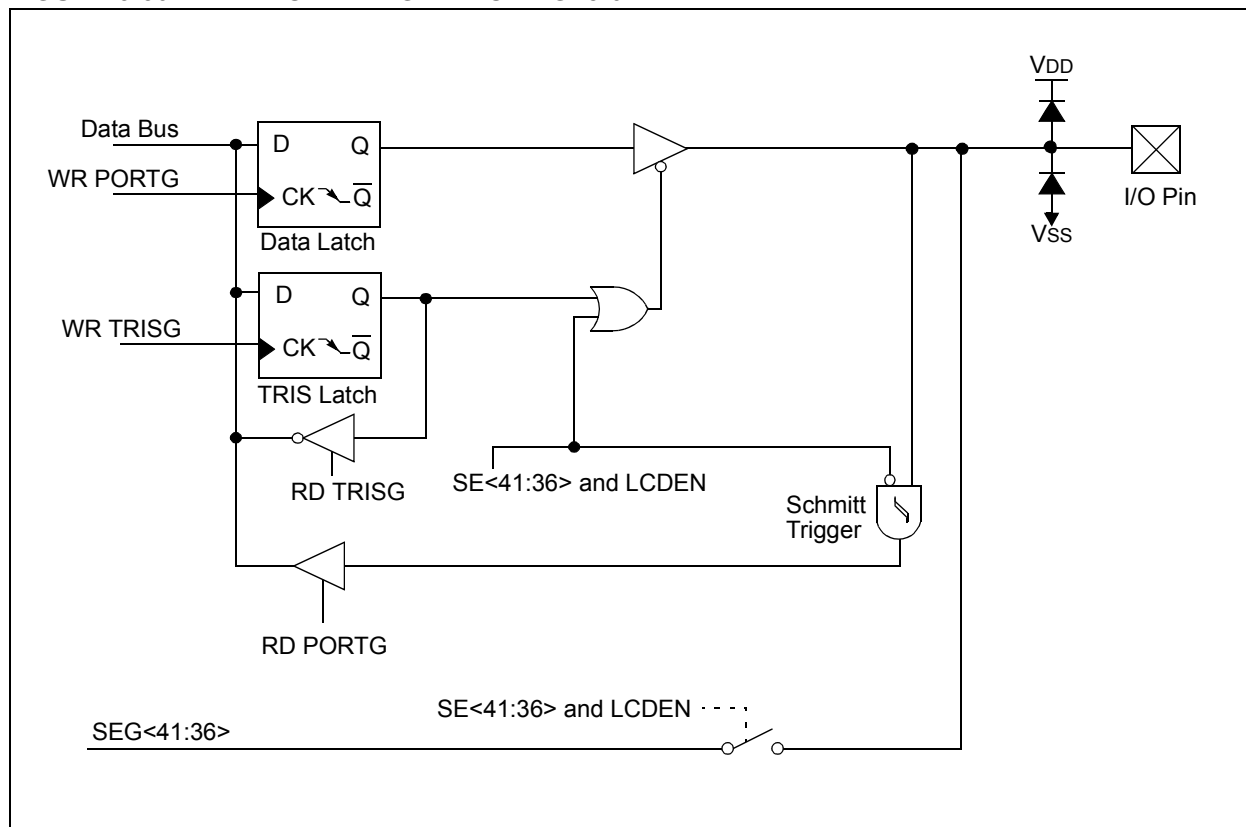
- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

### 3.9.1.6 RG5/SEG41

Figure 3-30 shows the diagram for this pin. The RG5 pin is configurable to function as one of the following:

- a general purpose I/O
- an analog output for the LCD

**FIGURE 3-30: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF RG<5:0>**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 3-7: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTG<sup>(1)</sup>**

| Name                  | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|-----------------------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| LCDCON                | LCDEN | SLPEN | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE4 <sup>(1)</sup> | SE39  | SE38  | SE37   | SE36   | SE35   | SE34   | SE33   | SE32   | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDSE5 <sup>(1)</sup> | —     | —     | —      | —      | —      | —      | SE41   | SE40   | ---- --00         | ---- --uu                 |
| PORTG <sup>(1)</sup>  | —     | —     | RG5    | RG4    | RG3    | RG2    | RG1    | RG0    | --xx xxxx         | --uu uuuu                 |
| TRISG <sup>(1)</sup>  | —     | —     | TRISG5 | TRISG4 | TRISG3 | TRISG2 | TRISG1 | TRISG0 | --11 1111         | --11 1111                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTG.

**Note 1:** PIC16F946 only.



## 4.0 OSCILLATOR MODULE (WITH FAIL-SAFE CLOCK MONITOR)

### 4.1 Overview

The Oscillator module has a wide variety of clock sources and selection features that allow it to be used in a wide range of applications while maximizing performance and minimizing power consumption. Figure 4-1 illustrates a block diagram of the Oscillator module.

Clock sources can be configured from external oscillators, quartz crystal resonators, ceramic resonators and Resistor-Capacitor (RC) circuits. In addition, the system clock source can be configured from one of two internal oscillators, with a choice of speeds selectable via software. Additional clock features include:

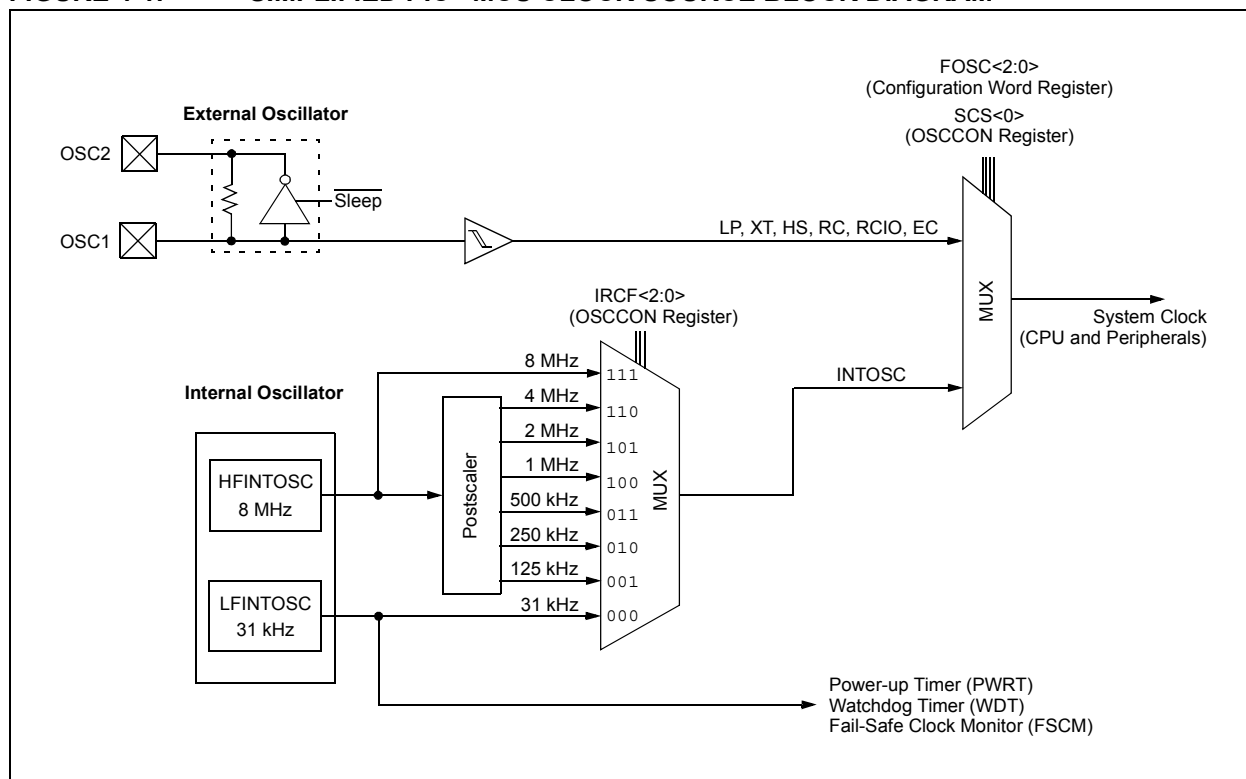
- Selectable system clock source between external or internal via software.
- Two-Speed Start-up mode, which minimizes latency between external oscillator start-up and code execution.
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) designed to detect a failure of the external clock source (LP, XT, HS, EC or RC modes) and switch automatically to the internal oscillator.

The Oscillator module can be configured in one of eight clock modes.

1. EC – External clock with I/O on OSC2/CLKOUT.
2. LP – 32 kHz Low-Power Crystal mode.
3. XT – Medium Gain Crystal or Ceramic Resonator Oscillator mode.
4. HS – High Gain Crystal or Ceramic Resonator mode.
5. RC – External Resistor-Capacitor (RC) with Fosc/4 output on OSC2/CLKOUT.
6. RCIO – External Resistor-Capacitor (RC) with I/O on OSC2/CLKOUT.
7. INTOSC – Internal oscillator with Fosc/4 output on OSC2 and I/O on OSC1/CLKIN.
8. INTOSCIO – Internal oscillator with I/O on OSC1/CLKIN and OSC2/CLKOUT.

Clock Source modes are configured by the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG). The internal clock can be generated from two internal oscillators. The HFINTOSC is a calibrated high-frequency oscillator. The LFINTOSC is an uncalibrated low-frequency oscillator.

**FIGURE 4-1: SIMPLIFIED PIC® MCU CLOCK SOURCE BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 4.2 Oscillator Control

The Oscillator Control (OSCCON) register (Figure 4-1) controls the system clock and frequency selection options. The OSCCON register contains the following bits:

- Frequency selection bits (IRCF)
- Frequency Status bits (HTS, LTS)
- System clock control bits (OSTS, SCS)

**REGISTER 4-1: OSCCON: OSCILLATOR CONTROL REGISTER**

| U-0   | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-0 | R-1                 | R-0 | R-0 | R/W-0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------------------|-----|-----|-------|
| —     | IRCF2 | IRCF1 | IRCF0 | OSTS <sup>(1)</sup> | HTS | LTS | SCS   |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |                     |     |     | bit 0 |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4 **IRCF<2:0>:** Internal Oscillator Frequency Select bits

111 = 8 MHz

110 = 4 MHz (default)

101 = 2 MHz

100 = 1 MHz

011 = 500 kHz

010 = 250 kHz

001 = 125 kHz

000 = 31 kHz (LFINTOSC)

bit 3 **OSTS:** Oscillator Start-up Time-out Status bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = Device is running from the clock defined by FOSC<2:0> of the Configuration Word

0 = Device is running from the internal oscillator (HFINTOSC or LFINTOSC)

bit 2 **HTS:** HFINTOSC Status bit (High Frequency – 8 MHz to 125 kHz)

1 = HFINTOSC is stable

0 = HFINTOSC is not stable

bit 1 **LTS:** LFINTOSC Stable bit (Low Frequency – 31 kHz)

1 = LFINTOSC is stable

0 = LFINTOSC is not stable

bit 0 **SCS:** System Clock Select bit

1 = Internal oscillator is used for system clock

0 = Clock source defined by FOSC<2:0> of the Configuration Word

**Note 1:** Bit resets to '0' with Two-Speed Start-up and LP, XT or HS selected as the Oscillator mode or Fail-Safe mode is enabled.

## 4.3 Clock Source Modes

Clock Source modes can be classified as external or internal.

- External Clock modes rely on external circuitry for the clock source. Examples are: Oscillator modules (EC mode), quartz crystal resonators or ceramic resonators (LP, XT and HS modes) and Resistor-Capacitor (RC) mode circuits.
- Internal clock sources are contained internally within the Oscillator module. The Oscillator module has two internal oscillators: the 8 MHz High-Frequency Internal Oscillator (HFINTOSC) and the 31 kHz Low-Frequency Internal Oscillator (LFINTOSC).

The system clock can be selected between external or internal clock sources via the System Clock Select (SCS) bit of the OSCCON register. See **Section 4.6 “Clock Switching”** for additional information.

## 4.4 External Clock Modes

### 4.4.1 OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER (OST)

If the Oscillator module is configured for LP, XT or HS modes, the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) counts 1024 oscillations from OSC1. This occurs following a Power-on Reset (POR) and when the Power-up Timer (PWRT) has expired (if configured), or a wake-up from Sleep. During this time, the program counter does not increment and program execution is suspended. The OST ensures that the oscillator circuit, using a quartz crystal resonator or ceramic resonator, has started and is providing a stable system clock to the Oscillator module. When switching between clock sources, a delay is required to allow the new clock to stabilize. These oscillator delays are shown in Table 4-1.

In order to minimize latency between external oscillator start-up and code execution, the Two-Speed Clock Start-up mode can be selected (see **Section 4.7 “Two-Speed Clock Start-up Mode”**).

**TABLE 4-1: OSCILLATOR DELAY EXAMPLES**

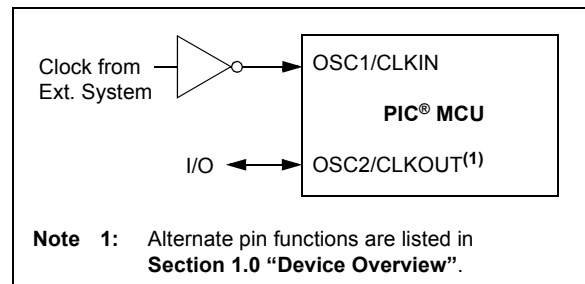
| Switch From       | Switch To            | Frequency                  | Oscillator Delay                 |
|-------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Sleep/POR         | LFINTOSC<br>HFINTOSC | 31 kHz<br>125 kHz to 8 MHz | Oscillator Warm-Up Delay (TWARM) |
| Sleep/POR         | EC, RC               | DC – 20 MHz                | 2 instruction cycles             |
| LFINTOSC (31 kHz) | EC, RC               | DC – 20 MHz                | 1 cycle of each                  |
| Sleep/POR         | LP, XT, HS           | 32 kHz to 20 MHz           | 1024 Clock Cycles (OST)          |
| LFINTOSC (31 kHz) | HFINTOSC             | 125 kHz to 8 MHz           | 1 $\mu$ s (approx.)              |

### 4.4.2 EC MODE

The External Clock (EC) mode allows an externally generated logic level as the system clock source. When operating in this mode, an external clock source is connected to the OSC1 input and the OSC2 is available for general purpose I/O. Figure 4-2 shows the pin connections for EC mode.

The Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) is disabled when EC mode is selected. Therefore, there is no delay in operation after a Power-on Reset (POR) or wake-up from Sleep. Because the PIC® MCU design is fully static, stopping the external clock input will have the effect of halting the device while leaving all data intact. Upon restarting the external clock, the device will resume operation as if no time had elapsed.

**FIGURE 4-2: EXTERNAL CLOCK (EC) MODE OPERATION**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 4.4.3 LP, XT, HS MODES

The LP, XT and HS modes support the use of quartz crystal resonators or ceramic resonators connected to OSC1 and OSC2 (Figure 4-3). The mode selects a low, medium or high gain setting of the internal inverter-amplifier to support various resonator types and speed.

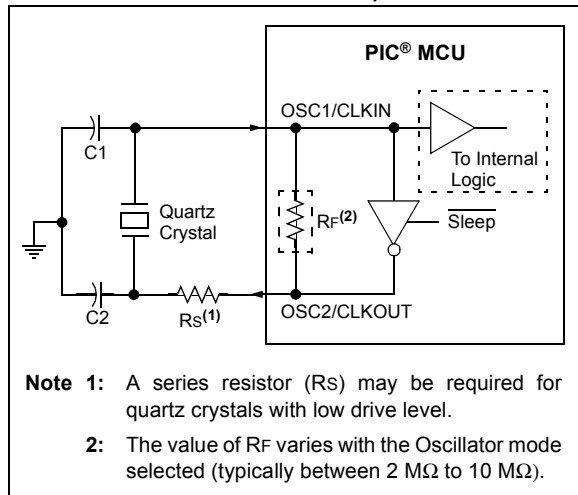
**LP** Oscillator mode selects the lowest gain setting of the internal inverter-amplifier. LP mode current consumption is the least of the three modes. This mode is designed to drive only 32.768 kHz tuning-fork type crystals (watch crystals).

**XT** Oscillator mode selects the intermediate gain setting of the internal inverter-amplifier. XT mode current consumption is the medium of the three modes. This mode is best suited to drive resonators with a medium drive level specification.

**HS** Oscillator mode selects the highest gain setting of the internal inverter-amplifier. HS mode current consumption is the highest of the three modes. This mode is best suited for resonators that require a high drive setting.

Figure 4-3 and Figure 4-4 show typical circuits for quartz crystal and ceramic resonators, respectively.

**FIGURE 4-3: QUARTZ CRYSTAL OPERATION (LP, XT OR HS MODE)**



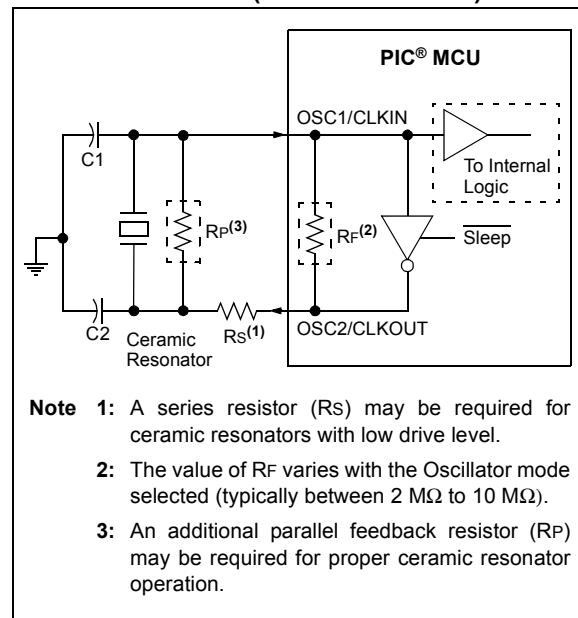
**Note 1:** Quartz crystal characteristics vary according to type, package and manufacturer. The user should consult the manufacturer data sheets for specifications and recommended application.

**2:** Always verify oscillator performance over the VDD and temperature range that is expected for the application.

**3:** For oscillator design assistance, reference the following Microchip Applications Notes:

- AN826, "Crystal Oscillator Basics and Crystal Selection for *rfPIC*<sup>®</sup> and *PIC*<sup>®</sup> Devices" (DS00826)
- AN849, "Basic *PIC*<sup>®</sup> Oscillator Design" (DS00849)
- AN943, "Practical *PIC*<sup>®</sup> Oscillator Analysis and Design" (DS00943)
- AN949, "Making Your Oscillator Work" (DS00949)

**FIGURE 4-4: CERAMIC RESONATOR OPERATION (XT OR HS MODE)**

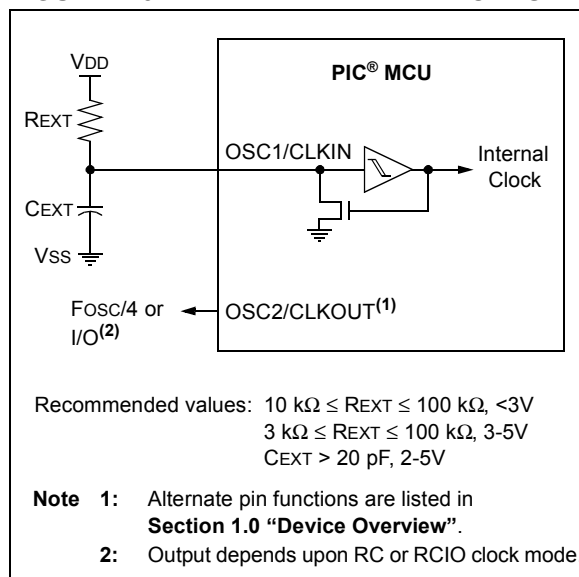


## 4.4.4 EXTERNAL RC MODES

The external Resistor-Capacitor (RC) modes support the use of an external RC circuit. This allows the designer maximum flexibility in frequency choice while keeping costs to a minimum when clock accuracy is not required. There are two modes: RC and RCIO.

In RC mode, the RC circuit connects to OSC1. OSC2/CLKOUT outputs the RC oscillator frequency divided by 4. This signal may be used to provide a clock for external circuitry, synchronization, calibration, test or other application requirements. Figure 4-5 shows the external RC mode connections.

**FIGURE 4-5: EXTERNAL RC MODES**



In RCIO mode, the RC circuit is connected to OSC1. OSC2 becomes an additional general purpose I/O pin.

The RC oscillator frequency is a function of the supply voltage, the resistor ( $R_{EXT}$ ) and capacitor ( $C_{EXT}$ ) values and the operating temperature. Other factors affecting the oscillator frequency are:

- threshold voltage variation
- component tolerances
- packaging variations in capacitance

The user also needs to take into account variation due to tolerance of external RC components used.

## 4.5 Internal Clock Modes

The Oscillator module has two independent, internal oscillators that can be configured or selected as the system clock source.

1. The **HFINTOSC** (High-Frequency Internal Oscillator) is factory calibrated and operates at 8 MHz. The frequency of the HFINTOSC can be user-adjusted via software using the OSCTUNE register (Register 4-2).
2. The **LFINTOSC** (Low-Frequency Internal Oscillator) is uncalibrated and operates at 31 kHz.

The system clock speed can be selected via software using the Internal Oscillator Frequency Select bits  $IRCF<2:0>$  of the OSCCON register.

The system clock can be selected between external or internal clock sources via the System Clock Selection (SCS) bit of the OSCCON register. See **Section 4.6 "Clock Switching"** for more information.

### 4.5.1 INTOSC AND INTOSCIO MODES

The INTOSC and INTOSCIO modes configure the internal oscillators as the system clock source when the device is programmed using the oscillator selection or the  $FOSC<2:0>$  bits in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG). See **Section 16.0 "Special Features of the CPU"** for more information.

In **INTOSC** mode, OSC1/CLKIN is available for general purpose I/O. OSC2/CLKOUT outputs the selected internal oscillator frequency divided by 4. The CLKOUT signal may be used to provide a clock for external circuitry, synchronization, calibration, test or other application requirements.

In **INTOSCIO** mode, OSC1/CLKIN and OSC2/CLKOUT are available for general purpose I/O.

### 4.5.2 HFINTOSC

The High-Frequency Internal Oscillator (HFINTOSC) is a factory calibrated 8 MHz internal clock source. The frequency of the HFINTOSC can be altered via software using the OSCTUNE register (Register 4-2).

The output of the HFINTOSC connects to a postscaler and multiplexer (see Figure 4-1). One of seven frequencies can be selected via software using the  $IRCF<2:0>$  bits of the OSCCON register. See **Section 4.5.4 "Frequency Select Bits (IRCF)"** for more information.

The HFINTOSC is enabled by selecting any frequency between 8 MHz and 125 kHz by setting the  $IRCF<2:0>$  bits of the OSCCON register  $\neq 000$ . Then, set the System Clock Source (SCS) bit of the OSCCON register to '1' or enable Two-Speed Start-up by setting the IESO bit in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG) to '1'.

The HF Internal Oscillator (HTS) bit of the OSCCON register indicates whether the HFINTOSC is stable or not.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 4.5.2.1 OSCTUNE Register

The HFINTOSC is factory calibrated but can be adjusted in software by writing to the OSCTUNE register (Register 4-2).

The default value of the OSCTUNE register is '0'. The value is a 5-bit two's complement number.

When the OSCTUNE register is modified, the HFINTOSC frequency will begin shifting to the new frequency. Code execution continues during this shift. There is no indication that the shift has occurred.

OSCTUNE does not affect the LFINTOSC frequency. Operation of features that depend on the LFINTOSC clock source frequency, such as the Power-up Timer (PWRT), Watchdog Timer (WDT), Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) and peripherals, are *not* affected by the change in frequency.

### REGISTER 4-2: OSCTUNE: OSCILLATOR TUNING REGISTER

| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
|-------|-----|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| —     | —   | —   | TUN4  | TUN3  | TUN2  | TUN1  | TUN0  |
| bit 7 |     |     |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

#### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4-0 **TUN<4:0>:** Frequency Tuning bits

01111 = Maximum frequency

01110 =

•

•

•

00001 =

00000 = Oscillator module is running at the factory-calibrated frequency.

11111 =

•

•

•

10000 = Minimum frequency

## 4.5.3 LFINTOSC

The Low-Frequency Internal Oscillator (LFINTOSC) is an uncalibrated 31 kHz internal clock source.

The output of the LFINTOSC connects to a postscaler and multiplexer (see Figure 4-1). Select 31 kHz, via software, using the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register. See **Section 4.5.4 “Frequency Select Bits (IRCF)”** for more information. The LFINTOSC is also the frequency for the Power-up Timer (PWRT), Watchdog Timer (WDT) and Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM).

The LFINTOSC is enabled by selecting 31 kHz (IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register = 000) as the system clock source (SCS bit of the OSCCON register = 1), or when any of the following are enabled:

- Two-Speed Start-up IESO bit of the Configuration Word register = 1 and IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register = 000
- Power-up Timer (PWRT)
- Watchdog Timer (WDT)
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM)

The LF Internal Oscillator (LTS) bit of the OSCCON register indicates whether the LFINTOSC is stable or not.

## 4.5.4 FREQUENCY SELECT BITS (IRCF)

The output of the 8 MHz HFINTOSC and 31 kHz LFINTOSC connects to a postscaler and multiplexer (see Figure 4-1). The Internal Oscillator Frequency Select bits IRCF<2:0> of the OSCCON register select the frequency output of the internal oscillators. One of eight frequencies can be selected via software:

- 8 MHz
- 4 MHz (Default after Reset)
- 2 MHz
- 1 MHz
- 500 kHz
- 250 kHz
- 125 kHz
- 31 kHz (LFINTOSC)

**Note:** Following any Reset, the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register are set to '110' and the frequency selection is set to 4 MHz. The user can modify the IRCF bits to select a different frequency.

## 4.5.5 HF AND LF INTOSC CLOCK SWITCH TIMING

When switching between the LFINTOSC and the HFINTOSC, the new oscillator may already be shut down to save power (see Figure 4-6). If this is the case, there is a delay after the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register are modified before the frequency selection takes place. The LTS and HTS bits of the OSCCON register will reflect the current active status of the LFINTOSC and HFINTOSC oscillators. The timing of a frequency selection is as follows:

1. IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register are modified.
2. If the new clock is shut down, a clock start-up delay is started.
3. Clock switch circuitry waits for a falling edge of the current clock.
4. CLKOUT is held low and the clock switch circuitry waits for a rising edge in the new clock.
5. CLKOUT is now connected with the new clock. LTS and HTS bits of the OSCCON register are updated as required.
6. Clock switch is complete.

See Figure 4-1 for more details.

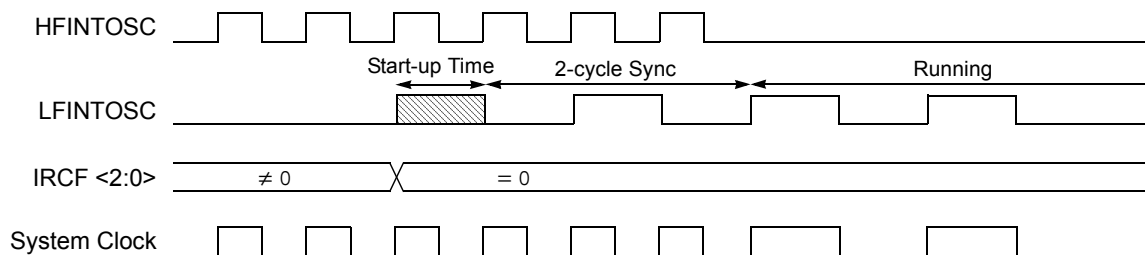
If the internal oscillator speed selected is between 8 MHz and 125 kHz, there is no start-up delay before the new frequency is selected. This is because the old and new frequencies are derived from the HFINTOSC via the postscaler and multiplexer.

Start-up delay specifications are located under the oscillator parameters of **Section 19.0 “Electrical Specifications”**.

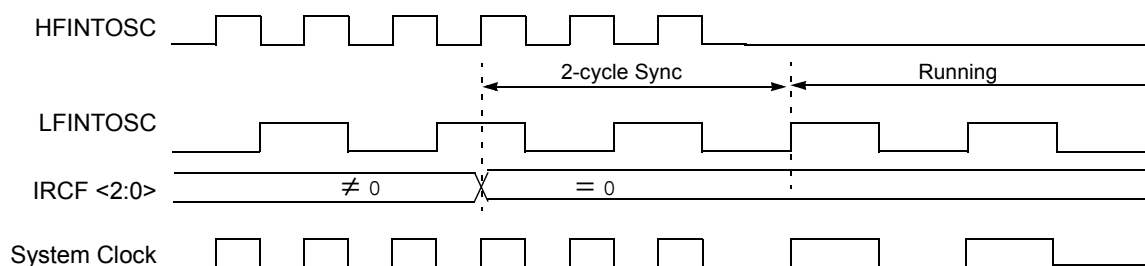
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 4-6: INTERNAL OSCILLATOR SWITCH TIMING**

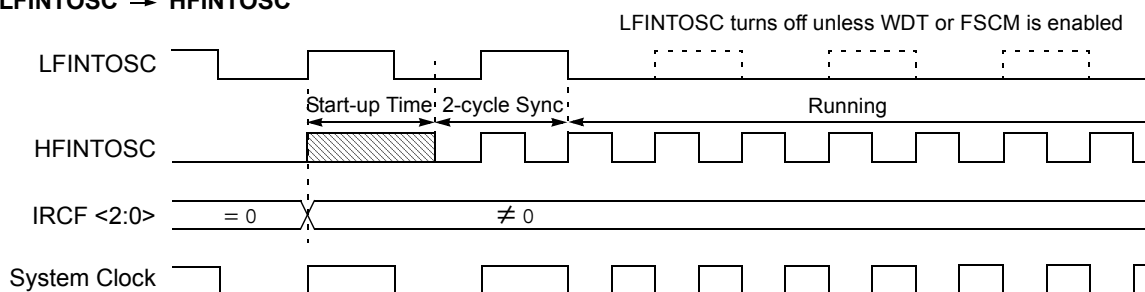
## HFINTOSC → LFINTOSC (FSCM and WDT disabled)



## HFINTOSC → LFINTOSC (Either FSCM or WDT enabled)



## LFINTOSC → HFINTOSC





## 4.6 Clock Switching

The system clock source can be switched between external and internal clock sources via software using the System Clock Select (SCS) bit of the OSCCON register.

### 4.6.1 SYSTEM CLOCK SELECT (SCS) BIT

The System Clock Select (SCS) bit of the OSCCON register selects the system clock source that is used for the CPU and peripherals.

- When the SCS bit of the OSCCON register = 0, the system clock source is determined by configuration of the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG).
- When the SCS bit of the OSCCON register = 1, the system clock source is chosen by the internal oscillator frequency selected by the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register. After a Reset, the SCS bit of the OSCCON register is always cleared.

**Note:** Any automatic clock switch, which may occur from Two-Speed Start-up or Fail-Safe Clock Monitor, does not update the SCS bit of the OSCCON register. The user can monitor the OSTS bit of the OSCCON register to determine the current system clock source.

### 4.6.2 OSCILLATOR START-UP TIME-OUT STATUS (OSTS) BIT

The Oscillator Start-up Time-out Status (OSTS) bit of the OSCCON register indicates whether the system clock is running from the external clock source, as defined by the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG), or from the internal clock source. In particular, OSTS indicates that the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) has timed out for LP, XT or HS modes.

## 4.7 Two-Speed Clock Start-up Mode

Two-Speed Start-up mode provides additional power savings by minimizing the latency between external oscillator start-up and code execution. In applications that make heavy use of the Sleep mode, Two-Speed Start-up will remove the external oscillator start-up time from the time spent awake and can reduce the overall power consumption of the device.

This mode allows the application to wake-up from Sleep, perform a few instructions using the INTOSC as the clock source and go back to Sleep without waiting for the primary oscillator to become stable.

**Note:** Executing a SLEEP instruction will abort the oscillator start-up time and will cause the OSTS bit of the OSCCON register to remain clear.

When the Oscillator module is configured for LP, XT or HS modes, the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) is enabled (see **Section 4.4.1 “Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)”**). The OST will suspend program execution until 1024 oscillations are counted. Two-Speed Start-up mode minimizes the delay in code execution by operating from the internal oscillator as the OST is counting. When the OST count reaches 1024 and the OSTS bit of the OSCCON register is set, program execution switches to the external oscillator.

### 4.7.1 TWO-SPEED START-UP MODE CONFIGURATION

Two-Speed Start-up mode is configured by the following settings:

- IESO (of the Configuration Word register) = 1; Internal/External Switchover bit (Two-Speed Start-up mode enabled).
- SCS (of the OSCCON register) = 0.
- FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG) configured for LP, XT or HS mode.

Two-Speed Start-up mode is entered after:

- Power-on Reset (POR) and, if enabled, after Power-up Timer (PWRT) has expired, or
- Wake-up from Sleep.

If the external clock oscillator is configured to be anything other than LP, XT or HS mode, then Two-Speed Start-up is disabled. This is because the external clock oscillator does not require any stabilization time after POR or an exit from Sleep.

### 4.7.2 TWO-SPEED START-UP SEQUENCE

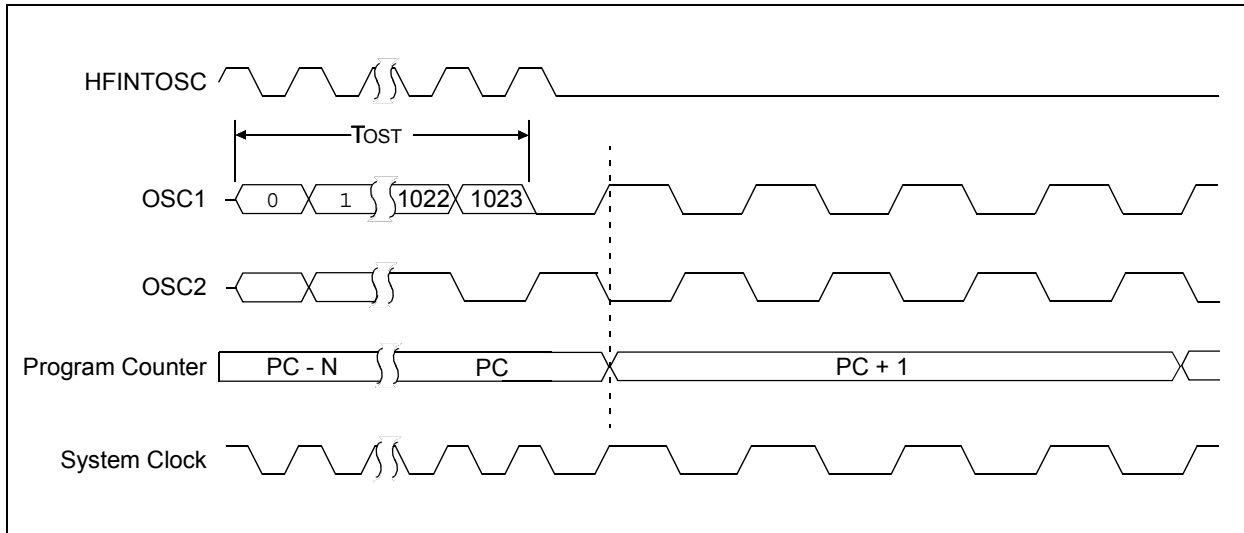
1. Wake-up from Power-on Reset or Sleep.
2. Instructions begin execution by the internal oscillator at the frequency set in the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register.
3. OST enabled to count 1024 clock cycles.
4. OST timed out, wait for falling edge of the internal oscillator.
5. OSTS is set.
6. System clock held low until the next falling edge of new clock (LP, XT or HS mode).
7. System clock is switched to external clock source.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 4.7.3 CHECKING TWO-SPEED CLOCK STATUS

Checking the state of the OSTS bit of the OSCCON register will confirm if the microcontroller is running from the external clock source, as defined by the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG), or the internal oscillator.

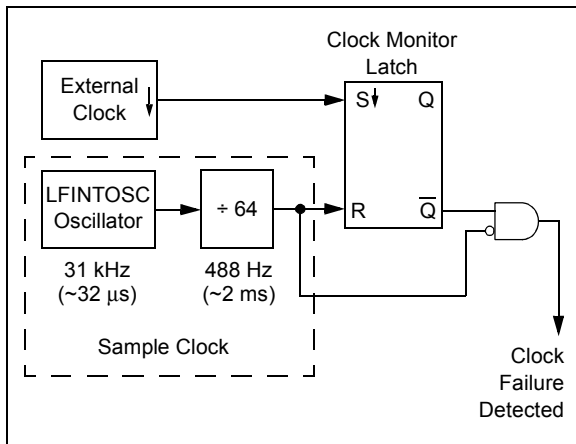
**FIGURE 4-7: TWO-SPEED START-UP**



## 4.8 Fail-Safe Clock Monitor

The Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) allows the device to continue operating should the external oscillator fail. The FSCM can detect oscillator failure any time after the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) has expired. The FSCM is enabled by setting the FCMEN bit in the Configuration Word register (CONFIG). The FSCM is applicable to all external oscillator modes (LP, XT, HS, EC, RC and RCIO).

**FIGURE 4-8: FSCM BLOCK DIAGRAM**



### 4.8.1 FAIL-SAFE DETECTION

The FSCM module detects a failed oscillator by comparing the external oscillator to the FSCM sample clock. The sample clock is generated by dividing the LFINTOSC by 64. See Figure 4-8. Inside the fail detector block is a latch. The external clock sets the latch on each falling edge of the external clock. The sample clock clears the latch on each rising edge of the sample clock. A failure is detected when an entire half-cycle of the sample clock elapses before the primary clock goes low.

### 4.8.2 FAIL-SAFE OPERATION

When the external clock fails, the FSCM switches the device clock to an internal clock source and sets the bit flag OSFIF of the PIR2 register. Setting this flag will generate an interrupt if the OSFIE bit of the PIE2 register is also set. The device firmware can then take steps to mitigate the problems that may arise from a failed clock. The system clock will continue to be sourced from the internal clock source until the device firmware successfully restarts the external oscillator and switches back to external operation.

The internal clock source chosen by the FSCM is determined by the IRCF<2:0> bits of the OSCCON register. This allows the internal oscillator to be configured before a failure occurs.

### 4.8.3 FAIL-SAFE CONDITION CLEARING

The Fail-Safe condition is cleared after a Reset, executing a *SLEEP* instruction or toggling the SCS bit of the OSCCON register. When the SCS bit is toggled, the OST is restarted. While the OST is running, the device continues to operate from the INTOSC selected in OSCCON. When the OST times out, the Fail-Safe condition is cleared and the device will be operating from the external clock source. The Fail-Safe condition must be cleared before the OSFIF flag can be cleared.

### 4.8.4 RESET OR WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP

The FSCM is designed to detect an oscillator failure after the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) has expired. The OST is used after waking up from Sleep and after any type of Reset. The OST is not used with the EC or RC Clock modes so that the FSCM will be active as soon as the Reset or wake-up has completed. When the FSCM is enabled, the Two-Speed Start-up is also enabled. Therefore, the device will always be executing code while the OST is operating.

**Note:** Due to the wide range of oscillator start-up times, the Fail-Safe circuit is not active during oscillator start-up (i.e., after exiting Reset or Sleep). After an appropriate amount of time, the user should check the OSTS bit of the OSCCON register to verify the oscillator start-up and that the system clock switchover has successfully completed.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 4-9: FSCM TIMING DIAGRAM**

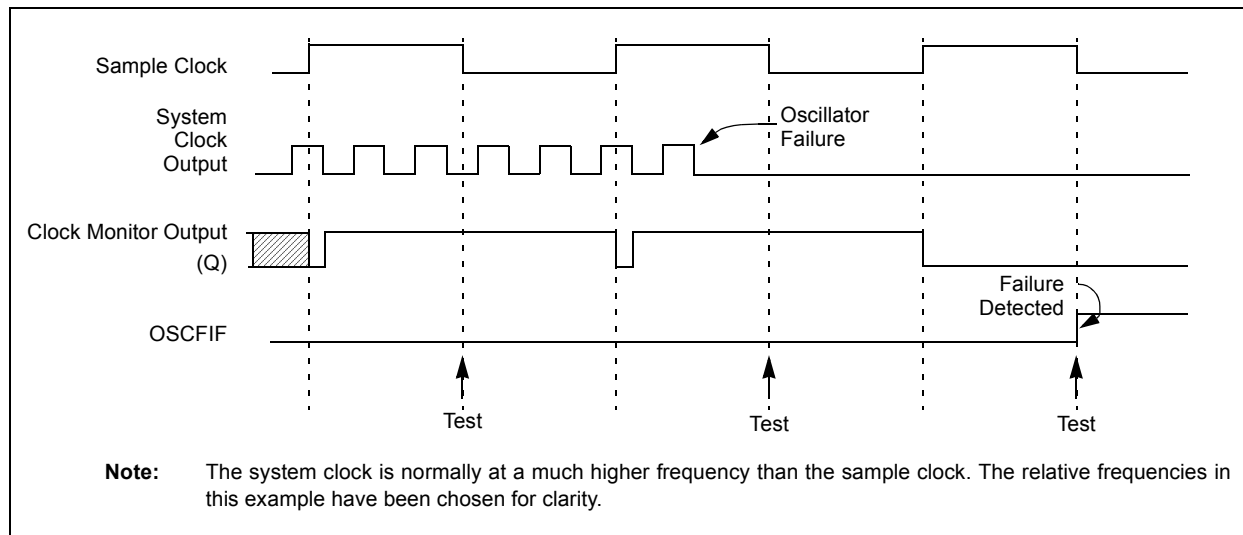


**TABLE 4-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CLOCK SOURCES**

| Name                  | Bit 7  | Bit 6  | Bit 5   | Bit 4   | Bit 3   | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets <sup>(1)</sup> |
|-----------------------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|------------------------------------------|
| CONFIG <sup>(2)</sup> | CPD    | CP     | MCLRE   | PWRTE   | WDTE    | FOSC2  | FOSC1  | FOSC0  | —                 | —                                        |
| INTCON                | GIE    | PEIE   | T0IE    | INTE    | RBIE    | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                                |
| OSCCON                | —      | IRCF2  | IRCF1   | IRCF0   | OSTS    | HTS    | LTS    | SCS    | -110 x000         | -110 x000                                |
| OSCTUNE               | —      | —      | —       | TUN4    | TUN3    | TUN2   | TUN1   | TUN0   | ---0 0000         | ---u uuuu                                |
| PIE2                  | OSFIE  | C2IE   | C1IE    | LCDIE   | —       | LVDIE  | —      | CCP2IE | 0000 -0-0         | 0000 -0-0                                |
| PIR2                  | OSFIF  | C2IF   | C1IF    | LCDIF   | —       | LVDIF  | —      | CCP2IF | 0000 -0-0         | 0000 -0-0                                |
| T1CON                 | T1GINV | TMR1GE | T1CKPS1 | T1CKPS0 | T1OSCEN | T1SYNC | TMR1CS | TMR1ON | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                                |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by oscillators.

**Note 1:** Other (non Power-up) Resets include MCLR Reset and Watchdog Timer Reset during normal operation.

**Note 2:** See Configuration Word register (CONFIG) for operation of all register bits.

## 5.0 TIMER0 MODULE

The Timer0 module is an 8-bit timer/counter with the following features:

- 8-bit timer/counter register (TMR0)
- 8-bit prescaler (shared with Watchdog Timer)
- Programmable internal or external clock source
- Programmable external clock edge selection
- Interrupt on overflow

Figure 5-1 is a block diagram of the Timer0 module.

## 5.1 Timer0 Operation

When used as a timer, the Timer0 module can be used as either an 8-bit timer or an 8-bit counter.

### 5.1.1 8-BIT TIMER MODE

When used as a timer, the Timer0 module will increment every instruction cycle (without prescaler). Timer mode is selected by clearing the T0CS bit of the OPTION register to '0'.

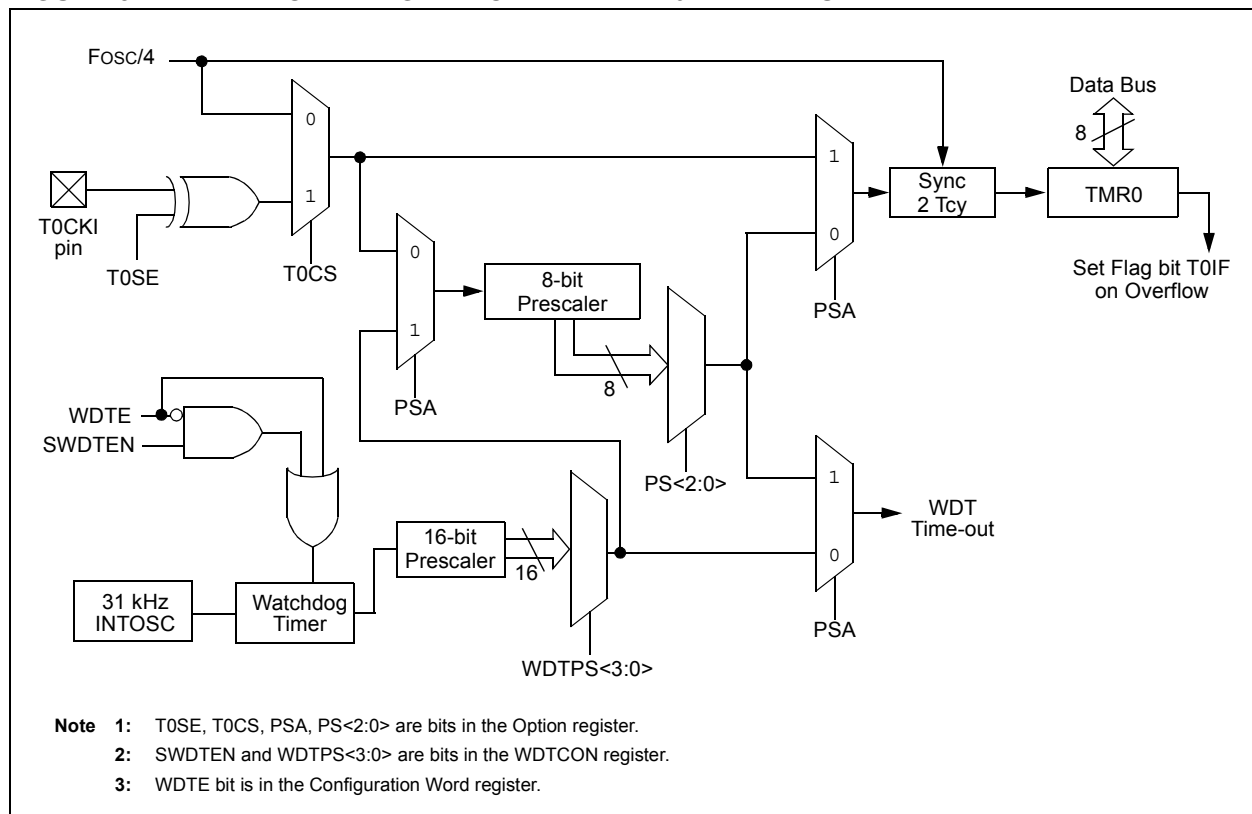
When TMR0 is written, the increment is inhibited for two instruction cycles immediately following the write.

**Note:** The value written to the TMR0 register can be adjusted, in order to account for the two instruction cycle delay when TMR0 is written.

### 5.1.2 8-BIT COUNTER MODE

When used as a counter, the Timer0 module will increment on every rising or falling edge of the T0CKI pin. The incrementing edge is determined by the T0SE bit of the Option register. Counter mode is selected by setting the T0CS bit of the Option register to '1'.

**FIGURE 5-1: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF THE TIMER0/WDT PRESCALER**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 5.1.3 SOFTWARE PROGRAMMABLE PRESCALER

A single software programmable prescaler is available for use with either Timer0 or the Watchdog Timer (WDT), but not both simultaneously. The prescaler assignment is controlled by the PSA bit of the Option register. To assign the prescaler to Timer0, the PSA bit must be cleared to a '0'.

There are 8 prescaler options for the Timer0 module ranging from 1:2 to 1:256. The prescale values are selectable via the PS<2:0> bits of the OPTION register. In order to have a 1:1 prescaler value for the Timer0 module, the prescaler must be assigned to the WDT module.

The prescaler is not readable or writable. When assigned to the Timer0 module, all instructions writing to the TMR0 register will clear the prescaler.

When the prescaler is assigned to WDT, a CLRWDT instruction will clear the prescaler along with the WDT.

### 5.1.3.1 Switching Prescaler Between Timer0 and WDT Modules

As a result of having the prescaler assigned to either Timer0 or the WDT, it is possible to generate an unintended device Reset when switching prescaler values. When changing the prescaler assignment from Timer0 to the WDT module, the instruction sequence shown in Example 5-1, must be executed.

#### EXAMPLE 5-1: CHANGING PRESCALER (TIMER0 → WDT)

```
BANKSEL    TMR0          ;
CLRWDTP    ;Clear WDT
CLRWF      TMR0          ;Clear TMR0 and
                        ;prescaler

BANKSEL    OPTION_REG    ;
BSF        OPTION_REG,PSA ;Select WDT
CLRWDTP    ;
                        ;

MOVLW      b'11111000'    ;Mask prescaler
ANDWF      OPTION_REG,W   ;bits
IORLW      b'00000101'    ;Set WDT prescaler
MOVWF      OPTION_REG     ;to 1:32
```

When changing the prescaler assignment from the WDT to the Timer0 module, the following instruction sequence must be executed (see Example 5-2).

#### EXAMPLE 5-2: CHANGING PRESCALER (WDT → TIMER0)

```
CLRWDTP    ;Clear WDT and
                        ;prescaler

BANKSEL    OPTION_REG    ;
MOVLW      b'11110000'    ;Mask TMR0 select and
ANDWF      OPTION_REG,W   ;prescaler bits
IORLW      b'00000011'    ;Set prescale to 1:16
MOVWF      OPTION_REG     ;
```

## 5.1.4 TIMER0 INTERRUPT

Timer0 will generate an interrupt when the TMR0 register overflows from FFh to 00h. The T0IF interrupt flag bit of the INTCON register is set every time the TMR0 register overflows, regardless of whether or not the Timer0 interrupt is enabled. The T0IF bit must be cleared in software. The Timer0 interrupt enable is the T0IE bit of the INTCON register.

**Note:** The Timer0 interrupt cannot wake the processor from Sleep since the timer is frozen during Sleep.

## 5.1.5 USING TIMER0 WITH AN EXTERNAL CLOCK

When Timer0 is in Counter mode, the synchronization of the T0CKI input and the Timer0 register is accomplished by sampling the prescaler output on the Q2 and Q4 cycles of the internal phase clocks. Therefore, the high and low periods of the external clock source must meet the timing requirements as shown in Section 19.0 "Electrical Specifications"

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**REGISTER 5-1: OPTION\_REG: OPTION REGISTER**

| R/W-1                           | R/W-1  | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
|---------------------------------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| $\overline{\text{RBP}}\text{U}$ | INTEDG | T0CS  | T0SE  | PSA   | PS2   | PS1   | PS0   |
| bit 7                           |        |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit                      W = Writable bit                      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 -n = Value at POR                      '1' = Bit is set                      '0' = Bit is cleared                      x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7                       **$\overline{\text{RBP}}\text{U}$ :** PORTB Pull-up Enable bit  
                             1 = PORTB pull-ups are disabled  
                             0 = PORTB pull-ups are enabled by individual PORT latch values
- bit 6                      **INTEDG:** Interrupt Edge Select bit  
                             1 = Interrupt on rising edge of INT pin  
                             0 = Interrupt on falling edge of INT pin
- bit 5                      **T0CS:** TMR0 Clock Source Select bit  
                             1 = Transition on T0CKI pin  
                             0 = Internal instruction cycle clock ( $F_{osc}/4$ )
- bit 4                      **T0SE:** TMR0 Source Edge Select bit  
                             1 = Increment on high-to-low transition on T0CKI pin  
                             0 = Increment on low-to-high transition on T0CKI pin
- bit 3                      **PSA:** Prescaler Assignment bit  
                             1 = Prescaler is assigned to the WDT  
                             0 = Prescaler is assigned to the Timer0 module
- bit 2-0                      **PS<2:0>:** Prescaler Rate Select bits

| BIT VALUE | TMR0 RATE | WDT RATE |
|-----------|-----------|----------|
| 000       | 1 : 2     | 1 : 1    |
| 001       | 1 : 4     | 1 : 2    |
| 010       | 1 : 8     | 1 : 4    |
| 011       | 1 : 16    | 1 : 8    |
| 100       | 1 : 32    | 1 : 16   |
| 101       | 1 : 64    | 1 : 32   |
| 110       | 1 : 128   | 1 : 64   |
| 111       | 1 : 256   | 1 : 128  |

**Note 1:** A dedicated 16-bit WDT postscaler is available. See **Section 16.4 “Watchdog Timer (WDT)”** for more information.

**TABLE 5-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER0**

| Name       | Bit 7                           | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|------------|---------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| TMR0       | Timer0 Module Register          |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| INTCON     | GIE                             | PEIE   | T0IE   | INTE   | RBIE   | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| OPTION_REG | $\overline{\text{RBP}}\text{U}$ | INTEDG | T0CS   | T0SE   | PSA    | PS2    | PS1    | PS0    | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| TRISA      | TRISA7                          | TRISA6 | TRISA5 | TRISA4 | TRISA3 | TRISA2 | TRISA1 | TRISA0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |

**Legend:** - = Unimplemented locations, read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer0 module.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 6.0 TIMER1 MODULE WITH GATE CONTROL

The Timer1 module is a 16-bit timer/counter with the following features:

- 16-bit timer/counter register pair (TMR1H:TMR1L)
- Programmable internal or external clock source
- 3-bit prescaler
- Optional LP oscillator
- Synchronous or asynchronous operation
- Timer1 gate (count enable) via comparator or T1G pin
- Interrupt on overflow
- Wake-up on overflow (external clock, Asynchronous mode only)
- Clock source for LCD module

Figure 6-1 is a block diagram of the Timer1 module.

## 6.1 Timer1 Operation

The Timer1 module is a 16-bit incrementing counter which is accessed through the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair. Writes to TMR1H or TMR1L directly update the counter.

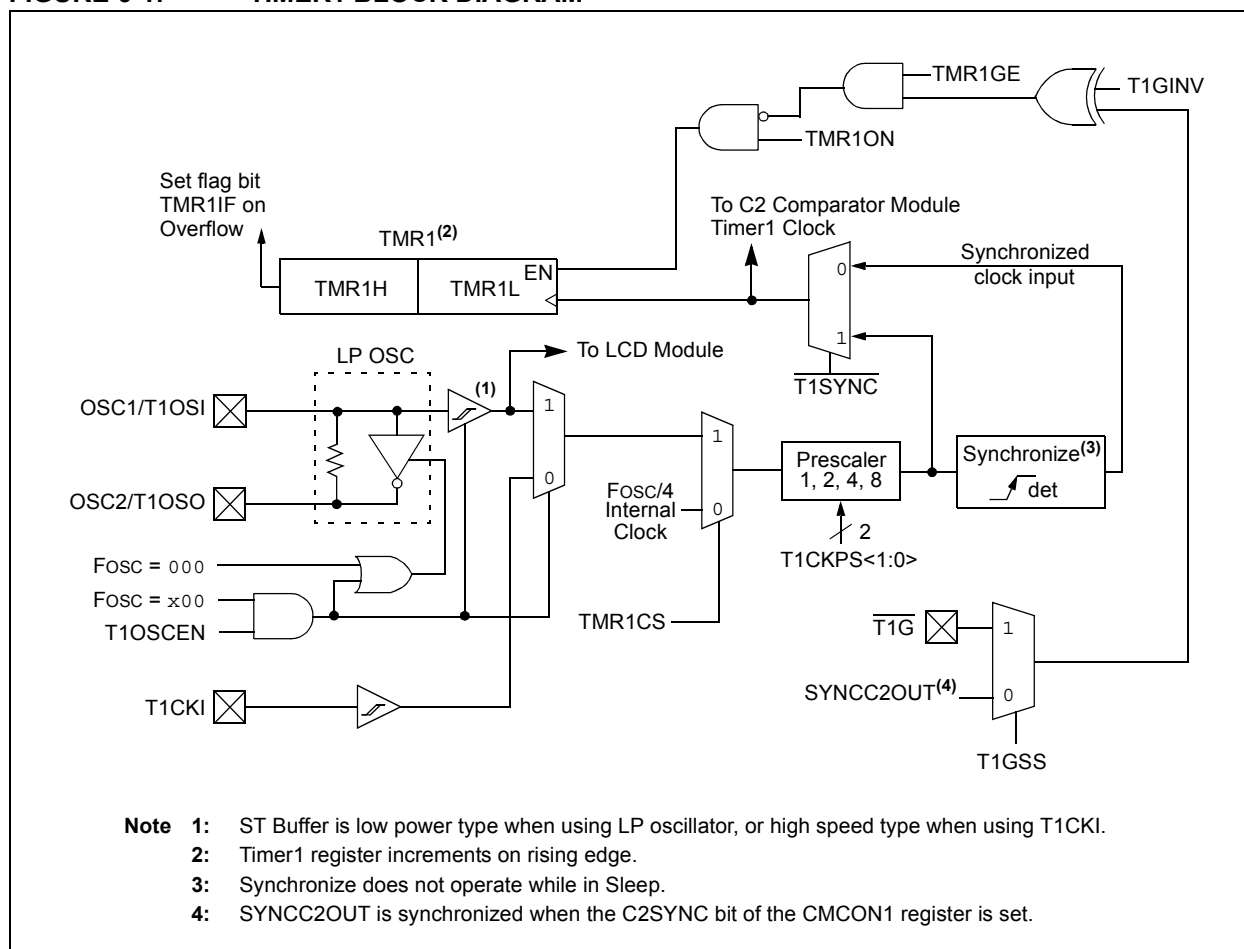
When used with an internal clock source, the module is a timer. When used with an external clock source, the module can be used as either a timer or counter.

## 6.2 Clock Source Selection

The TMR1CS bit of the T1CON register is used to select the clock source. When TMR1CS = 0, the clock source is Fosc/4. When TMR1CS = 1, the clock source is supplied externally.

| Clock Source | TMR1CS |
|--------------|--------|
| Fosc/4       | 0      |
| T1CKI pin    | 1      |

**FIGURE 6-1: TIMER1 BLOCK DIAGRAM**





## 6.2.1 INTERNAL CLOCK SOURCE

When the internal clock source is selected, the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair will increment on multiples of Tcy as determined by the Timer1 prescaler.

## 6.2.2 EXTERNAL CLOCK SOURCE

When the external clock source is selected, the Timer1 module may work as a timer or a counter.

When counting, Timer1 is incremented on the rising edge of the external clock input T1CKI. In addition, the Counter mode clock can be synchronized to the microcontroller system clock or run asynchronously.

In Counter mode, a falling edge must be registered by the counter prior to the first incrementing rising edge after one or more of the following conditions:

- Timer1 is enabled after POR or BOR Reset
- A write to TMR1H or TMR1L
- T1CKI is high when Timer1 is disabled and when Timer1 is reenabled T1CKI is low. See Figure 6-2.

## 6.3 Timer1 Prescaler

Timer1 has four prescaler options allowing 1, 2, 4 or 8 divisions of the clock input. The T1CKPS bits of the T1CON register control the prescale counter. The prescale counter is not directly readable or writable; however, the prescaler counter is cleared upon a write to TMR1H or TMR1L.

## 6.4 Timer1 Oscillator

A low-power 32.768 kHz crystal oscillator is built-in between pins OSC1 (input) and OSC2 (amplifier output). The oscillator is enabled by setting the T1OSCEN control bit of the T1CON register. The oscillator will continue to run during Sleep.

The Timer1 oscillator is shared with the system LP oscillator. Thus, Timer1 can use this mode only when the primary system clock is derived from the internal oscillator or when in LP oscillator mode. The user must provide a software time delay to ensure proper oscillator start-up.

TRISA7 and TRISA6 bits are set when the Timer1 oscillator is enabled. RA7 and RA6 bits read as '0' and TRISA7 and TRISA6 bits read as '1'.

**Note:** The oscillator requires a start-up and stabilization time before use. Thus, T1OSCEN should be set and a suitable delay observed prior to enabling Timer1.

## 6.5 Timer1 Operation in Asynchronous Counter Mode

If control bit  $\overline{T1SYNC}$  of the T1CON register is set, the external clock input is not synchronized. The timer continues to increment asynchronous to the internal phase clocks. The timer will continue to run during Sleep and can generate an interrupt on overflow, which will wake-up the processor. However, special precautions in software are needed to read/write the timer (see **Section 6.5.1 "Reading and Writing Timer1 in Asynchronous Counter Mode"**).

**Note 1:** When switching from synchronous to asynchronous operation, it is possible to skip an increment. When switching from asynchronous to synchronous operation, it is possible to produce an additional increment.

### 6.5.1 READING AND WRITING TIMER1 IN ASYNCHRONOUS COUNTER MODE

Reading TMR1H or TMR1L while the timer is running from an external asynchronous clock will ensure a valid read (taken care of in hardware). However, the user should keep in mind that reading the 16-bit timer in two 8-bit values itself poses certain problems, since the timer may overflow between the reads.

For writes, it is recommended that the user simply stop the timer and write the desired values. A write contention may occur by writing to the timer registers, while the register is incrementing. This may produce an unpredictable value in the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair.

## 6.6 Timer1 Gate

Timer1 gate source is software configurable to be the  $\overline{T1G}$  pin or the output of Comparator C2. This allows the device to directly time external events using  $\overline{T1G}$  or analog events using Comparator C2. See the CMCON1 register (Register 8-2) for selecting the Timer1 gate source. This feature can simplify the software for a Delta-Sigma A/D converter and many other applications. For more information on Delta-Sigma A/D converters, see the Microchip web site ([www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com)).

**Note:** TMR1GE bit of the T1CON register must be set to use the Timer1 gate.

Timer1 gate can be inverted using the T1GINV bit of the T1CON register, whether it originates from the  $\overline{T1G}$  pin or Comparator C2 output. This configures Timer1 to measure either the active-high or active-low time between events.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 6.7 Timer1 Interrupt

The Timer1 register pair (TMR1H:TMR1L) increments to FFFFh and rolls over to 0000h. When Timer1 rolls over, the Timer1 interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register is set. To enable the interrupt on rollover, you must set these bits:

- Timer1 interrupt enable bit of the PIE1 register
- PEIE bit of the INTCON register
- GIE bit of the INTCON register

The interrupt is cleared by clearing the TMR1IF bit in the Interrupt Service Routine.

**Note:** The TMR1H:TMR1L register pair and the TMR1IF bit should be cleared before enabling interrupts.

## 6.8 Timer1 Operation During Sleep

Timer1 can only operate during Sleep when setup in Asynchronous Counter mode. In this mode, an external crystal or clock source can be used to increment the counter. To set up the timer to wake the device:

- TMR1ON bit of the T1CON register must be set
- TMR1IE bit of the PIE1 register must be set
- PEIE bit of the INTCON register must be set

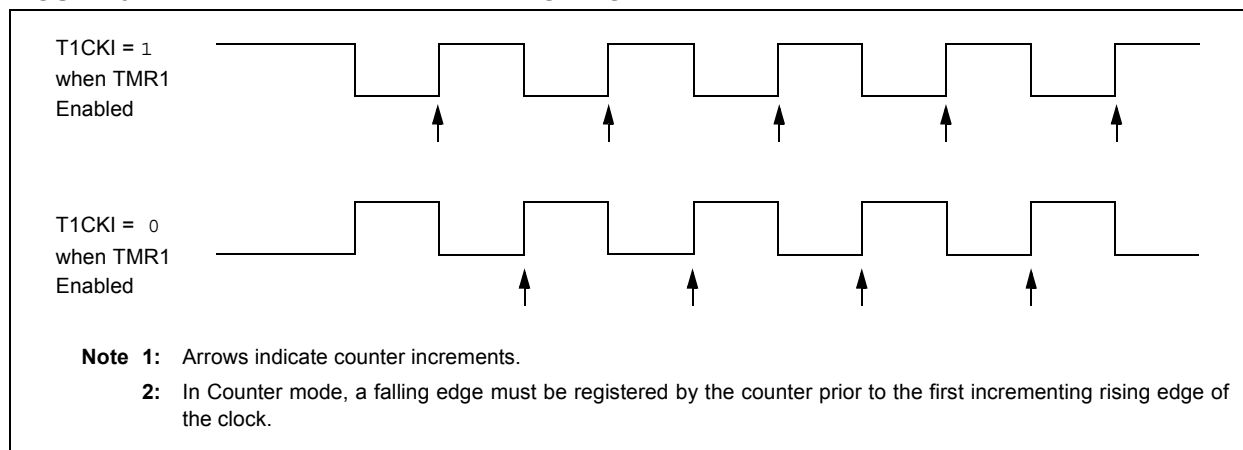
The device will wake-up on an overflow and execute the next instruction. If the GIE bit of the INTCON register is set, the device will call the Interrupt Service Routine (0004h).

## 6.9 Clock Source for LCD Module

The Timer1 oscillator can be used to provide a clock for the LCD module. This clock may be configured to remain running during Sleep.

For more information, see **Section 10.0 “Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) Driver Module”**.

**FIGURE 6-2: TIMER1 INCREMENTING EDGE**



## 6.10 Timer1 Control Register

The Timer1 Control register (T1CON), shown in Register 6-1, is used to control Timer1 and select the various features of the Timer1 module.

**REGISTER 6-1: T1CON: TIMER 1 CONTROL REGISTER**

| R/W-0                 | R/W-0                 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|
| T1GINV <sup>(1)</sup> | TMR1GE <sup>(2)</sup> | T1CKPS1 | T1CKPS0 | T1OSCEN | T1SYNC | TMR1CS | TMR1ON |
| bit 7                 |                       |         |         |         |        |        | bit 0  |

**Legend:**

|                   |                  |                                              |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| R = Readable bit  | W = Writable bit | U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'           |
| -n = Value at POR | '1' = Bit is set | '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown |

- bit 7      **T1GINV:** Timer1 Gate Invert bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Timer1 gate is active-high (Timer1 counts when gate is high)  
0 = Timer1 gate is active-low (Timer1 counts when gate is low)
- bit 6      **TMR1GE:** Timer1 Gate Enable bit<sup>(2)</sup>  
If TMR1ON = 0:  
This bit is ignored  
If TMR1ON = 1:  
1 = Timer1 counting is controlled by the Timer1 Gate function  
0 = Timer1 is always counting
- bit 5-4      **T1CKPS<1:0>:** Timer1 Input Clock Prescale Select bits  
11 = 1:8 Prescale Value  
10 = 1:4 Prescale Value  
01 = 1:2 Prescale Value  
00 = 1:1 Prescale Value
- bit 3      **T1OSCEN:** LP Oscillator Enable Control bit  
If INTOSC without CLKOUT oscillator is active:  
1 = LP oscillator is enabled for Timer1 clock  
0 = LP oscillator is off  
Else:  
This bit is ignored. LP oscillator is disabled.
- bit 2      **T1SYNC:** Timer1 External Clock Input Synchronization Control bit  
TMR1CS = 1:  
1 = Do not synchronize external clock input  
0 = Synchronize external clock input  
TMR1CS = 0:  
This bit is ignored. Timer1 uses the internal clock.
- bit 1      **TMR1CS:** Timer1 Clock Source Select bit  
1 = External clock from T1CKI pin (on the rising edge)  
0 = Internal clock (FOSC/4)
- bit 0      **TMR1ON:** Timer1 On bit  
1 = Enables Timer1  
0 = Stops Timer1

**Note 1:** T1GINV bit inverts the Timer1 gate logic, regardless of source.

**2:** TMR1GE bit must be set to use either  $\overline{T1G}$  pin or C2OUT, as selected by the T1GSS bit of the CMCON1 register, as a Timer1 gate source.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 6-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER1**

| Name   | Bit 7                                                                       | Bit 6  | Bit 5   | Bit 4   | Bit 3   | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| CMCON1 | —                                                                           | —      | —       | —       | —       | —      | T1GSS  | C2SYNC | ---- --10         | ---- --10                 |
| INTCON | GIE                                                                         | PEIE   | T0IE    | INTE    | RBIE    | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| PIE1   | EEIE                                                                        | ADIE   | RCIE    | TXIE    | SSPIE   | CCP1IE | TMR2IE | TMR1IE | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR1   | EEIF                                                                        | ADIF   | RCIF    | TXIF    | SSPIF   | CCP1IF | TMR2IF | TMR1IF | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TMR1H  | Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register  |        |         |         |         |        |        |        | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| TMR1L  | Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register |        |         |         |         |        |        |        | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| T1CON  | T1GINV                                                                      | TMR1GE | T1CKPS1 | T1CKPS0 | T1OSCEN | T1SYNC | TMR1CS | TMR1ON | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer1 module.

## 7.0 TIMER2 MODULE

The Timer2 module is an 8-bit timer with the following features:

- 8-bit timer register (TMR2)
- 8-bit period register (PR2)
- Interrupt on TMR2 match with PR2
- Software programmable prescaler (1:1, 1:4, 1:16)
- Software programmable postscaler (1:1 to 1:16)

See Figure 7-1 for a block diagram of Timer2.

### 7.1 Timer2 Operation

The clock input to the Timer2 module is the system instruction clock ( $F_{osc}/4$ ). The clock is fed into the Timer2 prescaler, which has prescale options of 1:1, 1:4 or 1:16. The output of the prescaler is then used to increment the TMR2 register.

The values of TMR2 and PR2 are constantly compared to determine when they match. TMR2 will increment from 00h until it matches the value in PR2. When a match occurs, two things happen:

- TMR2 is reset to 00h on the next increment cycle.
- The Timer2 postscaler is incremented.

The match output of the Timer2/PR2 comparator is then fed into the Timer2 postscaler. The postscaler has postscale options of 1:1 to 1:16 inclusive. The output of the Timer2 postscaler is used to set the TMR2IF interrupt flag bit in the PIR1 register.

The TMR2 and PR2 registers are both fully readable and writable. On any Reset, the TMR2 register is set to 00h and the PR2 register is set to FFh.

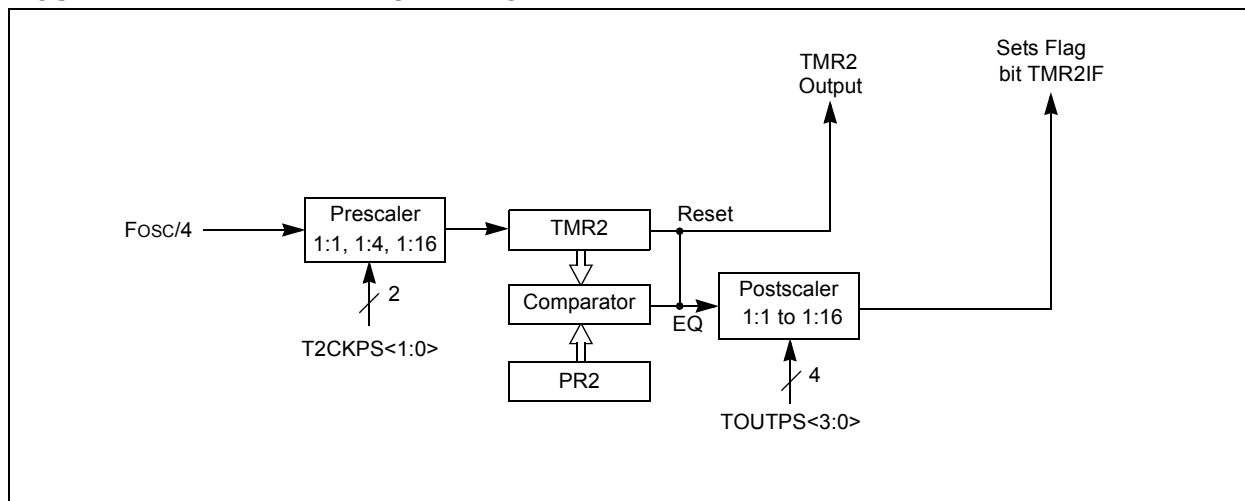
Timer2 is turned on by setting the TMR2ON bit in the T2CON register to a '1'. Timer2 is turned off by clearing the TMR2ON bit to a '0'.

The Timer2 prescaler is controlled by the T2CKPS bits in the T2CON register. The Timer2 postscaler is controlled by the TOUTPS bits in the T2CON register. The prescaler and postscaler counters are cleared when:

- A write to TMR2 occurs.
- A write to T2CON occurs.
- Any device Reset occurs (Power-on Reset,  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  Reset, Watchdog Timer Reset, or Brown-out Reset).

**Note:** TMR2 is not cleared when T2CON is written.

**FIGURE 7-1: TIMER2 BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**REGISTER 7-1: T2CON: TIMER 2 CONTROL REGISTER**

|       |         |         |         |         |        |         |         |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0  | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —     | TOUTPS3 | TOUTPS2 | TOUTPS1 | TOUTPS0 | TMR2ON | T2CKPS1 | T2CKPS0 |
| bit 7 |         |         |         |         |        |         | bit 0   |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-3 **TOUTPS<3:0>:** Timer2 Output Postscaler Select bits

0000 = 1:1 Postscaler  
 0001 = 1:2 Postscaler  
 0010 = 1:3 Postscaler  
 0011 = 1:4 Postscaler  
 0100 = 1:5 Postscaler  
 0101 = 1:6 Postscaler  
 0110 = 1:7 Postscaler  
 0111 = 1:8 Postscaler  
 1000 = 1:9 Postscaler  
 1001 = 1:10 Postscaler  
 1010 = 1:11 Postscaler  
 1011 = 1:12 Postscaler  
 1100 = 1:13 Postscaler  
 1101 = 1:14 Postscaler  
 1110 = 1:15 Postscaler  
 1111 = 1:16 Postscaler

bit 2 **TMR2ON:** Timer2 On bit

1 = Timer2 is on  
 0 = Timer2 is off

bit 1-0 **T2CKPS<1:0>:** Timer2 Clock Prescale Select bits

00 = Prescaler is 1  
 01 = Prescaler is 4  
 1x = Prescaler is 16

**TABLE 7-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER2**

| Name   | Bit 7                                        | Bit 6   | Bit 5   | Bit 4   | Bit 3   | Bit 2  | Bit 1   | Bit 0   | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------|----------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|---------|---------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON | GIE                                          | PEIE    | TOIE    | INTE    | RBIE    | TOIF   | INTF    | RBIF    | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| PIE1   | EEIE                                         | ADIE    | RCIE    | TXIE    | SSPIE   | CCP1IE | TMR2IE  | TMR1IE  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR1   | EEIF                                         | ADIF    | RCIF    | TXIF    | SSPIF   | CCP1IF | TMR2IF  | TMR1IF  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PR2    | Timer2 Module Period Register                |         |         |         |         |        |         |         | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| TMR2   | Holding Register for the 8-bit TMR2 Register |         |         |         |         |        |         |         | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| T2CON  | —                                            | TOUTPS3 | TOUTPS2 | TOUTPS1 | TOUTPS0 | TMR2ON | T2CKPS1 | T2CKPS0 | -000 0000         | -000 0000                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Timer2 module.

## 8.0 COMPARATOR MODULE

Comparators are used to interface analog circuits to a digital circuit by comparing two analog voltages and providing a digital indication of their relative magnitudes. The comparators are very useful mixed signal building blocks because they provide analog functionality independent of the program execution. The Analog Comparator module includes the following features:

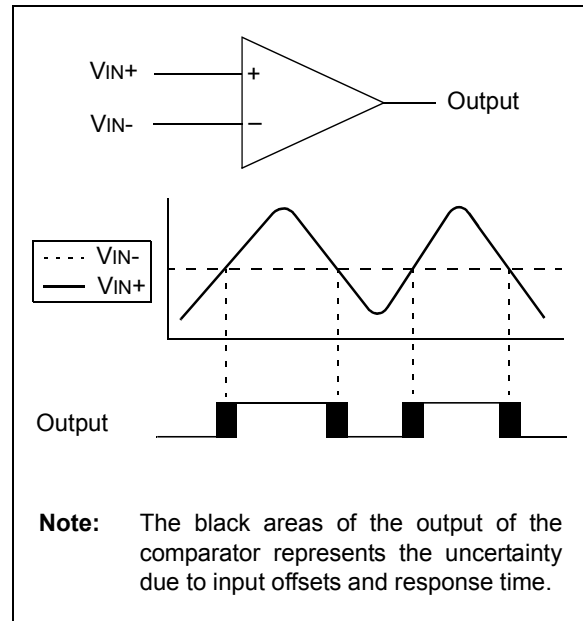
- Dual comparators
- Multiple comparator configurations
- Comparator outputs are available internally/externally
- Programmable output polarity
- Interrupt-on-change
- Wake-up from Sleep
- Timer1 gate (count enable)
- Output synchronization to Timer1 clock input
- Programmable voltage reference

**Note:** Only Comparator C2 can be linked to Timer1.

## 8.1 Comparator Overview

A comparator is shown in Figure 8-1 along with the relationship between the analog input levels and the digital output. When the analog voltage at  $V_{IN+}$  is less than the analog voltage at  $V_{IN-}$ , the output of the comparator is a digital low level. When the analog voltage at  $V_{IN+}$  is greater than the analog voltage at  $V_{IN-}$ , the output of the comparator is a digital high level.

**FIGURE 8-1: SINGLE COMPARATOR**



This device contains two comparators as shown in Figure 8-2 and Figure 8-3. The comparators are not independently configurable.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 8-2: COMPARATOR C1 OUTPUT BLOCK DIAGRAM**

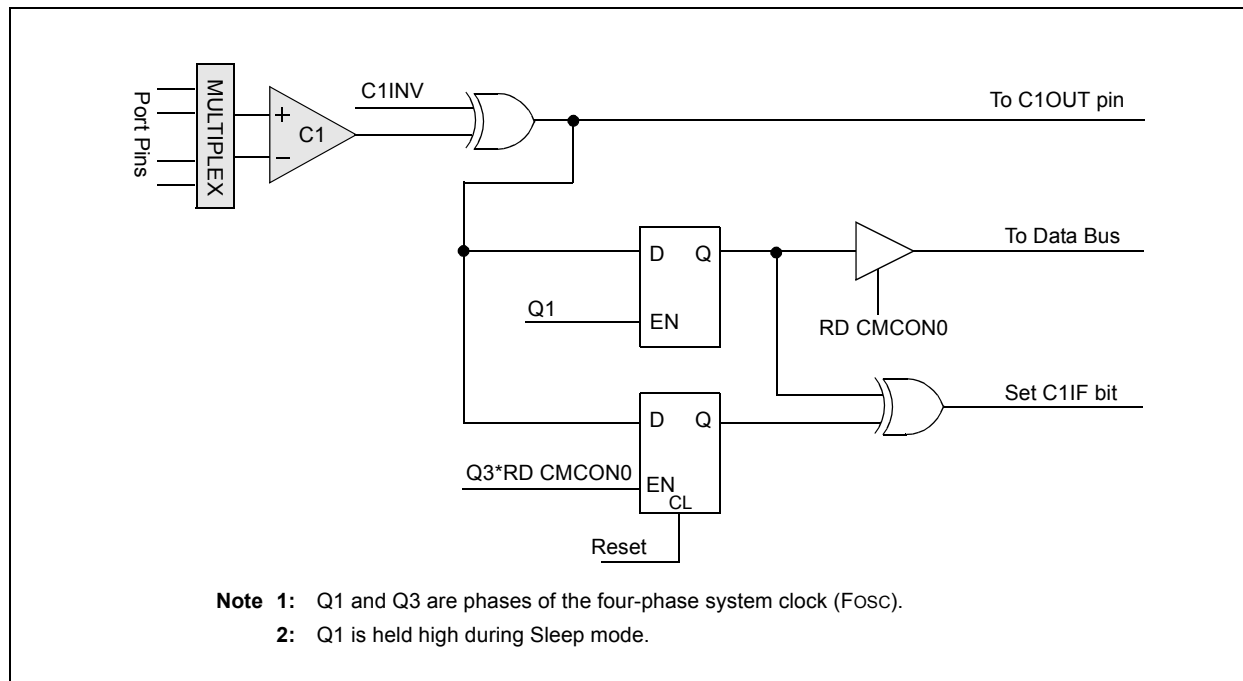
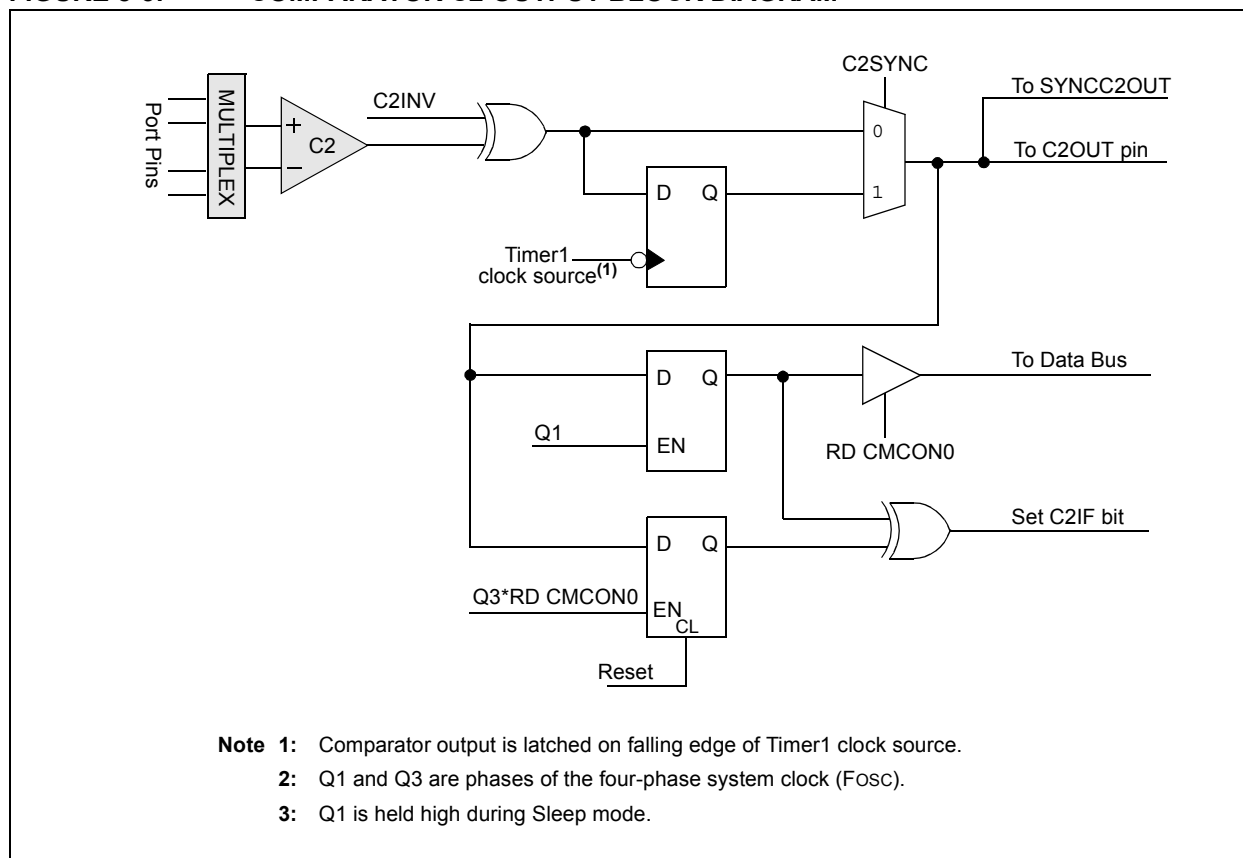


**FIGURE 8-3: COMPARATOR C2 OUTPUT BLOCK DIAGRAM**





## 8.1.1 ANALOG INPUT CONNECTION CONSIDERATIONS

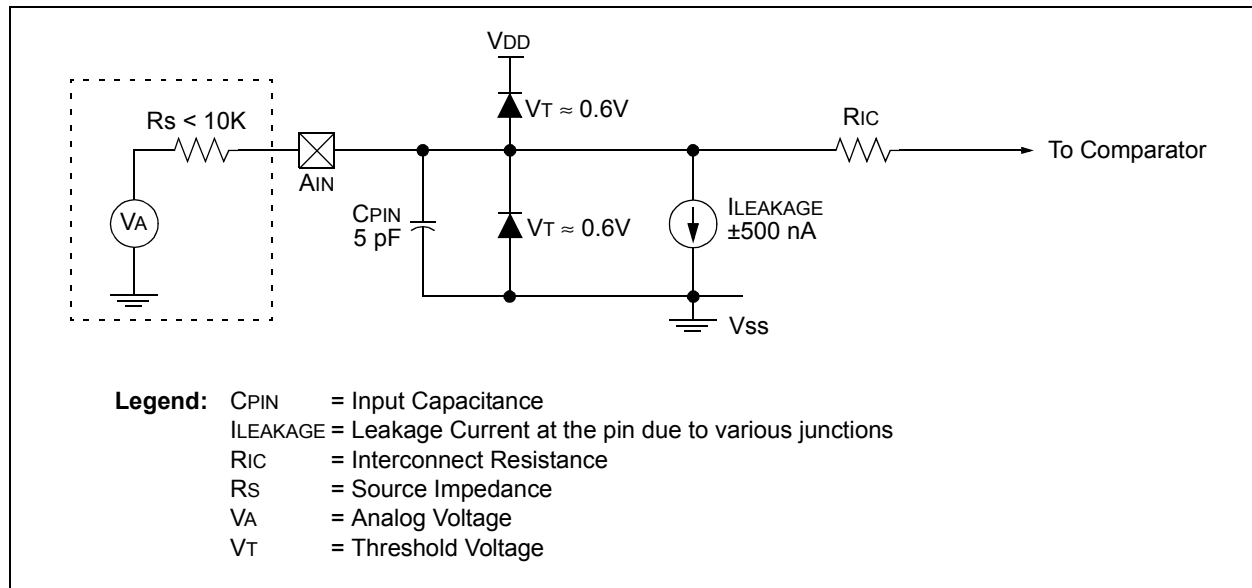
A simplified circuit for an analog input is shown in Figure 8-4. Since the analog input pins share their connection with a digital input, they have reverse biased ESD protection diodes to  $V_{DD}$  and  $V_{SS}$ . The analog input, therefore, must be between  $V_{SS}$  and  $V_{DD}$ . If the input voltage deviates from this range by more than 0.6V in either direction, one of the diodes is forward biased and a latch-up may occur.

A maximum source impedance of 10 k $\Omega$  is recommended for the analog sources. Also, any external component connected to an analog input pin, such as a capacitor or a Zener diode, should have very little leakage current to minimize inaccuracies introduced.

**Note 1:** When reading a PORT register, all pins configured as analog inputs will read as a '0'. Pins configured as digital inputs will convert as an analog input, according to the input specification.

**2:** Analog levels on any pin defined as a digital input, may cause the input buffer to consume more current than is specified.

**FIGURE 8-4: ANALOG INPUT MODEL**



## 8.2 Comparator Configuration

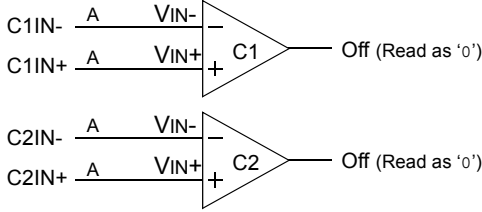
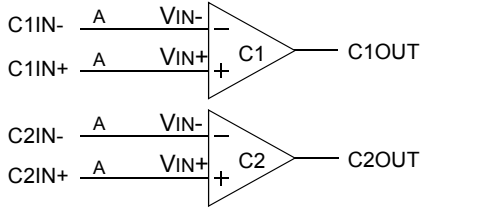
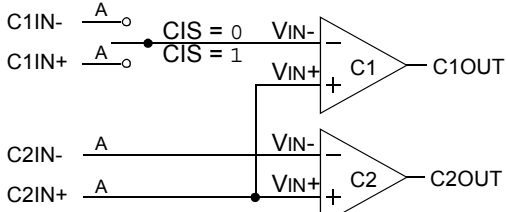
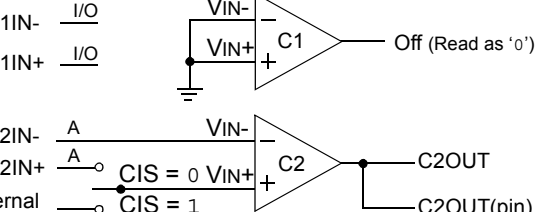
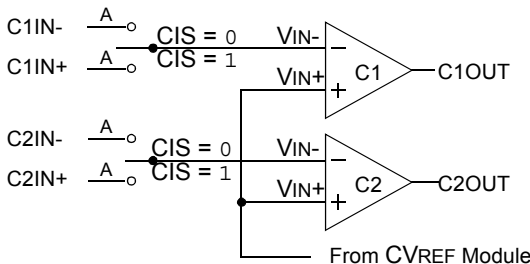
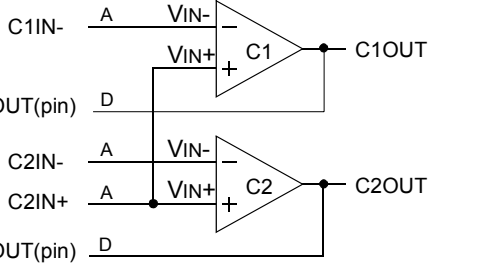
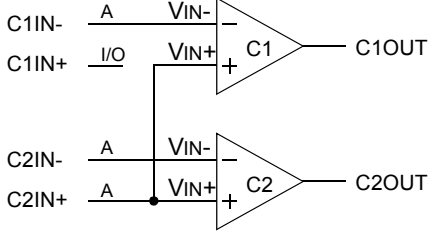
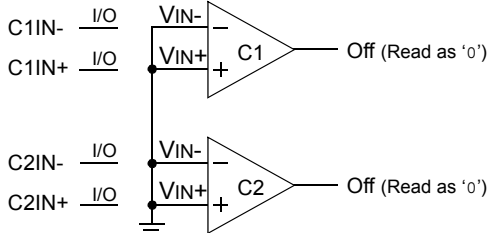
There are eight modes of operation for the comparator. The CM<2:0> bits of the CMCON0 register are used to select these modes as shown in Figure 8-5. I/O lines change as a function of the mode and are designated as follows:

- Analog function (A): digital input buffer is disabled
- Digital function (D): comparator digital output, overrides port function
- Normal port function (I/O): independent of comparator

The port pins denoted as “A” will read as a ‘0’ regardless of the state of the I/O pin or the I/O control TRIS bit. Pins used as analog inputs should also have the corresponding TRIS bit set to ‘1’ to disable the digital output driver. Pins denoted as “D” should have the corresponding TRIS bit set to ‘0’ to enable the digital output driver.

|                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Note:</b> Comparator interrupts should be disabled during a Comparator mode change to prevent unintended interrupts.</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**FIGURE 8-5: COMPARATOR I/O OPERATING MODES**

|                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Comparators Reset (POR Default Value)<br/>CM&lt;2:0&gt; = 000</p>        | <p>Two Independent Comparators<br/>CM&lt;2:0&gt; = 100</p>                       |
| <p>Three Inputs Multiplexed to Two Comparators<br/>CM&lt;2:0&gt; = 001</p>  | <p>One Independent Comparator with Reference Option<br/>CM&lt;2:0&gt; = 101</p>  |
| <p>Four Inputs Multiplexed to Two Comparators<br/>CM&lt;2:0&gt; = 010</p>  | <p>Two Common Reference Comparators with Outputs<br/>CM&lt;2:0&gt; = 110</p>    |
| <p>Two Common Reference Comparators<br/>CM&lt;2:0&gt; = 011</p>           | <p>Comparators Off (Lowest Power)<br/>CM&lt;2:0&gt; = 111</p>                  |
| <p><b>Legend:</b> A = Analog Input, ports always reads '0'<br/>I/O = Normal port I/O</p>                                                                     | <p>CIS = Comparator Input Switch (CMCON0&lt;3&gt;)<br/>D = Comparator Digital Output</p>                                                                           |

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 8.3 Comparator Control

The CMCON0 register (Register 8-1) provides access to the following comparator features:

- Mode selection
- Output state
- Output polarity
- Input switch

### 8.3.1 COMPARATOR OUTPUT STATE

Each comparator state can always be read internally via the associated CxOUT bit of the CMCON0 register. The comparator outputs are directed to the CxOUT pins when CM<2:0> = 110. When this mode is selected, the TRIS bits for the associated CxOUT pins must be cleared to enable the output drivers.

### 8.3.2 COMPARATOR OUTPUT POLARITY

Inverting the output of a comparator is functionally equivalent to swapping the comparator inputs. The polarity of a comparator output can be inverted by setting the CxINV bits of the CMCON0 register. Clearing CxINV results in a non-inverted output. A complete table showing the output state versus input conditions and the polarity bit is shown in Table 8-1.

**TABLE 8-1: OUTPUT STATE VS. INPUT CONDITIONS**

| Input Conditions | CxINV | CxOUT |
|------------------|-------|-------|
| VIN- > VIN+      | 0     | 0     |
| VIN- < VIN+      | 0     | 1     |
| VIN- > VIN+      | 1     | 1     |
| VIN- < VIN+      | 1     | 0     |

**Note:** CxOUT refers to both the register bit and output pin.

### 8.3.3 COMPARATOR INPUT SWITCH

The inverting input of the comparators may be switched between two analog pins or an analog input pin and the fixed voltage reference in the following modes:

- CM<2:0> = 001 (Comparator C1 only)
- CM<2:0> = 010 (Comparators C1 and C2)
- CM<2:0> = 101 (Comparator C2 only)

In the above modes, both pins remain in Analog mode regardless of which pin is selected as the input. The CIS bit of the CMCON0 register controls the comparator input switch.

## 8.4 Comparator Response Time

The comparator output is indeterminate for a period of time after the change of an input source or the selection of a new reference voltage. This period is referred to as the response time. The response time of the comparator differs from the settling time of the voltage reference. Therefore, both of these times must be considered when determining the total response time to a comparator input change. See the Comparator and Voltage Reference Specifications in **Section 19.0 “Electrical Specifications”** for more details.

## 8.5 Comparator Interrupt Operation

The comparator interrupt flag is set whenever there is a change in the output value of the comparator. Changes are recognized by means of a mismatch circuit which consists of two latches and an exclusive-or gate (see Figure 8-2 and Figure 8-3). One latch is updated with the comparator output level when the CMCON0 register is read. This latch retains the value until the next read of the CMCON0 register or the occurrence of a Reset. The other latch of the mismatch circuit is updated on every Q1 system clock. A mismatch condition will occur when a comparator output change is clocked through the second latch on the Q1 clock cycle. The mismatch condition will persist, holding the CxIF bit of the PIR2 register true, until either the CMCON0 register is read or the comparator output returns to the previous state.

**Note:** A write operation to the CMCON0 register will also clear the mismatch condition because all writes include a read operation at the beginning of the write cycle.

Software will need to maintain information about the status of the comparator output to determine the actual change that has occurred.

The CxIF bit of the PIR2 register is the comparator interrupt flag. This bit must be reset in software by clearing it to '0'. Since it is also possible to write a '1' to this register, a simulated interrupt may be initiated.

The CxIE bit of the PIE2 register and the PEIE and GIE bits of the INTCON register must all be set to enable comparator interrupts. If any of these bits are cleared, the interrupt is not enabled, although the CxIF bit of the PIR2 register will still be set if an interrupt condition occurs.

The user, in the Interrupt Service Routine, can clear the interrupt in the following manner:

- a) Any read or write of CMCON0. This will end the mismatch condition. See Figures 8-6 and 8-7
- b) Clear the CxIF interrupt flag.

A persistent mismatch condition will preclude clearing the CxIF interrupt flag. Reading CMCON0 will end the mismatch condition and allow the CxIF bit to be cleared.

**FIGURE 8-6: COMPARATOR INTERRUPT TIMING W/O CMCON0 READ**

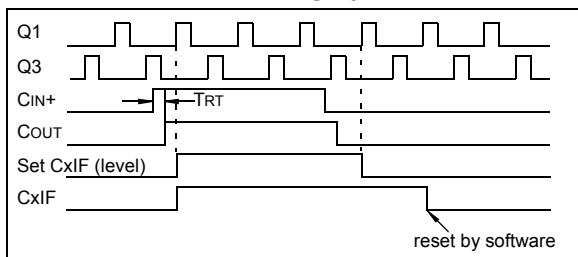
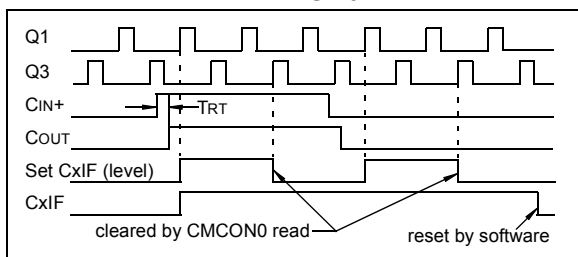


**FIGURE 8-7: COMPARATOR INTERRUPT TIMING WITH CMCON0 READ**



**Note 1:** If a change in the CMCON0 register (CxOUT) occurs when a read operation is being executed (start of the Q2 cycle), then the CxIF Interrupt Flag bit of the PIR2 register may not get set.

**2:** When either comparator is first enabled, bias circuitry in the Comparator module may cause an invalid output from the comparator until the bias circuitry is stable. Allow about 1  $\mu$ s for bias settling then clear the mismatch condition and interrupt flags before enabling comparator interrupts.

## 8.6 Operation During Sleep

The comparator, if enabled before entering Sleep mode, remains active during Sleep. The additional current consumed by the comparator is shown separately in the **Section 19.0 “Electrical Specifications”**. If the comparator is not used to wake the device, power consumption can be minimized while in Sleep mode by turning off the comparator. The comparator is turned off by selecting mode CM<2:0> = 000 or CM<2:0> = 111 of the CMCON0 register.

A change to the comparator output can wake-up the device from Sleep. To enable the comparator to wake the device from Sleep, the CxIE bit of the PIE2 register and the PEIE bit of the INTCON register must be set. The instruction following the Sleep instruction always executes following a wake from Sleep. If the GIE bit of the INTCON register is also set, the device will then execute the Interrupt Service Routine.

## 8.7 Effects of a Reset

A device Reset forces the CMCON0 and CMCON1 registers to their Reset states. This forces the Comparator module to be in the Comparator Reset mode (CM<2:0> = 000). Thus, all comparator inputs are analog inputs with the comparator disabled to consume the smallest current possible.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 8-1: CMCON0: COMPARATOR CONFIGURATION REGISTER

|       |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R-0   | R-0   | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| C2OUT | C1OUT | C2INV | C1INV | CIS   | CM2   | CM1   | CM0   |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **C2OUT:** Comparator 2 Output bit

When C2INV = 0:

1 = C2 VIN+ > C2 VIN-

0 = C2 VIN+ < C2 VIN-

When C2INV = 1:

1 = C2 VIN+ < C2 VIN-

0 = C2 VIN+ > C2 VIN-

bit 6 **C1OUT:** Comparator 1 Output bit

When C1INV = 0:

1 = C1 VIN+ > C1 VIN-

0 = C1 VIN+ < C1 VIN-

When C1INV = 1:

1 = C1 VIN+ < C1 VIN-

0 = C1 VIN+ > C1 VIN-

bit 5 **C2INV:** Comparator 2 Output Inversion bit

1 = C2 output inverted

0 = C2 output not inverted

bit 4 **C1INV:** Comparator 1 Output Inversion bit

1 = C1 Output inverted

0 = C1 Output not inverted

bit 3 **CIS:** Comparator Input Switch bit

When CM<2:0> = 010:

1 = C1IN+ connects to C1 VIN-

C2IN+ connects to C2 VIN-

0 = C1IN- connects to C1 VIN-

C2IN- connects to C2 VIN-

When CM<2:0> = 001:

1 = C1IN+ connects to C1 VIN-

0 = C1IN- connects to C1 VIN-

When CM<2:0> = 101: (16F91x/946)

1 = C2 VIN+ connects to fixed voltage reference

0 = C2 VIN+ connects to C2IN+

bit 2-0 **CM<2:0>:** Comparator Mode bits (See Figure 8-5)

000 = Comparators off. CxIN pins are configured as analog

001 = Three inputs multiplexed to two comparators

010 = Four inputs multiplexed to two comparators

011 = Two common reference comparators

100 = Two independent comparators

101 = One independent comparator

110 = Two comparators with outputs and common reference

111 = Comparators off. CxIN pins are configured as digital I/O

## 8.8 Comparator C2 Gating Timer1

This feature can be used to time the duration or interval of analog events. Clearing the T1GSS bit of the CMCON1 register will enable Timer1 to increment based on the output of Comparator C2. This requires that Timer1 is on and gating is enabled. See **Section 6.0 “Timer1 Module with Gate Control”** for details.

It is recommended to synchronize Comparator C2 with Timer1 by setting the C2SYNC bit when the comparator is used as the Timer1 gate source. This ensures Timer1 does not miss an increment if the comparator changes during an increment.

## 8.9 Synchronizing Comparator C2 Output to Timer1

The output of Comparator C2 can be synchronized with Timer1 by setting the C2SYNC bit of the CMCON1 register. When enabled, the comparator output is latched on the falling edge of the Timer1 clock source. If a prescaler is used with Timer1, the comparator output is latched after the prescaling function. To prevent a race condition, the comparator output is latched on the falling edge of the Timer1 clock source and Timer1 increments on the rising edge of its clock source. Reference the comparator block diagrams (Figure 8-2 and Figure 8-3) and the Timer1 Block Diagram (Figure 6-1) for more information.

**REGISTER 8-2: CMCON1: COMPARATOR CONFIGURATION REGISTER**

|       |     |     |     |     |     |       |        |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-1 | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | —   | —   | —   | —   | T1GSS | C2SYNC |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |        |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1 **T1GSS:** Timer1 Gate Source Select bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = Timer1 gate source is  $\overline{T1G}$  pin (pin should be configured as digital input)

0 = Timer1 gate source is Comparator C2 output

bit 0 **C2SYNC:** Comparator C2 Output Synchronization bit<sup>(2)</sup>

1 = Output is synchronized with falling edge of Timer1 clock

0 = Output is asynchronous

**Note 1:** Refer to **Section 6.6 “Timer1 Gate”**.

**2:** Refer to Figure 8-3.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 8.10 Comparator Voltage Reference

The Comparator Voltage Reference module provides an internally generated voltage reference for the comparators. The following features are available:

- Independent from Comparator operation
- Two 16-level voltage ranges
- Output clamped to V<sub>SS</sub>
- Ratiometric with V<sub>DD</sub>

The VRCON register (Register 8-3) controls the Voltage Reference module shown in Figure 8-8.

### 8.10.1 INDEPENDENT OPERATION

The comparator voltage reference is independent of the comparator configuration. Setting the VREN bit of the VRCON register will enable the voltage reference.

### 8.10.2 OUTPUT VOLTAGE SELECTION

The CVREF voltage reference has 2 ranges with 16 voltage levels in each range. Range selection is controlled by the VRR bit of the VRCON register. The 16 levels are set with the VR<3:0> bits of the VRCON register.

The CVREF output voltage is determined by the following equations:

### EQUATION 8-1: CVREF OUTPUT VOLTAGE

$VRR = 1$  (low range):

$$CVREF = (VR<3:0>/24) \times VDD$$

$VRR = 0$  (high range):

$$CVREF = (VDD/4) + (VR<3:0> \times VDD/32)$$

The full range of V<sub>SS</sub> to V<sub>DD</sub> cannot be realized due to the construction of the module. See Figure 8-8.

### 8.10.3 OUTPUT CLAMPED TO V<sub>SS</sub>

The CVREF output voltage can be set to V<sub>SS</sub> with no power consumption by configuring VRCON as follows:

- VREN = 0
- VRR = 1
- VR<3:0> = 0000

This allows the comparator to detect a zero-crossing while not consuming additional CVREF module current.

### 8.10.4 OUTPUT RATIOMETRIC TO V<sub>DD</sub>

The comparator voltage reference is V<sub>DD</sub> derived and therefore, the CVREF output changes with fluctuations in V<sub>DD</sub>. The tested absolute accuracy of the Comparator Voltage Reference can be found in **Section 19.0 “Electrical Specifications”**.

## REGISTER 8-3: VRCON: VOLTAGE REFERENCE CONTROL REGISTER

| R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| VREN  | —   | VRR   | —   | VR3   | VR2   | VR1   | VR0   |
| bit 7 |     |       |     |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’

-n = Value at POR

‘1’ = Bit is set

‘0’ = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7      **VREN:** CVREF Enable bit  
             1 = CVREF circuit powered on  
             0 = CVREF circuit powered down, no IDD drain and CVREF = V<sub>SS</sub>.
- bit 6      **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’
- bit 5      **VRR:** CVREF Range Selection bit  
             1 = Low range  
             0 = High range
- bit 4      **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’
- bit 3-0    **VR<3:0>:** CVREF Value Selection bits (0 ≤ VR<3:0> ≤ 15)  
             When VRR = 1: CVREF = (VR<3:0>/24) \* V<sub>DD</sub>  
             When VRR = 0: CVREF = V<sub>DD</sub>/4 + (VR<3:0>/32) \* V<sub>DD</sub>



**FIGURE 8-8: COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE BLOCK DIAGRAM**

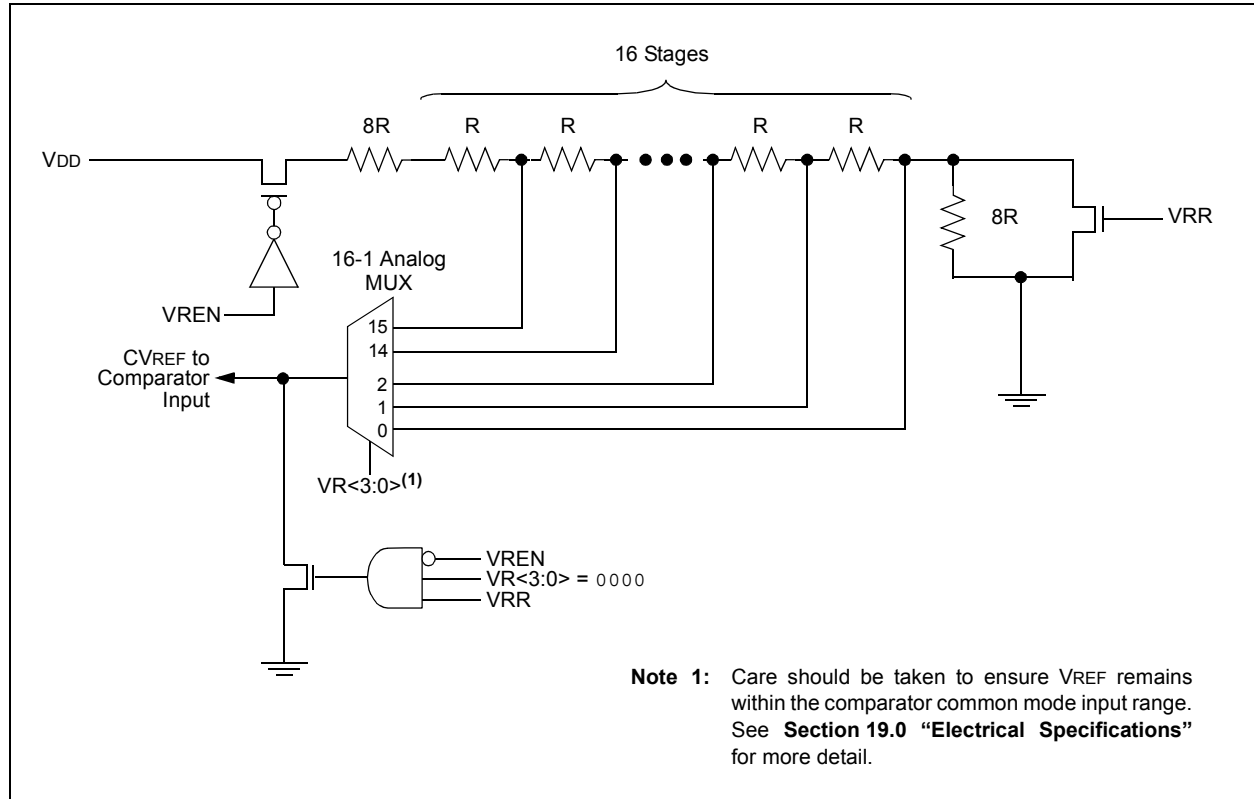


**TABLE 8-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH THE COMPARATOR AND VOLTAGE REFERENCE MODULES**

| Name   | Bit 7  | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| ANSEL  | ANS7   | ANS6   | ANS5   | ANS4   | ANS3   | ANS2   | ANS1   | ANS0   | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| CMCON0 | C2OUT  | C1OUT  | C2INV  | C1INV  | CIS    | CM2    | CM1    | CM0    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| CMCON1 | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | —      | T1GSS  | C2SYNC | ---- --10         | ---- --10                 |
| INTCON | GIE    | PEIE   | T0IE   | INTE   | RBIE   | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| PIE2   | OSFIE  | C2IE   | C1IE   | LCDIE  | —      | LVDIE  | —      | CCP2IE | 0000 -0-0         | 0000 -0-0                 |
| PIR2   | OSFIF  | C2IF   | C1IF   | LCDIF  | —      | LVDIF  | —      | CCP2IF | 0000 -0-0         | 0000 -0-0                 |
| PORTA  | RA7    | RA6    | RA5    | RA4    | RA3    | RA2    | RA1    | RA0    | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| TRISA  | TRISA7 | TRISA6 | TRISA5 | TRISA4 | TRISA3 | TRISA2 | TRISA1 | TRISA0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| VRCON  | VREN   | —      | VRR    | —      | VR3    | VR2    | VR1    | VR0    | 0-0- 0000         | 0000 0000                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for comparator.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

NOTES:

## 9.0 ADDRESSABLE UNIVERSAL SYNCHRONOUS ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER TRANSMITTER (AUSART)

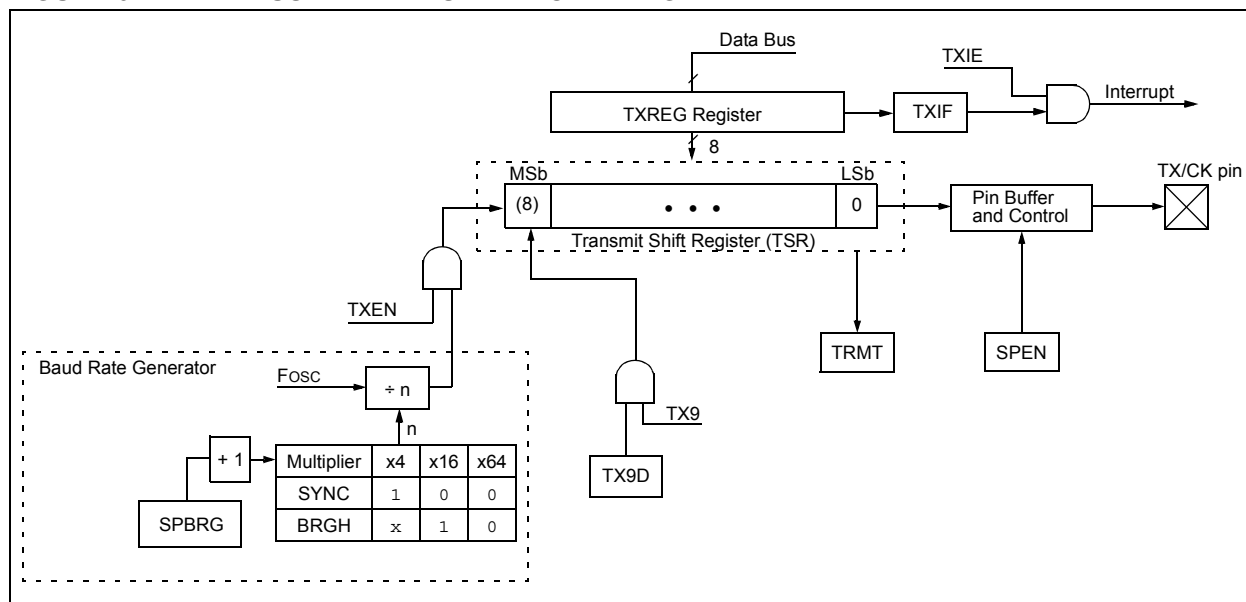
The Addressable Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (AUSART) module is a serial I/O communications peripheral. It contains all the clock generators, shift registers and data buffers necessary to perform an input or output serial data transfer independent of device program execution. The AUSART, also known as a Serial Communications Interface (SCI), can be configured as a full-duplex asynchronous system or half-duplex synchronous system. Full-Duplex mode is useful for communications with peripheral systems, such as CRT terminals and personal computers. Half-Duplex Synchronous mode is intended for communications with peripheral devices, such as A/D or D/A integrated circuits, serial EEPROMs or other microcontrollers. These devices typically do not have internal clocks for baud rate generation and require the external clock signal provided by a master synchronous device.

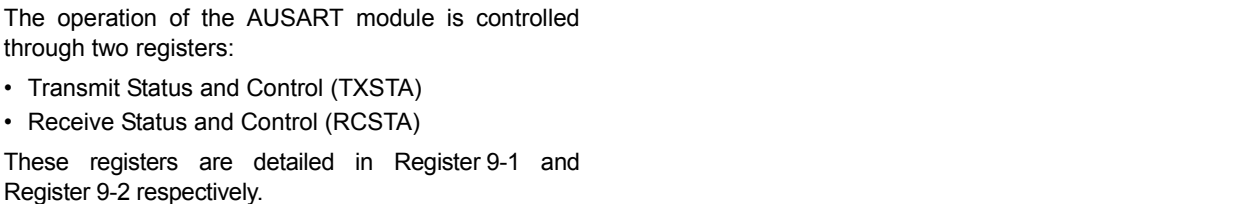
The AUSART module includes the following capabilities:

- Full-duplex asynchronous transmit and receive
- Two-character input buffer
- One-character output buffer
- Programmable 8-bit or 9-bit character length
- Address detection in 9-bit mode
- Input buffer overrun error detection
- Received character framing error detection
- Half-duplex synchronous master
- Half-duplex synchronous slave
- Sleep operation

Block diagrams of the AUSART transmitter and receiver are shown in Figure 9-1 and Figure 9-2.

**FIGURE 9-1: AUSART TRANSMIT BLOCK DIAGRAM**





- Transmit Status and Control (TXSTA)
- Receive Status and Control (RCSTA)

## 9.1 AUSART Asynchronous Mode

The AUSART transmits and receives data using the standard non-return-to-zero (NRZ) format. NRZ is implemented with two levels: a V<sub>OH</sub> mark state which represents a '1' data bit, and a V<sub>OL</sub> space state which represents a '0' data bit. NRZ refers to the fact that consecutively transmitted data bits of the same value stay at the output level of that bit without returning to a neutral level between each bit transmission. An NRZ transmission port idles in the mark state. Each character transmission consists of one Start bit followed by eight or nine data bits and is always terminated by one or more Stop bits. The Start bit is always a space and the Stop bits are always marks. The most common data format is 8 bits. Each transmitted bit persists for a period of 1/(Baud Rate). An on-chip dedicated 8-bit Baud Rate Generator is used to derive standard baud rate frequencies from the system oscillator. See Table 9-5 for examples of baud rate configurations.

The AUSART transmits and receives the LSb first. The AUSART's transmitter and receiver are functionally independent, but share the same data format and baud rate. Parity is not supported by the hardware, but can be implemented in software and stored as the ninth data bit.

### 9.1.1 AUSART ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMITTER

The AUSART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 9-1. The heart of the transmitter is the serial Transmit Shift Register (TSR), which is not directly accessible by software. The TSR obtains its data from the transmit buffer, which is the TXREG register.

#### 9.1.1.1 Enabling the Transmitter

The AUSART transmitter is enabled for asynchronous operations by configuring the following three control bits:

- TXEN = 1
- SYNC = 0
- SPEN = 1

All other AUSART control bits are assumed to be in their default state.

Setting the TXEN bit of the TXSTA register enables the transmitter circuitry of the AUSART. Clearing the SYNC bit of the TXSTA register configures the AUSART for asynchronous operation. Setting the SPEN bit of the RCSTA register enables the AUSART and automatically configures the TX/CK I/O pin as an output.

The LCD SEG9 function must be disabled by clearing the SE9 bit of the LCDSE1 register, if the TX/CK pin is shared with the LCD peripheral.

**Note 1:** When the SPEN bit is set the RX/DT I/O pin is automatically configured as an input, regardless of the state of the corresponding TRIS bit and whether or not the AUSART receiver is enabled. The RX/DT pin data can be read via a normal PORT read but PORT latch data output is precluded.

**2:** The TXIF transmitter interrupt flag is set when the TXEN enable bit is set.

#### 9.1.1.2 Transmitting Data

A transmission is initiated by writing a character to the TXREG register. If this is the first character, or the previous character has been completely flushed from the TSR, the data in the TXREG is immediately transferred to the TSR register. If the TSR still contains all or part of a previous character, the new character data is held in the TXREG until the Stop bit of the previous character has been transmitted. The pending character in the TXREG is then transferred to the TSR in one T<sub>cy</sub> immediately following the Stop bit transmission. The transmission of the Start bit, data bits and Stop bit sequence commences immediately following the transfer of the data to the TSR from the TXREG.

#### 9.1.1.3 Transmit Interrupt Flag

The TXIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register is set whenever the AUSART transmitter is enabled and no character is being held for transmission in the TXREG. In other words, the TXIF bit is only clear when the TSR is busy with a character and a new character has been queued for transmission in the TXREG. The TXIF flag bit is not cleared immediately upon writing TXREG. TXIF becomes valid in the second instruction cycle following the write execution. Polling TXIF immediately following the TXREG write will return invalid results. The TXIF bit is read-only, it cannot be set or cleared by software.

The TXIF interrupt can be enabled by setting the TXIE interrupt enable bit of the PIE1 register. However, the TXIF flag bit will be set whenever the TXREG is empty, regardless of the state of TXIE enable bit.

To use interrupts when transmitting data, set the TXIE bit only when there is more data to send. Clear the TXIE interrupt enable bit upon writing the last character of the transmission to the TXREG.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 9.1.1.4 TSR Status

The TRMT bit of the TXSTA register indicates the status of the TSR register. This is a read-only bit. The TRMT bit is set when the TSR register is empty and is cleared when a character is transferred to the TSR register from the TXREG. The TRMT bit remains clear until all bits have been shifted out of the TSR register. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit, so the user has to poll this bit to determine the TSR status.

**Note:** The TSR register is not mapped in data memory, so it is not available to the user.

## 9.1.1.5 Transmitting 9-Bit Characters

The AUSART supports 9-bit character transmissions. When the TX9 bit of the TXSTA register is set the AUSART will shift 9 bits out for each character transmitted. The TX9D bit of the TXSTA register is the ninth, and Most Significant, data bit. When transmitting 9-bit data, the TX9D data bit must be written before writing the 8 Least Significant bits into the TXREG. All nine bits of data will be transferred to the TSR shift register immediately after the TXREG is written.

A special 9-bit Address mode is available for use with multiple receivers. See **Section 9.1.2.7 “Address Detection”** for more information on the Address mode.

## 9.1.1.6 Asynchronous Transmission Set-up:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register and the BRGH bit to achieve the desired baud rate (see **Section 9.2 “AUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)”**).
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing the SYNC bit and setting the SPEN bit.
3. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set the TX9 control bit. A set ninth data bit will indicate that the 8 Least Significant data bits are an address when the receiver is set for address detection.
4. Enable the transmission by setting the TXEN control bit. This will cause the TXIF interrupt bit to be set.
5. If interrupts are desired, set the TXIE interrupt enable bit of the PIE1 register. An interrupt will occur immediately provided that the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register are also set.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded into the TX9D data bit.
7. Load 8-bit data into the TXREG register. This will start the transmission.

**FIGURE 9-3: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION**

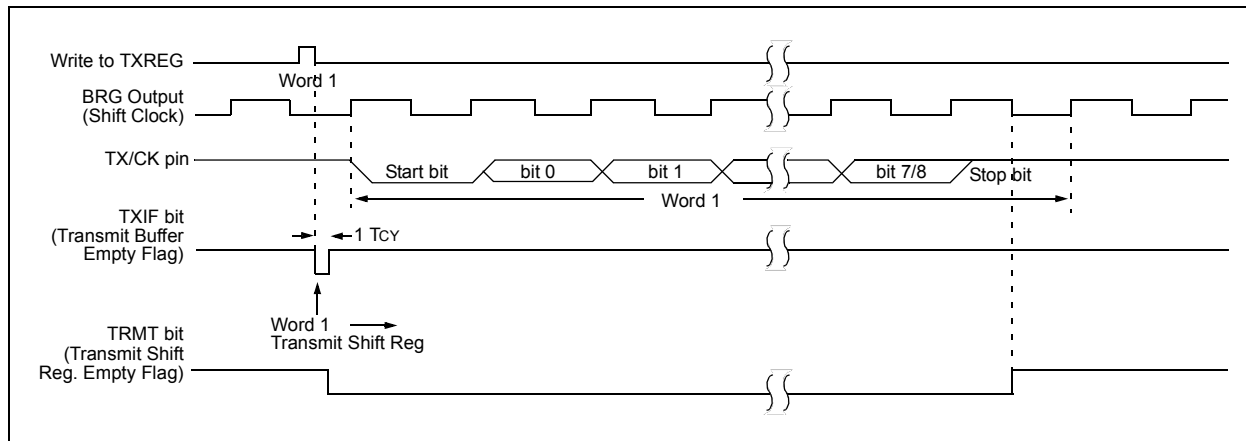
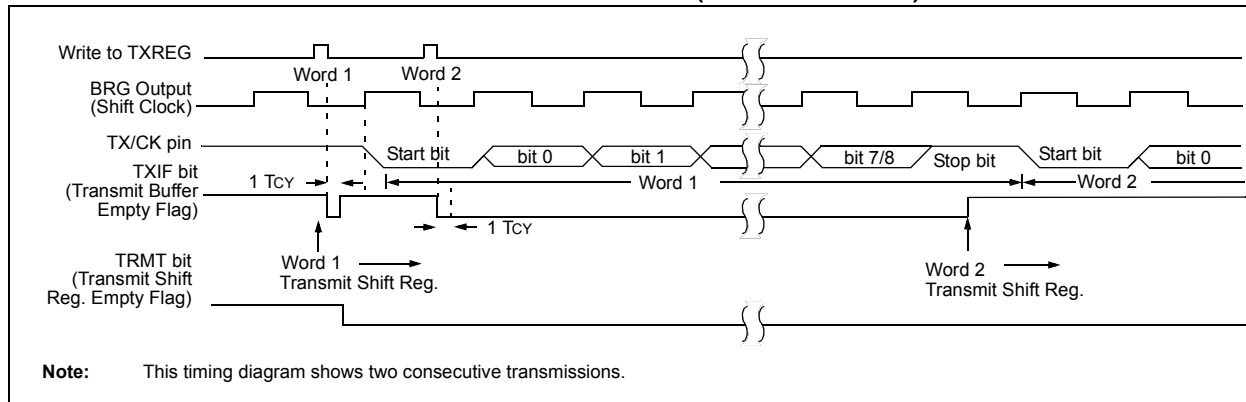


**FIGURE 9-4: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (BACK-TO-BACK)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 9-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION**

| Name   | Bit 7                         | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------|-------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON | GIE                           | PEIE   | T0IE   | INTE   | RBIE   | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| LCDCON | LCDEN                         | SLPEN  | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE1 | SE15                          | SE14   | SE13   | SE12   | SE11   | SE10   | SE9    | SE8    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIE1   | EEIE                          | ADIE   | RCIE   | TXIE   | SSPIE  | CCP1IE | TMR2IE | TMR1IE | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR1   | EEIF                          | ADIF   | RCIF   | TXIF   | SSPIF  | CCP1IF | TMR2IF | TMR1IF | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| RCSTA  | SPEN                          | RX9    | SREN   | CREN   | ADDEN  | FERR   | OERR   | RX9D   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| SPBRG  | BRG7                          | BRG6   | BRG5   | BRG4   | BRG3   | BRG2   | BRG1   | BRG0   | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| SSPCON | WCOL                          | SSPOV  | SSPEN  | CKP    | SSPM3  | SSPM2  | SSPM1  | SSPM0  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TRISC  | TRISC7                        | TRISC6 | TRISC5 | TRISC4 | TRISC3 | TRISC2 | TRISC1 | TRISC0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| TXREG  | AUSART Transmit Data Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TXSTA  | CSRC                          | TX9    | TXEN   | SYNC   | —      | BRGH   | TRMT   | TX9D   | 0000 -010         | 0000 -010                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, - = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Asynchronous Transmission.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 9.1.2 AUSART ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER

The Asynchronous mode is typically used in RS-232 systems. The receiver block diagram is shown in Figure 9-2. The data is received on the RX/DT pin and drives the data recovery block. The data recovery block is actually a high-speed shifter operating at 16 times the baud rate, whereas the serial Receive Shift Register (RSR) operates at the bit rate. When all 8 or 9 bits of the character have been shifted in, they are immediately transferred to a two character First-In First-Out (FIFO) memory. The FIFO buffering allows reception of two complete characters and the start of a third character before software must start servicing the AUSART receiver. The FIFO and RSR registers are not directly accessible by software. Access to the received data is via the RCREG register.

### 9.1.2.1 Enabling the Receiver

The AUSART receiver is enabled for asynchronous operation by configuring the following three control bits:

- CREN = 1
- SYNC = 0
- SPEN = 1

All other AUSART control bits are assumed to be in their default state.

Setting the CREN bit of the RCSTA register enables the receiver circuitry of the AUSART. Clearing the SYNC bit of the TXSTA register configures the AUSART for asynchronous operation. Setting the SPEN bit of the RCSTA register enables the AUSART and automatically configures the RX/DT I/O pin as an input.

The LCD SEG8 function must be disabled by clearing the SE8 bit of the LCDSE1 register, if the RX/DT pin is shared with the LCD peripheral.

**Note:** When the SPEN bit is set the TX/CK I/O pin is automatically configured as an output, regardless of the state of the corresponding TRIS bit and whether or not the AUSART transmitter is enabled. The PORT latch is disconnected from the output driver so it is not possible to use the TX/CK pin as a general purpose output.

### 9.1.2.2 Receiving Data

The receiver data recovery circuit initiates character reception on the falling edge of the first bit. The first bit, also known as the Start bit, is always a zero. The data recovery circuit counts one-half bit time to the center of the Start bit and verifies that the bit is still a zero. If it is not a zero then the data recovery circuit aborts character reception, without generating an error, and resumes looking for the falling edge of the Start bit. If the Start bit zero verification succeeds then the data recovery circuit counts a full bit time to the center of the next bit. The bit is then sampled by a majority detect circuit and the resulting '0' or '1' is shifted into the RSR. This repeats until all data bits have been sampled and shifted into the RSR. One final bit time is measured and the level sampled. This is the Stop bit, which is always a '1'. If the data recovery circuit samples a '0' in the Stop bit position then a framing error is set for this character, otherwise the framing error is cleared for this character. See **Section 9.1.2.4 "Receive Framing Error"** for more information on framing errors.

Immediately after all data bits and the Stop bit have been received, the character in the RSR is transferred to the AUSART receive FIFO and the RCIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register is set. The top character in the FIFO is transferred out of the FIFO by reading the RCREG register.

**Note:** If the receive FIFO is overrun, no additional characters will be received until the overrun condition is cleared. See **Section 9.1.2.5 "Receive Overrun Error"** for more information on overrun errors.

### 9.1.2.3 Receive Interrupts

The RCIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register is set whenever the AUSART receiver is enabled and there is an unread character in the receive FIFO. The RCIF interrupt flag bit is read-only, it cannot be set or cleared by software.

RCIF interrupts are enabled by setting all of the following bits:

- RCIE interrupt enable bit of the PIE1 register
- PEIE peripheral interrupt enable bit of the INTCON register
- GIE global interrupt enable bit of the INTCON register

The RCIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register will be set when there is an unread character in the FIFO, regardless of the state of interrupt enable bits.



## 9.1.2.4 Receive Framing Error

Each character in the receive FIFO buffer has a corresponding framing error Status bit. A framing error indicates that a Stop bit was not seen at the expected time. The framing error status is accessed via the FERR bit of the RCSTA register. The FERR bit represents the status of the top unread character in the receive FIFO. Therefore, the FERR bit must be read before reading the RCREG.

The FERR bit is read-only and only applies to the top unread character in the receive FIFO. A framing error (FERR = 1) does not preclude reception of additional characters. It is not necessary to clear the FERR bit. Reading the next character from the FIFO buffer will advance the FIFO to the next character and the next corresponding framing error.

The FERR bit can be forced clear by clearing the SPEN bit of the RCSTA register which resets the AUSART. Clearing the CREN bit of the RCSTA register does not affect the FERR bit. A framing error by itself does not generate an interrupt.

|                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note:</b> If all receive characters in the receive FIFO have framing errors, repeated reads of the RCREG will not clear the FERR bit. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 9.1.2.5 Receive Overrun Error

The receive FIFO buffer can hold two characters. An overrun error will be generated if a third character, in its entirety, is received before the FIFO is accessed. When this happens the OERR bit of the RCSTA register is set. The characters already in the FIFO buffer can be read but no additional characters will be received until the error is cleared. The error must be cleared by either clearing the CREN bit of the RCSTA register.

## 9.1.2.6 Receiving 9-bit Characters

The AUSART supports 9-bit character reception. When the RX9 bit of the RCSTA register is set the AUSART will shift 9 bits into the RSR for each character received. The RX9D bit of the RCSTA register is the ninth and Most Significant data bit of the top unread character in the receive FIFO. When reading 9-bit data from the receive FIFO buffer, the RX9D data bit must be read before reading the 8 Least Significant bits from the RCREG.

## 9.1.2.7 Address Detection

A special Address Detection mode is available for use when multiple receivers share the same transmission line, such as in RS-485 systems. Address detection is enabled by setting the ADDEN bit of the RCSTA register.

Address detection requires 9-bit character reception. When address detection is enabled, only characters with the ninth data bit set will be transferred to the receive FIFO buffer, thereby setting the RCIF interrupt bit of the PIR1 register. All other characters will be ignored.

Upon receiving an address character, user software determines if the address matches its own. Upon address match, user software must disable address detection by clearing the ADDEN bit before the next Stop bit occurs. When user software detects the end of the message, determined by the message protocol used, software places the receiver back into the Address Detection mode by setting the ADDEN bit.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 9.1.2.8 Asynchronous Reception Set-up:

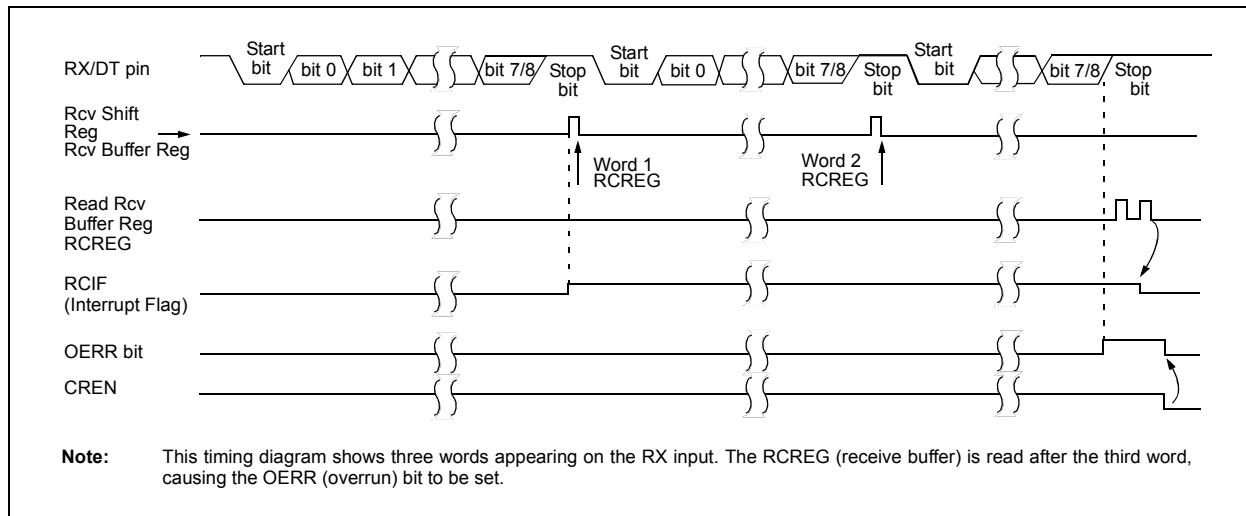
1. Initialize the SPBRG register and the BRGH bit to achieve the desired baud rate (see **Section 9.2 “AUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)”**).
2. Enable the serial port by setting the SPEN bit. The SYNC bit must be clear for asynchronous operation.
3. If interrupts are desired, set the RCIE bit of the PIE1 register and the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register.
4. If 9-bit reception is desired, set the RX9 bit.
5. Enable reception by setting the CREN bit.
6. The RCIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register will be set when a character is transferred from the RSR to the receive buffer. An interrupt will be generated if the RCIE bit of the PIE1 register was also set.
7. Read the RCSTA register to get the error flags and, if 9-bit data reception is enabled, the ninth data bit.
8. Get the received 8 Least Significant data bits from the receive buffer by reading the RCREG register.
9. If an overrun occurred, clear the OERR flag by clearing the CREN receiver enable bit.

## 9.1.2.9 9-bit Address Detection Mode Set-up

This mode would typically be used in RS-485 systems. To set up an Asynchronous Reception with Address Detect Enable:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register and the BRGH bit to achieve the desired baud rate (see **Section 9.2 “AUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)”**).
2. Enable the serial port by setting the SPEN bit. The SYNC bit must be clear for asynchronous operation.
3. If interrupts are desired, set the RCIE bit of the PIE1 register and the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register.
4. Enable 9-bit reception by setting the RX9 bit.
5. Enable address detection by setting the ADDEN bit.
6. Enable reception by setting the CREN bit.
7. The RCIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register will be set when a character with the ninth bit set is transferred from the RSR to the receive buffer. An interrupt will be generated if the RCIE interrupt enable bit of the PIE1 register was also set.
8. Read the RCSTA register to get the error flags. The ninth data bit will always be set.
9. Get the received 8 Least Significant data bits from the receive buffer by reading the RCREG register. Software determines if this is the device's address.
10. If an overrun occurred, clear the OERR flag by clearing the CREN receiver enable bit.
11. If the device has been addressed, clear the ADDEN bit to allow all received data into the receive buffer and generate interrupts.

**FIGURE 9-5: ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 9-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION**

| Name   | Bit 7                        | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------|------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON | GIE                          | PEIE   | T0IE   | INTE   | RBIE   | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| LCDCON | LCDEN                        | SLPEN  | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE1 | SE15                         | SE14   | SE13   | SE12   | SE11   | SE10   | SE9    | SE8    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIE1   | EEIE                         | ADIE   | RCIE   | TXIE   | SSPIE  | CCP1IE | TMR2IE | TMR1IE | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR1   | EEIF                         | ADIF   | RCIF   | TXIF   | SSPIF  | CCP1IF | TMR2IF | TMR1IF | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| RCREG  | AUSART Receive Data Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| RCSTA  | SPEN                         | RX9    | SREN   | CREN   | ADDEN  | FERR   | OERR   | RX9D   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| SPBRG  | BRG7                         | BRG6   | BRG5   | BRG4   | BRG3   | BRG2   | BRG1   | BRG0   | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| SSPCON | WCOL                         | SSPOV  | SSPEN  | CKP    | SSPM3  | SSPM2  | SSPM1  | SSPM0  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TRISC  | TRISC7                       | TRISC6 | TRISC5 | TRISC4 | TRISC3 | TRISC2 | TRISC1 | TRISC0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| TXSTA  | CSRC                         | TX9    | TXEN   | SYNC   | —      | BRGH   | TRMT   | TX9D   | 0000 -010         | 0000 -010                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, - = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Asynchronous Reception.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 9-1: TXSTA: TRANSMIT STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER

|       |       |                     |       |     |       |      |       |
|-------|-------|---------------------|-------|-----|-------|------|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0               | R/W-0 | U-0 | R/W-0 | R-1  | R/W-0 |
| CSRC  | TX9   | TXEN <sup>(1)</sup> | SYNC  | —   | BRGH  | TRMT | TX9D  |
| bit 7 |       |                     |       |     |       |      | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7      **CSRC:** Clock Source Select bit  
Asynchronous mode:  
Don't care  
Synchronous mode:  
1 = Master mode (clock generated internally from BRG)  
0 = Slave mode (clock from external source)
- bit 6      **TX9:** 9-bit Transmit Enable bit  
1 = Selects 9-bit transmission  
0 = Selects 8-bit transmission
- bit 5      **TXEN:** Transmit Enable bit<sup>(1)</sup>  
1 = Transmit enabled  
0 = Transmit disabled
- bit 4      **SYNC:** AUSART Mode Select bit  
1 = Synchronous mode  
0 = Asynchronous mode
- bit 3      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 2      **BRGH:** High Baud Rate Select bit  
Asynchronous mode:  
1 = High speed  
0 = Low speed  
Synchronous mode:  
Unused in this mode
- bit 1      **TRMT:** Transmit Shift Register Status bit  
1 = TSR empty  
0 = TSR full
- bit 0      **TX9D:** Ninth bit of Transmit Data  
Can be address/data bit or a parity bit.

**Note 1:** SREN/CREN overrides TXEN in Sync mode.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 9-2: RCSTA: RECEIVE STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER<sup>(1)</sup>

|       |       |       |       |       |      |      |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|------|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R-0  | R-0  | R-x   |
| SPEN  | RX9   | SREN  | CREN  | ADDEN | FERR | OERR | RX9D  |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |      |      | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

|       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bit 7 | <b>SPEN:</b> Serial Port Enable bit<br>1 = Serial port enabled (configures RX/DT and TX/CK pins as serial port pins)<br>0 = Serial port disabled (held in Reset)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| bit 6 | <b>RX9:</b> 9-bit Receive Enable bit<br>1 = Selects 9-bit reception<br>0 = Selects 8-bit reception                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| bit 5 | <b>SREN:</b> Single Receive Enable bit<br><u>Asynchronous mode:</u><br>Don't care<br><u>Synchronous mode – Master:</u><br>1 = Enables single receive<br>0 = Disables single receive<br>This bit is cleared after reception is complete.<br><u>Synchronous mode – Slave</u><br>Don't care                                                                                                              |
| bit 4 | <b>CREN:</b> Continuous Receive Enable bit<br><u>Asynchronous mode:</u><br>1 = Enables receiver<br>0 = Disables receiver<br><u>Synchronous mode:</u><br>1 = Enables continuous receive until enable bit CREN is cleared (CREN overrides SREN)<br>0 = Disables continuous receive                                                                                                                      |
| bit 3 | <b>ADDEN:</b> Address Detect Enable bit<br><u>Asynchronous mode 9-bit (RX9 = 1):</u><br>1 = Enables address detection, enable interrupt and load the receive buffer when RSR<8> is set<br>0 = Disables address detection, all bytes are received and ninth bit can be used as parity bit<br><u>Asynchronous mode 8-bit (RX9 = 0):</u><br>Don't care<br><u>Synchronous mode:</u><br>Must be set to '0' |
| bit 2 | <b>FERR:</b> Framing Error bit<br>1 = Framing error (can be updated by reading RCREG register and receive next valid byte)<br>0 = No framing error                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| bit 1 | <b>OERR:</b> Overrun Error bit<br>1 = Overrun error (can be cleared by clearing bit CREN)<br>0 = No overrun error                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| bit 0 | <b>RX9D:</b> Ninth bit of Received Data<br>This can be address/data bit or a parity bit and must be calculated by user firmware.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 9.2 AUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)

The Baud Rate Generator (BRG) is an 8-bit timer that is dedicated to the support of both the asynchronous and synchronous AUSART operation.

The SPBRG register determines the period of the free running baud rate timer. In Asynchronous mode the multiplier of the baud rate period is determined by the BRGH bit of the TXSTA register. In Synchronous mode, the BRGH bit is ignored.

Table 9-3 contains the formulas for determining the baud rate. Example 9-1 provides a sample calculation for determining the baud rate and baud rate error.

Typical baud rates and error values for various asynchronous modes have been computed for your convenience and are shown in Table 9-3. It may be advantageous to use the high baud rate (BRGH = 1), to reduce the baud rate error.

Writing a new value to the SPBRG register causes the BRG timer to be reset (or cleared). This ensures that the BRG does not wait for a timer overflow before outputting the new baud rate.

### EXAMPLE 9-1: CALCULATING BAUD RATE ERROR

For a device with FOSC of 16 MHz, desired baud rate of 9600, Asynchronous mode:

$$\text{Desired Baud Rate} = \frac{F_{OSC}}{64(SPBRG + 1)}$$

Solving for SPBRG:

$$X = \frac{\frac{F_{OSC}}{\text{Desired Baud Rate}}}{64} - 1$$

$$= \frac{\frac{16000000}{9600}}{64} - 1$$

$$= [25.042] = 25$$

$$\text{Calculated Baud Rate} = \frac{16000000}{64(25 + 1)}$$

$$= 9615$$

$$\text{Error} = \frac{\text{Calc. Baud Rate} - \text{Desired Baud Rate}}{\text{Desired Baud Rate}}$$

$$= \frac{(9615 - 9600)}{9600} = 0.16\%$$

TABLE 9-3: BAUD RATE FORMULAS

| Configuration Bits |      | AUSART Mode  | Baud Rate Formula    |
|--------------------|------|--------------|----------------------|
| SYNC               | BRGH |              |                      |
| 0                  | 0    | Asynchronous | $F_{OSC}/[64 (n+1)]$ |
| 0                  | 1    | Asynchronous | $F_{OSC}/[16 (n+1)]$ |
| 1                  | x    | Synchronous  | $F_{OSC}/[4 (n+1)]$  |

Legend: x = Don't care, n = value of SPBRG register

TABLE 9-4: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH THE BAUD RATE GENERATOR

| Name  | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| RCSTA | SPEN  | RX9   | SREN  | CREN  | ADDEN | FERR  | OERR  | RX9D  | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| SPBRG | BRG7  | BRG6  | BRG5  | BRG4  | BRG3  | BRG2  | BRG1  | BRG0  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TXSTA | CSRC  | TX9   | TXEN  | SYNC  | —     | BRGH  | TRMT  | TX9D  | 0000 -010         | 0000 -010                 |

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for the Baud Rate Generator.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 9-5: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODES**

| BAUD RATE | SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0 |         |                       |                   |         |                       |                    |         |                       |                  |         |                       |
|-----------|--------------------|---------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------|-----------------------|--------------------|---------|-----------------------|------------------|---------|-----------------------|
|           | Fosc = 20.000 MHz  |         |                       | Fosc = 18.432 MHz |         |                       | Fosc = 11.0592 MHz |         |                       | Fosc = 8.000 MHz |         |                       |
|           | Actual Rate        | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) | Actual Rate       | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) | Actual Rate        | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) | Actual Rate      | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) |
| 300       | —                  | —       | —                     | —                 | —       | —                     | —                  | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     |
| 1200      | 1221               | 1.73    | 255                   | 1200              | 0.00    | 239                   | 1200               | 0.00    | 143                   | 1202             | 0.16    | 103                   |
| 2400      | 2404               | 0.16    | 129                   | 2400              | 0.00    | 119                   | 2400               | 0.00    | 71                    | 2404             | 0.16    | 51                    |
| 9600      | 9470               | -1.36   | 32                    | 9600              | 0.00    | 29                    | 9600               | 0.00    | 17                    | 9615             | 0.16    | 12                    |
| 10417     | 10417              | 0.00    | 29                    | 10286             | -1.26   | 27                    | 10165              | -2.42   | 16                    | 10417            | 0.00    | 11                    |
| 19.2k     | 19.53k             | 1.73    | 15                    | 19.20k            | 0.00    | 14                    | 19.20k             | 0.00    | 8                     | —                | —       | —                     |
| 57.6k     | —                  | —       | —                     | 57.60k            | 0.00    | 7                     | 57.60k             | 0.00    | 2                     | —                | —       | —                     |
| 115.2k    | —                  | —       | —                     | —                 | —       | —                     | —                  | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     |

| BAUD RATE | SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0 |         |                       |                   |         |                       |                  |         |                       |                  |         |                       |
|-----------|--------------------|---------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------|-----------------------|------------------|---------|-----------------------|------------------|---------|-----------------------|
|           | Fosc = 4.000 MHz   |         |                       | Fosc = 3.6864 MHz |         |                       | Fosc = 2.000 MHz |         |                       | Fosc = 1.000 MHz |         |                       |
|           | Actual Rate        | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) | Actual Rate       | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) | Actual Rate      | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) | Actual Rate      | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) |
| 300       | 300                | 0.16    | 207                   | 300               | 0.00    | 191                   | 300              | 0.16    | 103                   | 300              | 0.16    | 51                    |
| 1200      | 1202               | 0.16    | 51                    | 1200              | 0.00    | 47                    | 1202             | 0.16    | 25                    | 1202             | 0.16    | 12                    |
| 2400      | 2404               | 0.16    | 25                    | 2400              | 0.00    | 23                    | 2404             | 0.16    | 12                    | —                | —       | —                     |
| 9600      | —                  | —       | —                     | 9600              | 0.00    | 5                     | —                | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     |
| 10417     | 10417              | 0.00    | 5                     | —                 | —       | —                     | 10417            | 0.00    | 2                     | —                | —       | —                     |
| 19.2k     | —                  | —       | —                     | 19.20k            | 0.00    | 2                     | —                | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     |
| 57.6k     | —                  | —       | —                     | 57.60k            | 0.00    | 0                     | —                | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     |
| 115.2k    | —                  | —       | —                     | —                 | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     |

| BAUD RATE | SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1 |         |                       |                   |         |                       |                    |         |                       |                  |         |                       |
|-----------|--------------------|---------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------|-----------------------|--------------------|---------|-----------------------|------------------|---------|-----------------------|
|           | Fosc = 20.000 MHz  |         |                       | Fosc = 18.432 MHz |         |                       | Fosc = 11.0592 MHz |         |                       | Fosc = 8.000 MHz |         |                       |
|           | Actual Rate        | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) | Actual Rate       | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) | Actual Rate        | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) | Actual Rate      | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) |
| 300       | —                  | —       | —                     | —                 | —       | —                     | —                  | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     |
| 1200      | —                  | —       | —                     | —                 | —       | —                     | —                  | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     |
| 2400      | —                  | —       | —                     | —                 | —       | —                     | —                  | —       | —                     | 2404             | 0.16    | 207                   |
| 9600      | 9615               | 0.16    | 129                   | 9600              | 0.00    | 119                   | 9600               | 0.00    | 71                    | 9615             | 0.16    | 51                    |
| 10417     | 10417              | 0.00    | 119                   | 10378             | -0.37   | 110                   | 10473              | 0.53    | 65                    | 10417            | 0.00    | 47                    |
| 19.2k     | 19.23k             | 0.16    | 64                    | 19.20k            | 0.00    | 59                    | 19.20k             | 0.00    | 35                    | 19231            | 0.16    | 25                    |
| 57.6k     | 56.82k             | -1.36   | 21                    | 57.60k            | 0.00    | 19                    | 57.60k             | 0.00    | 11                    | 55556            | -3.55   | 8                     |
| 115.2k    | 113.64k            | -1.36   | 10                    | 115.2k            | 0.00    | 9                     | 115.2k             | 0.00    | 5                     | —                | —       | —                     |

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 9-5: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODES**

| BAUD RATE | SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1 |         |                       |                   |         |                       |                  |         |                       |                  |         |                       |
|-----------|--------------------|---------|-----------------------|-------------------|---------|-----------------------|------------------|---------|-----------------------|------------------|---------|-----------------------|
|           | Fosc = 4.000 MHz   |         |                       | Fosc = 3.6864 MHz |         |                       | Fosc = 2.000 MHz |         |                       | Fosc = 1.000 MHz |         |                       |
|           | Actual Rate        | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) | Actual Rate       | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) | Actual Rate      | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) | Actual Rate      | % Error | SPBRG value (decimal) |
| 300       | —                  | —       | —                     | —                 | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     | 300              | 0.16    | 207                   |
| 1200      | 1202               | 0.16    | 207                   | 1200              | 0.00    | 191                   | 1202             | 0.16    | 103                   | 1202             | 0.16    | 51                    |
| 2400      | 2404               | 0.16    | 103                   | 2400              | 0.00    | 95                    | 2404             | 0.16    | 51                    | 2404             | 0.16    | 25                    |
| 9600      | 9615               | 0.16    | 25                    | 9600              | 0.00    | 23                    | 9615             | 0.16    | 12                    | —                | —       | —                     |
| 10417     | 10417              | 0.00    | 23                    | 10473             | 0.53    | 21                    | 10417            | 0.00    | 11                    | 10417            | 0.00    | 5                     |
| 19.2k     | 19.23k             | 0.16    | 12                    | 19.2k             | 0.00    | 11                    | —                | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     |
| 57.6k     | —                  | —       | —                     | 57.60k            | 0.00    | 3                     | —                | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     |
| 115.2k    | —                  | —       | —                     | 115.2k            | 0.00    | 1                     | —                | —       | —                     | —                | —       | —                     |



## 9.3 AUSART Synchronous Mode

Synchronous serial communications are typically used in systems with a single master and one or more slaves. The master device contains the necessary circuitry for baud rate generation and supplies the clock for all devices in the system. Slave devices can take advantage of the master clock by eliminating the internal clock generation circuitry.

There are two signal lines in Synchronous mode: a bidirectional data line and a clock line. Slaves use the external clock supplied by the master to shift the serial data into and out of their respective receive and transmit shift registers. Since the data line is bidirectional, synchronous operation is half-duplex only. Half-duplex refers to the fact that master and slave devices can receive and transmit data but not both simultaneously. The AUSART can operate as either a master or slave device.

Start and Stop bits are not used in synchronous transmissions.

### 9.3.1 SYNCHRONOUS MASTER MODE

The following bits are used to configure the AUSART for Synchronous Master operation:

- SYNC = 1
- CSRC = 1
- SREN = 0 (for transmit); SREN = 1 (for receive)
- CREN = 0 (for transmit); CREN = 1 (for receive)
- SPEN = 1

Setting the SYNC bit of the TXSTA register configures the device for synchronous operation. Setting the CSRC bit of the TXSTA register configures the device as a master. Clearing the SREN and CREN bits of the RCSTA register ensures that the device is in the Transmit mode, otherwise the device will be configured to receive. Setting the SPEN bit of the RCSTA register enables the AUSART.

The LCD SEG8 and SEG9 functions must be disabled by clearing the SE8 and SE9 bits of the LCDSE1 register, if the RX/DT and TX/CK pins are shared with the LCD peripheral.

#### 9.3.1.1 Master Clock

Synchronous data transfers use a separate clock line, which is synchronous with the data. A device configured as a master transmits the clock on the TX/CK line. The TX/CK pin output driver is automatically enabled when the AUSART is configured for synchronous transmit or receive operation. Serial data bits change on the leading edge to ensure they are valid at the trailing edge of each clock. One clock cycle is generated for each data bit. Only as many clock cycles are generated as there are data bits.

#### 9.3.1.2 Synchronous Master Transmission

Data is transferred out of the device on the RX/DT pin. The RX/DT and TX/CK pin output drivers are automatically enabled when the AUSART is configured for synchronous master transmit operation.

A transmission is initiated by writing a character to the TXREG register. If the TSR still contains all or part of a previous character the new character data is held in the TXREG until the last bit of the previous character has been transmitted. If this is the first character, or the previous character has been completely flushed from the TSR, the data in the TXREG is immediately transferred to the TSR. The transmission of the character commences immediately following the transfer of the data to the TSR from the TXREG.

Each data bit changes on the leading edge of the master clock and remains valid until the subsequent leading clock edge.

**Note:** The TSR register is not mapped in data memory, so it is not available to the user.

#### 9.3.1.3 Synchronous Master Transmission Set-up:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register and the BRGH bit to achieve the desired baud rate (see **Section 9.2 “AUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)”**).
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN, and CSRC.
3. Disable Receive mode by clearing bits SREN and CREN.
4. Enable Transmit mode by setting the TXEN bit.
5. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set the TX9 bit.
6. If interrupts are desired, set the TXIE bit of the PIE1 register and the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register.
7. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in the TX9D bit.
8. Start transmission by loading data to the TXREG register.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 9-6: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION**

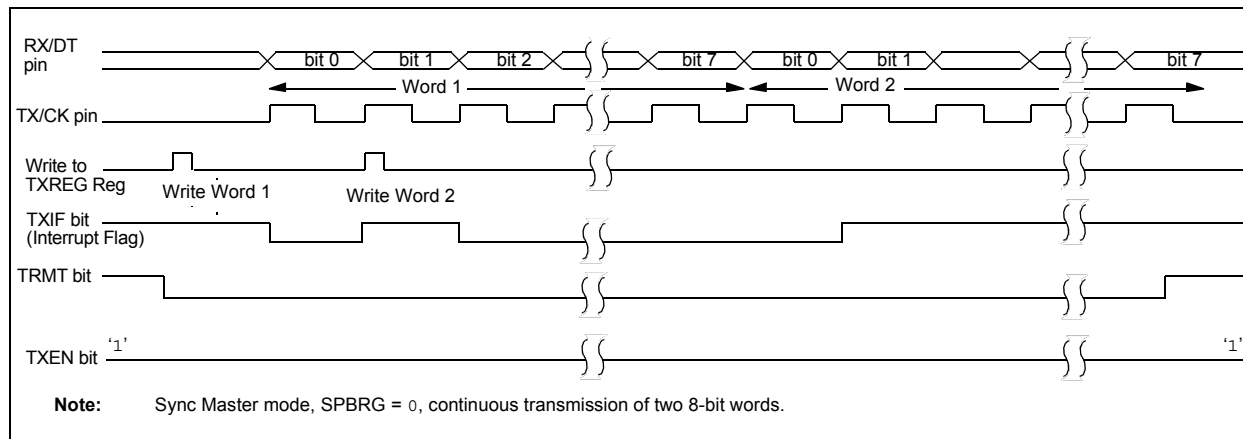


**FIGURE 9-7: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (THROUGH TXEN)**

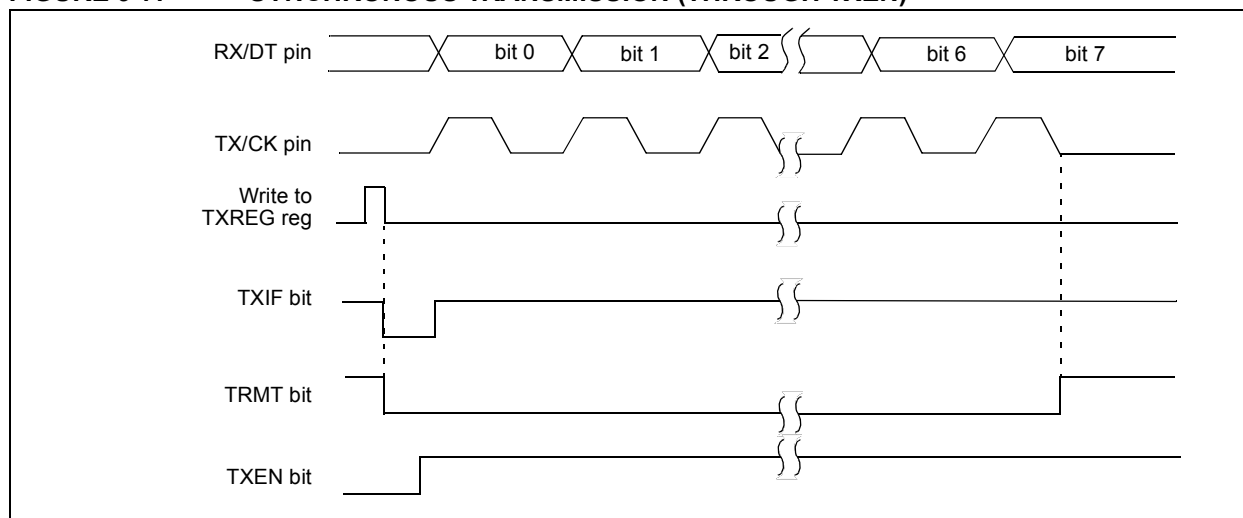


**TABLE 9-6: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION**

| Name   | Bit 7                         | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------|-------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON | GIE                           | PEIE   | TOIE   | INTE   | RBIE   | TOIF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| LCDCON | LCDEN                         | SLPEN  | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE1 | SE15                          | SE14   | SE13   | SE12   | SE11   | SE10   | SE9    | SE8    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIE1   | EEIE                          | ADIE   | RCIE   | TXIE   | SSPIE  | CCP1IE | TMR2IE | TMR1IE | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR1   | EEIF                          | ADIF   | RCIF   | TXIF   | SSPIF  | CCP1IF | TMR2IF | TMR1IF | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| RCSTA  | SPEN                          | RX9    | SREN   | CREN   | ADDEN  | FERR   | OERR   | RX9D   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| SPBRG  | BRG7                          | BRG6   | BRG5   | BRG4   | BRG3   | BRG2   | BRG1   | BRG0   | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| SSPCON | WCOL                          | SSPOV  | SSPEN  | CKP    | SSPM3  | SSPM2  | SSPM1  | SSPM0  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TRISC  | TRISC7                        | TRISC6 | TRISC5 | TRISC4 | TRISC3 | TRISC2 | TRISC1 | TRISC0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| TXREG  | AUSART Transmit Data Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TXSTA  | CSRC                          | TX9    | TXEN   | SYNC   | —      | BRGH   | TRMT   | TX9D   | 0000 -010         | 0000 -010                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, - = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Master Transmission.

## 9.3.1.4 Synchronous Master Reception

Data is received at the RX/DT pin. The RX/DT pin output driver is automatically disabled when the AUSART is configured for synchronous master receive operation.

In Synchronous mode, reception is enabled by setting either the Single Receive Enable bit (SREN of the RCSTA register) or the Continuous Receive Enable bit (CREN of the RCSTA register).

When SREN is set and CREN is clear, only as many clock cycles are generated as there are data bits in a single character. The SREN bit is automatically cleared at the completion of one character. When CREN is set, clocks are continuously generated until CREN is cleared. If CREN is cleared in the middle of a character the CK clock stops immediately and the partial character is discarded. If SREN and CREN are both set, then SREN is cleared at the completion of the first character and CREN takes precedence.

To initiate reception, set either SREN or CREN. Data is sampled at the RX/DT pin on the trailing edge of the TX/CK clock pin and is shifted into the Receive Shift Register (RSR). When a complete character is received into the RSR, the RCIF bit of the PIR1 register is set and the character is automatically transferred to the two character receive FIFO. The Least Significant eight bits of the top character in the receive FIFO are available in RCREG. The RCIF bit remains set as long as there are un-read characters in the receive FIFO.

## 9.3.1.5 Slave Clock

Synchronous data transfers use a separate clock line, which is synchronous with the data. A device configured as a slave receives the clock on the TX/CK line. The TX/CK pin output driver is automatically disabled when the device is configured for synchronous slave transmit or receive operation. Serial data bits change on the leading edge to ensure they are valid at the trailing edge of each clock. One data bit is transferred for each clock cycle. Only as many clock cycles should be received as there are data bits.

## 9.3.1.6 Receive Overrun Error

The receive FIFO buffer can hold two characters. An overrun error will be generated if a third character, in its entirety, is received before RCREG is read to access the FIFO. When this happens the OERR bit of the RCSTA register is set. Previous data in the FIFO will not be overwritten. The two characters in the FIFO buffer can be read, however, no additional characters will be received until the error is cleared. The OERR bit can only be cleared by clearing the overrun condition. If the overrun error occurred when the SREN bit is set and CREN is clear then the error is cleared by reading RCREG. If the overrun occurred when the CREN bit is set then the error condition is cleared by either clearing the CREN bit of the RCSTA register.

## 9.3.1.7 Receiving 9-bit Characters

The AUSART supports 9-bit character reception. When the RX9 bit of the RCSTA register is set the AUSART will shift 9-bits into the RSR for each character received. The RX9D bit of the RCSTA register is the ninth, and Most Significant, data bit of the top unread character in the receive FIFO. When reading 9-bit data from the receive FIFO buffer, the RX9D data bit must be read before reading the 8 Least Significant bits from the RCREG.

Address detection in Synchronous modes is not supported, therefore the ADDEN bit of the RCSTA register must be cleared.

## 9.3.1.8 Synchronous Master Reception Set-up:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate. Set or clear the BRGH bit, as required, to achieve the desired baud rate.
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN and CSRC.
3. Ensure bits CREN and SREN are clear.
4. If interrupts are desired, set the RCIE bit of the PIE1 register and the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register.
5. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
6. Verify address detection is disabled by clearing the ADDEN bit of the RCSTA register.
7. Start reception by setting the SREN bit or for continuous reception, set the CREN bit.
8. Interrupt flag bit RCIF of the PIR1 register will be set when reception of a character is complete. An interrupt will be generated if the RCIE interrupt enable bit of the PIE1 register was set.
9. Read the RCSTA register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
10. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
11. If an overrun error occurs, clear the error by either clearing the CREN bit of the RCSTA register or by clearing the SPEN bit which resets the AUSART.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 9-8: SYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION (MASTER MODE, SREN)**

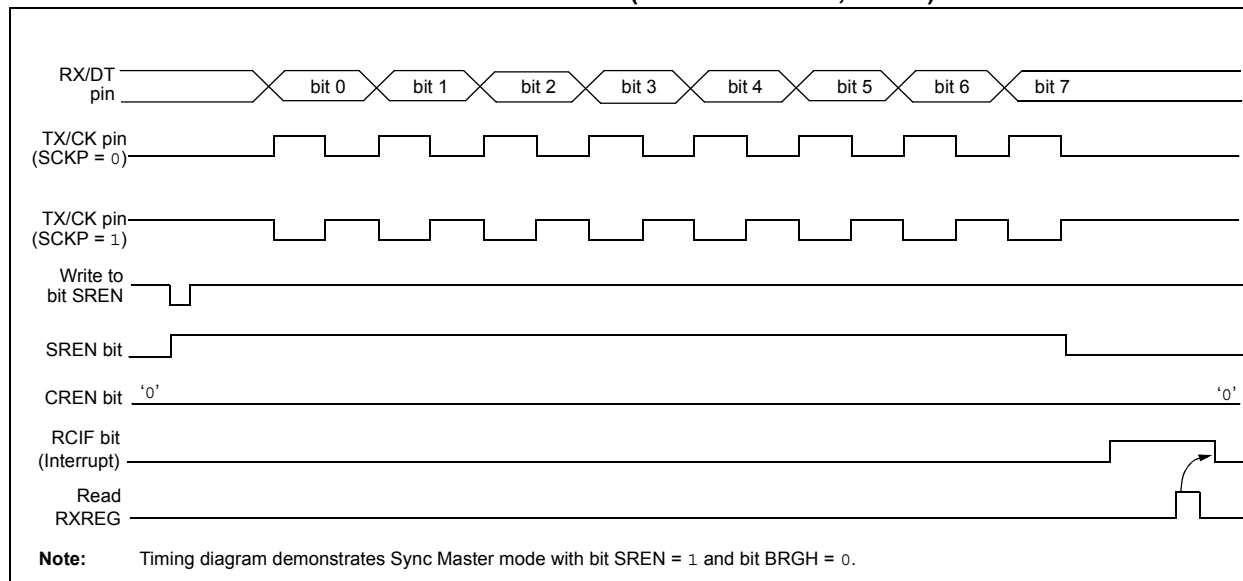


**TABLE 9-7: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER RECEPTION**

| Name   | Bit 7                        | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------|------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON | GIE                          | PEIE   | T0IE   | INTE   | RBIE   | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| LCDCON | LCDEN                        | SLPEN  | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE1 | SE15                         | SE14   | SE13   | SE12   | SE11   | SE10   | SE9    | SE8    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIE1   | EEIE                         | ADIE   | RCIE   | TXIE   | SSPIE  | CCP1IE | TMR2IE | TMR1IE | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR1   | EEIF                         | ADIF   | RCIF   | TXIF   | SSPIF  | CCP1IF | TMR2IF | TMR1IF | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| RCREG  | AUSART Receive Data Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| RCSTA  | SPEN                         | RX9    | SREN   | CREN   | ADDEN  | FERR   | OERR   | RX9D   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| SSPCON | WCOL                         | SSPOV  | SSPEN  | CKP    | SSPM3  | SSPM2  | SSPM1  | SSPM0  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TRISC  | TRISC7                       | TRISC6 | TRISC5 | TRISC4 | TRISC3 | TRISC2 | TRISC1 | TRISC0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| TXSTA  | CSRC                         | TX9    | TXEN   | SYNC   | —      | BRGH   | TRMT   | TX9D   | 0000 -010         | 0000 -010                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, - = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Master Reception.

## 9.3.2 SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE MODE

The following bits are used to configure the AUSART for Synchronous slave operation:

- SYNC = 1
- CSRC = 0
- SREN = 0 (for transmit); SREN = 1 (for receive)
- CREN = 0 (for transmit); CREN = 1 (for receive)
- SPEN = 1

Setting the SYNC bit of the TXSTA register configures the device for synchronous operation. Clearing the CSRC bit of the TXSTA register configures the device as a slave. Clearing the SREN and CREN bits of the RCSTA register ensures that the device is in the Transmit mode, otherwise the device will be configured to receive. Setting the SPEN bit of the RCSTA register enables the AUSART.

The LCD SEG8 and SEG9 functions must be disabled by clearing the SE8 and SE9 bits of the LCDSE1 register, if the RX/DT and TX/CK pins are shared with the LCD peripheral.

### 9.3.2.1 AUSART Synchronous Slave Transmit

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes are identical (see **Section 9.3.1.2 “Synchronous Master Transmission”**), except in the case of the Sleep mode.

If two words are written to the TXREG and then the SLEEP instruction is executed, the following will occur:

1. The first character will immediately transfer to the TSR register and transmit.
2. The second word will remain in TXREG register.
3. The TXIF bit will not be set.
4. After the first character has been shifted out of TSR, the TXREG register will transfer the second character to the TSR and the TXIF bit will now be set.
5. If the PEIE and TXIE bits are set, the interrupt will wake the device from Sleep and execute the next instruction. If the GIE bit is also set, the program will call the Interrupt Service Routine.

### 9.3.2.2 Synchronous Slave Transmission Set-up:

1. Set the SYNC and SPEN bits and clear the CSRC bit.
2. Clear the CREN and SREN bits.
3. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register are set and set the TXIE bit.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set the TX9 bit.
5. Enable transmission by setting the TXEN bit.
6. Verify address detection is disabled by clearing the ADDEN bit of the RCSTA register.
7. If 9-bit transmission is selected, insert the Most Significant bit into the TX9D bit.
8. Start transmission by writing the Least Significant 8 bits to the TXREG register.

**TABLE 9-8: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMISSION**

| Name   | Bit 7                         | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------|-------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON | GIE                           | PEIE   | TOIE   | INTE   | RBIE   | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| LCDCON | LCDEN                         | SLPEN  | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE1 | SE15                          | SE14   | SE13   | SE12   | SE11   | SE10   | SE9    | SE8    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIE1   | EEIE                          | ADIE   | RCIE   | TXIE   | SSPIE  | CCP1IE | TMR2IE | TMR1IE | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR1   | EEIF                          | ADIF   | RCIF   | TXIF   | SSPIF  | CCP1IF | TMR2IF | TMR1IF | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| RCSTA  | SPEN                          | RX9    | SREN   | CREN   | ADDEN  | FERR   | OERR   | RX9D   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| SSPCON | WCOL                          | SSPOV  | SSPEN  | CKP    | SSPM3  | SSPM2  | SSPM1  | SSPM0  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TRISC  | TRISC7                        | TRISC6 | TRISC5 | TRISC4 | TRISC3 | TRISC2 | TRISC1 | TRISC0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| TXREG  | AUSART Transmit Data Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TXSTA  | CSRC                          | TX9    | TXEN   | SYNC   | —      | BRGH   | TRMT   | TX9D   | 0000 -010         | 0000 -010                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, - = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Slave Transmission.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 9.3.2.3 AUSART Synchronous Slave Reception

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes is identical (**Section 9.3.1.4 “Synchronous Master Reception”**), with the following exceptions:

- Sleep
- CREN bit is always set, therefore the receiver is never Idle
- SREN bit, which is a “don’t care” in Slave mode

A character may be received while in Sleep mode by setting the CREN bit prior to entering Sleep. Once the word is received, the RSR register will transfer the data to the RCREG register. If the RCIE interrupt enable bit of the PIE1 register is set, the interrupt generated will wake the device from Sleep and execute the next instruction. If the GIE bit is also set, the program will branch to the interrupt vector.

## 9.3.2.4 Synchronous Slave Reception Set-up:

1. Set the SYNC and SPEN bits and clear the CSRC bit.
2. If interrupts are desired, set the RCIE bit of the PIE1 register and the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register.
3. If 9-bit reception is desired, set the RX9 bit.
4. Verify address detection is disabled by clearing the ADDEN bit of the RCSTA register.
5. Set the CREN bit to enable reception.
6. The RCIF bit of the PIR1 register will be set when reception is complete. An interrupt will be generated if the RCIE bit of the PIE1 register was set.
7. If 9-bit mode is enabled, retrieve the Most Significant bit from the RX9D bit of the RCSTA register.
8. Retrieve the 8 Least Significant bits from the receive FIFO by reading the RCREG register.
9. If an overrun error occurs, clear the error by either clearing the CREN bit of the RCSTA register.

**TABLE 9-9: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION**

| Name   | Bit 7                        | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------|------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON | GIE                          | PEIE   | T0IE   | INTE   | RBIE   | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| LCDCON | LCDEN                        | SLPEN  | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE1 | SE15                         | SE14   | SE13   | SE12   | SE11   | SE10   | SE9    | SE8    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIE1   | EEIE                         | ADIE   | RCIE   | TXIE   | SSPIE  | CCP1IE | TMR2IE | TMR1IE | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR1   | EEIF                         | ADIF   | RCIF   | TXIF   | SSPIF  | CCP1IF | TMR2IF | TMR1IF | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| RCREG  | AUSART Receive Data Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| RCSTA  | SPEN                         | RX9    | SREN   | CREN   | ADDEN  | FERR   | OERR   | RX9D   | 0000 000X         | 0000 000X                 |
| SSPCON | WCOL                         | SSPOV  | SSPEN  | CKP    | SSPM3  | SSPM2  | SSPM1  | SSPM0  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TRISC  | TRISC7                       | TRISC6 | TRISC5 | TRISC4 | TRISC3 | TRISC2 | TRISC1 | TRISC0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| TXSTA  | CSRC                         | TX9    | TXEN   | SYNC   | —      | BRGH   | TRMT   | TX9D   | 0000 -010         | 0000 -010                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, - = unimplemented read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Slave Reception.

## 9.4 AUSART Operation During Sleep

The AUSART will remain active during Sleep only in the Synchronous Slave mode. All other modes require the system clock and therefore cannot generate the necessary signals to run the Transmit or Receive Shift registers during Sleep.

Synchronous Slave mode uses an externally generated clock to run the Transmit and Receive Shift registers.

### 9.4.1 SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE DURING SLEEP

To receive during Sleep, all the following conditions must be met before entering Sleep mode:

- RCSTA and TXSTA Control registers must be configured for Synchronous Slave Reception (see **Section 9.3.2.4 “Synchronous Slave Reception Set-up:”**).
- If interrupts are desired, set the RCIE bit of the PIE1 register and the PEIE bit of the INTCON register.
- The RCIF interrupt flag must be cleared by reading RCREG to unload any pending characters in the receive buffer.

Upon entering Sleep mode, the device will be ready to accept data and clocks on the RX/DT and TX/CK pins, respectively. When the data word has been completely clocked in by the external device, the RCIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register will be set. Thereby, waking the processor from Sleep.

Upon waking from Sleep, the instruction following the `SLEEP` instruction will be executed. If the GIE global interrupt enable bit of the INTCON register is also set, then the Interrupt Service Routine at address 004h will be called.

### 9.4.2 SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMIT DURING SLEEP

To transmit during Sleep, all the following conditions must be met before entering Sleep mode:

- RCSTA and TXSTA Control registers must be configured for Synchronous Slave Transmission (see **Section 9.3.2.2 “Synchronous Slave Transmission Set-up:”**).
- The TXIF interrupt flag must be cleared by writing the output data to the TXREG, thereby filling the TSR and transmit buffer.
- If interrupts are desired, set the TXIE bit of the PIE1 register and the PEIE bit of the INTCON register.

Upon entering Sleep mode, the device will be ready to accept clocks on TX/CK pin and transmit data on the RX/DT pin. When the data word in the TSR has been completely clocked out by the external device, the pending byte in the TXREG will transfer to the TSR and the TXIF flag will be set. Thereby, waking the processor from Sleep. At this point, the TXREG is available to accept another character for transmission, which will clear the TXIF flag.

Upon waking from Sleep, the instruction following the `SLEEP` instruction will be executed. If the GIE global interrupt enable bit is also set then the Interrupt Service Routine at address 0004h will be called.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

NOTES:



## 10.0 LIQUID CRYSTAL DISPLAY (LCD) DRIVER MODULE

The Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) driver module generates the timing control to drive a static or multiplexed LCD panel. In the PIC16F913/916 devices, the module drives the panels of up to four commons and up to 16 segments. In the PIC16F914/917 devices, the module drives the panels of up to four commons and up to 24 segments. In the PIC16F946 device, the module drives the panels of up to four commons and up to 42 segments. The LCD module also provides control of the LCD pixel data.

The LCD driver module supports:

- Direct driving of LCD panel
- Three LCD clock sources with selectable prescaler
- Up to four commons:
  - Static (1 common)
  - 1/2 multiplex (2 commons)
  - 1/3 multiplex (3 commons)
  - 1/4 multiplex (4 commons)
- Segments up to:
  - 16 (PIC16F913/916)
  - 24 (PIC16F914/917)
  - 42 (PIC16F946)
- Static, 1/2 or 1/3 LCD Bias

**Note:** COM3 and SEG15 share the same physical pin on the PIC16F913/916, therefore SEG15 is not available when using 1/4 multiplex displays.

### 10.1 LCD Registers

The module contains the following registers:

- LCD Control Register (LCDCON)
- LCD Phase Register (LCDPS)
- Up to 6 LCD Segment Enable Registers (LCDSEn)
- Up to 24 LCD Data Registers (LCDDATA)

**TABLE 10-1: LCD SEGMENT AND DATA REGISTERS**

| Device        | # of LCD Registers |      |
|---------------|--------------------|------|
|               | Segment Enable     | Data |
| PIC16F913/916 | 2                  | 8    |
| PIC16F914/917 | 3                  | 12   |
| PIC16F946     | 6                  | 24   |

The LCDCON register (Register 10-1) controls the operation of the LCD driver module. The LCDPS register (Register 10-2) configures the LCD clock source prescaler and the type of waveform; Type-A or Type-B. The LCDSE registers (Register 10-3) configure the functions of the port pins.

The following LCDSE registers are available:

- LCDSE0 SE<7:0>
- LCDSE1 SE<15:8>
- LCDSE2 SE<23:16><sup>(1)</sup>
- LCDSE3 SE<31:24><sup>(2)</sup>
- LCDSE4 SE<39:32><sup>(2)</sup>
- LCDSE5 SE<41:40><sup>(2)</sup>

**Note 1:** PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

**2:** PIC16F946 only.

Once the module is initialized for the LCD panel, the individual bits of the LCDDATA<11:0> registers are cleared/set to represent a clear/dark pixel, respectively:

- LCDDATA0 SEG<7:0>COM0
- LCDDATA1 SEG<15:8>COM0
- LCDDATA2 SEG<23:16>COM0
- LCDDATA3 SEG<7:0>COM1
- LCDDATA4 SEG<15:8>COM1
- LCDDATA5 SEG<23:16>COM1
- LCDDATA6 SEG<7:0>COM2
- LCDDATA7 SEG<15:8>COM2
- LCDDATA8 SEG<23:16>COM2
- LCDDATA9 SEG<7:0>COM3
- LCDDATA10 SEG<15:8>COM3
- LCDDATA11 SEG<23:16>COM3

The following additional registers are available on the PIC16F946 only:

- LCDDATA12 SEG<31:24>COM0
- LCDDATA13 SEG<39:32>COM0
- LCDDATA14 SEG<41:40>COM0
- LCDDATA15 SEG<31:24>COM1
- LCDDATA16 SEG<39:32>COM1
- LCDDATA17 SEG<41:40>COM1
- LCDDATA18 SEG<31:24>COM2
- LCDDATA19 SEG<39:32>COM2
- LCDDATA20 SEG<41:40>COM2
- LCDDATA21 SEG<31:24>COM3
- LCDDATA22 SEG<39:32>COM3
- LCDDATA23 SEG<41:40>COM3

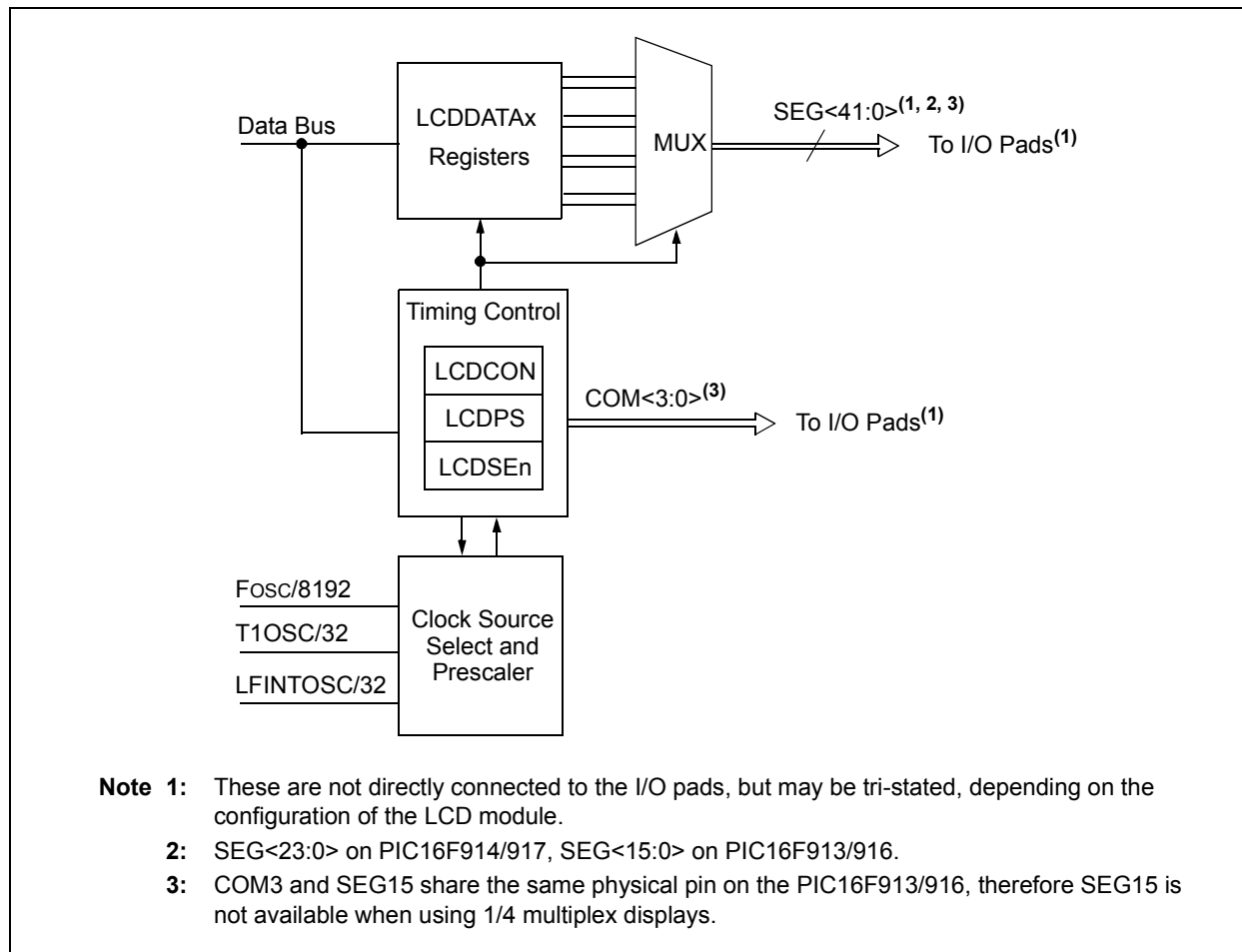
As an example, LCDDATAx is detailed in Register 10-4.

Once the module is configured, the LCDEN bit of the LCDCON register is used to enable or disable the LCD module. The LCD panel can also operate during Sleep by clearing the SLPEN bit of the LCDCON register.

**Note:** The LCDDATA2, LCDDATA5, LCDDATA8 and LCDDATA11 registers are not implemented in the PIC16F913/916 devices.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 10-1: LCD DRIVER MODULE BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 10-1: LCDCON: LIQUID CRYSTAL DISPLAY CONTROL REGISTER

|       |       |       |        |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/C-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-1 | R/W-1 |
| LCDEN | SLPEN | WERR  | VLCDEN | CS1   | CS0   | LMUX1 | LMUX0 |
| bit 7 |       |       |        |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

C = Only clearable bit

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

-n = Value at POR

- bit 7 **LCDEN:** LCD Driver Enable bit  
1 = LCD driver module is enabled  
0 = LCD driver module is disabled
- bit 6 **SLPEN:** LCD Driver Enable in Sleep mode bit  
1 = LCD driver module is disabled in Sleep mode  
0 = LCD driver module is enabled in Sleep mode
- bit 5 **WERR:** LCD Write Failed Error bit  
1 = LCDDATAx register written while the WA bit of the LCDPS register = 0 (must be cleared in software)  
0 = No LCD write error
- bit 4 **VLCDEN:** LCD Bias Voltage Pins Enable bit  
1 = VLCD pins are enabled  
0 = VLCD pins are disabled
- bit 3-2 **CS<1:0>:** Clock Source Select bits  
00 = Fosc/8192  
01 = T1OSC (Timer1)/32  
1x = LFINTOSC (31 kHz)/32
- bit 1-0 **LMUX<1:0>:** Commons Select bits

| LMUX<1:0> | Multiplex      | Maximum Number of Pixels |               |           | Bias       |
|-----------|----------------|--------------------------|---------------|-----------|------------|
|           |                | PIC16F913/916            | PIC16F914/917 | PIC16F946 |            |
| 00        | Static (COM0)  | 16                       | 24            | 42        | Static     |
| 01        | 1/2 (COM<1:0>) | 32                       | 48            | 84        | 1/2 or 1/3 |
| 10        | 1/3 (COM<2:0>) | 48                       | 72            | 126       | 1/2 or 1/3 |
| 11        | 1/4 (COM<3:0>) | 60 <sup>(1)</sup>        | 96            | 168       | 1/3        |

**Note 1:** On PIC16F913/916 devices, COM3 and SEG15 are shared on one pin, limiting the device from driving 64 pixels.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 10-2: LCDPS: LCD PRESCALER SELECT REGISTER

|       |        |      |     |       |       |       |       |
|-------|--------|------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R-0  | R-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
| WFT   | BIASMD | LCDA | WA  | LP3   | LP2   | LP1   | LP0   |
| bit 7 |        |      |     |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7      **WFT:** Waveform Type Select bit  
1 = Type-B waveform (phase changes on each frame boundary)  
0 = Type-A waveform (phase changes within each common interval)
- bit 6      **BIASMD:** Bias Mode Select bit  
When LMUX<1:0> = 00:  
0 = Static Bias mode (do not set this bit to '1')  
When LMUX<1:0> = 01:  
1 = 1/2 Bias mode  
0 = 1/3 Bias mode  
When LMUX<1:0> = 10:  
1 = 1/2 Bias mode  
0 = 1/3 Bias mode  
When LMUX<1:0> = 11:  
0 = 1/3 Bias mode (do not set this bit to '1')
- bit 5      **LCDA:** LCD Active Status bit  
1 = LCD driver module is active  
0 = LCD driver module is inactive
- bit 4      **WA:** LCD Write Allow Status bit  
1 = Write into the LCDDATAx registers is allowed  
0 = Write into the LCDDATAx registers is not allowed
- bit 3-0    **LP<3:0>:** LCD Prescaler Select bits  
1111 = 1:16  
1110 = 1:15  
1101 = 1:14  
1100 = 1:13  
1011 = 1:12  
1010 = 1:11  
1001 = 1:10  
1000 = 1:9  
0111 = 1:8  
0110 = 1:7  
0101 = 1:6  
0100 = 1:5  
0011 = 1:4  
0010 = 1:3  
0001 = 1:2  
0000 = 1:1

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 10-3: LCDSEn: LCD SEGMENT ENABLE REGISTERS

| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SEn   | SEn   | SEn   | SEn   | SEn   | SEn   | SEn   | SEn   |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**SEn:** Segment Enable bits

1 = Segment function of the pin is enabled

0 = I/O function of the pin is enabled

## REGISTER 10-4: LCDDATAx: LCD DATA REGISTERS

| R/W-x     | R/W-x     | R/W-x     | R/W-x     | R/W-x     | R/W-x     | R/W-x     | R/W-x     |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| SEGx-COMy | SEGx-COMy | SEGx-COMy | SEGx-COMy | SEGx-COMy | SEGx-COMy | SEGx-COMy | SEGx-COMy |
| bit 7     |           |           |           |           |           |           | bit 0     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**SEGx-COMy:** Pixel On bits

1 = Pixel on (dark)

0 = Pixel off (clear)

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 10.2 LCD Clock Source Selection

The LCD driver module has 3 possible clock sources:

- $F_{osc}/8192$
- $T1OSC/32$
- $LFINTOSC/32$

The first clock source is the system clock divided by 8192 ( $F_{osc}/8192$ ). This divider ratio is chosen to provide about 1 kHz output when the system clock is 8 MHz. The divider is not programmable. Instead, the LCD prescaler bits LP<3:0> of the LCDPS register are used to set the LCD frame clock rate.

The second clock source is the  $T1OSC/32$ . This also gives about 1 kHz when a 32.768 kHz crystal is used with the Timer1 oscillator. To use the Timer1 oscillator as a clock source, the T1OSCEN bit of the T1CON register should be set.

The third clock source is the 31 kHz  $LFINTOSC/32$ , which provides approximately 1 kHz output.

The second and third clock sources may be used to continue running the LCD while the processor is in Sleep.

Using bits CS<1:0> of the LCDCON register can select any of these clock sources.

### 10.2.1 LCD PRESCALER

A 4-bit counter is available as a prescaler for the LCD clock. The prescaler is not directly readable or writable; its value is set by the LP<3:0> bits of the LCDPS register, which determine the prescaler assignment and prescale ratio.

The prescale values are selectable from 1:1 through 1:16.

## 10.3 LCD Bias Types

The LCD driver module can be configured into one of three bias types:

- Static Bias (2 voltage levels: VSS and VDD)
- 1/2 Bias (3 voltage levels: VSS, 1/2 VDD and VDD)
- 1/3 Bias (4 voltage levels: VSS, 1/3 VDD, 2/3 VDD and VDD)

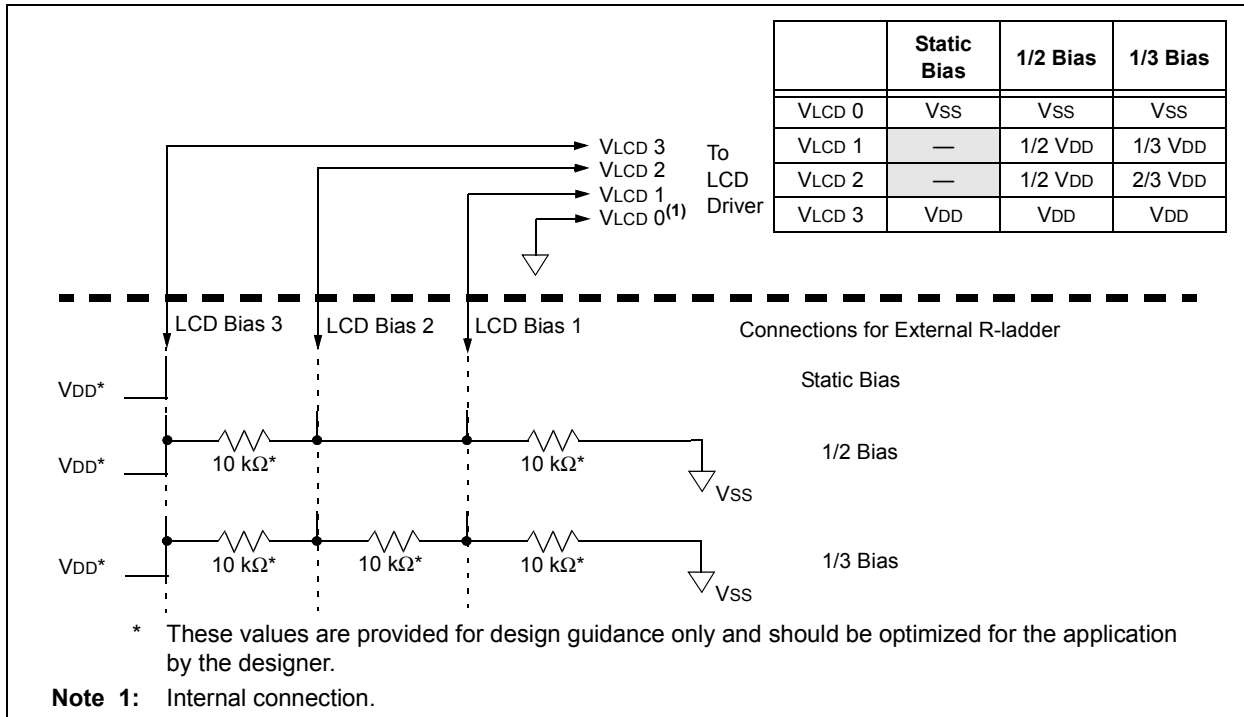
This module uses an external resistor ladder to generate the LCD bias voltages.

The external resistor ladder should be connected to the VLCD1 pin (Bias 1), VLCD2 pin (Bias 2), VLCD3 pin (Bias 3) and VSS. The VLCD3 pin should also be connected to VDD.

Figure 10-2 shows the proper way to connect the resistor ladder to the Bias pins..

**Note:** VLCD pins used to supply LCD bias voltage are enabled on power-up (POR) and must be disabled by the user by clearing the VLCDEN bit of the LCDCON register.

**FIGURE 10-2: LCD BIAS RESISTOR LADDER CONNECTION DIAGRAM**



## 10.4 LCD Multiplex Types

The LCD driver module can be configured into one of four multiplex types:

- Static (only COM0 is used)
- 1/2 multiplex (COM<1:0> are used)
- 1/3 multiplex (COM<2:0> are used)
- 1/4 multiplex (COM<3:0> are used)

The LMUX<1:0> bit setting of the LCDCON register decides the function of RB5, RA2 or either RA3 or RD0 pins (see Table 10-2 for details).

If the pin is a digital I/O, the corresponding TRIS bit controls the data direction. If the pin is a COM drive, then the TRIS setting of that pin is overridden.

**Note:** On a Power-on Reset, the LMUX<1:0> bits of the LCDCON register are '11'.

**TABLE 10-2: RA3/RD0, RA2, RB5 FUNCTION**

| Multiplex | LMUX<1:0> | RA3/RD0 <sup>(1)</sup> | RA2         | RB5         |
|-----------|-----------|------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Static    | 00        | Digital I/O            | Digital I/O | Digital I/O |
| 1/2       | 01        | Digital I/O            | Digital I/O | COM1 Driver |
| 1/3       | 10        | Digital I/O            | COM2 Driver | COM1 Driver |
| 1/4       | 11        | COM3 Driver            | COM2 Driver | COM1 Driver |

**Note 1:** RA3 for PIC16F913/916, RD0 for PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946

## 10.5 Segment Enables

The LCDSEn registers are used to select the pin function for each segment pin. The selection allows each pin to operate as either an LCD segment driver or as one of the pin's alternate functions. To configure the pin as a segment pin, the corresponding bits in the LCDSEn registers must be set to '1'.

If the pin is a digital I/O, the corresponding TRIS bit controls the data direction. Any bit set in the LCDSEn registers overrides any bit settings in the corresponding TRIS register.

**Note:** On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as digital I/O.

## 10.6 Pixel Control

The LCDDATAx registers contain bits which define the state of each pixel. Each bit defines one unique pixel.

Register 10-4 shows the correlation of each bit in the LCDDATAx registers to the respective common and segment signals.

Any LCD pixel location not being used for display can be used as general purpose RAM.

## 10.7 LCD Frame Frequency

The rate at which the COM and SEG outputs change is called the LCD frame frequency.

**TABLE 10-3: FRAME FREQUENCY FORMULAS**

| Multiplex | Frame Frequency =                                              |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Static    | $\text{Clock source}/(4 \times 1 \times (\text{LP}<3:0> + 1))$ |
| 1/2       | $\text{Clock source}/(2 \times 2 \times (\text{LP}<3:0> + 1))$ |
| 1/3       | $\text{Clock source}/(1 \times 3 \times (\text{LP}<3:0> + 1))$ |
| 1/4       | $\text{Clock source}/(1 \times 4 \times (\text{LP}<3:0> + 1))$ |

**Note:** Clock source is Fosc/8192, T1OSC/32 or LFINTOSC/32.

**TABLE 10-4: APPROXIMATE FRAME FREQUENCY (IN Hz) USING Fosc @ 8 MHz, TIMER1 @ 32.768 kHz OR LFINTOSC**

| LP<3:0> | Static | 1/2 | 1/3 | 1/4 |
|---------|--------|-----|-----|-----|
| 2       | 85     | 85  | 114 | 85  |
| 3       | 64     | 64  | 85  | 64  |
| 4       | 51     | 51  | 68  | 51  |
| 5       | 43     | 43  | 57  | 43  |
| 6       | 37     | 37  | 49  | 37  |
| 7       | 32     | 32  | 43  | 32  |

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 10-3: LCD CLOCK GENERATION**

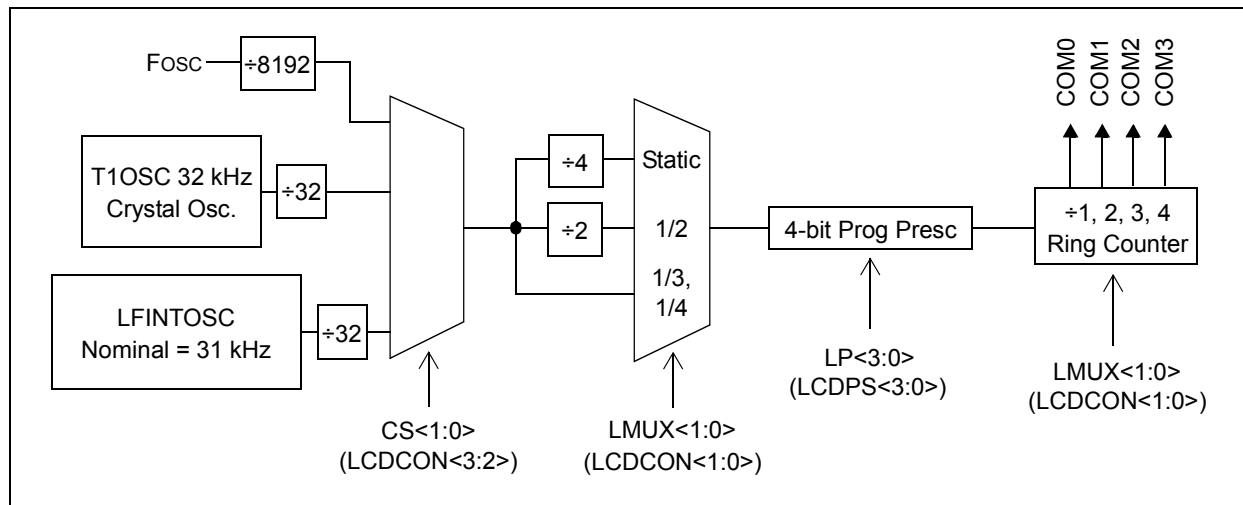




**FIGURE 10-4: LCD SEGMENT MAPPING WORKSHEET (SHEET 1 OF 2)**

| LCD Function | COM0             |             | COM1             |             | COM2             |             | COM3             |             | Pin No. |        |        | PORT | Alternate Functions |
|--------------|------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|---------|--------|--------|------|---------------------|
|              | LCDDATA0 Address | LCD Segment | LCDDATA0 Address | LCD Segment | LCDDATA0 Address | LCD Segment | LCDDATA0 Address | LCD Segment | 28-pin  | 40-pin | 64-pin |      |                     |
| SEG0         | LCDDATA0, 0      |             | LCDDATA3, 0      |             | LCDDATA6, 0      |             | LCDDATA9, 0      |             | 21      | 33     | 15     | RB0  | INT                 |
| SEG1         | LCDDATA0, 1      |             | LCDDATA3, 1      |             | LCDDATA6, 1      |             | LCDDATA9, 1      |             | 22      | 34     | 16     | RB1  |                     |
| SEG2         | LCDDATA0, 2      |             | LCDDATA3, 2      |             | LCDDATA6, 2      |             | LCDDATA9, 2      |             | 23      | 35     | 17     | RB2  |                     |
| SEG3         | LCDDATA0, 3      |             | LCDDATA3, 3      |             | LCDDATA6, 3      |             | LCDDATA9, 3      |             | 24      | 36     | 18     | RB3  |                     |
| SEG4         | LCDDATA0, 4      |             | LCDDATA3, 4      |             | LCDDATA6, 4      |             | LCDDATA9, 4      |             | 6       | 6      | 31     | RA4  | C1OUT/T0CKI         |
| SEG5         | LCDDATA0, 5      |             | LCDDATA3, 5      |             | LCDDATA6, 5      |             | LCDDATA9, 5      |             | 7       | 7      | 32     | RA5  | C2OUT/AN4/SS        |
| SEG6         | LCDDATA0, 6      |             | LCDDATA3, 6      |             | LCDDATA6, 6      |             | LCDDATA9, 6      |             | 14      | 18     | 52     | RC3  |                     |
| SEG7         | LCDDATA0, 7      |             | LCDDATA3, 7      |             | LCDDATA6, 7      |             | LCDDATA9, 7      |             | 3       | 3      | 28     | RA1  | AN1/C2-             |
| SEG8         | LCDDATA1, 0      |             | LCDDATA4, 0      |             | LCDDATA7, 0      |             | LCDDATA10, 0     |             | 18      | 26     | 62     | RC7  | RX/DT/SDI/SDA       |
| SEG9         | LCDDATA1, 1      |             | LCDDATA4, 1      |             | LCDDATA7, 1      |             | LCDDATA10, 1     |             | 17      | 25     | 61     | RC6  | TX/CK/SCK/SCL       |
| SEG10        | LCDDATA1, 2      |             | LCDDATA4, 2      |             | LCDDATA7, 2      |             | LCDDATA10, 2     |             | 16      | 24     | 60     | RC5  | T1CK/ICCP1          |
| SEG11        | LCDDATA1, 3      |             | LCDDATA4, 3      |             | LCDDATA7, 3      |             | LCDDATA10, 3     |             | 15      | 23     | 59     | RC4  | T1G/SDO             |
| SEG12        | LCDDATA1, 4      |             | LCDDATA4, 4      |             | LCDDATA7, 4      |             | LCDDATA10, 4     |             | 2       | 2      | 27     | RA0  | AN0/C1-             |
| SEG13        | LCDDATA1, 5      |             | LCDDATA4, 5      |             | LCDDATA7, 5      |             | LCDDATA10, 5     |             | 28      | 40     | 24     | RB7  | ICSPDAT/ICDDAT      |
| SEG14        | LCDDATA1, 6      |             | LCDDATA4, 6      |             | LCDDATA7, 6      |             | LCDDATA10, 6     |             | 27      | 39     | 23     | RB6  | ICSPCLK/ICDCK       |
| SEG15        | LCDDATA1, 7      |             | LCDDATA4, 7      |             | LCDDATA7, 7      |             | LCDDATA10, 7     |             | 5       | 5      | 30     | RA3  | AN3/VREF+/COM3*     |
| SEG16        | LCDDATA2, 0      |             | LCDDATA5, 0      |             | LCDDATA8, 0      |             | LCDDATA11, 0     |             | —       | 26     | 58     | RD3  |                     |
| SEG17        | LCDDATA2, 1      |             | LCDDATA5, 1      |             | LCDDATA8, 1      |             | LCDDATA11, 1     |             | —       | 27     | 63     | RD4  |                     |
| SEG18        | LCDDATA2, 2      |             | LCDDATA5, 2      |             | LCDDATA8, 2      |             | LCDDATA11, 2     |             | —       | 28     | 64     | RD5  |                     |
| SEG19        | LCDDATA2, 3      |             | LCDDATA5, 3      |             | LCDDATA8, 3      |             | LCDDATA11, 3     |             | —       | 29     | 1      | RD6  |                     |
| SEG20        | LCDDATA2, 4      |             | LCDDATA5, 4      |             | LCDDATA8, 4      |             | LCDDATA11, 4     |             | —       | 30     | 2      | RD7  |                     |
| SEG21        | LCDDATA2, 5      |             | LCDDATA5, 5      |             | LCDDATA8, 5      |             | LCDDATA11, 5     |             | —       | 8      | 33     | RE0  | AN5                 |
| SEG22        | LCDDATA2, 6      |             | LCDDATA5, 6      |             | LCDDATA8, 6      |             | LCDDATA11, 6     |             | —       | 9      | 34     | RE1  | AN6                 |
| SEG23        | LCDDATA2, 7      |             | LCDDATA5, 7      |             | LCDDATA8, 7      |             | LCDDATA11, 7     |             | —       | 10     | 35     | RE2  | AN7                 |

\* = PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.  
 \* = PIC16F913/916 only.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 10-5: LCD SEGMENT MAPPING WORKSHEET (SHEET 2 OF 2)

| LCD Function | COM0             |             | COM1             |             | COM2             |             | COM3             |             | Pin No. | PORT | Alternate Functions |
|--------------|------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|---------|------|---------------------|
|              | LCDDATAx Address | LCD Segment | LCDDATAx Address | LCD Segment | LCDDATAx Address | LCD Segment | LCDDATAx Address | LCD Segment |         |      |                     |
| SEG24        | LCDDATA12, 0     |             | LCDDATA15, 0     |             | LCDDATA18, 0     |             | LCDDATA21, 0     |             | 37      | RE4  |                     |
| SEG25        | LCDDATA12, 1     |             | LCDDATA15, 1     |             | LCDDATA18, 1     |             | LCDDATA21, 1     |             | 42      | RE5  |                     |
| SEG26        | LCDDATA12, 2     |             | LCDDATA15, 2     |             | LCDDATA18, 2     |             | LCDDATA21, 2     |             | 43      | RE6  |                     |
| SEG27        | LCDDATA12, 3     |             | LCDDATA15, 3     |             | LCDDATA18, 3     |             | LCDDATA21, 3     |             | 44      | RE7  |                     |
| SEG28        | LCDDATA12, 4     |             | LCDDATA15, 4     |             | LCDDATA18, 4     |             | LCDDATA21, 4     |             | 45      | RF4  |                     |
| SEG29        | LCDDATA12, 5     |             | LCDDATA15, 5     |             | LCDDATA18, 5     |             | LCDDATA21, 5     |             | 46      | RF5  |                     |
| SEG30        | LCDDATA12, 6     |             | LCDDATA15, 6     |             | LCDDATA18, 6     |             | LCDDATA21, 6     |             | 47      | RF6  |                     |
| SEG31        | LCDDATA12, 7     |             | LCDDATA15, 7     |             | LCDDATA18, 7     |             | LCDDATA21, 7     |             | 48      | RF7  |                     |
| SEG32        | LCDDATA13, 0     |             | LCDDATA16, 0     |             | LCDDATA19, 0     |             | LCDDATA22, 0     |             | 11      | RF0  |                     |
| SEG33        | LCDDATA13, 1     |             | LCDDATA16, 1     |             | LCDDATA19, 1     |             | LCDDATA22, 1     |             | 12      | RF1  |                     |
| SEG34        | LCDDATA13, 2     |             | LCDDATA16, 2     |             | LCDDATA19, 2     |             | LCDDATA22, 2     |             | 13      | RF2  |                     |
| SEG35        | LCDDATA13, 3     |             | LCDDATA16, 3     |             | LCDDATA19, 3     |             | LCDDATA22, 3     |             | 14      | RF3  |                     |
| SEG36        | LCDDATA13, 4     |             | LCDDATA16, 4     |             | LCDDATA19, 4     |             | LCDDATA22, 4     |             | 3       | RG0  |                     |
| SEG37        | LCDDATA13, 5     |             | LCDDATA16, 5     |             | LCDDATA19, 5     |             | LCDDATA22, 5     |             | 4       | RG1  |                     |
| SEG38        | LCDDATA13, 6     |             | LCDDATA16, 6     |             | LCDDATA19, 6     |             | LCDDATA22, 6     |             | 5       | RG2  |                     |
| SEG39        | LCDDATA13, 7     |             | LCDDATA16, 7     |             | LCDDATA19, 7     |             | LCDDATA22, 7     |             | 6       | RG3  |                     |
| SEG40        | LCDDATA14, 0     |             | LCDDATA17, 0     |             | LCDDATA20, 0     |             | LCDDATA23, 0     |             | 7       | RG4  |                     |
| SEG41        | LCDDATA14, 1     |             | LCDDATA17, 1     |             | LCDDATA20, 1     |             | LCDDATA23, 1     |             | 8       | RG5  |                     |

 PIC16F946 only.

## 10.8 LCD Waveform Generation

LCD waveforms are generated so that the net AC voltage across the dark pixel should be maximized and the net AC voltage across the clear pixel should be minimized. The net DC voltage across any pixel should be zero.

The COM signal represents the time slice for each common, while the SEG contains the pixel data.

The pixel signal (COM-SEG) will have no DC component and it can take only one of the two rms values. The higher rms value will create a dark pixel and a lower rms value will create a clear pixel.

As the number of commons increases, the delta between the two rms values decreases. The delta represents the maximum contrast that the display can have.

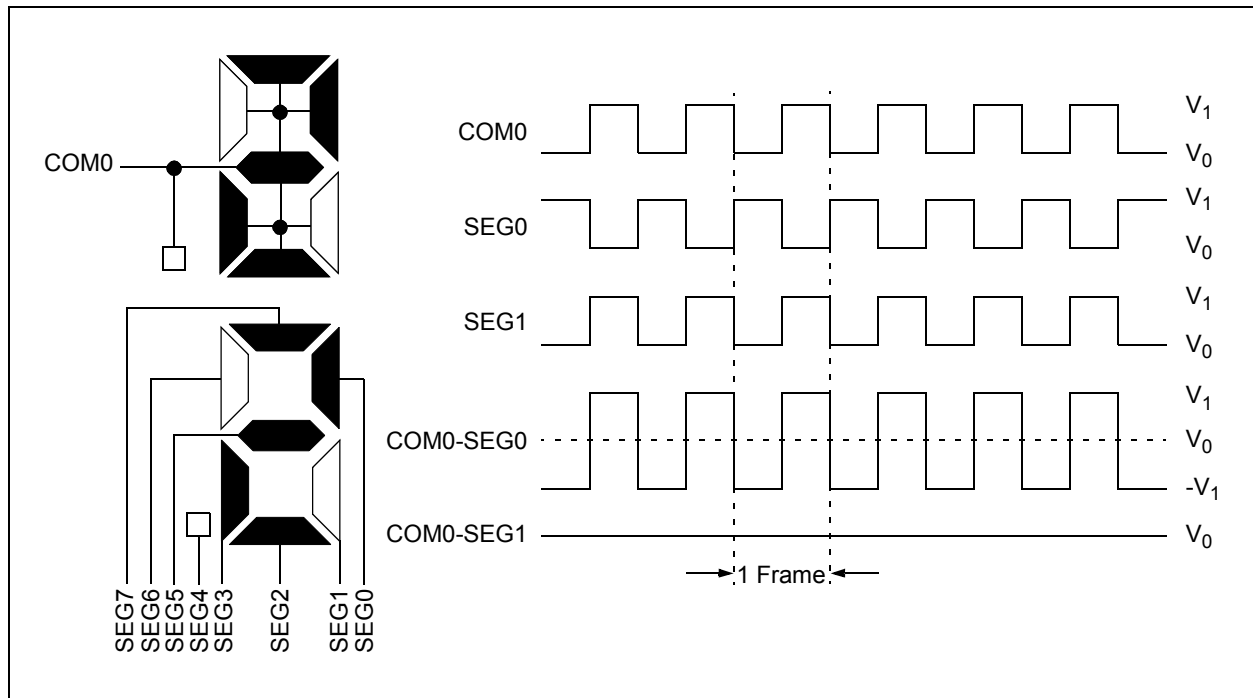
The LCDs can be driven by two types of waveform: Type-A and Type-B. In Type-A waveform, the phase changes within each common type, whereas in Type-B waveform, the phase changes on each frame boundary. Thus, Type-A waveform maintains 0 VDC over a single frame, whereas Type-B waveform takes two frames.

**Note 1:** If Sleep has to be executed with LCD Sleep disabled (LCDCON<SLPEN> is '1'), then care must be taken to execute Sleep only when VDC on all the pixels is '0'.

**2:** When the LCD clock source is Fosc/8192, if Sleep is executed, irrespective of the LCDCON<SLPEN> setting, the LCD goes into Sleep. Thus, take care to see that VDC on all pixels is '0' when Sleep is executed.

Figure 10-6 through Figure 10-16 provide waveforms for static, half-multiplex, one-third-multiplex and quarter-multiplex drives for Type-A and Type-B waveforms.

**FIGURE 10-6: TYPE-A/TYPE-B WAVEFORMS IN STATIC DRIVE**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 10-7: TYPE-A WAVEFORMS IN 1/2 MUX, 1/2 BIAS DRIVE**

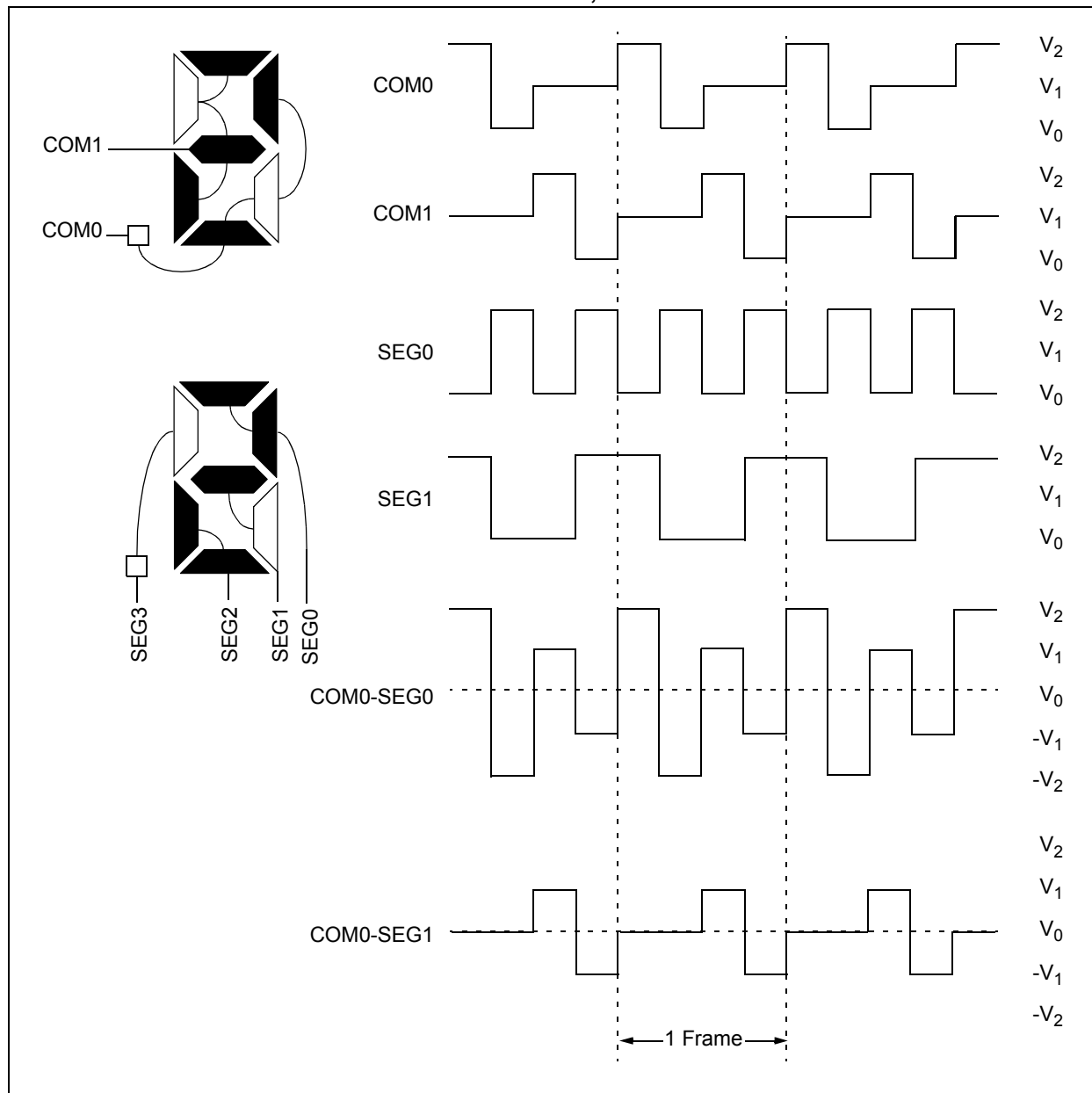
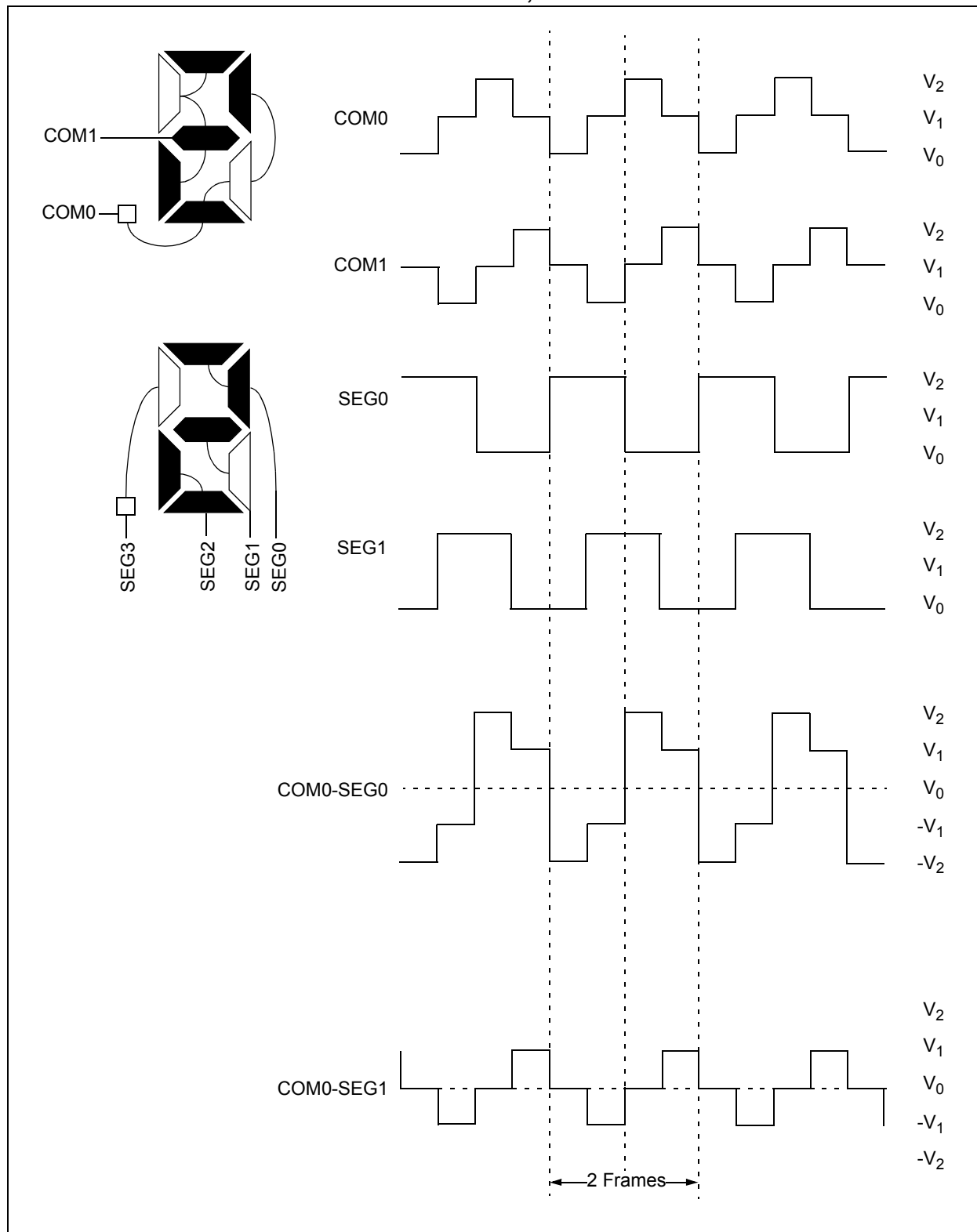


**FIGURE 10-8: TYPE-B WAVEFORMS IN 1/2 MUX, 1/2 BIAS DRIVE**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 10-9: TYPE-A WAVEFORMS IN 1/2 MUX, 1/3 BIAS DRIVE**

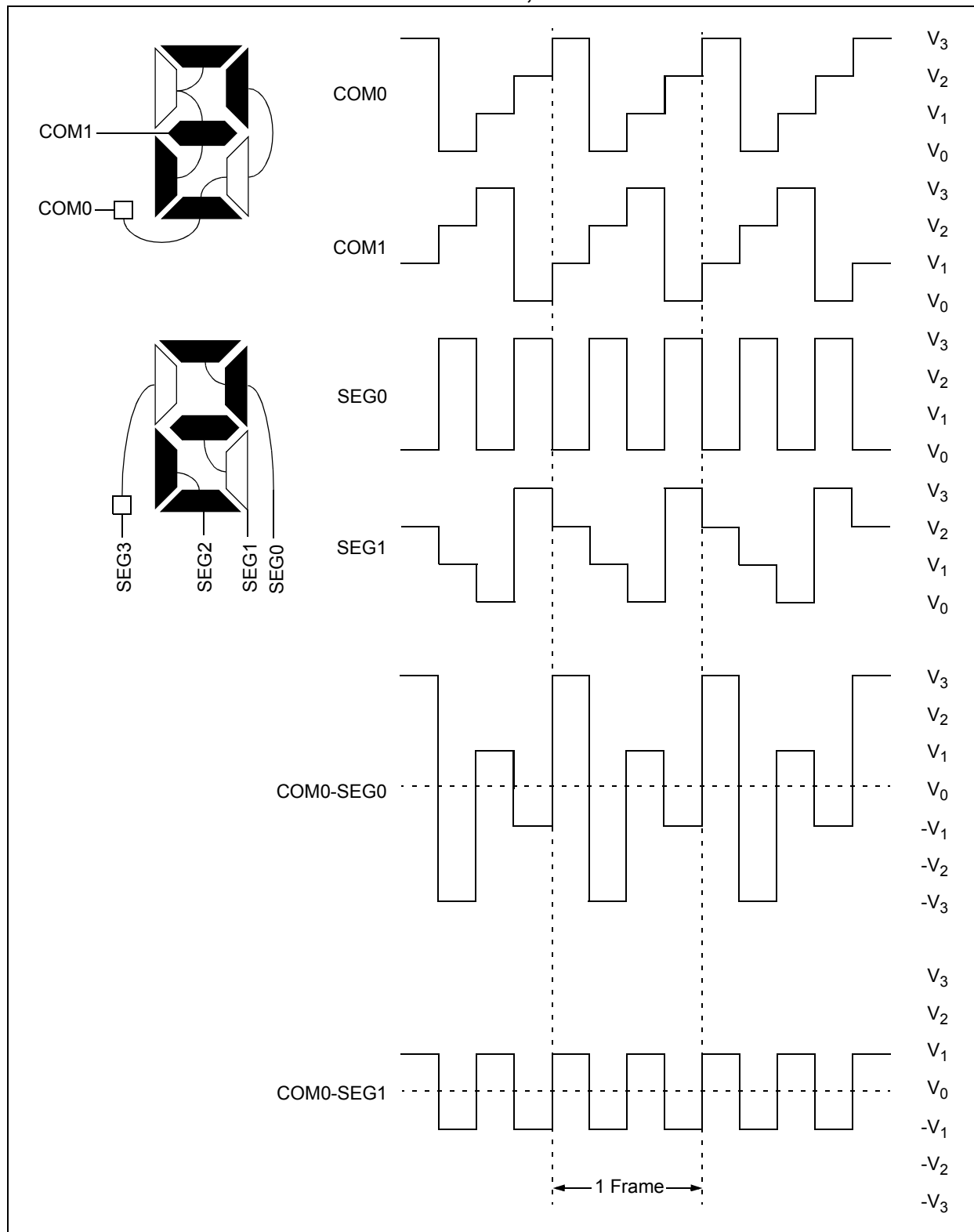
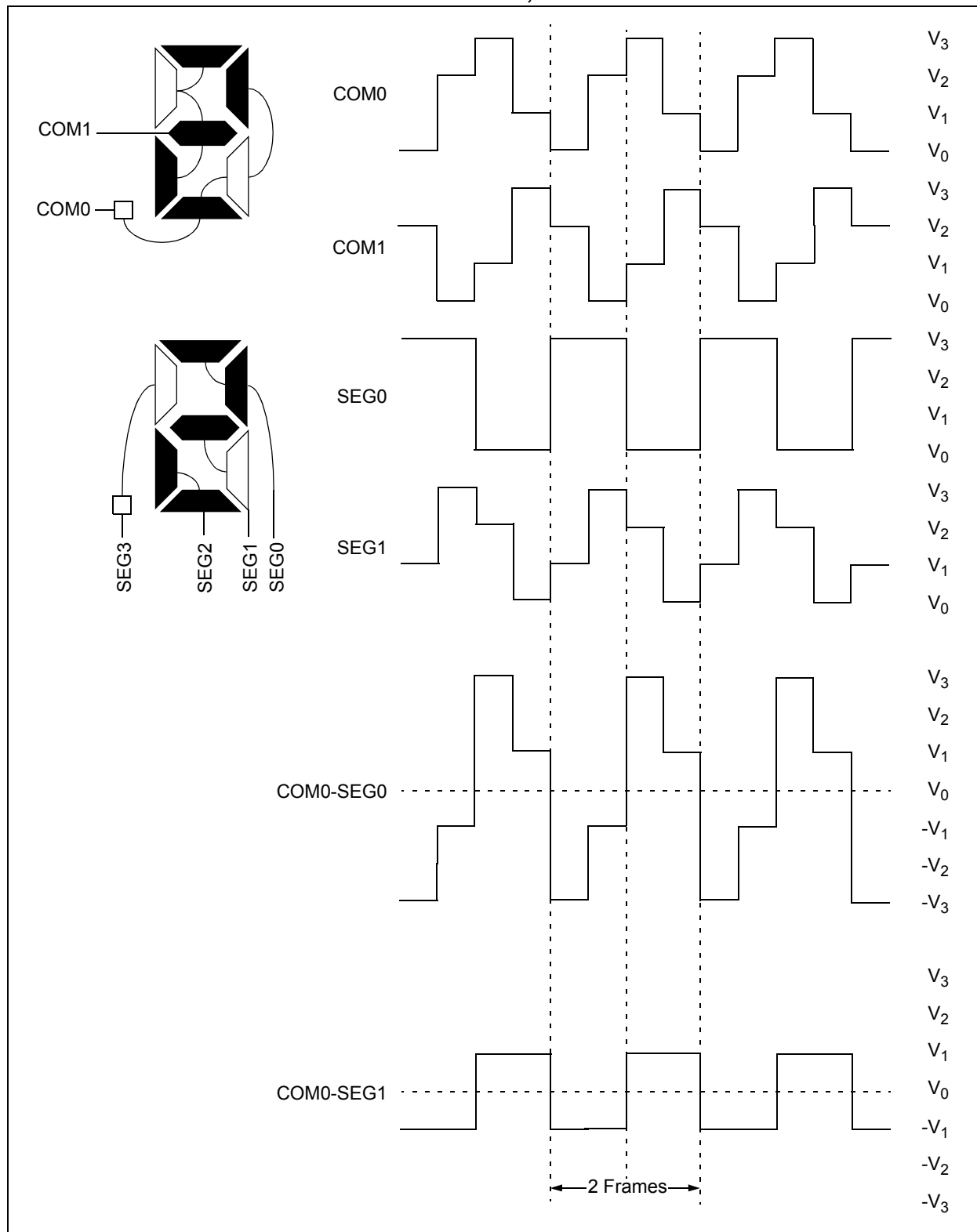


**FIGURE 10-10: TYPE-B WAVEFORMS IN 1/2 MUX, 1/3 BIAS DRIVE**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 10-11: TYPE-A WAVEFORMS IN 1/3 MUX, 1/2 BIAS DRIVE**

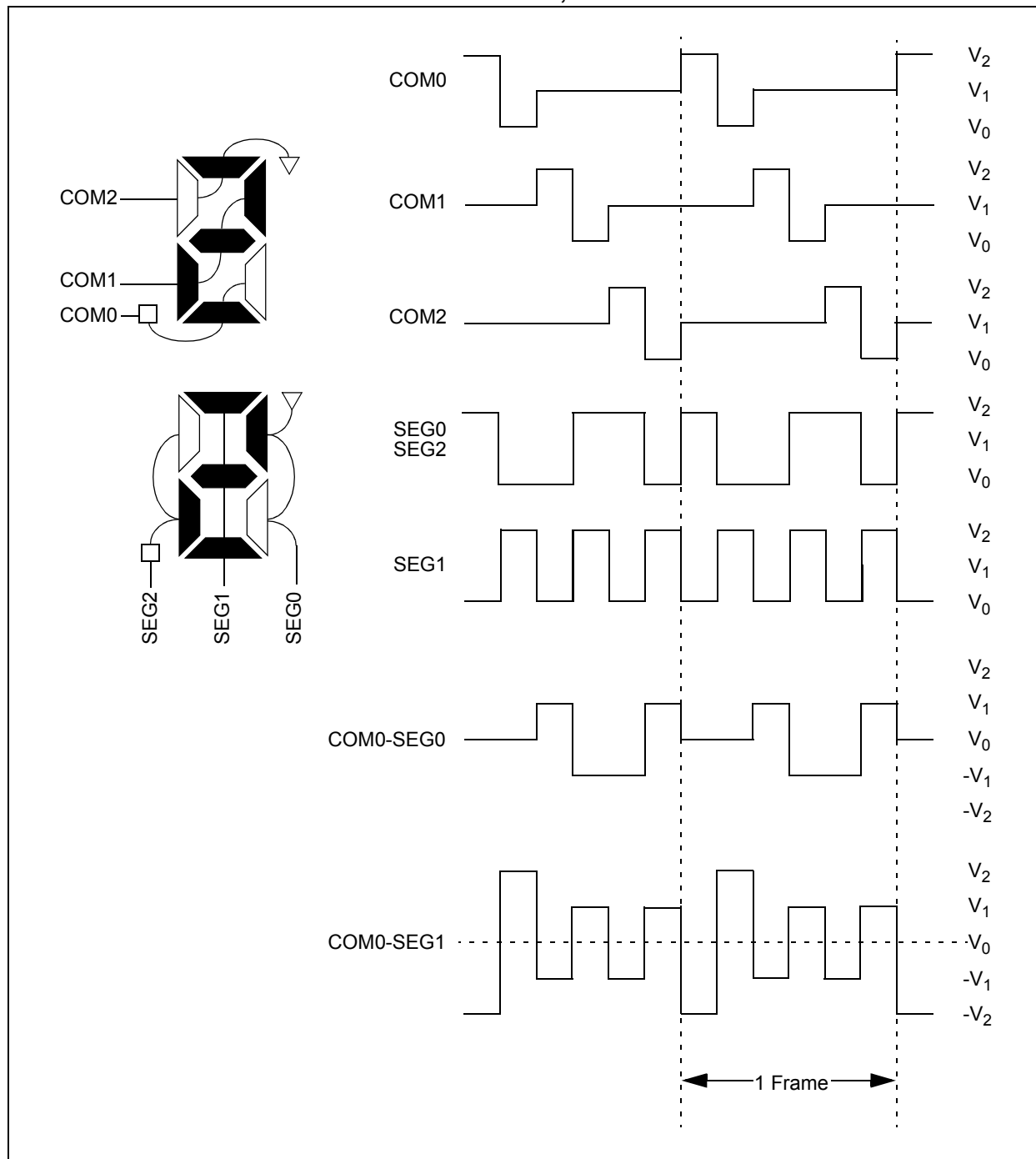
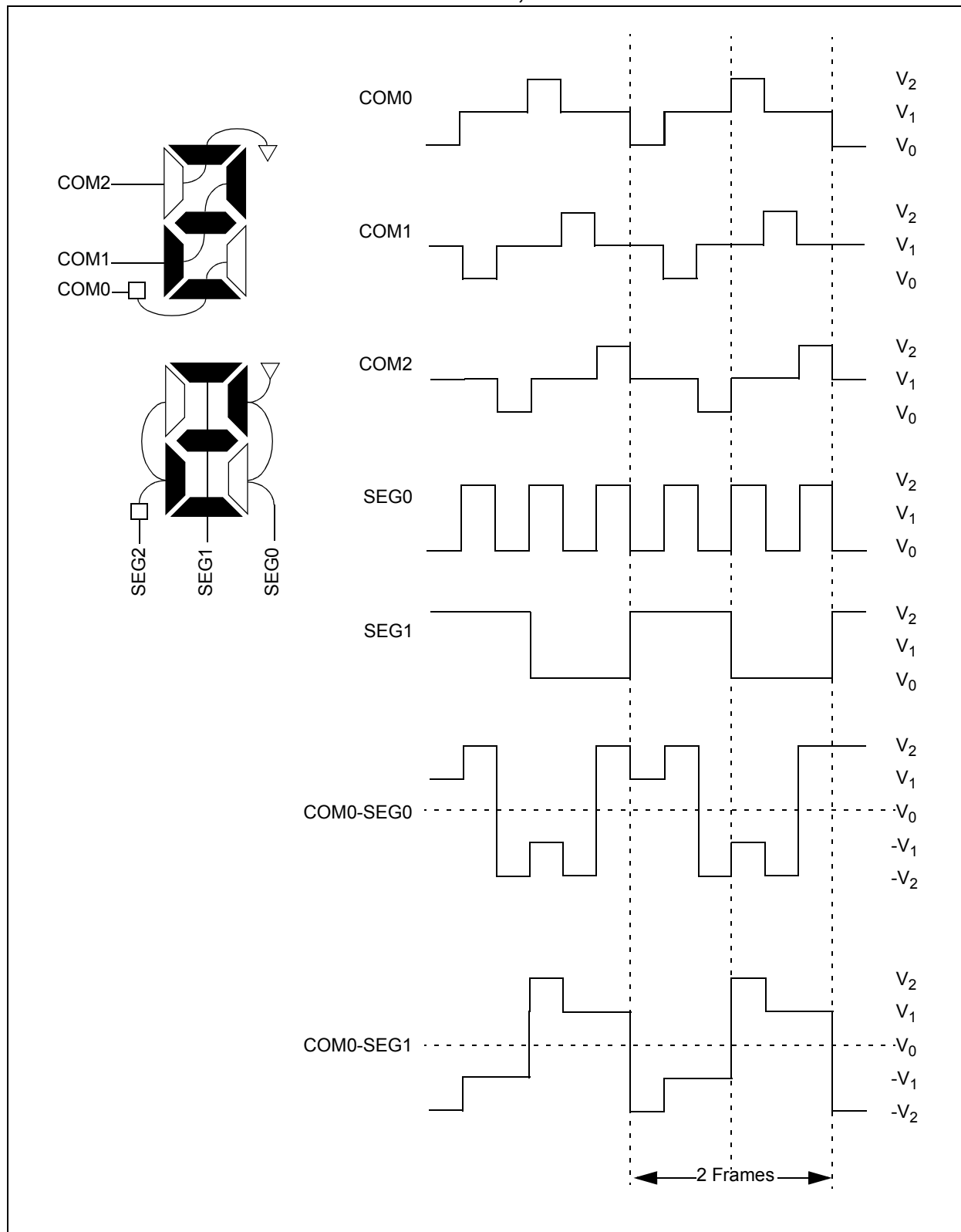




**FIGURE 10-12: TYPE-B WAVEFORMS IN 1/3 MUX, 1/2 BIAS DRIVE**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 10-13: TYPE-A WAVEFORMS IN 1/3 MUX, 1/3 BIAS DRIVE**

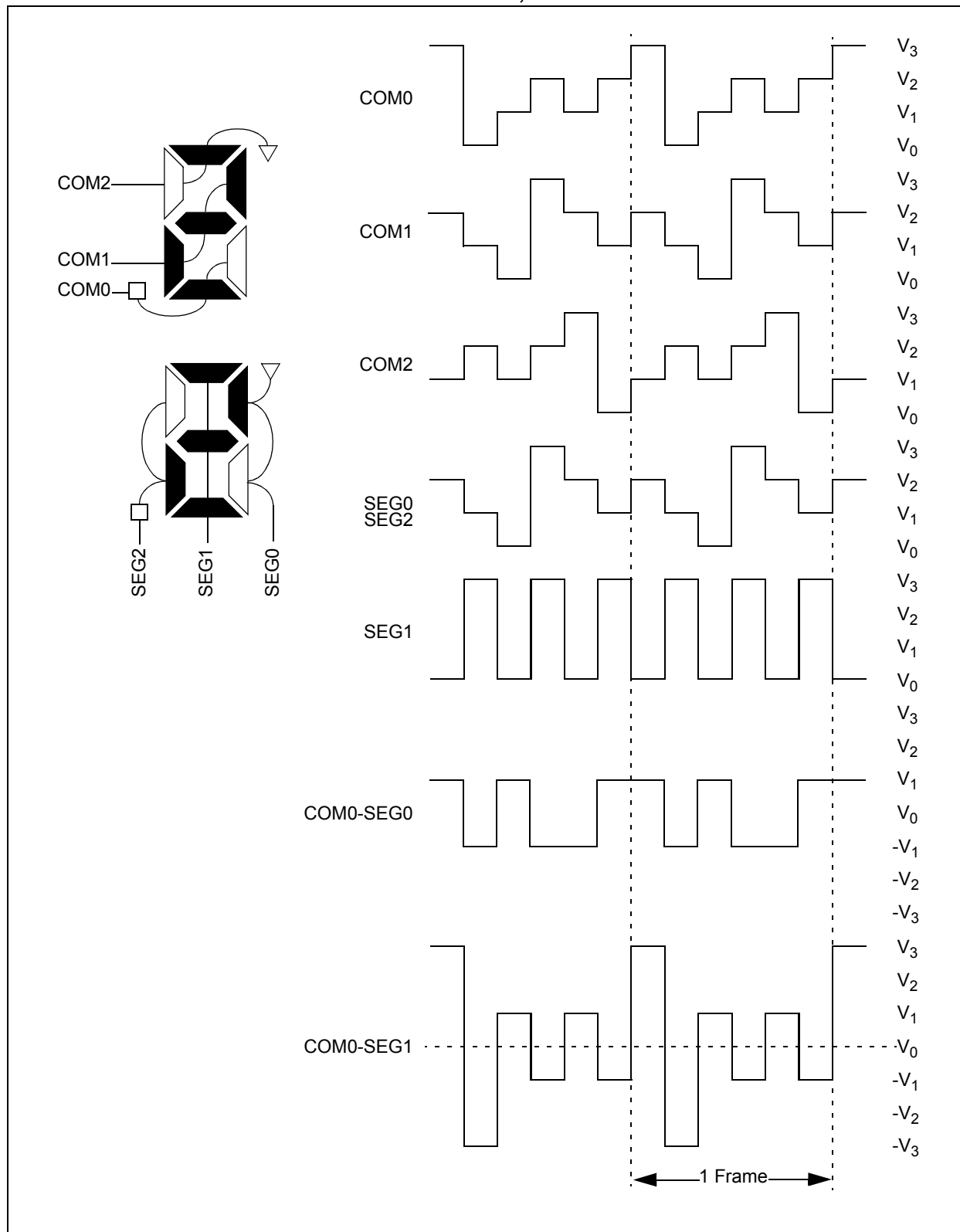
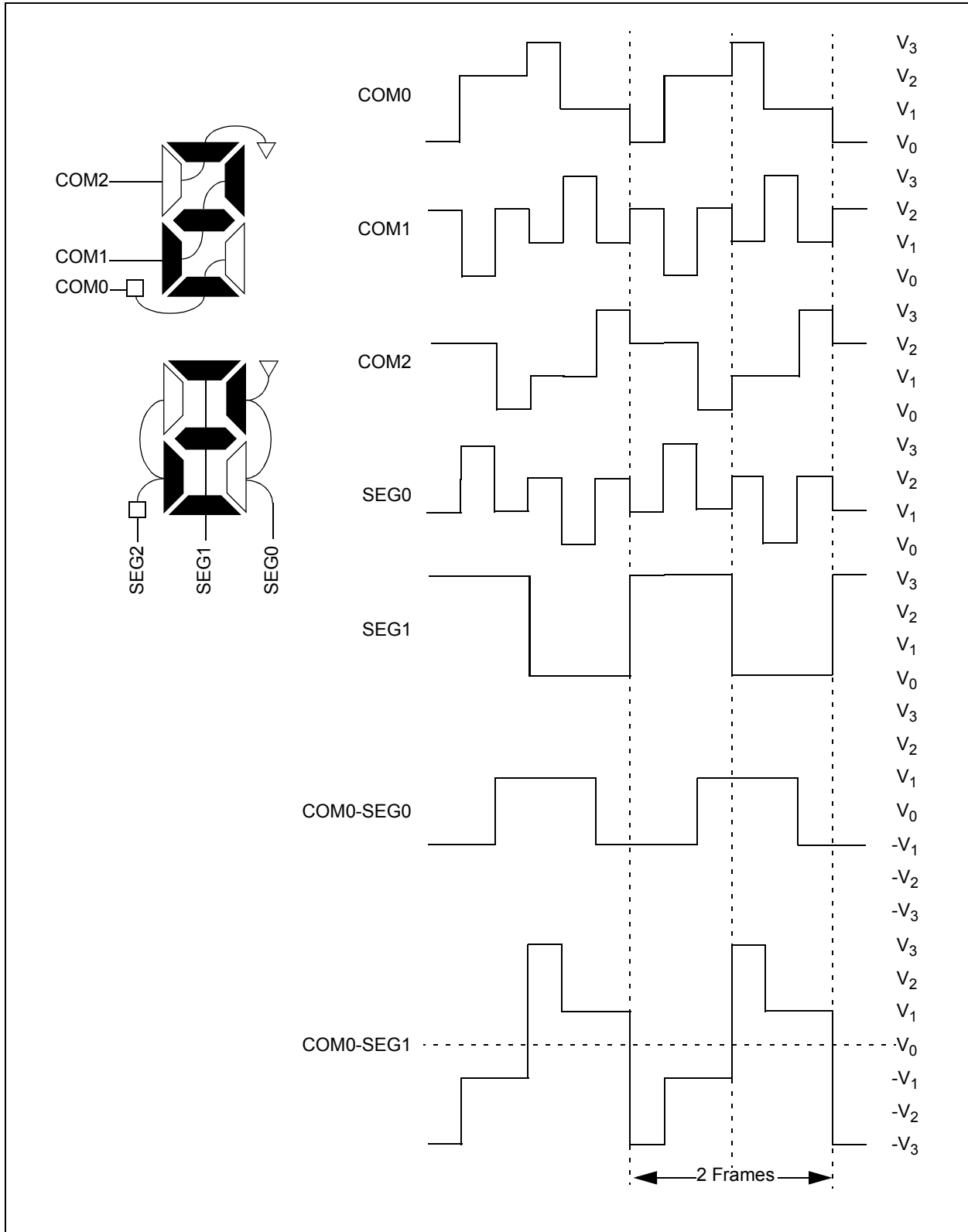


**FIGURE 10-14: TYPE-B WAVEFORMS IN 1/3 MUX, 1/3 BIAS DRIVE**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 10-15: TYPE-A WAVEFORMS IN 1/4 MUX, 1/3 BIAS DRIVE**

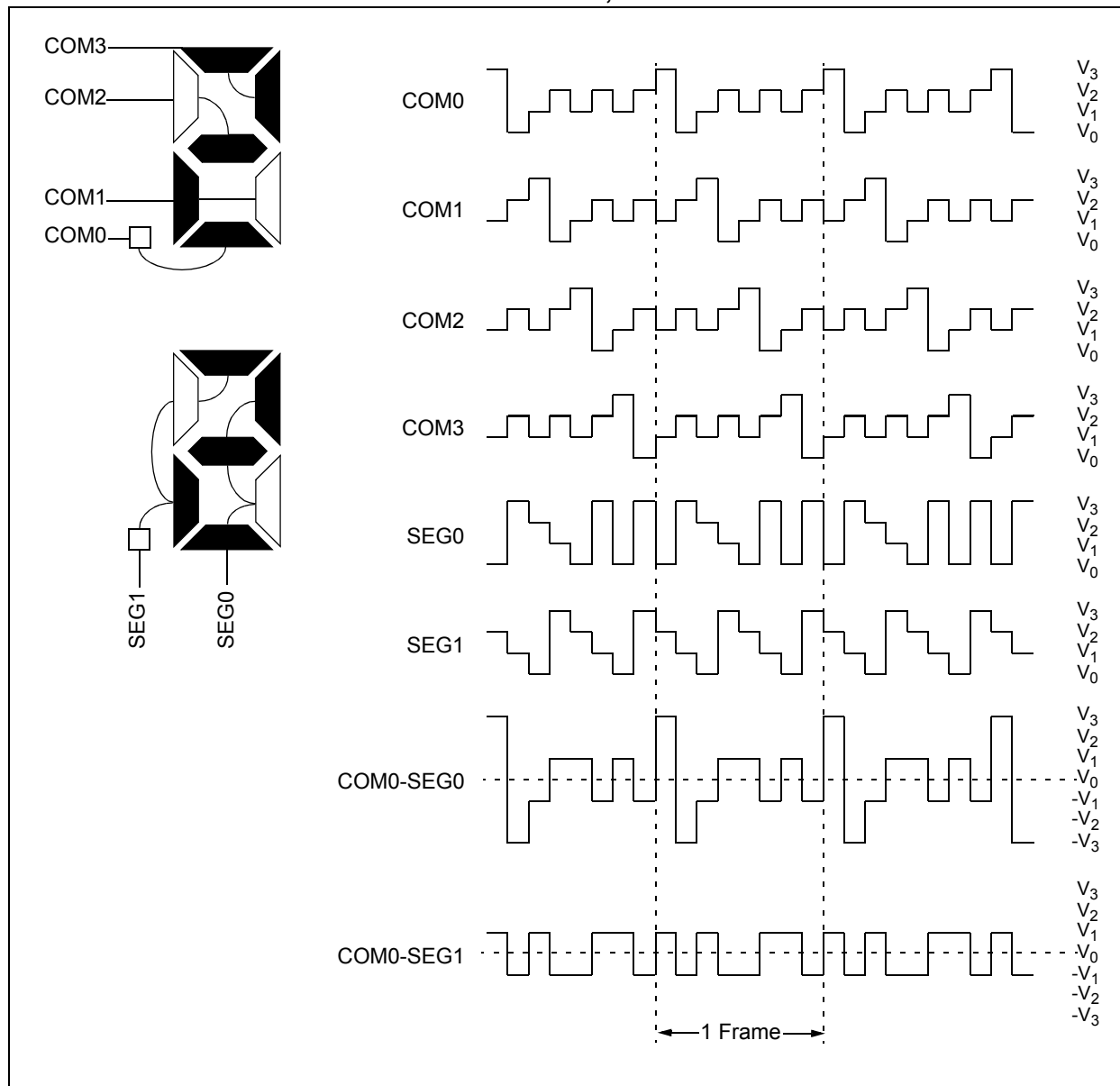
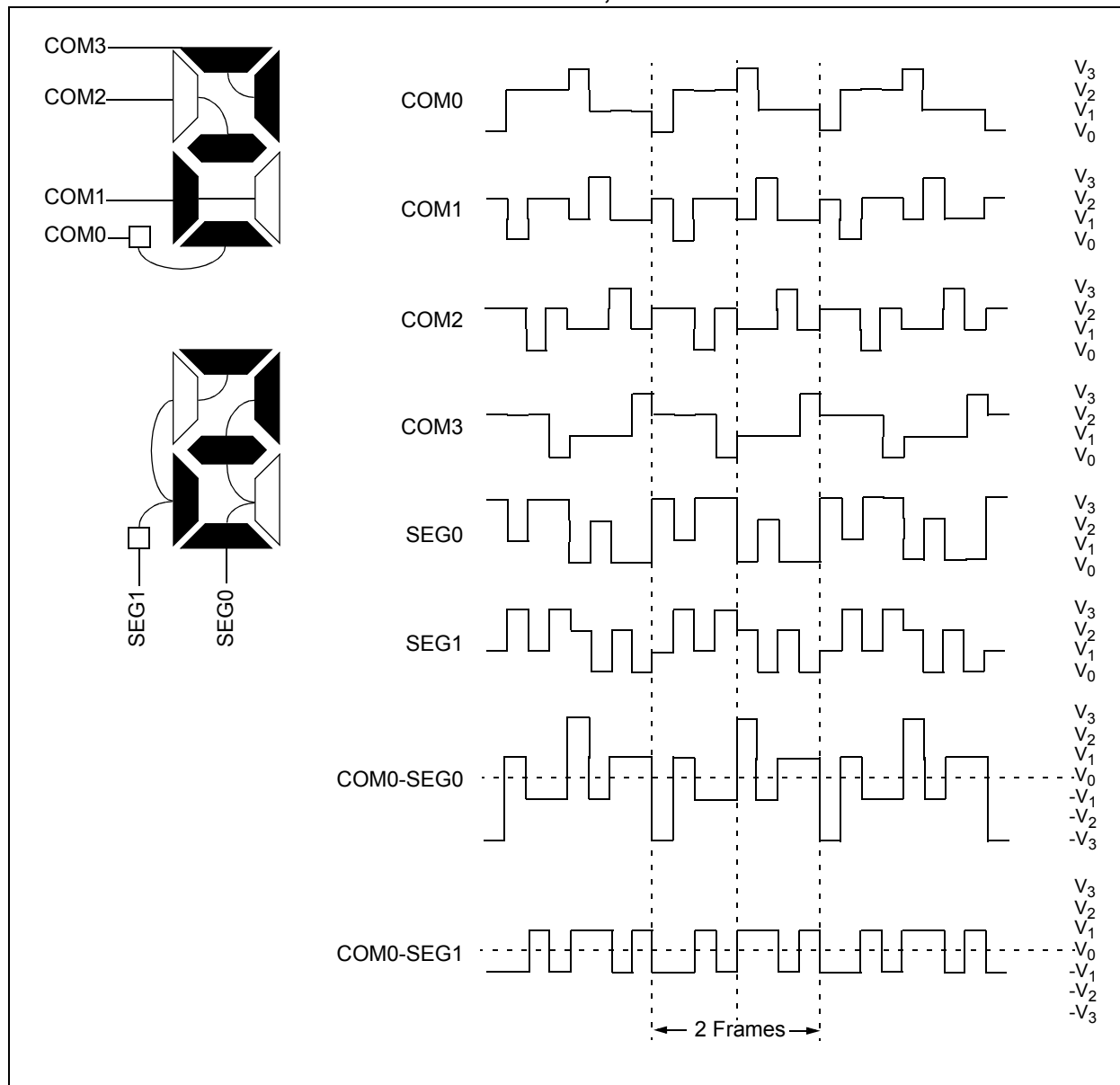


**FIGURE 10-16: TYPE-B WAVEFORMS IN 1/4 MUX, 1/3 BIAS DRIVE**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 10.9 LCD Interrupts

The LCD timing generation provides an interrupt that defines the LCD frame timing.

A new frame is defined to begin at the leading edge of the COM0 common signal. The interrupt will be set immediately after the LCD controller completes accessing all pixel data required for a frame. This will occur at a fixed interval before the frame boundary (TFINT), as shown in Figure 10-17. The LCD controller will begin to access data for the next frame within the interval from the interrupt to when the controller begins to access data after the interrupt (TFWR). New data must be written within TFWR, as this is when the LCD controller will begin to access the data for the next frame.

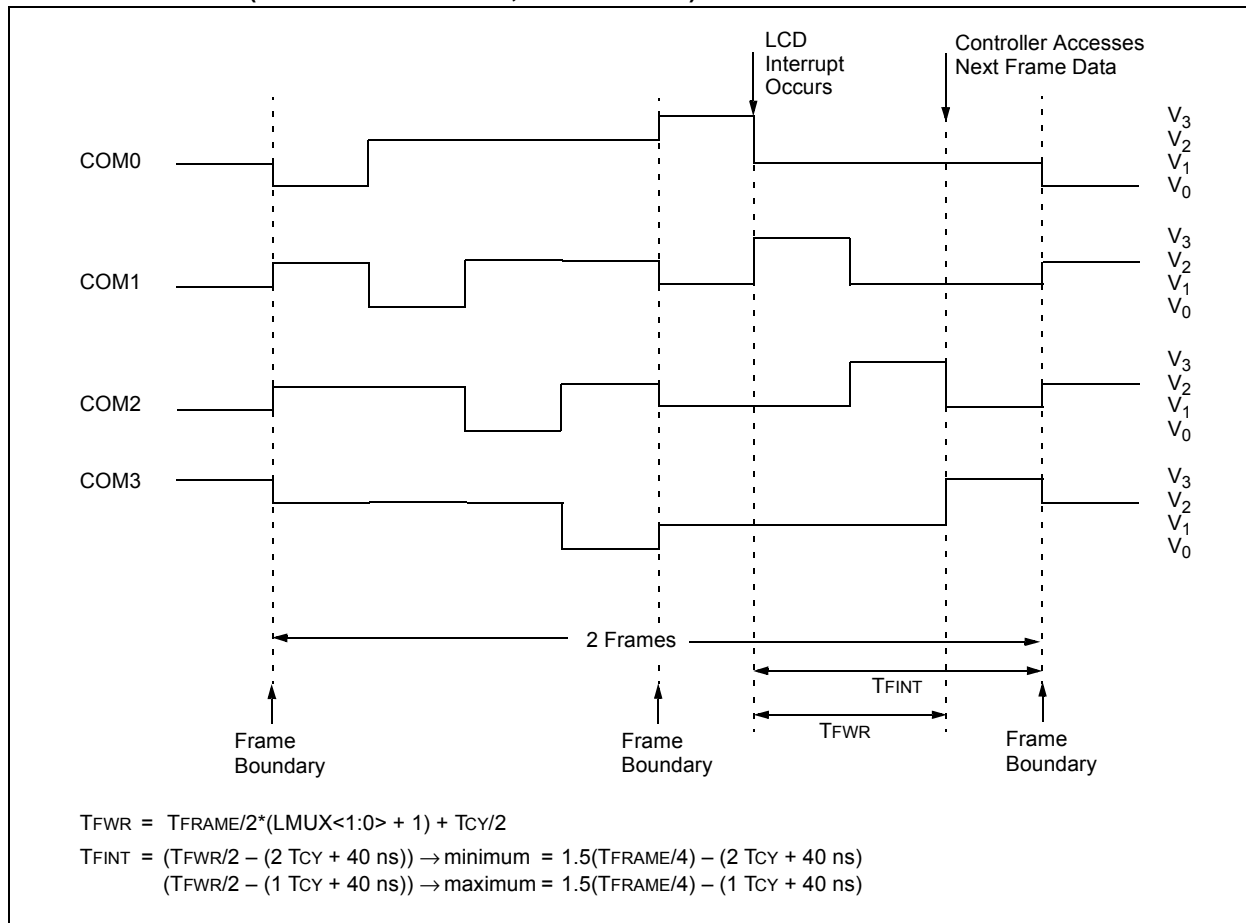
When the LCD driver is running with Type-B waveforms and the LMUX<1:0> bits are not equal to '00' (static drive), there are some additional issues that must be addressed. Since the DC voltage on the pixel takes two frames to maintain zero volts, the pixel data must not change between subsequent frames. If the pixel data were allowed to change, the waveform for the odd frames would not necessarily be the complement of the waveform generated in the even frames and a DC

component would be introduced into the panel. Therefore, when using Type-B waveforms, the user must synchronize the LCD pixel updates to occur within a subframe after the frame interrupt.

To correctly sequence writing while in Type-B, the interrupt will only occur on complete phase intervals. If the user attempts to write when the write is disabled, the WERR bit of the LCDCON register is set and the write does not occur.

**Note:** The interrupt is not generated when the Type-A waveform is selected and when the Type-B with no multiplex (static) is selected.

**FIGURE 10-17: WAVEFORMS AND INTERRUPT TIMING IN QUARTER-DUTY CYCLE DRIVE (EXAMPLE – TYPE-B, NON-STATIC)**



## 10.10 Operation During Sleep

The LCD module can operate during Sleep. The selection is controlled by bit  $\overline{\text{SLPEN}}$  of the LCDCON register. Setting the  $\overline{\text{SLPEN}}$  bit allows the LCD module to go to Sleep. Clearing the  $\overline{\text{SLPEN}}$  bit allows the module to continue to operate during Sleep.

If a **SLEEP** instruction is executed and  $\overline{\text{SLPEN}} = 1$ , the LCD module will cease all functions and go into a very low-current Consumption mode. The module will stop operation immediately and drive the minimum LCD voltage on both segment and common lines. Figure 10-18 shows this operation.

To ensure that no DC component is introduced on the panel, the **SLEEP** instruction should be executed immediately after a LCD frame boundary. For Type-B multiplex (non-static), the LCD interrupt can be used to determine the frame boundary. See **Section 10.9 “LCD Interrupts”** for the formulas to calculate the delay. In all other modes, the LCDA bit can be used to determine when the display is active. To use this method, the following sequence should be used when wanting to enter into Sleep mode:

- Clear LCDEN
- Wait for LCDA to clear
- Drive all LCD pins to inactive state using PORT and TRIS registers
- Execute **SLEEP** instruction

**Note:** When the LCDEN bit is cleared, the LCD module will be disabled at the completion of frame. At this time, the PORT pins will revert to digital functionality. To minimize power consumption due to floating digital inputs, the LCD pins should be driven low using the PORT and TRIS registers.

If a **SLEEP** instruction is executed and  $\overline{\text{SLPEN}} = 0$ , the module will continue to display the current contents of the LCDDATA registers. To allow the module to continue operation while in Sleep, the clock source must be either the LFINTOSC or T1OSC external oscillator. While in Sleep, the LCD data cannot be changed. The LCD module current consumption will not decrease in this mode; however, the overall consumption of the device will be lower due to shut down of the core and other peripheral functions.

Table 10-5 shows the status of the LCD module during a Sleep while using each of the three available clock sources:

**TABLE 10-5: LCD MODULE STATUS DURING SLEEP**

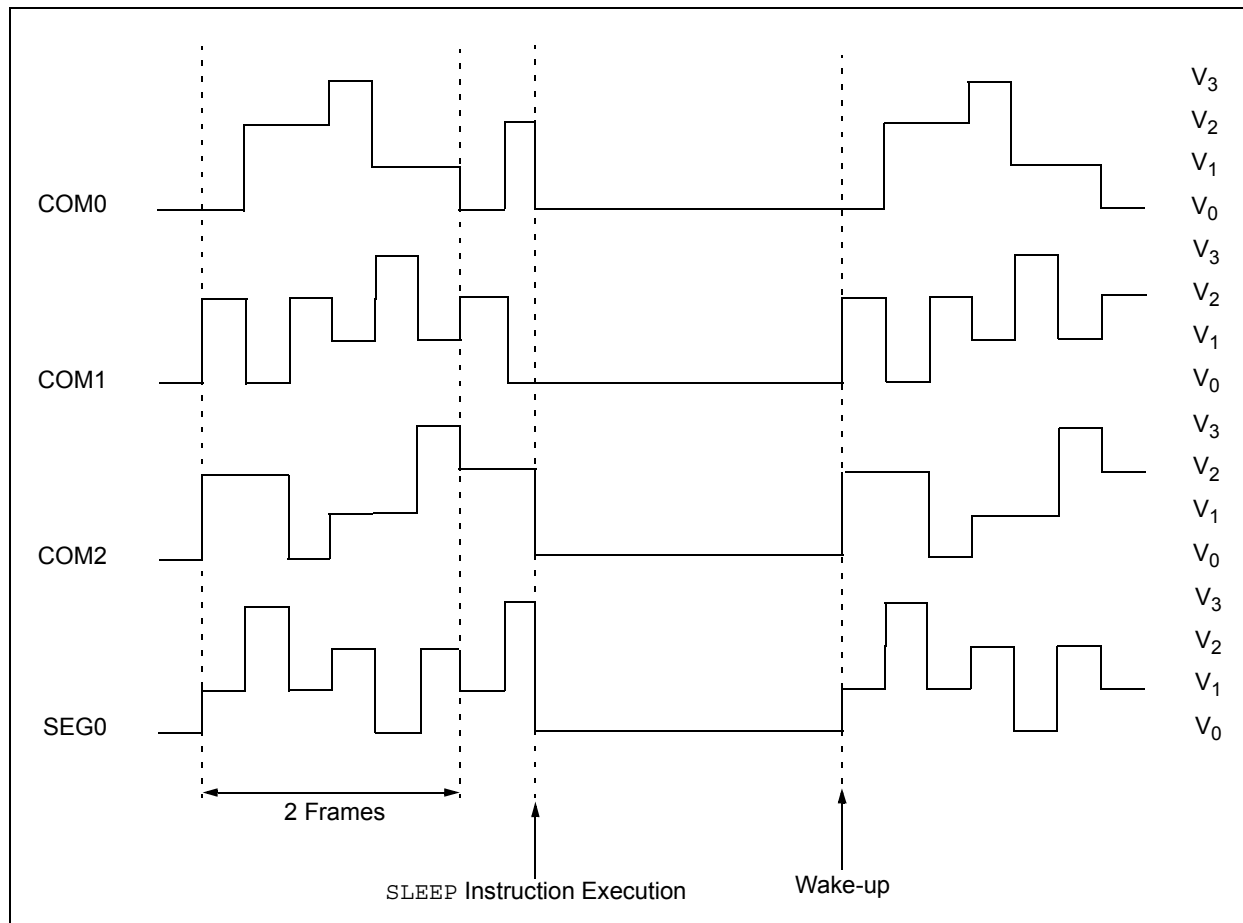
| Clock Source | $\overline{\text{SLPEN}}$ | Operation During Sleep? |
|--------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| T1OSC        | 0                         | Yes                     |
|              | 1                         | No                      |
| LFINTOSC     | 0                         | Yes                     |
|              | 1                         | No                      |
| Fosc/4       | 0                         | No                      |
|              | 1                         | No                      |

**Note:** The LFINTOSC or external T1OSC oscillator must be used to operate the LCD module during Sleep.

If LCD interrupts are being generated (Type-B waveform with a multiplex mode not static) and LCDIE = 1, the device will awaken from Sleep on the next frame boundary.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 10-18: SLEEP ENTRY/EXIT WHEN  $\overline{\text{SLPEN}} = 1$





## 10.11 Configuring the LCD Module

The following is the sequence of steps to configure the LCD module.

1. Select the frame clock prescale using bits LP<3:0> of the LCDPS register.
2. Configure the appropriate pins to function as segment drivers using the LCDSEn registers.
3. Configure the LCD module for the following using the LCDCON register:
  - Multiplex and Bias mode, bits LMUX<1:0>
  - Timing source, bits CS<1:0>
  - Sleep mode, bit  $\overline{\text{SLPEN}}$
4. Write initial values to pixel data registers, LCDDATA0 through LCDDATA11 (LCDDATA23 on PIC16F946).
5. Clear LCD Interrupt Flag, LCDIF bit of the PIR2 register and if desired, enable the interrupt by setting bit LCDIE of the PIE2 register.
6. Enable bias voltage pins (VLCD<3:1>) by setting bit VLCDEN of the LCDCON register.
7. Enable the LCD module by setting bit LCDEN of the LCDCON register.

## 10.12 Disabling the LCD Module

To disable the LCD module, write all '0's to the LCDCON register.

## 10.13 LCD Current Consumption

When using the LCD module the current consumption consists of the following three factors:

1. The oscillator selected
2. The LCD bias source
3. The current required to charge the LCD segments

The current consumption of just the LCD module can be considered negligible compared to these other factors.

The oscillator selected:

For LCD operation during Sleep either the T10c or the LFINTOSC sources need to be used as the main system oscillator may be disabled during Sleep. During Sleep the LFINTOSC current consumption is given by electrical parameter D021, where the LFINTOSC use the same internal oscillator circuitry as the Watchdog Timer.

The LCD bias source:

The LCD bias source, typically an external resistor ladder which will have its own current draw.

The current required to charge the LCD segments:

The LCD segments which can be modeled as capacitors which must be both charged and discharged every frame. The size of the LCD segment and its technology determines the segment's capacitance.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 10-6: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH LCD OPERATION**

| Name                     | Bit 7      | Bit 6      | Bit 5      | Bit 4      | Bit 3      | Bit 2      | Bit 1      | Bit 0      | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------------------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| CMCON0                   | C2OUT      | C1OUT      | C2INV      | C1INV      | CIS        | CM2        | CM1        | CM0        | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| INTCON                   | GIE        | PEIE       | T0IE       | INTE       | RBIE       | T0IF       | INTF       | RBIF       | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| LCDCON                   | LCDEN      | SLPEN      | WERR       | VLCDEN     | CS1        | CS0        | LMUX1      | LMUX0      | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDDATA0                 | SEG7 COM0  | SEG6 COM0  | SEG5 COM0  | SEG4 COM0  | SEG3 COM0  | SEG2 COM0  | SEG1 COM0  | SEG0 COM0  | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA1                 | SEG15 COM0 | SEG14 COM0 | SEG13 COM0 | SEG12 COM0 | SEG11 COM0 | SEG10 COM0 | SEG9 COM0  | SEG8 COM0  | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA2 <sup>(2)</sup>  | SEG23 COM0 | SEG22 COM0 | SEG21 COM0 | SEG20 COM0 | SEG19 COM0 | SEG18 COM0 | SEG17 COM0 | SEG16 COM0 | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA3                 | SEG7 COM1  | SEG6 COM1  | SEG5 COM1  | SEG4 COM1  | SEG3 COM1  | SEG2 COM1  | SEG1 COM1  | SEG0 COM1  | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA4                 | SEG15 COM1 | SEG14 COM1 | SEG13 COM1 | SEG12 COM1 | SEG11 COM1 | SEG10 COM1 | SEG9 COM1  | SEG8 COM1  | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA5 <sup>(2)</sup>  | SEG23 COM1 | SEG22 COM1 | SEG21 COM1 | SEG20 COM1 | SEG19 COM1 | SEG18 COM1 | SEG17 COM1 | SEG16 COM1 | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA6                 | SEG7 COM2  | SEG6 COM2  | SEG5 COM2  | SEG4 COM2  | SEG3 COM2  | SEG2 COM2  | SEG1 COM2  | SEG0 COM2  | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA7                 | SEG15 COM2 | SEG14 COM2 | SEG13 COM2 | SEG12 COM2 | SEG11 COM2 | SEG10 COM2 | SEG9 COM2  | SEG8 COM2  | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA8 <sup>(2)</sup>  | SEG23 COM2 | SEG22 COM2 | SEG21 COM2 | SEG20 COM2 | SEG19 COM2 | SEG18 COM2 | SEG17 COM2 | SEG16 COM2 | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA9                 | SEG7 COM3  | SEG6 COM3  | SEG5 COM3  | SEG4 COM3  | SEG3 COM3  | SEG2 COM3  | SEG1 COM3  | SEG0 COM3  | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA10                | SEG15 COM3 | SEG14 COM3 | SEG13 COM3 | SEG12 COM3 | SEG11 COM3 | SEG10 COM3 | SEG9 COM3  | SEG8 COM3  | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA11 <sup>(2)</sup> | SEG23 COM3 | SEG22 COM3 | SEG21 COM3 | SEG20 COM3 | SEG19 COM3 | SEG18 COM3 | SEG17 COM3 | SEG16 COM3 | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA12 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG31 COM0 | SEG30 COM0 | SEG29 COM0 | SEG28 COM0 | SEG27 COM0 | SEG26 COM0 | SEG25 COM0 | SEG24 COM0 | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA13 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG39 COM0 | SEG38 COM0 | SEG37 COM0 | SEG36 COM0 | SEG35 COM0 | SEG34 COM0 | SEG33 COM0 | SEG32 COM0 | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA14 <sup>(3)</sup> | —          | —          | —          | —          | —          | —          | SEG41 COM0 | SEG40 COM0 | ---- --xx         | ---- --uu                 |
| LCDDATA15 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG31 COM1 | SEG30 COM1 | SEG29 COM1 | SEG28 COM1 | SEG27 COM1 | SEG26 COM1 | SEG25 COM1 | SEG24 COM1 | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA16 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG39 COM1 | SEG38 COM1 | SEG37 COM1 | SEG36 COM1 | SEG35 COM1 | SEG34 COM1 | SEG33 COM1 | SEG32 COM1 | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA17 <sup>(3)</sup> | —          | —          | —          | —          | —          | —          | SEG41 COM1 | SEG40 COM1 | ---- --xx         | ---- --uu                 |
| LCDDATA18 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG31 COM2 | SEG30 COM2 | SEG29 COM2 | SEG28 COM2 | SEG27 COM2 | SEG26 COM2 | SEG25 COM2 | SEG24 COM2 | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA19 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG39 COM2 | SEG38 COM2 | SEG37 COM2 | SEG36 COM2 | SEG35 COM2 | SEG34 COM2 | SEG33 COM2 | SEG32 COM2 | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA20 <sup>(3)</sup> | —          | —          | —          | —          | —          | —          | SEG41 COM2 | SEG40 COM2 | ---- --xx         | ---- --uu                 |
| LCDDATA21 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG31 COM3 | SEG30 COM3 | SEG29 COM3 | SEG28 COM3 | SEG27 COM3 | SEG26 COM3 | SEG25 COM3 | SEG24 COM3 | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA22 <sup>(3)</sup> | SEG39 COM3 | SEG38 COM3 | SEG37 COM3 | SEG36 COM3 | SEG35 COM3 | SEG34 COM3 | SEG33 COM3 | SEG32 COM3 | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDDATA23 <sup>(3)</sup> | —          | —          | —          | —          | —          | —          | SEG41 COM3 | SEG40 COM3 | ---- --xx         | ---- --uu                 |
| LCDPS                    | WFT        | BIASMD     | LCDA       | WA         | LP3        | LP2        | LP1        | LP0        | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| LCDSE0                   | SE7        | SE6        | SE5        | SE4        | SE3        | SE2        | SE1        | SE0        | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDSE1                   | SE15       | SE14       | SE13       | SE12       | SE11       | SE10       | SE9        | SE8        | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the LCD module.

- Note** 1: These pins may be configured as port pins, depending on the oscillator mode selected.  
2: PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.  
3: PIC16F946 only.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 10-6: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH LCD OPERATION (CONTINUED)**

| Name                  | Bit 7  | Bit 6  | Bit 5   | Bit 4   | Bit 3   | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|-----------------------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| LCDSE2 <sup>(2)</sup> | SE23   | SE22   | SE21    | SE20    | SE19    | SE18   | SE17   | SE16   | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| LCDSE3 <sup>(3)</sup> | SE31   | SE30   | SE29    | SE28    | SE27    | SE26   | SE25   | SE24   | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| LCDSE4 <sup>(3)</sup> | SE39   | SE38   | SE37    | SE36    | SE35    | SE34   | SE33   | SE32   | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| LCDSE5 <sup>(3)</sup> | —      | —      | —       | —       | —       | —      | SE41   | SE40   | ---- --00         | ---- --00                 |
| PIE2                  | OSFIE  | C2IE   | C1IE    | LCDIE   | —       | LVDIE  | —      | CCP2IE | 0000 -0-0         | 0000 -0-0                 |
| PIR2                  | OSFIF  | C2IF   | C1IF    | LCDIF   | —       | LVDIF  | —      | CCP2IF | 0000 -0-0         | 0000 -0-0                 |
| T1CON                 | T1GINV | TMR1GE | T1CKPS1 | T1CKPS0 | T1OSCEN | T1SYNC | TMR1CS | TMR1ON | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the LCD module.

**Note 1:** These pins may be configured as port pins, depending on the oscillator mode selected.

**2:** PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

**3:** PIC16F946 only.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

NOTES:

## 11.0 PROGRAMMABLE LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT (PLVD) MODULE

The Programmable Low-Voltage Detect (PLVD) module is a power supply detector which monitors the internal power supply. This module is typically used in key fobs and other devices, where certain actions need to be taken as a result of a falling battery voltage.

The PLVD module includes the following capabilities:

- Eight programmable trip points
- Interrupt on falling  $V_{DD}$
- Stable reference indication
- Operation during Sleep

A Block diagram of the PLVD module is shown in Figure 11-1.

**FIGURE 11-1: PLVD BLOCK DIAGRAM**

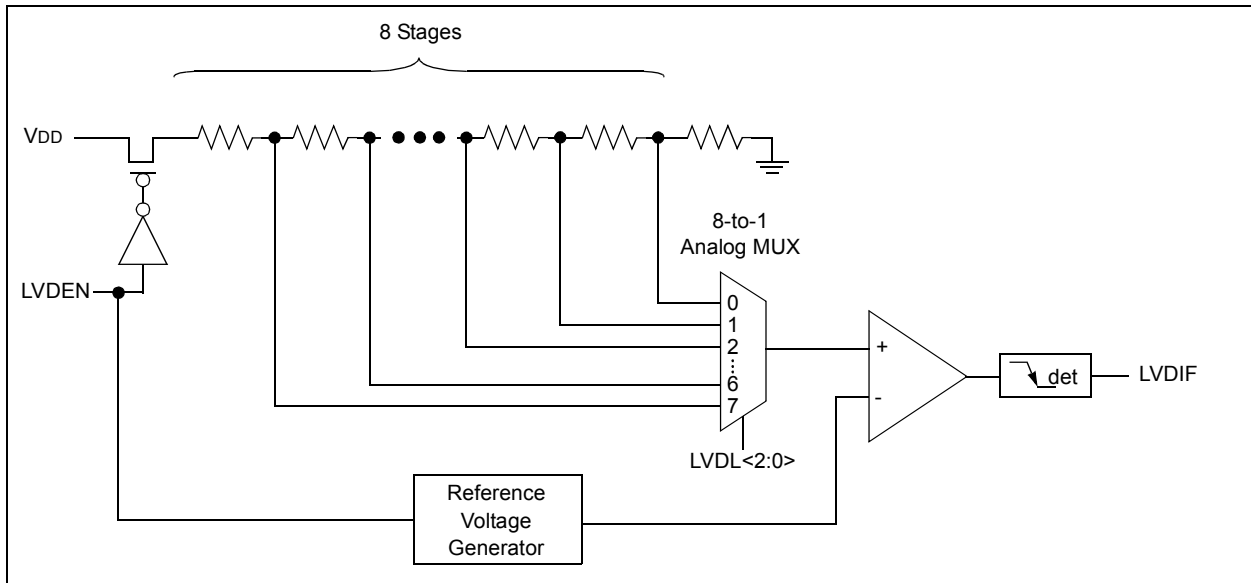
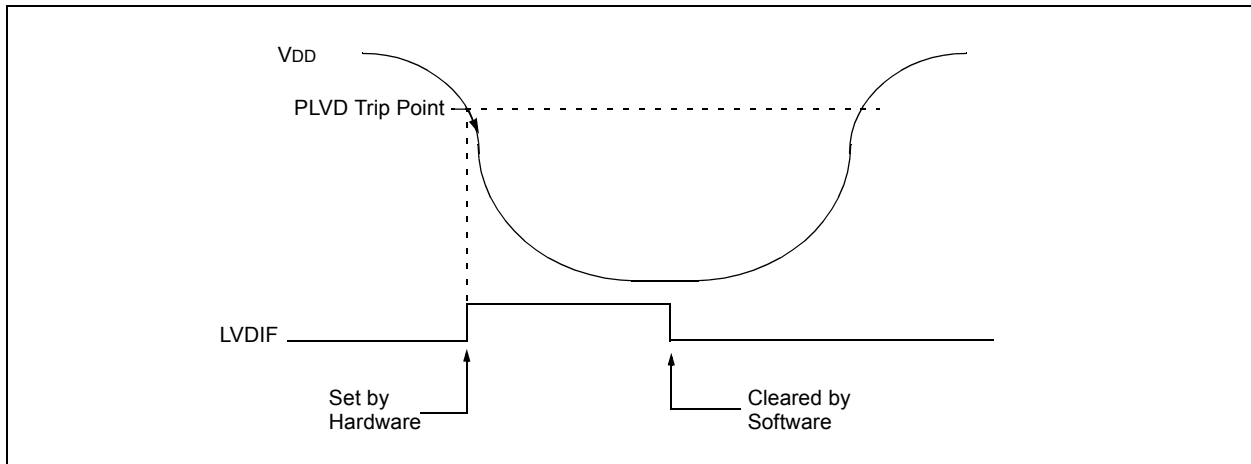


**FIGURE 11-2: PLVD OPERATION**



## 11.1 PLVD Operation

To setup the PLVD for operation, the following steps must be taken:

- Enable the module by setting the LVDEN bit of the LVDCON register.
- Configure the trip point by setting the LVDL<2:0> bits of the LVDCON register.
- Wait for the reference voltage to become stable. Refer to **Section 11.4 “Stable Reference Indication”**.
- Clear the LVDIF bit of the PIR2 register.

The LVDIF bit will be set when VDD falls below the PLVD trip point. The LVDIF bit remains set until cleared by software. Refer to Figure 11-2.

## 11.2 Programmable Trip Point

The PLVD trip point is selectable from one of eight voltage levels. The LVDL bits of the LVDCON register select the trip point. Refer to Register 11-1 for the available PLVD trip points.

## 11.3 Interrupt on Falling VDD

When VDD falls below the PLVD trip point, the falling edge detector will set the LVDIF bit. See Figure 11-2. An interrupt will be generated if the following bits are also set:

- GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register
- LVDIE bit of the PIE2 register

The LVDIF bit must be cleared by software. An interrupt can be generated from a simulated PLVD event when the LVDIF bit is set by software.

## 11.4 Stable Reference Indication

When the PLVD module is enabled, the reference voltage must be allowed to stabilize before the PLVD will provide a valid result. Refer to **Section 19.0 “Electrical Specifications”**, Table 19-13, for the stabilization time.

When the HFINTOSC is running, the IRVST bit of the LVDCON register indicates the stability of the voltage reference. The voltage reference is stable when the IRVST bit is set.

## 11.5 Operation During Sleep

To wake from Sleep, set the LVDIE bit of the PIE2 register and the PEIE bit of the INTCON register. When the LVDIE and PEIE bits are set, the device will wake from Sleep and execute the next instruction. If the GIE bit is also set, the program will call the Interrupt Service Routine upon completion of the first instruction after waking from Sleep.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**REGISTER 11-1: LVDCON: LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT CONTROL REGISTER**

|       |     |                      |        |     |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|----------------------|--------|-----|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R-0                  | R/W-0  | U-0 | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | IRVST <sup>(1)</sup> | LV DEN | —   | LV DL2 | LV DL1 | LV DL0 |
| bit 7 |     |                      |        |     |        |        | bit 0  |

**Legend:**

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5 **IRVST:** Internal Reference Voltage Stable Status Flag bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = Indicates that the PLVD is stable and PLVD interrupt is reliable

0 = Indicates that the PLVD is not stable and PLVD interrupt must not be enabled

bit 4 **LV DEN:** Low-Voltage Detect Module Enable bit

1 = Enables PLVD Module, powers up PLVD circuit and supporting reference circuitry

0 = Disables PLVD Module, powers down PLVD circuit and supporting reference circuitry

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **LV DL<2:0>:** Low-Voltage Detection Level bits (nominal values)<sup>(3)</sup>

111 = 4.5V

110 = 4.2V

101 = 4.0V

100 = 2.3V (default)

011 = 2.2V

010 = 2.1V

001 = 2.0V<sup>(2)</sup>

000 = Reserved

**Note 1:** The IRVST bit is usable only when the HFINTOSC is running.

**2:** Not tested and below minimum operating conditions.

**3:** See **Section 19.0 “Electrical Specifications”**.

**TABLE 11-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PROGRAMMABLE LOW-VOLTAGE DETECT**

| Name   | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4  | Bit 3 | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON | GIE   | PEIE  | T0IE  | INTE   | RBIE  | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| LVDCON | —     | —     | IRVST | LV DEN | —     | LV DL2 | LV DL1 | LV DL0 | --00 -100         | --00 -100                 |
| PIE2   | OSFIE | C2IE  | C1IE  | LCDIE  | —     | LV DIE | —      | CCP2IE | 0000 -0-0         | 0000 -0-0                 |
| PIR2   | OSFIF | C2IF  | C1IF  | LCDIF  | —     | LV DIF | —      | CCP2IF | 0000 -0-0         | 0000 -0-0                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, - = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the PLVD module.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

NOTES:



## 12.0 ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER (ADC) MODULE

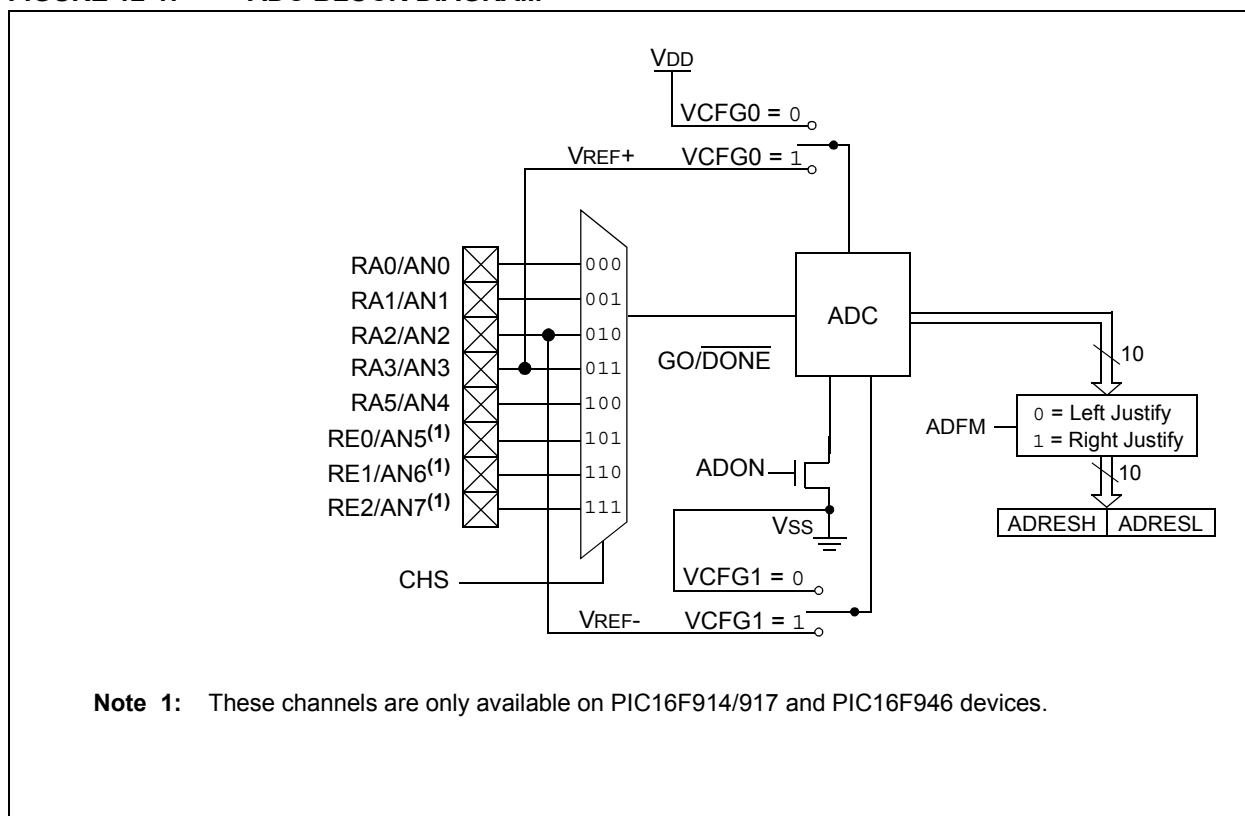
The Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) allows conversion of an analog input signal to a 10-bit binary representation of that signal. This device uses analog inputs, which are multiplexed into a single sample and hold circuit. The output of the sample and hold is connected to the input of the converter. The converter generates a 10-bit binary result via successive approximation and stores the conversion result into the ADC result registers (ADRESL and ADRESH).

The ADC voltage reference is software selectable to be either internally generated or externally supplied.

The ADC can generate an interrupt upon completion of a conversion. This interrupt can be used to wake-up the device from Sleep.

Figure 12-1 shows the block diagram of the ADC.

**FIGURE 12-1: ADC BLOCK DIAGRAM**



## 12.1 ADC Configuration

When configuring and using the ADC the following functions must be considered:

- Port configuration
- Channel selection
- ADC voltage reference selection
- ADC conversion clock source
- Interrupt control
- Results formatting

### 12.1.1 PORT CONFIGURATION

The ADC can be used to convert both analog and digital signals. When converting analog signals, the I/O pin should be configured for analog by setting the associated TRIS and ANSEL bits. See the corresponding Port section for more information.

|                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note:</b> Analog voltages on any pin that is defined as a digital input may cause the input buffer to conduct excess current. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### 12.1.2 CHANNEL SELECTION

The CHS bits of the ADCON0 register determine which channel is connected to the sample and hold circuit.

When changing channels, a delay is required before starting the next conversion. Refer to **Section 12.2 “ADC Operation”** for more information.

### 12.1.3 ADC VOLTAGE REFERENCE

The VCFG bits of the ADCON0 register provide independent control of the positive and negative voltage references. The positive voltage reference can be either VDD or an external voltage source. Likewise, the negative voltage reference can be either VSS or an external voltage source.

### 12.1.4 CONVERSION CLOCK

The source of the conversion clock is software selectable via the ADCS bits of the ADCON1 register. There are seven possible clock options:

- Fosc/2
- Fosc/4
- Fosc/8
- Fosc/16
- Fosc/32
- Fosc/64
- FRC (dedicated internal oscillator)

The time to complete one bit conversion is defined as TAD. One full 10-bit conversion requires 11 TAD periods as shown in Figure 12-3.

For correct conversion, the appropriate TAD specification must be met. See A/D conversion requirements in **Section 19.0 “Electrical Specifications”** for more information. Table 12-1 gives examples of appropriate ADC clock selections.

|                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note:</b> Unless using the FRC, any changes in the system clock frequency will change the ADC clock frequency, which may adversely affect the ADC result. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 12-1: ADC CLOCK PERIOD (TAD) Vs. DEVICE OPERATING FREQUENCIES (VDD ≥ 3.0V)**

| ADC Clock Period (TAD) |           | Device Frequency (Fosc) |                         |                         |                         |
|------------------------|-----------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| ADC Clock Source       | ADCS<2:0> | 20 MHz                  | 8 MHz                   | 4 MHz                   | 1 MHz                   |
| FOSC/2                 | 000       | 100 ns <sup>(2)</sup>   | 250 ns <sup>(2)</sup>   | 500 ns <sup>(2)</sup>   | 2.0 μs                  |
| FOSC/4                 | 100       | 200 ns <sup>(2)</sup>   | 500 ns <sup>(2)</sup>   | 1.0 μs <sup>(2)</sup>   | 4.0 μs                  |
| FOSC/8                 | 001       | 400 ns <sup>(2)</sup>   | 1.0 μs <sup>(2)</sup>   | 2.0 μs                  | 8.0 μs <sup>(3)</sup>   |
| FOSC/16                | 101       | 800 ns <sup>(2)</sup>   | 2.0 μs                  | 4.0 μs                  | 16.0 μs <sup>(3)</sup>  |
| FOSC/32                | 010       | 1.6 μs                  | 4.0 μs                  | 8.0 μs <sup>(3)</sup>   | 32.0 μs <sup>(3)</sup>  |
| FOSC/64                | 110       | 3.2 μs                  | 8.0 μs <sup>(3)</sup>   | 16.0 μs <sup>(3)</sup>  | 64.0 μs <sup>(3)</sup>  |
| FRC                    | x11       | 2-6 μs <sup>(1,4)</sup> | 2-6 μs <sup>(1,4)</sup> | 2-6 μs <sup>(1,4)</sup> | 2-6 μs <sup>(1,4)</sup> |

**Legend:** Shaded cells are outside of recommended range.

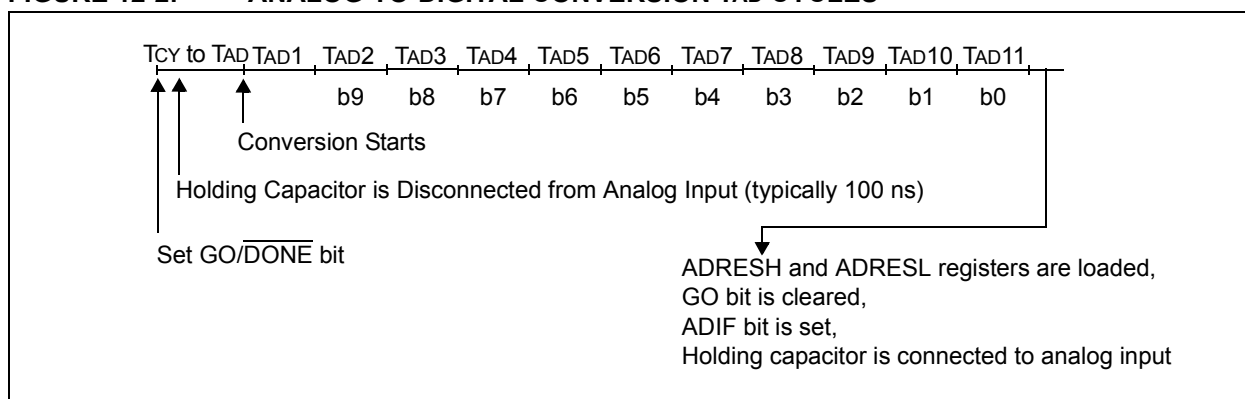
**Note 1:** The FRC source has a typical TAD time of 4 μs for VDD > 3.0V.

**2:** These values violate the minimum required TAD time.

**3:** For faster conversion times, the selection of another clock source is recommended.

**4:** When the device frequency is greater than 1 MHz, the FRC clock source is only recommended if the conversion will be performed during Sleep.

**FIGURE 12-2: ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERSION TAD CYCLES**



## 12.1.5 INTERRUPTS

The ADC module allows for the ability to generate an interrupt upon completion of an Analog-to-Digital conversion. The ADC interrupt flag is the ADIF bit in the PIR1 register. The ADC interrupt enable is the ADIE bit in the PIE1 register. The ADIF bit must be cleared in software.

**Note:** The ADIF bit is set at the completion of every conversion, regardless of whether or not the ADC interrupt is enabled.

This interrupt can be generated while the device is operating or while in Sleep. If the device is in Sleep, the interrupt will wake-up the device. Upon waking from Sleep, the next instruction following the SLEEP instruction is always executed. If the user is attempting to wake-up from Sleep and resume in-line code execution, the global interrupt must be disabled. If the global interrupt is enabled, execution will switch to the Interrupt Service Routine.

Please see **Section 12.1.5 “Interrupts”** for more information.

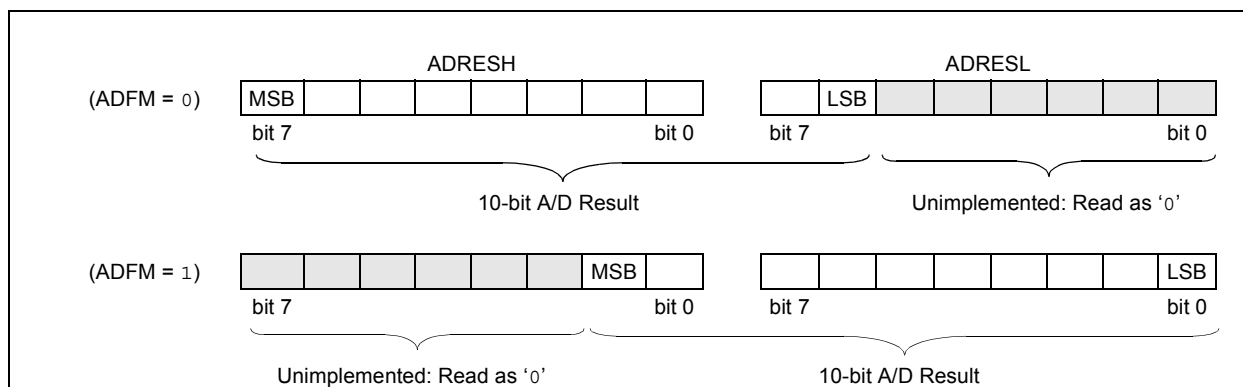
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 12.1.6 RESULT FORMATTING

The 10-bit A/D conversion result can be supplied in two formats, left justified or right justified. The ADFM bit of the ADCON0 register controls the output format.

Figure 12-4 shows the two output formats.

**FIGURE 12-3: 10-BIT A/D CONVERSION RESULT FORMAT**



## 12.2 ADC Operation

### 12.2.1 STARTING A CONVERSION

To enable the ADC module, the ADON bit of the ADCON0 register must be set to a '1'. Setting the GO/DONE bit of the ADCON0 register to a '1' will start the Analog-to-Digital conversion.

**Note:** The GO/DONE bit should not be set in the same instruction that turns on the ADC. Refer to **Section 12.2.6 "A/D Conversion Procedure"**.

### 12.2.2 COMPLETION OF A CONVERSION

When the conversion is complete, the ADC module will:

- Clear the GO/DONE bit
- Set the ADIF flag bit
- Update the ADRESH:ADRESL registers with new conversion result

### 12.2.3 TERMINATING A CONVERSION

If a conversion must be terminated before completion, the GO/DONE bit can be cleared in software. The ADRESH:ADRESL registers will not be updated with the partially complete Analog-to-Digital conversion sample. Instead, the ADRESH:ADRESL register pair will retain the value of the previous conversion. Additionally, a 2 TAD delay is required before another acquisition can be initiated. Following this delay, an input acquisition is automatically started on the selected channel.

**Note:** A device Reset forces all registers to their Reset state. Thus, the ADC module is turned off and any pending conversion is terminated.

### 12.2.4 ADC OPERATION DURING SLEEP

The ADC module can operate during Sleep. This requires the ADC clock source to be set to the FRC option. When the FRC clock source is selected, the ADC waits one additional instruction before starting the conversion. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed, which can reduce system noise during the conversion. If the ADC interrupt is enabled, the device will wake-up from Sleep when the conversion completes. If the ADC interrupt is disabled, the ADC module is turned off after the conversion completes, although the ADON bit remains set.

When the ADC clock source is something other than FRC, a SLEEP instruction causes the present conversion to be aborted and the ADC module is turned off, although the ADON bit remains set.

### 12.2.5 SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER

The CCP Special Event Trigger allows periodic ADC measurements without software intervention. When this trigger occurs, the GO/DONE bit is set by hardware and the Timer1 counter resets to zero.

Using the Special Event Trigger does not assure proper ADC timing. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that the ADC timing requirements are met.

See **Section 15.0 "Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) Module"** for more information.

## 12.2.6 A/D CONVERSION PROCEDURE

This is an example procedure for using the ADC to perform an Analog-to-Digital conversion:

1. Configure Port:
  - Disable pin output driver (See TRIS register)
  - Configure pin as analog
2. Configure the ADC module:
  - Select ADC conversion clock
  - Configure voltage reference
  - Select ADC input channel
  - Select result format
  - Turn on ADC module
3. Configure ADC interrupt (optional):
  - Clear ADC interrupt flag
  - Enable ADC interrupt
  - Enable peripheral interrupt
  - Enable global interrupt<sup>(1)</sup>
4. Wait the required acquisition time<sup>(2)</sup>.
5. Start conversion by setting the GO/DONE bit.
6. Wait for ADC conversion to complete by one of the following:
  - Polling the GO/DONE bit
  - Waiting for the ADC interrupt (interrupts enabled)
7. Read ADC Result
8. Clear the ADC interrupt flag (required if interrupt is enabled).

**Note 1:** The global interrupt can be disabled if the user is attempting to wake-up from Sleep and resume in-line code execution.

**2:** See **Section 12.3 “A/D Acquisition Requirements”**.

## EXAMPLE 12-1: A/D CONVERSION

```
;This code block configures the ADC
;for polling, Vdd reference, Frc clock
;and AN0 input.
;
;Conversion start & polling for completion
; are included.
;
BANKSEL    ADCON1        ;
MOVLW     B'01110000'    ;ADC Frc clock
MOVWF     ADCON1        ;
BANKSEL    TRISA         ;
BSF       TRISA,0        ;Set RA0 to input
BANKSEL    ANSEL         ;
BSF       ANSEL,0        ;Set RA0 to analog
BANKSEL    ADCON0        ;
MOVLW     B'10000001'    ;Right justify,
MOVWF     ADCON0        ;Vdd Vref, AN0, On
CALL      SampleTime     ;Acquisition delay
BSF       ADCON0,GO      ;Start conversion
BTFSC     ADCON0,GO      ;Is conversion done?
GOTO      $-1            ;No, test again
BANKSEL    ADRESH        ;
MOVF      ADRESH,W       ;Read upper 2 bits
MOVWF     RESULTHI       ;store in GPR space
BANKSEL    ADRESL        ;
MOVF      ADRESL,W       ;Read lower 8 bits
MOVWF     RESULTLO       ;Store in GPR space
```

## 12.2.7 ADC REGISTER DEFINITIONS

The following registers are used to control the operation of the ADC.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 12-1: ADCON0: A/D CONTROL REGISTER 0

|       |       |       |       |       |       |         |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0 |
| ADFM  | VCFG1 | VCFG0 | CHS2  | CHS1  | CHS0  | GO/DONE | ADON  |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |         | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **ADFM:** A/D Conversion Result Format Select bit

1 = Right justified

0 = Left justified

bit 6 **VCFG1:** Voltage Reference bit

1 = VREF- pin

0 = VSS

bit 5 **VCFG0:** Voltage Reference bit

1 = VREF+ pin

0 = VSS

bit 4-2 **CHS<2:0>:** Analog Channel Select bits

000 = AN0

001 = AN1

010 = AN2

011 = AN3

100 = AN4

101 = AN5<sup>(1)</sup>

110 = AN6<sup>(1)</sup>

111 = AN7<sup>(1)</sup>

bit 1 **GO/DONE:** A/D Conversion Status bit

1 = A/D conversion cycle in progress. Setting this bit starts an A/D conversion cycle.

This bit is automatically cleared by hardware when the A/D conversion has completed.

0 = A/D conversion completed/not in progress

bit 0 **ADON:** ADC Enable bit

1 = ADC is enabled

0 = ADC is disabled and consumes no operating current

**Note 1:** Not available on 28-pin devices.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 12-2: ADCON1: A/D CONTROL REGISTER 1

|       |       |       |       |       |     |     |     |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| U-0   | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 |
| —     | ADCS2 | ADCS1 | ADCS0 | —     | —   | —   | —   |
| bit 7 |       |       |       | bit 0 |     |     |     |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-4    **ADCS<2:0>:** A/D Conversion Clock Select bits

000 = FOSC/2

001 = FOSC/8

010 = FOSC/32

x11 = FRC (clock derived from a dedicated internal oscillator = 500 kHz max.)

100 = FOSC/4

101 = FOSC/16

110 = FOSC/64

bit 3-0    **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 12-3: ADRESH: ADC RESULT REGISTER HIGH (ADRESH) ADFM = 0

| R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| ADRES9 | ADRES8 | ADRES7 | ADRES6 | ADRES5 | ADRES4 | ADRES3 | ADRES2 |
| bit 7  |        |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**ADRES<9:2>**: ADC Result Register bits

Upper 8 bits of 10-bit conversion result

## REGISTER 12-4: ADRESL: ADC RESULT REGISTER LOW (ADRESL) ADFM = 0

| R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x |
|--------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ADRES1 | ADRES0 | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     |
| bit 7  |        |       |       |       |       |       | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6

**ADRES<1:0>**: ADC Result Register bits

Lower 2 bits of 10-bit conversion result

bit 5-0

**Reserved**: Do not use.

## REGISTER 12-5: ADRESH: ADC RESULT REGISTER HIGH (ADRESH) ADFM = 1

| R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x | R/W-x  | R/W-x  |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | —     | ADRES9 | ADRES8 |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |       |       |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-2

**Reserved**: Do not use.

bit 1-0

**ADRES<9:8>**: ADC Result Register bits

Upper 2 bits of 10-bit conversion result

## REGISTER 12-6: ADRESL: ADC RESULT REGISTER LOW (ADRESL) ADFM = 1

| R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  | R/W-x  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| ADRES7 | ADRES6 | ADRES5 | ADRES4 | ADRES3 | ADRES2 | ADRES1 | ADRES0 |
| bit 7  |        |        |        |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**ADRES<7:0>**: ADC Result Register bits

Lower 8 bits of 10-bit conversion result



## 12.3 A/D Acquisition Requirements

For the ADC to meet its specified accuracy, the charge holding capacitor (CHOLD) must be allowed to fully charge to the input channel voltage level. The Analog Input model is shown in Figure 12-4. The source impedance (Rs) and the internal sampling switch (RSS) impedance directly affect the time required to charge the capacitor CHOLD. The sampling switch (RSS) impedance varies over the device voltage (VDD), see Figure 12-4. **The maximum recommended impedance for analog sources is 10 kΩ.** As the source impedance is decreased, the acquisition time may be decreased. After the analog input channel is selected (or changed),

an A/D acquisition must be done before the conversion can be started. To calculate the minimum acquisition time, Equation 12-1 may be used. This equation assumes that 1/2 LSB error is used (1024 steps for the ADC). The 1/2 LSB error is the maximum error allowed for the ADC to meet its specified resolution.

### EQUATION 12-1: ACQUISITION TIME EXAMPLE

*Assumptions: Temperature = 50°C and external impedance of 10kΩ 5.0V VDD*

$$\begin{aligned} T_{ACQ} &= \text{Amplifier Settling Time} + \text{Hold Capacitor Charging Time} + \text{Temperature Coefficient} \\ &= T_{AMP} + T_C + T_{COFF} \\ &= 2\mu s + T_C + [(Temperature - 25^\circ C)(0.05\mu s/^\circ C)] \end{aligned}$$

*The value for TC can be approximated with the following equations:*

$$V_{APPLIED} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{(2^{n+1}) - 1} \right) = V_{CHOLD} \quad ;[1] \text{ } V_{CHOLD} \text{ charged to within } 1/2 \text{ lsb}$$

$$V_{APPLIED} \left( 1 - e^{\frac{-T_C}{RC}} \right) = V_{CHOLD} \quad ;[2] \text{ } V_{CHOLD} \text{ charge response to } V_{APPLIED}$$

$$V_{APPLIED} \left( 1 - e^{\frac{-T_C}{RC}} \right) = V_{APPLIED} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{(2^{n+1}) - 1} \right) \quad ;\text{combining [1] and [2]}$$

*Note: Where n = number of bits of the ADC.*

*Solving for TC:*

$$\begin{aligned} T_C &= -CHOLD(RIC + RSS + RS) \ln(1/2047) \\ &= -10pF(1k\Omega + 7k\Omega + 10k\Omega) \ln(0.0004885) \\ &= 1.37\mu s \end{aligned}$$

*Therefore:*

$$\begin{aligned} T_{ACQ} &= 2\mu s + 1.37\mu s + [(50^\circ C - 25^\circ C)(0.05\mu s/^\circ C)] \\ &= 4.67\mu s \end{aligned}$$

**Note 1:** The reference voltage (VREF) has no effect on the equation, since it cancels itself out.

**2:** The charge holding capacitor (CHOLD) is not discharged after each conversion.

**3:** The maximum recommended impedance for analog sources is 10 kΩ. This is required to meet the pin leakage specification.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 12-4: ANALOG INPUT MODEL

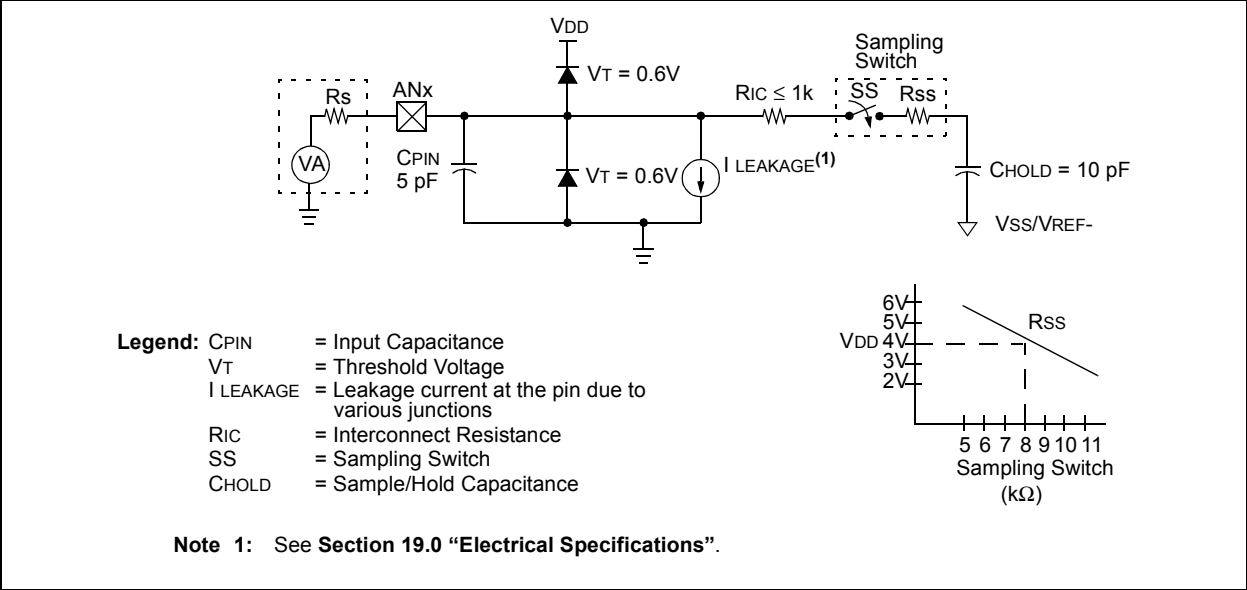
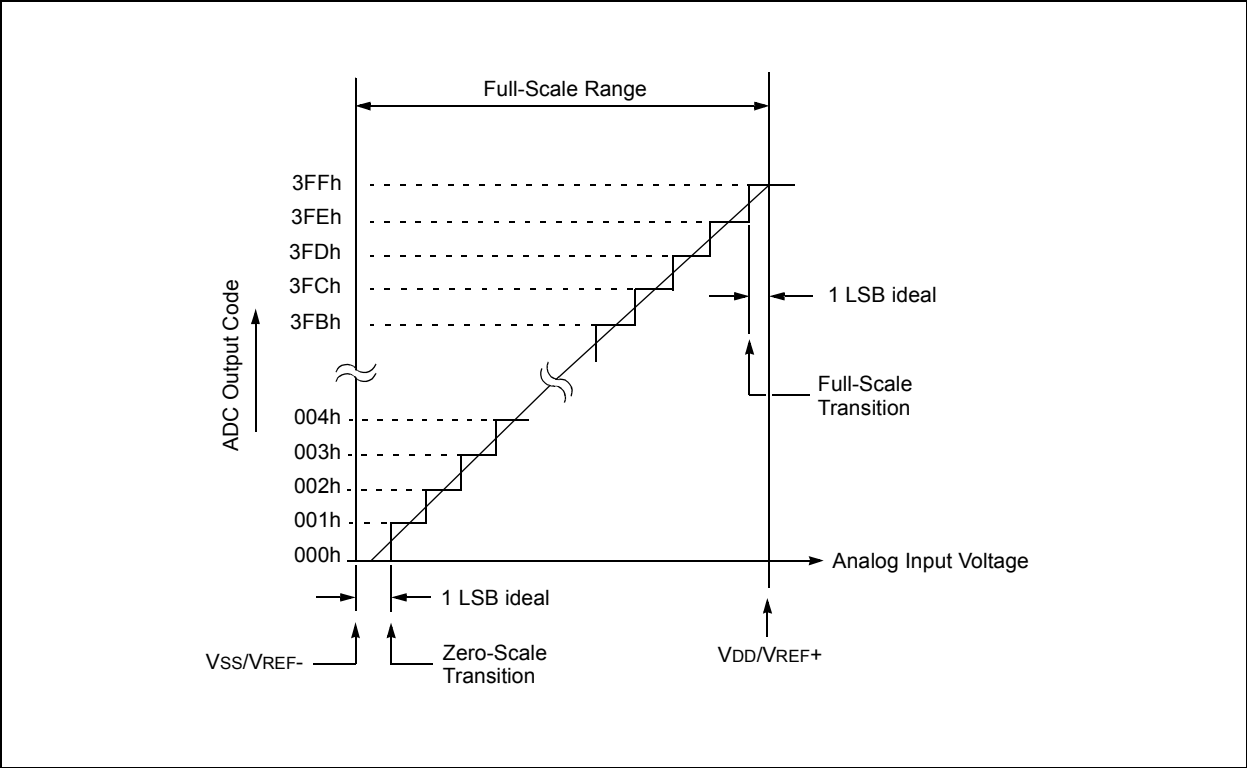


FIGURE 12-5: ADC TRANSFER FUNCTION



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 12-2: SUMMARY OF ASSOCIATED ADC REGISTERS**

| Name                  | Bit 7                         | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1   | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| ADCON0                | ADFM                          | VCFG1  | VCFG0  | CHS2   | CHS1   | CHS0   | GO/DONE | ADON   | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| ADCON1                | —                             | ADCS2  | ADCS1  | ADCS0  | —      | —      | —       | —      | -000 ----         | -000 ----                 |
| ANSEL                 | ANS7                          | ANS6   | ANS5   | ANS4   | ANS3   | ANS2   | ANS1    | ANS0   | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| ADRESH                | A/D Result Register High Byte |        |        |        |        |        |         |        | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| ADRESL                | A/D Result Register Low Byte  |        |        |        |        |        |         |        | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| INTCON                | GIE                           | PEIE   | T0IE   | INTE   | RBIE   | T0IF   | INTF    | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| LCDCON                | LCDEN                         | SLPEN  | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1   | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE0                | SE7                           | SE6    | SE5    | SE4    | SE3    | SE2    | SE1     | SE0    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| LCDSE1                | SE15                          | SE14   | SE13   | SE12   | SE11   | SE10   | SE9     | SE8    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| LCDSE2 <sup>(1)</sup> | SE23                          | SE22   | SE21   | SE20   | SE19   | SE18   | SE17    | SE16   | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIE1                  | EEIE                          | ADIE   | RCIE   | TXIE   | SSPIE  | CCP1IE | TMR2IE  | TMR1IE | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR1                  | EEIF                          | ADIF   | RCIF   | TXIF   | SSPIF  | CCP1IF | TMR2IF  | TMR1IF | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PORTA                 | RA7                           | RA6    | RA5    | RA4    | RA3    | RA2    | RA1     | RA0    | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| PORTB                 | RB7                           | RB6    | RB5    | RB4    | RB3    | RB2    | RB1     | RB0    | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| PORTE                 | RE7                           | RE6    | RE5    | RE4    | RE3    | RE2    | RE1     | RE0    | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| TRISA                 | TRISA7                        | TRISA6 | TRISA5 | TRISA4 | TRISA3 | TRISA2 | TRISA1  | TRISA0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| TRISB                 | TRISB7                        | TRISB6 | TRISB5 | TRISB4 | TRISB3 | TRISB2 | TRISB1  | TRISB0 | 1111 ----         | 1111 ----                 |
| TRISE                 | TRISE7                        | TRISE6 | TRISE5 | TRISE4 | TRISE3 | TRISE2 | TRISE1  | TRISE0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, — = unimplemented read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for ADC module.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

NOTES:

## 13.0 DATA EEPROM AND FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY CONTROL

Data EEPROM memory is readable and writable and the Flash program memory is readable during normal operation (full VDD range). These memories are not directly mapped in the register file space. Instead, they are indirectly addressed through the Special Function Registers. There are six SFRs used to access these memories:

- EECON1
- EECON2
- EEDATL
- EEDATH
- EEADRL
- EEADRH

When interfacing the data memory block, EEDATL holds the 8-bit data for read/write, and EEADRL holds the address of the EE data location being accessed. This device has 256 bytes of data EEPROM with an address range from 00h to FFh.

When interfacing the program memory block, the EEDATL and EEDATH registers form a 2-byte word that holds the 14-bit data for read, and the EEADRL and EEADRH registers form a 2-byte word that holds the 13-bit address of the EEPROM location being accessed. This family of devices has 4K and 8K words of program Flash with an address range from 0h-0FFFh and 0h-1FFFh. The program memory allows one word reads.

The EEPROM data memory allows byte read and write. A byte write automatically erases the location and writes the new data (erase before write).

The write time is controlled by an on-chip timer. The write/erase voltages are generated by an on-chip charge pump rated to operate over the voltage range of the device for byte or word operations.

When the device is code-protected, the CPU may continue to read and write the data EEPROM memory and read the program memory. When code-protected, the device programmer can no longer access data or program memory.

## 13.1 EEADRL and EEADRH Registers

The EEADRL and EEADRH registers can address up to a maximum of 256 bytes of data EEPROM or up to a maximum of 8K words of program Flash.

When selecting a program address value, the MSB of the address is written to the EEADRH register and the LSB is written to the EEADRL register. When selecting a data address value, only the LSB of the address is written to the EEADRL register.

### 13.1.1 EECON1 AND EECON2 REGISTERS

EECON1 is the control register for EE memory accesses.

Control bit EEPGD determines if the access will be a program or data memory access. When clear, as it is when reset, any subsequent operations will operate on the data memory. When set, any subsequent operations will operate on the program memory. Program memory can only be read.

Control bits RD and WR initiate read and write, respectively. These bits cannot be cleared, only set, in software. They are cleared in hardware at completion of the read or write operation. The inability to clear the WR bit in software prevents the accidental, premature termination of a write operation.

The WREN bit, when set, will allow a write operation to data EEPROM. On power-up, the WREN bit is clear. The WRERR bit is set when a write operation is interrupted by a MCLR or a WDT Time-out Reset during normal operation. In these situations, following Reset, the user can check the WRERR bit. The Data and Address registers will be cleared on the Reset. User code can then run an appropriate recovery routine.

Interrupt flag bit EEIF of the PIR1 register is set when write is complete. It must be cleared in the software.

EECON2 is not a physical register. Reading EECON2 will read all '0's. The EECON2 register is used exclusively in the data EEPROM write sequence.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 13-1: EEDATL: EEPROM/PROGRAM MEMORY DATA LOW BYTE REGISTER

|         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| EEDATL7 | EEDATL6 | EEDATL5 | EEDATL4 | EEDATL3 | EEDATL2 | EEDATL1 | EEDATL0 |
| bit 7   |         |         |         |         |         |         | bit 0   |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**EEDATL<7:0>**: Byte value to Write to or Read from data EEPROM bits or to Read from program memory

## REGISTER 13-2: EEADRL: EEPROM/PROGRAM MEMORY ADDRESS LOW BYTE REGISTER

|         |         |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| EEADRL7 | EEADRL6 | EEADRL5 | EEADRL4 | EEADRL3 | EEADRL2 | EEADRL1 | EEADRL0 |
| bit 7   |         |         |         |         |         |         | bit 0   |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-0

**EEADRL<7:0>**: Specifies one of 256 locations for EEPROM Read/Write operation bits or low address byte for program memory reads

## REGISTER 13-3: EEDATH: PROGRAM MEMORY DATA HIGH BYTE REGISTER

|       |     |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|-------|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —     | —   | EEDATH5 | EEDATH4 | EEDATH3 | EEDATH2 | EEDATH1 | EEDATH0 |
| bit 7 |     |         |         |         |         |         | bit 0   |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6

**Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0

**EEDATH<5:0>**: Byte value to Read from program memory

## REGISTER 13-4: EEADRH: PROGRAM MEMORY ADDRESS HIGH BYTE REGISTER

|       |     |     |         |         |         |         |         |
|-------|-----|-----|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   | R/W-0   |
| —     | —   | —   | EEDATH4 | EEDATH3 | EEDATH2 | EEDATH1 | EEDATH0 |
| bit 7 |     |     |         |         |         |         | bit 0   |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-5

**Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4-0

**EEADRH<4:0>**: Specifies the high address byte for program memory reads

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**REGISTER 13-5: EECN1: EEPROM CONTROL REGISTER**

|       |     |     |     |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| R/W-x | U-0 | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-x | R/W-0 | R/S-0 | R/S-0 |
| EEPGD | —   | —   | —   | WRERR | WREN  | WR    | RD    |
| bit 7 |     |     |     |       |       |       | bit 0 |

**Legend:**

S = Bit can only be set

R = Readable bit

-n = Value at POR

W = Writable bit

'1' = Bit is set

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7      **EEPGD:** Program/Data EEPROM Select bit  
1 = Accesses program memory  
0 = Accesses data memory
- bit 6-4    **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
- bit 3      **WRERR:** EEPROM Error Flag bit  
1 = A write operation is prematurely terminated (any  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  Reset, any WDT Reset during normal operation or BOR Reset)  
0 = The write operation completed
- bit 2      **WREN:** EEPROM Write Enable bit  
1 = Allows write cycles  
0 = Inhibits write to the data EEPROM
- bit 1      **WR:** Write Control bit  
EEPGD = 1:  
This bit is ignored  
EEPGD = 0:  
1 = Initiates a write cycle (The bit is cleared by hardware once write is complete. The WR bit can only be set, not cleared, in software.)  
0 = Write cycle to the data EEPROM is complete
- bit 0      **RD:** Read Control bit  
1 = Initiates a memory read (the RD is cleared in hardware and can only be set, not cleared, in software.)  
0 = Does not initiate a memory read

## 13.1.2 READING THE DATA EEPROM MEMORY

To read a data memory location, the user must write the address to the EEADRL register, clear the EEPGD control bit, and then set control bit RD of the EECON1 register. The data is available in the very next cycle, in the EEDATL register; therefore, it can be read in the next instruction. EEDATL will hold this value until another read or until it is written to by the user (during a write operation).

### EXAMPLE 13-1: DATA EEPROM READ

```
BANKSEL EEADRL      ;
MOVF  DATA_EE_ADDR,W ;Data Memory
MOVWF EEADRL        ;Address to read
BANKSEL EECON1      ;
BCF   EECON1,EEPGD  ;Point to Data
                        ;memory
BSF   EECON1,RD      ;EE Read
BANKSEL EEDATL      ;
MOVF  EEDATL,W       ;W = EEPROM Data
```

## 13.1.3 WRITING TO THE DATA EEPROM MEMORY

To write an EEPROM data location, the user must first write the address to the EEADRL register and the data to the EEDATL register. Then the user must follow a specific sequence to initiate the write for each byte.

The write will not initiate if the sequence described below is not followed exactly (write 55h to EECON2, write AAh to EECON2, then set WR bit) for each byte. Interrupts should be disabled during this code segment.

Additionally, the WREN bit in EECON1 must be set to enable write. This mechanism prevents accidental writes to data EEPROM due to errant (unexpected) code execution (i.e., lost programs). The user should keep the WREN bit clear at all times, except when updating EEPROM. The WREN bit is not cleared by hardware.

After a write sequence has been initiated, clearing the WREN bit will not affect this write cycle. The WR bit will be inhibited from being set unless the WREN bit is set.

At the completion of the write cycle, the WR bit is cleared in hardware and the EE Write Complete Interrupt Flag bit (EEIF) is set. The user can either enable this interrupt or poll this bit. EEIF must be cleared by software.

The steps to write to EEPROM data memory are:

1. If step 10 is not implemented, check the WR bit to see if a write is in progress.
2. Write the address to EEADRL. Make sure that the address is not larger than the memory size of the device.
3. Write the 8-bit data value to be programmed in the EEDATL register.
4. Clear the EEPGD bit to point to EEPROM data memory.
5. Set the WREN bit to enable program operations.
6. Disable interrupts (if enabled).
7. Execute the special five instruction sequence:
  - Write 55h to EECON2 in two steps (first to W, then to EECON2)
  - Write AAh to EECON2 in two steps (first to W, then to EECON2)
  - Set the WR bit
8. Enable interrupts (if using interrupts).
9. Clear the WREN bit to disable program operations.
10. At the completion of the write cycle, the WR bit is cleared and the EEIF interrupt flag bit is set. (EEIF must be cleared by firmware.) If step 1 is not implemented, then firmware should check for EEIF to be set, or WR to clear, to indicate the end of the program cycle.

### EXAMPLE 13-2: DATA EEPROM WRITE

```
BANKSEL EECON1      ;
BTFSC EECON1,WR      ;Wait for write
GOTO  $-1            ;to complete
BANKSEL EEADRL      ;
MOVF  DATA_EE_ADDR,W ;Data Memory
MOVWF EEADRL        ;Address to write
MOVF  DATA_EE_DATA,W ;Data Memory Value
MOVWF EEDATL        ;to write
BANKSEL EECON1      ;
BCF   EECON1,EEPGD  ;Point to DATA
                        ;memory
BSF   EECON1,WREN   ;Enable writes

BCF   INTCON,GIE    ;Disable INTs.
MOVLW 55h           ;
MOVWF EECON2        ;Write 55h
MOVLW AAh           ;
MOVWF EECON2        ;Write AAh
BSF   EECON1,WR      ;Set WR bit to
                        ;begin write
BSF   INTCON,GIE    ;Enable INTs.
BCF   EECON1,WREN   ;Disable writes
```



## 13.1.4 READING THE FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

To read a program memory location, the user must write two bytes of the address to the EEADRL and EEADRH registers, set the EEPGD control bit, and then set control bit RD of the EECON1 register. Once the read control bit is set, the program memory Flash controller will use the second instruction cycle to read the data. This causes the second instruction immediately following the "BSF EECON1, RD" instruction to be ignored. The data is available in the very next cycle, in the EEDATL and EEDATH registers; therefore, it can be read as two bytes in the following instructions. EEDATL and EEDATH registers will hold this value until another read or until it is written to by the user (during a write operation).

- Note 1:** The two instructions following a program memory read are required to be NOP's. This prevents the user from executing a two-cycle instruction on the next instruction after the RD bit is set.
- 2:** If the WR bit is set when EEPGD = 1, the WR bit will be immediately reset to '0' and no operation will take place.

### EXAMPLE 13-3: FLASH PROGRAM READ

|                                                                                                                         |           |                  |                                    |                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px;"> Required<br/>Sequence </div> | BANKSEL   | EEADRL           | ;                                  |                                    |
|                                                                                                                         | MOVLW     | MS_PROG_EE_ADDR; |                                    |                                    |
|                                                                                                                         | MOVWF     | EEADRH           | ;                                  | MS Byte of Program Address to read |
|                                                                                                                         | MOVLW     | LS_PROG_EE_ADDR; |                                    |                                    |
|                                                                                                                         | MOVWF     | EEADRL           | ;                                  | LS Byte of Program Address to read |
|                                                                                                                         | BANKSEL   | EECON1           | ;                                  |                                    |
|                                                                                                                         | BSF       | EECON1, EEPGD    | ;                                  | Point to PROGRAM memory            |
|                                                                                                                         | BSF       | EECON1, RD       | ;                                  | EE Read                            |
|                                                                                                                         | ;         |                  |                                    |                                    |
|                                                                                                                         | NOP       |                  |                                    |                                    |
|                                                                                                                         | NOP       |                  |                                    |                                    |
|                                                                                                                         | ;         |                  |                                    |                                    |
|                                                                                                                         | BANKSEL   | EEDATL           | ;                                  |                                    |
|                                                                                                                         | MOVF      | EEDATL, W        | ;                                  | W = LS Byte of EEPROM Data program |
| MOVWF                                                                                                                   | DATAL     | ;                |                                    |                                    |
| MOVF                                                                                                                    | EEDATH, W | ;                | W = MS Byte of EEPROM Data program |                                    |
| MOVWF                                                                                                                   | DATAH     | ;                |                                    |                                    |

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 13-1: FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY READ CYCLE EXECUTION**

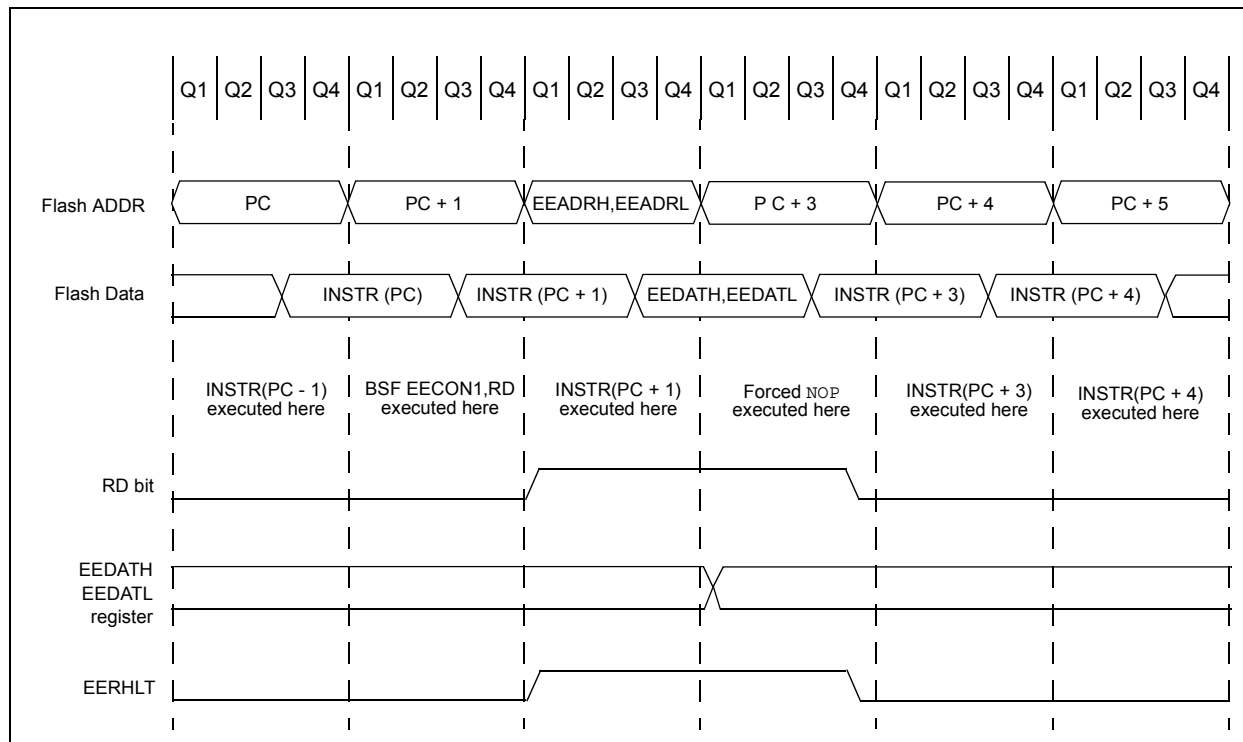


**TABLE 13-1: SUMMARY OF ASSOCIATED REGISTERS WITH DATA EEPROM**

| Name   | Bit 7                                               | Bit 6   | Bit 5   | Bit 4   | Bit 3   | Bit 2   | Bit 1   | Bit 0   | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON | GIE                                                 | PEIE    | TOIE    | INTE    | RBIE    | TOIF    | INTF    | RBIF    | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| PIE1   | EEIE                                                | ADIE    | RCIE    | TXIE    | SSPIE   | CCP1IE  | TMR2IE  | TMR1IE  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR1   | EEIF                                                | ADIF    | RCIF    | TXIF    | SSPIF   | CCP1IF  | TMR2IF  | TMR1IF  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| EEADRH | —                                                   | —       | —       | EEADRH4 | EEADRH3 | EEADRH2 | EEADRH1 | EEADRH0 | ---0 0000         | ---0 0000                 |
| EEADRL | EEADRL7                                             | EEADRL6 | EEADRL5 | EEADRL4 | EEADRL3 | EEADRL2 | EEADRL1 | EEADRL0 | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| EECON1 | EEPGD                                               | —       | —       | —       | WRERR   | WREN    | WR      | RD      | 0--- x000         | ---- q000                 |
| EECON2 | EEPROM Control Register 2 (not a physical register) |         |         |         |         |         |         |         | ---- ----         | ---- ----                 |
| EEDATH | —                                                   | —       | EEDATH5 | EEDATH4 | EEDATH3 | EEDATH2 | EEDATH1 | EEDATH0 | --00 0000         | --00 0000                 |
| EEDATL | EEDATL7                                             | EEDATL6 | EEDATL5 | EEDATL4 | EEDATL3 | EEDATL2 | EEDATL1 | EEDATL0 | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented read as '0', q = value depends upon condition.  
Shaded cells are not used by data EEPROM module.

## 14.0 SSP MODULE OVERVIEW

The Synchronous Serial Port (SSP) module is a serial interface used to communicate with other peripheral or microcontroller devices. These peripheral devices may be serial EEPROMs, shift registers, display drivers, A/D converters, etc. The SSP module can operate in one of two modes:

- Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)
- Inter-Integrated Circuit (I<sup>2</sup>C™)

Refer to Application Note AN578, "Use of the SSP Module in the Multi-Master Environment" (DS00578).

### 14.1 SPI Mode

This section contains register definitions and operational characteristics of the SPI module.

The SPI mode allows 8 bits of data to be synchronously transmitted and received simultaneously. To accomplish communication, typically three pins are used:

- Serial Data Out (SDO)
- Serial Data In (SDI)
- Serial Clock (SCK)

Additionally, a fourth pin may be used when in a Slave mode of operation:

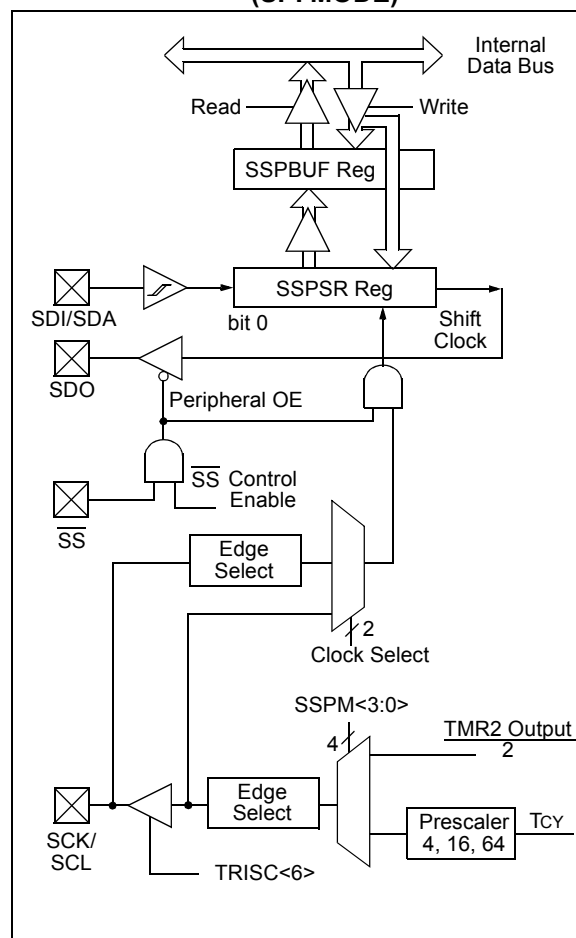
- Slave Select ( $\overline{SS}$ )

**Note 1:** When the SPI is in Slave mode with  $\overline{SS}$  pin control enabled (SSPM<3:0> bits of the SSPCON register = 0100), the SPI module will reset if the  $\overline{SS}$  pin is set to VDD.

**2:** If the SPI is used in Slave mode with CKE = 1, then the  $\overline{SS}$  pin control must be enabled.

**3:** When the SPI is in Slave mode with  $\overline{SS}$  pin control enabled (SSPM<3:0> bits of the SSPCON register = 0100), the state of the  $\overline{SS}$  pin can affect the state read back from the TRISC<4> bit. The peripheral OE signal from the SSP module into PORTC controls the state that is read back from the TRISC<4> bit (see **Section 19.0 "Electrical Specifications"** for information on PORTC). If read-write-modify instructions, such as BSF, are performed on the TRISC register while the  $\overline{SS}$  pin is high, this will cause the TRISC<4> bit to be set, thus disabling the SDO output.

**FIGURE 14-1: SSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (SPI MODE)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 14-1: SSPSTAT: SYNC SERIAL PORT STATUS REGISTER

|       |       |     |     |     |     |     |       |
|-------|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|
| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R-0 | R-0 | R-0 | R-0 | R-0 | R-0   |
| SMP   | CKE   | D/A | P   | S   | R/W | UA  | BF    |
| bit 7 |       |     |     |     |     |     | bit 0 |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

|       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bit 7 | <p><b>SMP:</b> SPI Data Input Sample Phase bit</p> <p><u>SPI Master mode:</u></p> <p>1 = Input data sampled at end of data output time</p> <p>0 = Input data sampled at middle of data output time (Microwire)</p> <p><u>SPI Slave mode:</u></p> <p>SMP must be cleared when SPI is used in Slave mode</p> <p><u>I<sup>2</sup>C™ mode:</u></p> <p>This bit must be maintained clear</p>                                    |
| bit 6 | <p><b>CKE:</b> SPI Clock Edge Select bit</p> <p><u>SPI mode, CKP = 0:</u></p> <p>1 = Data stable on rising edge of SCK (Microwire alternate)</p> <p>0 = Data stable on falling edge of SCK</p> <p><u>SPI mode, CKP = 1:</u></p> <p>1 = Data stable on falling edge of SCK (Microwire default)</p> <p>0 = Data stable on rising edge of SCK</p> <p><u>I<sup>2</sup>C mode:</u></p> <p>This bit must be maintained clear</p> |
| bit 5 | <p><b>D/A:</b> DATA/ADDRESS bit (I<sup>2</sup>C mode only)</p> <p>1 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was data</p> <p>0 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was address</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| bit 4 | <p><b>P:</b> Stop bit (I<sup>2</sup>C mode only)</p> <p>This bit is cleared when the SSP module is disabled, or when the Start bit is detected last. SSPEN is cleared.</p> <p>1 = Indicates that a Stop bit has been detected last (this bit is '0' on Reset)</p> <p>0 = Stop bit was not detected last</p>                                                                                                                |
| bit 3 | <p><b>S:</b> Start bit (I<sup>2</sup>C mode only)</p> <p>This bit is cleared when the SSP module is disabled, or when the Stop bit is detected last. SSPEN is cleared.</p> <p>1 = Indicates that a Start bit has been detected last (this bit is '0' on Reset)</p> <p>0 = Start bit was not detected last</p>                                                                                                              |
| bit 2 | <p><b>R/W:</b> READ/WRITE bit Information (I<sup>2</sup>C mode only)</p> <p>This bit holds the R/W bit information following the last address match. This bit is only valid from the address match to the next Start bit, Stop bit or ACK bit.</p> <p>1 = Read</p> <p>0 = Write</p>                                                                                                                                        |
| bit 1 | <p><b>UA:</b> Update Address bit (10-bit I<sup>2</sup>C mode only)</p> <p>1 = Indicates that the user needs to update the address in the SSPADD register</p> <p>0 = Address does not need to be updated</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| bit 0 | <p><b>BF:</b> Buffer Full Status bit</p> <p><u>Receive (SPI and I<sup>2</sup>C modes):</u></p> <p>1 = Receive complete, SSPBUF is full</p> <p>0 = Receive not complete, SSPBUF is empty</p> <p><u>Transmit (I<sup>2</sup>C mode only):</u></p> <p>1 = Transmit in progress, SSPBUF is full</p> <p>0 = Transmit complete, SSPBUF is empty</p>                                                                               |

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 14-2: SSPCON: SYNC SERIAL PORT CONTROL REGISTER

| R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0                | R/W-0                | R/W-0                | R/W-0                |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| WCOL  | SSPOV | SSPEN | CKP   | SSPM3 <sup>(2)</sup> | SSPM2 <sup>(2)</sup> | SSPM1 <sup>(2)</sup> | SSPM0 <sup>(2)</sup> |
| bit 7 |       |       |       |                      |                      |                      | bit 0                |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

- bit 7 **WCOL**: Write Collision Detect bit  
 1 = The SSPBUF register is written while it is still transmitting the previous word (must be cleared in software)  
 0 = No collision
- bit 6 **SSPOV**: Receive Overflow Indicator bit  
In SPI mode:  
 1 = A new byte is received while the SSPBUF register is still holding the previous data. In case of overflow, the data in SSPSR is lost. Overflow can only occur in Slave mode. The user must read the SSPBUF, even if only transmitting data, to avoid setting overflow. In Master mode, the overflow bit is not set since each new reception (and transmission) is initiated by writing to the SSPBUF register.  
 0 = No overflow  
In I<sup>2</sup>C™ mode:  
 1 = A byte is received while the SSPBUF register is still holding the previous byte. SSPOV is a "don't care" in Transmit mode. SSPOV must be cleared in software in either mode.  
 0 = No overflow
- bit 5 **SSPEN**: Synchronous Serial Port Enable bit  
In SPI mode:  
 1 = Enables serial port and configures SCK, SDO and SDI as serial port pins  
 0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins  
In I<sup>2</sup>C mode:  
 1 = Enables the serial port and configures the SDA and SCL pins as serial port pins  
 0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins  
 In both modes, when enabled, these pins must be properly configured as input or output.
- bit 4 **CKP**: Clock Polarity Select bit  
In SPI mode:  
 1 = Idle state for clock is a high level (Microwire default)  
 0 = Idle state for clock is a low level (Microwire alternate)  
In I<sup>2</sup>C mode:  
 SCK release control  
 1 = Enable clock  
 0 = Holds clock low (clock stretch). (Used to ensure data setup time.)
- bit 3-0 **SSPM<3:0>**: Synchronous Serial Port Mode Select bits  
 0000 = SPI Master mode, clock = Fosc/4  
 0001 = SPI Master mode, clock = Fosc/16  
 0010 = SPI Master mode, clock = Fosc/64  
 0011 = SPI Master mode, clock = TMR2 output/2  
 0100 = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCK pin. SS pin control enabled.  
 0101 = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCK pin. SS pin control disabled. SS can be used as I/O pin.  
 0110 = I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode, 7-bit address  
 0111 = I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode, 10-bit address  
 1000 = Reserved  
 1001 = Reserved  
 1010 = Reserved  
 1011 = I<sup>2</sup>C Firmware Controlled Master mode (slave IDLE)  
 1100 = Reserved  
 1101 = Reserved  
 1110 = I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode, 7-bit address with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled  
 1111 = I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode, 10-bit address with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled

## 14.2 Operation

When initializing the SPI, several options need to be specified. This is done by programming the appropriate control bits (SSPCON<5:0> and SSPSTAT<7:6>). These control bits allow the following to be specified:

- Master mode (SCK is the clock output)
- Slave mode (SCK is the clock input)
- Clock Polarity (Idle state of SCK)
- Data Input Sample Phase (middle or end of data output time)
- Clock Edge (output data on rising/falling edge of SCK)
- Clock Rate (Master mode only)
- Slave Select mode (Slave mode only)

The SSP consists of a transmit/receive shift register (SSPSR) and a buffer register (SSPBUF). The SSPSR shifts the data in and out of the device, MSb first. The SSPBUF holds the data that was written to the SSPSR until the received data is ready. Once the eight bits of data have been received, that byte is moved to the SSPBUF register. Then, the Buffer Full Status bit BF of the SSPSTAT register, and the interrupt flag bit SSPIF, are set. Any write to the SSPBUF register during transmission/reception of data will be ignored and the Write Collision Detect bit, WCOL of the SSPCON register, will be set. User software must clear the WCOL bit so that it can be determined if the following write(s) to the SSPBUF register completed successfully.

When the application software is expecting to receive valid data, the SSPBUF should be read before the next byte of data to transfer is written to the SSPBUF. Buffer Full bit BF of the SSPSTAT register indicates when SSPBUF has been loaded with the received data (transmission is complete). When the SSPBUF is read, the BF bit is cleared. This data may be irrelevant if the SPI is only a transmitter. Generally, the SSP interrupt is used to determine when the transmission/reception has completed. The SSPBUF must be read and/or written. If the interrupt method is not going to be used, then software polling can be done to ensure that a write collision does not occur. Example 14-1 shows the loading of the SSPBUF (SSPSR) for data transmission.

The SSPSR is not directly readable or writable and can only be accessed by addressing the SSPBUF register. Additionally, the SSP STATUS register (SSPSTAT) indicates the various status conditions.

### EXAMPLE 14-1: LOADING THE SSPBUF (SSPSR) REGISTER

```
      BANKSEL    SSPSTAT      ;
LOOP   BTFSS     SSPSTAT, BF   ;Has data been received(transmit complete)?
      GOTO      LOOP          ;No
      BANKSEL    SSPBUF       ;
      MOVF       SSPBUF, W     ;WREG reg = contents of SSPBUF
      MOVWF      RXDATA        ;Save in user RAM, if data is meaningful
      MOVF       TXDATA, W     ;W reg = contents of TXDATA
      MOVWF      SSPBUF        ;New data to xmit
```

## 14.3 Enabling SPI I/O

To enable the serial port, SSP Enable bit SSPEN of the SSPCON register must be set. To reset or reconfigure SPI mode, clear the SSPEN bit, re-initialize the SSPCON registers and then set the SSPEN bit. This configures the SDI, SDO, SCK and  $\overline{SS}$  pins as serial port pins. For the pins to behave as the serial port function, their data direction bits (in the TRISA and TRISC registers) should be set as follows:

- TRISC<7> bit must be set
- SDI is automatically controlled by the SPI module
- SDO must have TRISC<4> bit cleared
- SCK (Master mode) must have TRISC<6> bit cleared
- SCK (Slave mode) must have TRISC<6> bit set
- If enabled,  $\overline{SS}$  must have TRISA<5> bit set

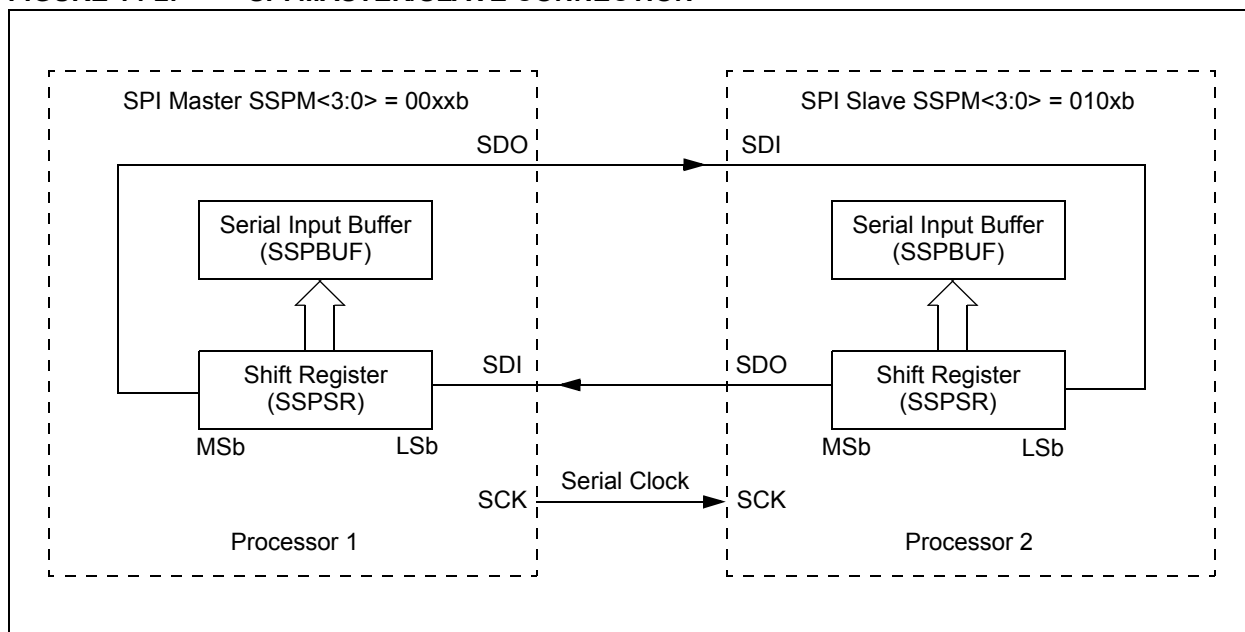
Any serial port function that is not desired may be overridden by programming the corresponding data direction (TRISA and TRISC) registers to the opposite value.

## 14.4 Typical Connection

Figure 14-2 shows a typical connection between two microcontrollers. The master controller (Processor 1) initiates the data transfer by sending the SCK signal. Data is shifted out of both shift registers on their programmed clock edge and latched on the opposite edge of the clock. Both processors should be programmed to the same Clock Polarity (CKP), then both controllers would send and receive data at the same time. Whether the data is meaningful (or dummy data) depends on the application software. This leads to three scenarios for data transmission:

- Master sends data – Slave sends dummy data
- Master sends data – Slave sends data
- Master sends dummy data – Slave sends data

**FIGURE 14-2: SPI MASTER/SLAVE CONNECTION**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 14.5 Master Mode

The master can initiate the data transfer at any time because it controls the SCK. The master determines when the slave (Processor 2, Figure 14-2) is to broadcast data by the software protocol.

In Master mode, the data is transmitted/received as soon as the SSPBUF register is written to. If the SPI is only going to receive, the SDO output could be disabled (programmed as an input). The SSPSR register will continue to shift in the signal present on the SDI pin at the programmed clock rate. As each byte is received, it will be loaded into the SSPBUF register as if a normal received byte (interrupts and Status bits appropriately set). This could be useful in receiver applications as a Line Activity Monitor mode.

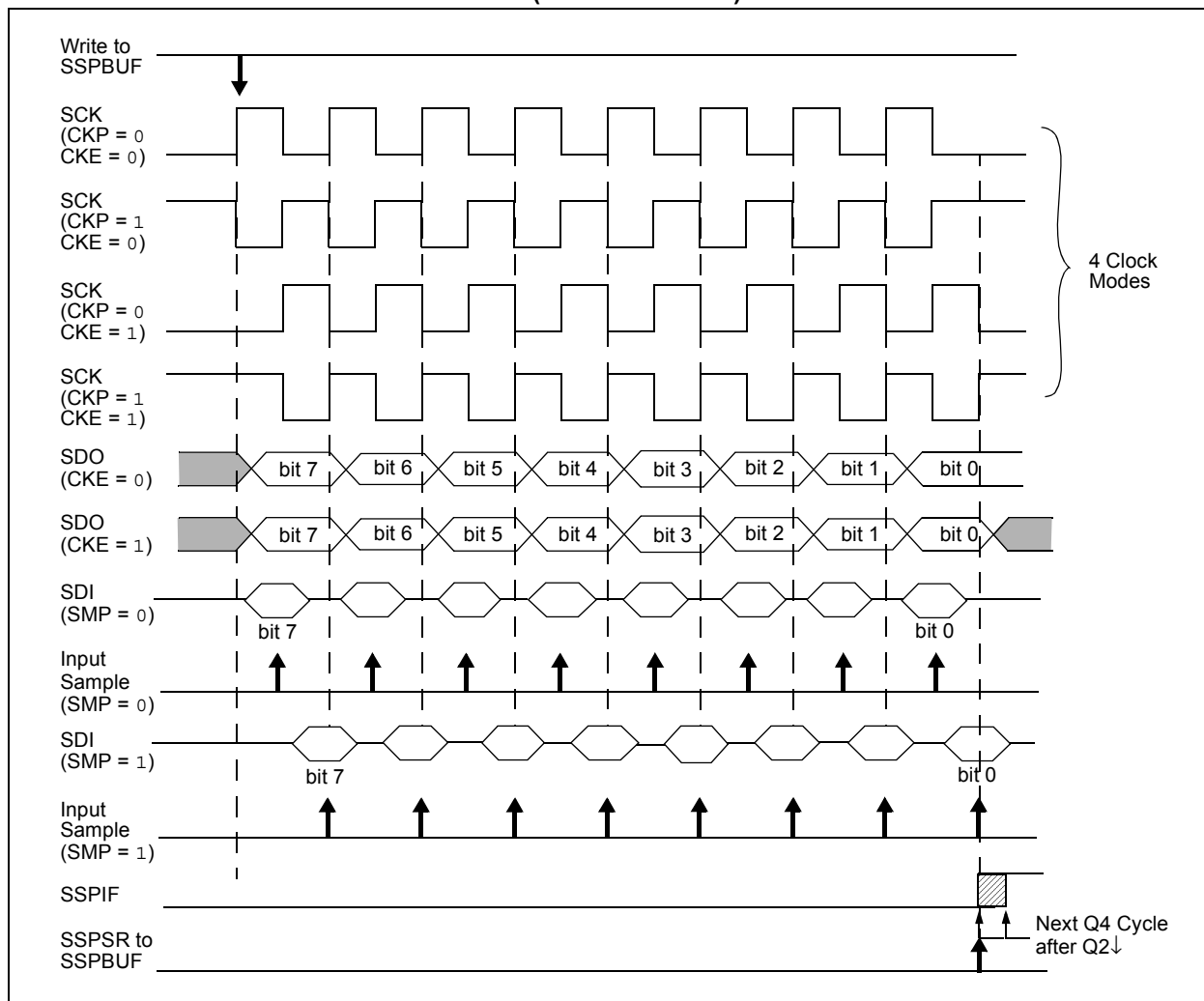
The clock polarity is selected by appropriately programming the CKP bit of the SSPCON register. This then, would give waveforms for SPI communication as shown in Figure 14-3, Figure 14-5 and Figure 14-6, where the MSB is transmitted first. In Master mode, the SPI clock rate (bit rate) is user programmable to be one of the following:

- $F_{osc}/4$  (or  $T_{cy}$ )
- $F_{osc}/16$  (or  $4 \cdot T_{cy}$ )
- $F_{osc}/64$  (or  $16 \cdot T_{cy}$ )
- $\text{Timer2 output}/2$

This allows a maximum data rate (at 20 MHz) of 5 Mbps.

Figure 14-3 shows the waveforms for Master mode. When the CKE bit is set, the SDO data is valid before there is a clock edge on SCK. The change of the input sample is shown based on the state of the SMP bit. The time when the SSPBUF is loaded with the received data is shown.

**FIGURE 14-3: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (MASTER MODE)**





## 14.6 Slave Mode

In Slave mode, the data is transmitted and received as the external clock pulses appear on SCK. When the last bit is latched, the SSPIF interrupt flag bit is set.

While in Slave mode, the external clock is supplied by the external clock source on the SCK pin. This external clock must meet the minimum high and low times as specified in the electrical specifications.

While in Sleep mode, the slave can transmit/receive data. When a byte is received, the device will wake-up from Sleep.

## 14.7 Slave Select Synchronization

The  $\overline{SS}$  pin allows a Synchronous Slave mode. The SPI must be in Slave mode with  $\overline{SS}$  pin control enabled ( $SSPCON<3:0> = 0100$ ). The pin must not be driven low for the  $\overline{SS}$  pin to function as an input. The data latch must be high. When the  $\overline{SS}$  pin is low, transmission and reception are enabled and the SDO pin is driven. When the  $\overline{SS}$  pin goes high, the SDO pin is no longer driven,

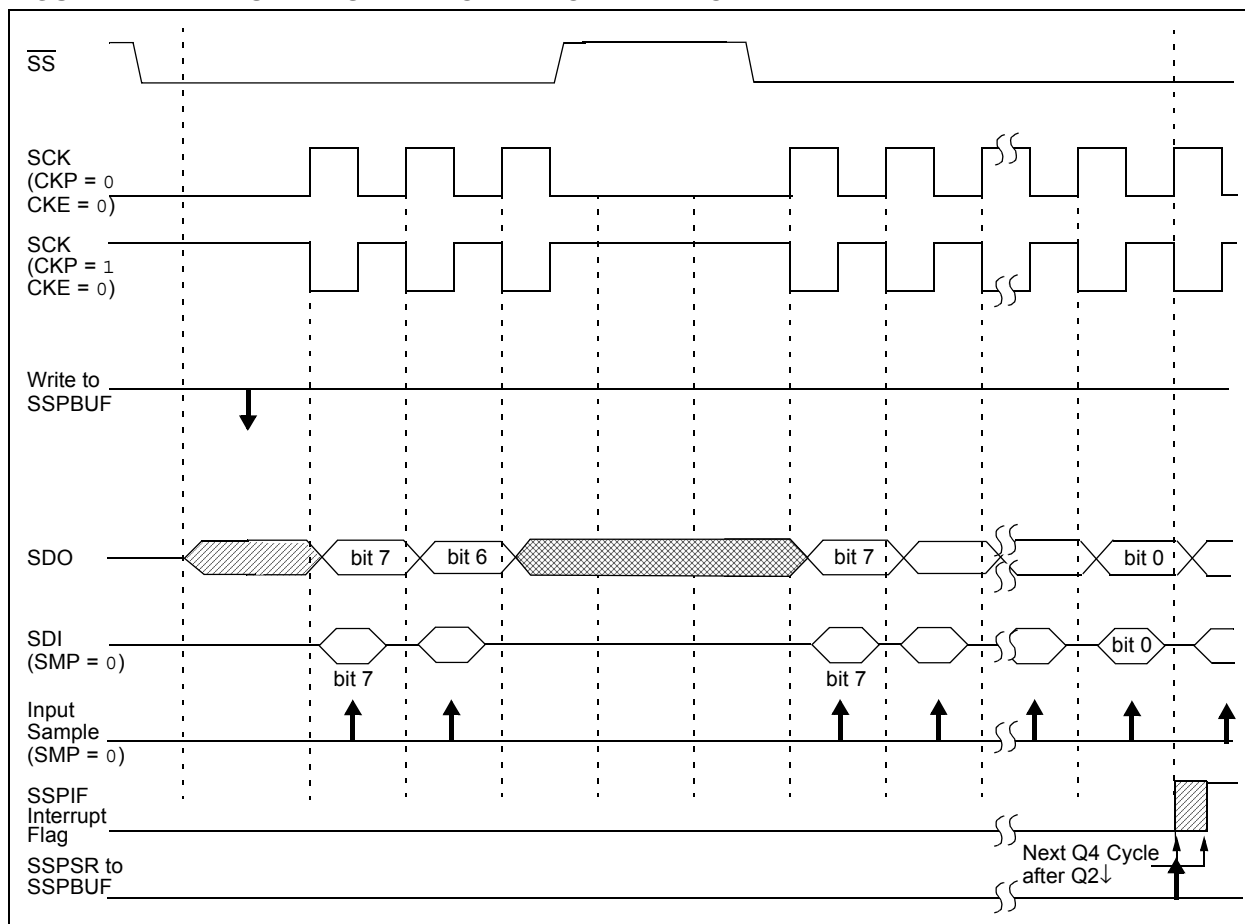
even if in the middle of a transmitted byte, and becomes a floating output. External pull-up/pull-down resistors may be desirable, depending on the application.

- Note 1:** When the SPI is in Slave mode with  $\overline{SS}$  pin control enabled ( $SSPCON<3:0> = 0100$ ), the SPI module will reset if the  $\overline{SS}$  pin is set to VDD.
- 2:** If the SPI is used in Slave Mode with CKE set, then the  $\overline{SS}$  pin control must be enabled.

When the SPI module resets, the bit counter is forced to 0. This can be done by either forcing the  $\overline{SS}$  pin to a high level or clearing the SSPEN bit.

To emulate two-wire communication, the SDO pin can be connected to the SDI pin. When the SPI needs to operate as a receiver, the SDO pin can be configured as an input. This disables transmissions from the SDO. The SDI can always be left as an input (SDI function) since it cannot create a bus conflict.

**FIGURE 14-4: SLAVE SYNCHRONIZATION WAVEFORM**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 14-5: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 0)

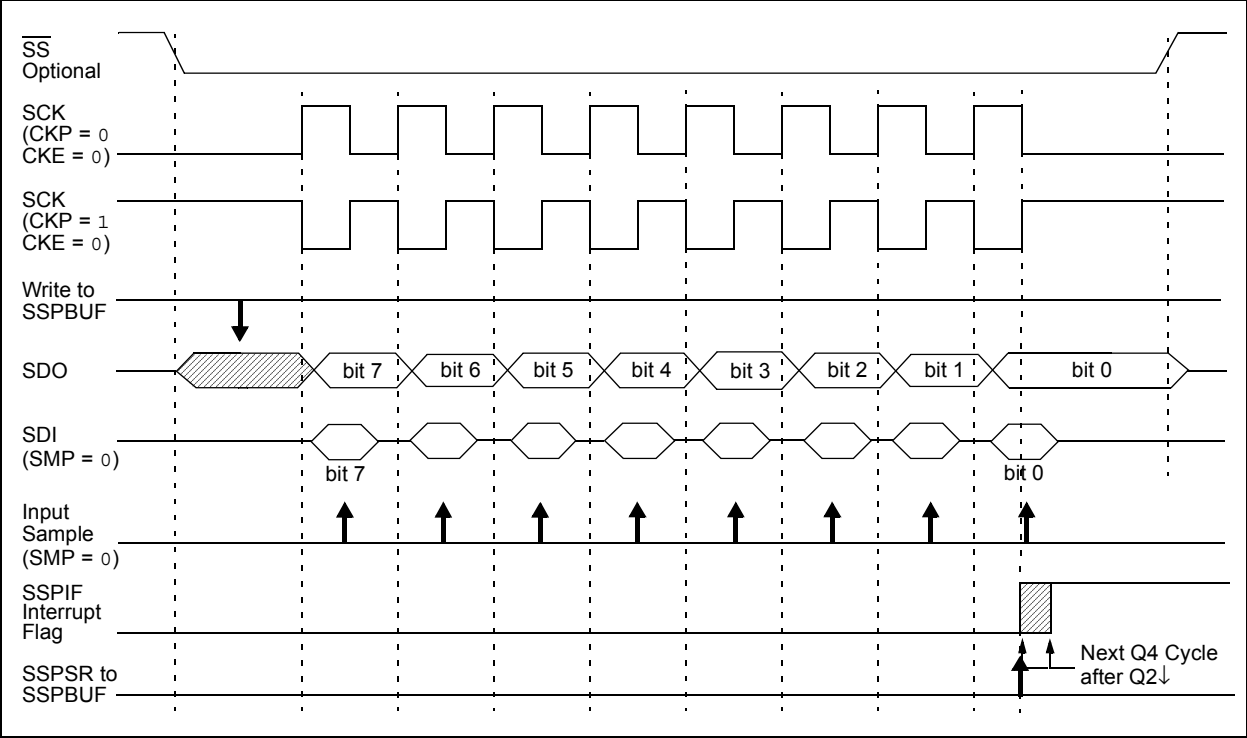
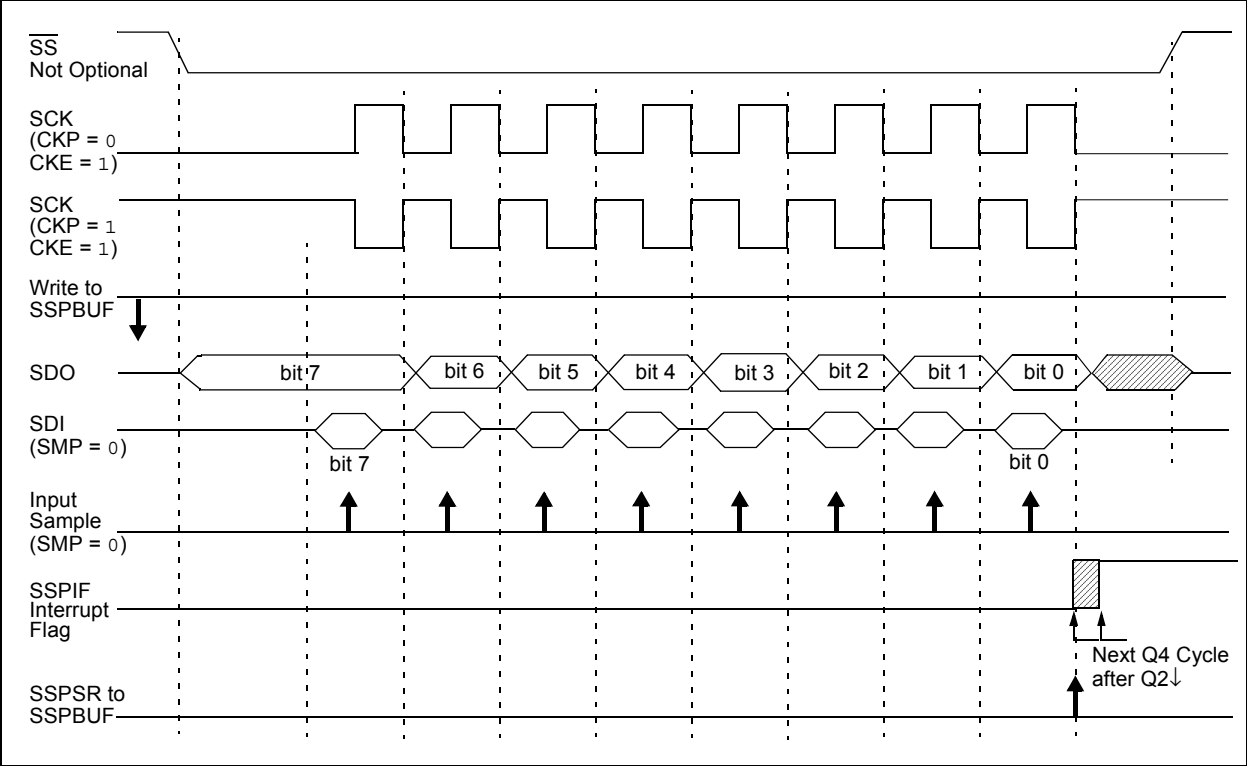


FIGURE 14-6: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 1)



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 14.8 Sleep Operation

In Master mode, all module clocks are halted and the transmission/reception will remain in that state until the device wakes from Sleep. After the device returns to Normal mode, the module will continue to transmit/receive data.

In Slave mode, the SPI Transmit/Receive Shift register operates asynchronously to the device. This allows the device to be placed in Sleep mode and data to be shifted into the SPI Transmit/Receive Shift register. When all 8 bits have been received, the SSP interrupt flag bit will be set and if enabled, will wake the device from Sleep.

## 14.9 Effects of a Reset

A Reset disables the SSP module and terminates the current transfer.

## 14.10 Bus Mode Compatibility

Table 14-1 shows the compatibility between the standard SPI modes and the states of the CKP and CKE control bits.

**TABLE 14-1: SPI BUS MODES**

| Standard SPI Mode Terminology | Control Bits State |     |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|-----|
|                               | CKP                | CKE |
| 0, 0                          | 0                  | 1   |
| 0, 1                          | 0                  | 0   |
| 1, 0                          | 1                  | 1   |
| 1, 1                          | 1                  | 0   |

There is also a SMP bit which controls when the data is sampled.

**TABLE 14-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SPI OPERATION**

| Name    | Bit 7                                                    | Bit 6  | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON  | GIE                                                      | PEIE   | T0IE   | INTE   | RBIE   | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| LCDCON  | LCDEN                                                    | SLPEN  | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE0  | SE7                                                      | SE6    | SE5    | SE4    | SE3    | SE2    | SE1    | SE0    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| LCDSE1  | SE15                                                     | SE14   | SE13   | SE12   | SE11   | SE10   | SE9    | SE8    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIE1    | EEIE                                                     | ADIE   | RCIE   | TXIE   | SSPIE  | CCP1IE | TMR2IE | TMR1IE | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR1    | EEIF                                                     | ADIF   | RCIF   | TXIF   | SSPIF  | CCP1IF | TMR2IF | TMR1IF | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| RCSTA   | SPEN                                                     | RX9    | SREN   | CREN   | ADDEN  | FERR   | OERR   | RX9D   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| SSPBUF  | Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register |        |        |        |        |        |        |        | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| SSPCON  | WCOL                                                     | SSPOV  | SSPEN  | CKP    | SSPM3  | SSPM2  | SSPM1  | SSPM0  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| SSPSTAT | SMP                                                      | CKE    | D/A    | P      | S      | R/W    | UA     | BF     | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TRISA   | TRISA7                                                   | TRISA6 | TRISA5 | TRISA4 | TRISA3 | TRISA2 | TRISA1 | TRISA0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| TRISC   | TRISC7                                                   | TRISC6 | TRISC5 | TRISC4 | TRISC3 | TRISC2 | TRISC1 | TRISC0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the SSP in SPI mode.

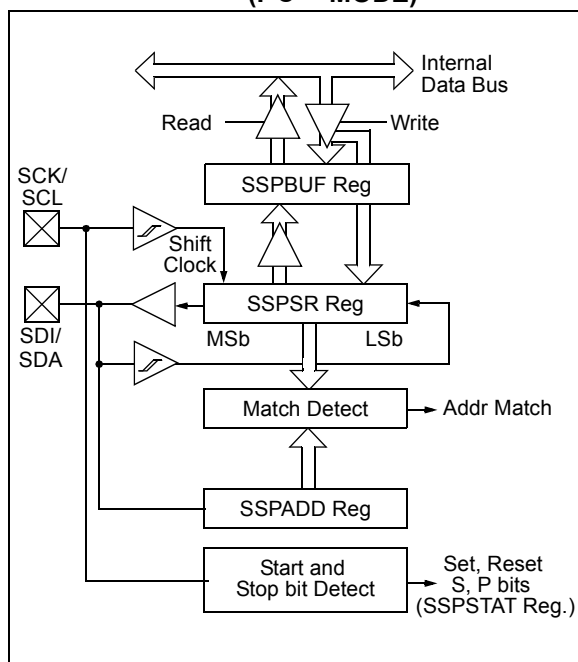
## 14.11 SSP I<sup>2</sup>C Operation

The SSP module in I<sup>2</sup>C mode, fully implements all slave functions, except general call support, and provides interrupts on Start and Stop bits in hardware to facilitate firmware implementations of the master functions. The SSP module implements the Standard mode specifications, as well as 7-bit and 10-bit addressing.

Two pins are used for data transfer. These are the RC6/TX/CK/SCK/SCL/SEG9 pin, which is the clock (SCL), and the RC7/RX/DT/SDI/SDA/SEG8 pin, which is the data (SDA).

The SSP module functions are enabled by setting SSP enable bit SSPEN (SSPCON<5>).

**FIGURE 14-7: SSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (I<sup>2</sup>C™ MODE)**



The SSP module has five registers for the I<sup>2</sup>C operation, which are listed below.

- SSP Control register (SSPCON)
- SSP STATUS register (SSPSTAT)
- Serial Receive/Transmit Buffer (SSPBUF)
- SSP Shift register (SSPSR) – Not directly accessible
- SSP Address register (SSPADD)

The SSPCON register allows control of the I<sup>2</sup>C operation. Four mode selection bits (SSPCON<3:0>) allow one of the following I<sup>2</sup>C modes to be selected:

- I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode (7-bit address)
- I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode (10-bit address)
- I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode (7-bit address), with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled to support Firmware Master mode
- I<sup>2</sup>C Slave mode (10-bit address), with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled to support Firmware Master mode
- I<sup>2</sup>C Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled to support Firmware Master mode; Slave is idle

Selection of any I<sup>2</sup>C mode with the SSPEN bit set forces the SCL and SDA pins to be open drain, provided these pins are programmed to inputs by setting the appropriate TRISC bits. Pull-up resistors must be provided externally to the SCL and SDA pins for proper operation of the I<sup>2</sup>C module.

## 14.12 Slave Mode

In Slave mode, the SCL and SDA pins must be configured as inputs (TRISC<7,6> are set). The SSP module will override the input state with the output data when required (slave-transmitter).

When an address is matched, or the data transfer after an address match is received, the hardware automatically will generate the Acknowledge (ACK) pulse, and then load the SSPBUF register with the received value currently in the SSPSR register.

There are certain conditions that will cause the SSP module not to give this ACK pulse. They include (either or both):

- The Buffer Full bit BF of the SSPSTAT register was set before the transfer was received.
- The overflow bit SSPOV of the SSPCON register was set before the transfer was received.

In this case, the SSPSR register value is not loaded into the SSPBUF, but bit SSPIF of the PIR1 register is set. Table 14-3 shows the results of when a data transfer byte is received, given the status of bits BF and SSPOV. The shaded cells show the condition where user software did not properly clear the overflow condition. Flag bit BF is cleared by reading the SSPBUF register, while bit SSPOV is cleared through software.

The SCL clock input must have a minimum high and low for proper operation. For high and low times of the I<sup>2</sup>C specification, as well as the requirements of the SSP module, see **Section 19.0 “Electrical Specifications”**.

## 14.12.1 ADDRESSING

Once the SSP module has been enabled, it waits for a Start condition to occur. Following the Start condition, the 8-bits are shifted into the SSPSR register. All incoming bits are sampled with the rising edge of the clock (SCL) line. The value of register SSPSR<7:1> is compared to the value of register SSPADD <7:1>. The address is compared on the falling edge of the eighth clock (SCL) pulse. If the addresses match, and the BF and SSPOV bits are clear, the following events occur:

- The SSPSR register value is loaded into the SSPBUF register.
- The buffer full bit, BF is set.
- An  $\overline{\text{ACK}}$  pulse is generated.
- SSP interrupt flag bit, SSPIF of the PIR1 register is set (interrupt is generated if enabled) on the falling edge of the ninth SCL pulse.

In 10-bit Address mode, two address bytes need to be received by the slave (Figure 14-8). The five Most Significant bits (MSBs) of the first address byte specify if this is a 10-bit address. Bit R/W (SSPSTAT<2>) must specify a write so the slave device will receive the second address byte. For a 10-bit address, the first byte would equal '1111 0 A9 A8 0', where A9 and A8 are the two MSBs of the address.

The sequence of events for 10-bit address is as follows, with steps 7-9 for slave-transmitter:

- Receive first (high) byte of address (bits SSPIF, BF and bit UA (SSPSTAT<1>) are set).
- Update the SSPADD register with second (low) byte of address (clears bit UA and releases the SCL line).
- Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.
- Receive second (low) byte of address (bits SSPIF, BF and UA are set).
- Update the SSPADD register with the first (high) byte of address; if match releases SCL line, this will clear bit UA.
- Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.
- Receive repeated Start condition.
- Receive first (high) byte of address (bits SSPIF and BF are set).
- Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.

**TABLE 14-3: DATA TRANSFER RECEIVED BYTE ACTIONS**

| Status Bits as Data Transfer is Received |       | SSPSR → SSPBUF | Generate $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ Pulse | Set bit SSPIF (SSP Interrupt occurs if enabled) |
|------------------------------------------|-------|----------------|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| BF                                       | SSPOV |                |                                        |                                                 |
| 0                                        | 0     | Yes            | Yes                                    | Yes                                             |
| 1                                        | 0     | No             | No                                     | Yes                                             |
| 1                                        | 1     | No             | No                                     | Yes                                             |
| 0                                        | 1     | No             | No                                     | Yes                                             |

**Note:** Shaded cells show the conditions where the user software did not properly clear the overflow condition.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 14.12.2 RECEPTION

When the  $R/\overline{W}$  bit of the address byte is clear and an address match occurs, the  $R/\overline{W}$  bit of the SSPSTAT register is cleared. The received address is loaded into the SSPBUF register.

When the address byte overflow condition exists, then no Acknowledge ( $\overline{ACK}$ ) pulse is given. An overflow condition is defined as either bit BF of the SSPSTAT register is set, or bit SSPOV of the SSPCON register is set. This is an error condition due to the user's firmware.

An SSP interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. Flag bit SSPIF of the PIR1 register must be cleared in software. The SSPSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte.

**FIGURE 14-8: I<sup>2</sup>C™ WAVEFORMS FOR RECEPTION (7-BIT ADDRESS)**

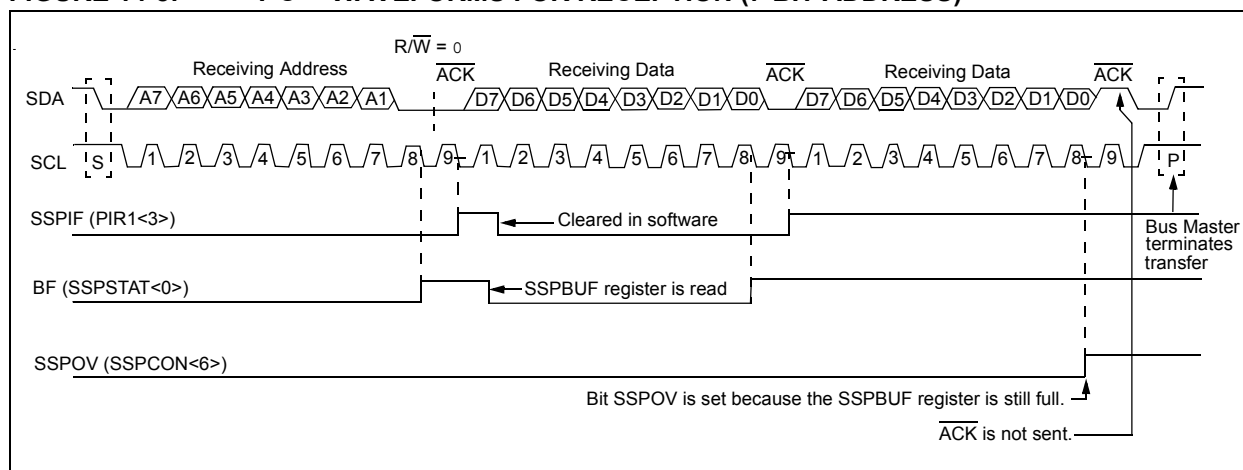
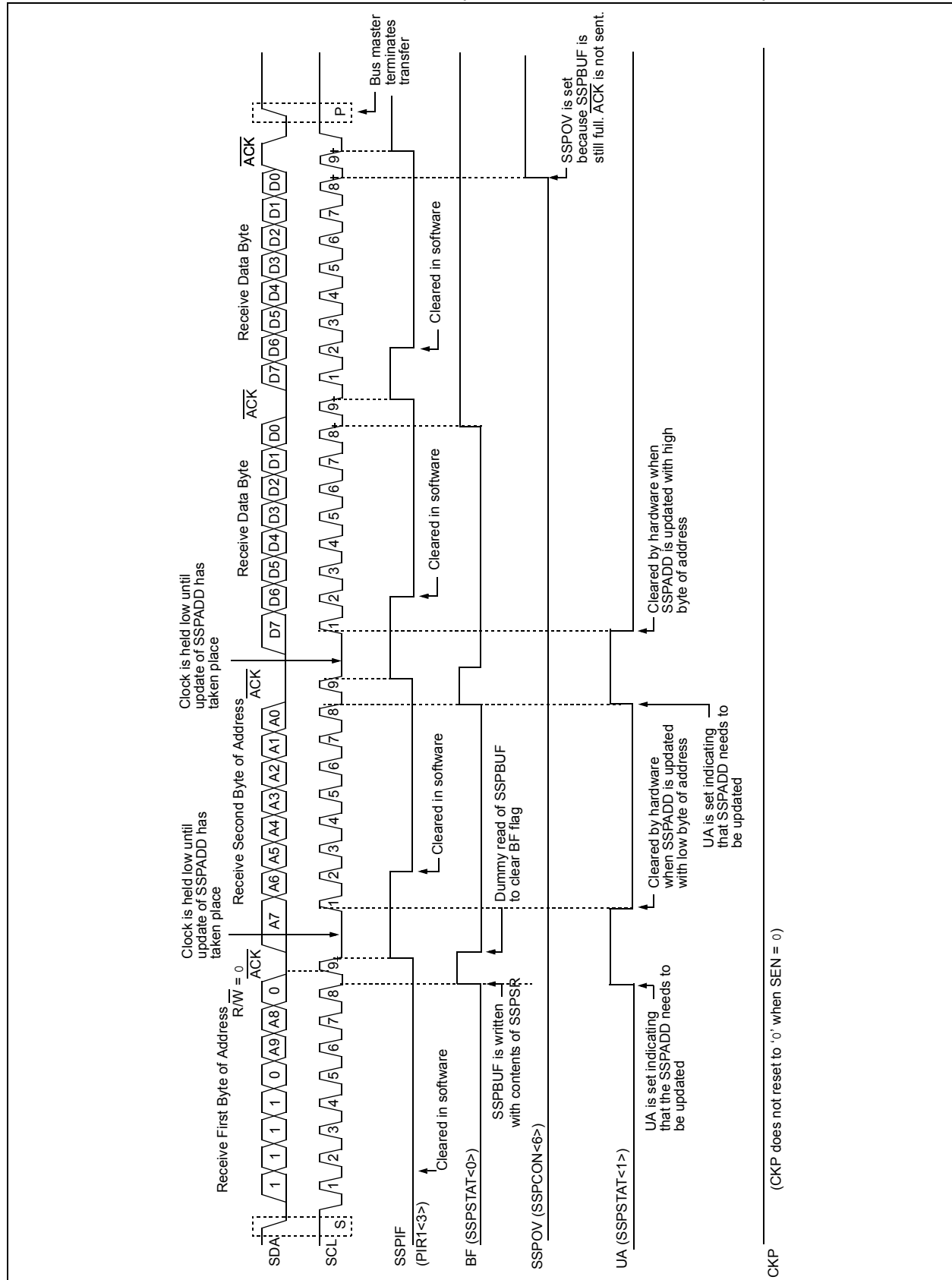


**FIGURE 14-9: I<sup>2</sup>C™ SLAVE MODE TIMING (RECEPTION, 10-BIT ADDRESS)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

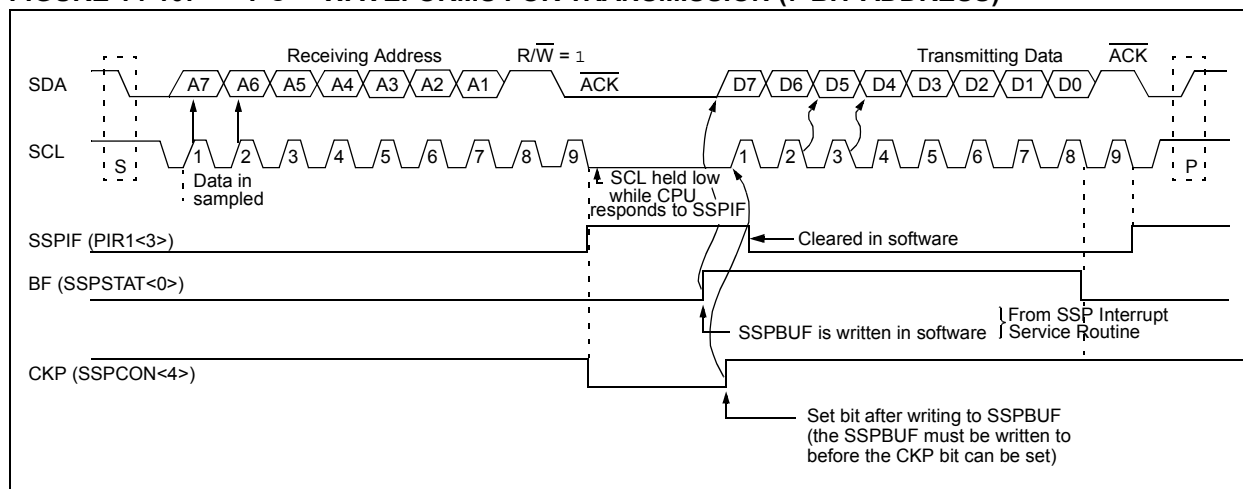
## 14.12.3 TRANSMISSION

When the  $R/\overline{W}$  bit of the incoming address byte is set and an address match occurs, the  $R/\overline{W}$  bit of the SSPSTAT register is set. The received address is loaded into the SSPBUF register. The  $\overline{ACK}$  pulse will be sent on the ninth bit, and pin RC6/TX/CK/SCK/SCL/SEG9 is held low. The transmit data must be loaded into the SSPBUF register, which also loads the SSPSR register. Then, pin RC6/TX/CK/SCK/SCL/SEG9 should be enabled by setting bit CKP of the SSPCON register. The master must monitor the SCL pin prior to asserting another clock pulse. The slave devices may be holding off the master by stretching the clock. The eight data bits are shifted out on the falling edge of the SCL input. This ensures that the SDA signal is valid during the SCL high time (Figure 14-10).

An SSP interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. Flag bit SSPIF must be cleared in software, and the SSPSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte. Flag bit SSPIF is set on the falling edge of the ninth clock pulse.

As a slave-transmitter, the  $\overline{ACK}$  pulse from the master receiver is latched on the rising edge of the ninth SCL input pulse. If the SDA line was high (not  $\overline{ACK}$ ), then the data transfer is complete. When the  $\overline{ACK}$  is latched by the slave, the slave logic is reset (resets SSPSTAT register) and the slave then monitors for another occurrence of the Start bit. If the SDA line was low ( $\overline{ACK}$ ), the transmit data must be loaded into the SSPBUF register, which also loads the SSPSR register. Then pin RC6/TX/CK/SCK/SCL/SEG9 should be enabled by setting bit CKP.

**FIGURE 14-10: I<sup>2</sup>C™ WAVEFORMS FOR TRANSMISSION (7-BIT ADDRESS)**







## 14.13 Master Mode

Master mode of operation is supported in firmware using interrupt generation on the detection of the Start and Stop conditions. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits are cleared from a Reset or when the SSP module is disabled. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits will toggle based on the Start and Stop conditions. Control of the I<sup>2</sup>C bus may be taken when the P bit is set or the bus is idle and both the S and P bits are clear.

In Master mode, the SCL and SDA lines are manipulated by clearing the corresponding TRISC<7,6> bit(s). The output level is always low, irrespective of the value(s) in PORTC<7,6>. So when transmitting data, a '1' data bit must have the TRISC<6> bit set (input) and a '0' data bit must have the TRISC<7> bit cleared (output). The same scenario is true for the SCL line with the TRISC<6> bit. Pull-up resistors must be provided externally to the SCL and SDA pins for proper operation of the I<sup>2</sup>C module.

The following events will cause the SSP Interrupt Flag bit, SSPIF, to be set (SSP Interrupt will occur if enabled):

- Start condition
- Stop condition
- Data transfer byte transmitted/received

Master mode of operation can be done with either the Slave mode idle (SSPM<3:0> = 1011), or with the Slave active. When both Master and Slave modes are enabled, the software needs to differentiate the source(s) of the interrupt.

## 14.14 Multi-Master Mode

In Multi-Master mode, the interrupt generation on the detection of the Start and Stop conditions, allows the determination of when the bus is free. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits are cleared from a Reset or when the SSP module is disabled. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits will toggle based on the Start and Stop conditions. Control of the I<sup>2</sup>C bus may be taken when bit P (SSPSTAT<4>) is set, or the bus is idle and both the S and P bits clear. When the bus is busy, enabling the SSP Interrupt will generate the interrupt when the Stop condition occurs.

In Multi-Master operation, the SDA line must be monitored to see if the signal level is the expected output level. This check only needs to be done when a high level is output. If a high level is expected and a low level is present, the device needs to release the SDA and SCL lines (set TRISC<7,6>). There are two stages where this arbitration can be lost, these are:

- Address Transfer
- Data Transfer

When the slave logic is enabled, the slave continues to receive. If arbitration was lost during the address transfer stage, communication to the device may be in progress. If addressed, an  $\overline{\text{ACK}}$  pulse will be generated. If arbitration was lost during the data transfer stage, the device will need to re-transfer the data at a later time.

### 14.14.1 CLOCK SYNCHRONIZATION AND THE CKP BIT

When the CKP bit is cleared, the SCL output is forced to '0'; however, setting the CKP bit will not assert the SCL output low until the SCL output is already sampled low. Therefore, the CKP bit will not assert the SCL line until an external I<sup>2</sup>C master device has already asserted the SCL line. The SCL output will remain low until the CKP bit is set and all other devices on the I<sup>2</sup>C bus have deasserted SCL. This ensures that a write to the CKP bit will not violate the minimum high time requirement for SCL (see Figure 14-12).

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 14-12: CLOCK SYNCHRONIZATION TIMING**

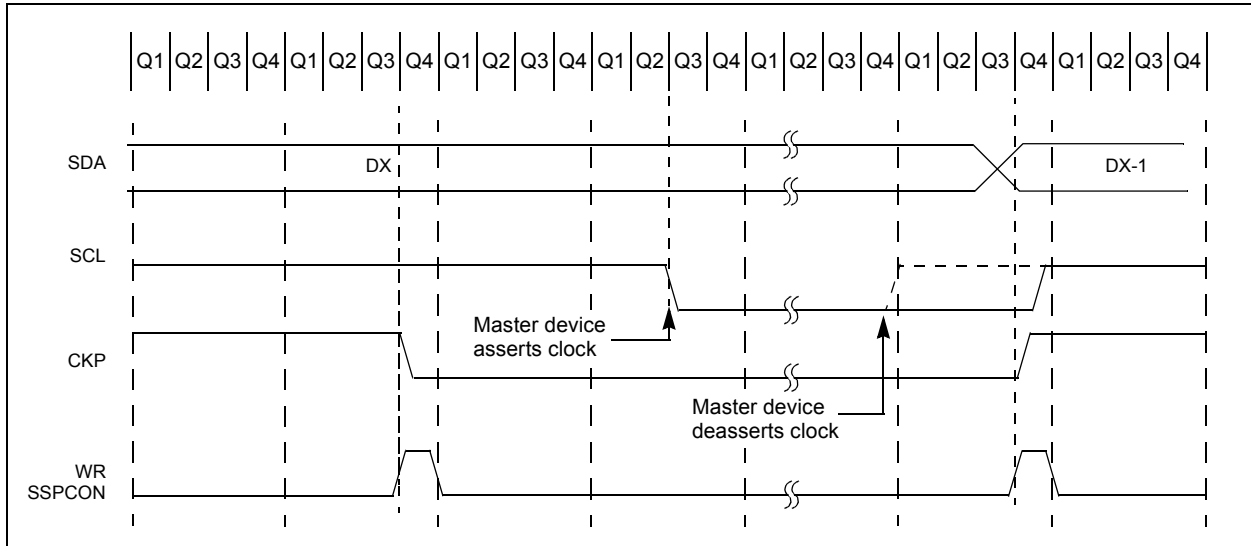


**TABLE 14-4: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH I<sup>2</sup>C™ OPERATION**

| Name    | Bit 7                                                    | Bit 6              | Bit 5  | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON  | GIE                                                      | PEIE               | T0IE   | INTE   | RBIE   | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| LCDCON  | LCDEN                                                    | SLPEN              | WERR   | VLCDEN | CS1    | CS0    | LMUX1  | LMUX0  | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE1  | SE15                                                     | SE14               | SE13   | SE12   | SE11   | SE10   | SE9    | SE8    | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIE1    | EEIE                                                     | ADIE               | RCIE   | TXIE   | SSPIE  | CCP1IE | TMR2IF | TMR1IF | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR1    | EEIF                                                     | ADIF               | RCIF   | TXIF   | SSPIF  | CCP1IF | TMR2IF | TMR1IF | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| RCSTA   | SPEN                                                     | RX9                | SREN   | CREN   | ADDEN  | FERR   | OERR   | RX9D   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| SSPBUF  | Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register |                    |        |        |        |        |        |        | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| SSPCON  | WCOL                                                     | SSPOV              | SSPEN  | CKP    | SSPM3  | SSPM2  | SSPM1  | SSPM0  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| SSPSTAT | SMP <sup>(1)</sup>                                       | CKE <sup>(1)</sup> | D/A    | P      | S      | R/W    | UA     | BF     | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TRISC   | TRISC7                                                   | TRISC6             | TRISC5 | TRISC4 | TRISC3 | TRISC2 | TRISC1 | TRISC0 | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |

**Legend:** – = Unimplemented locations, read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown. Shaded cells are not used by the SSP module.

**Note 1:** Maintain these bits clear.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

NOTES:

## 15.0 CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM (CCP) MODULE

The Capture/Compare/PWM module is a peripheral which allows the user to time and control different events. In Capture mode, the peripheral allows the timing of the duration of an event. The Compare mode allows the user to trigger an external event when a predetermined amount of time has expired. The PWM mode can generate a Pulse-Width Modulated signal of varying frequency and duty cycle.

The timer resources used by the module are shown in Table 15-1.

Additional information on CCP modules is available in the Application Note AN594, "Using the CCP Modules" (DS00594).

**TABLE 15-1: CCP MODE – TIMER RESOURCES REQUIRED**

| CCP Mode | Timer Resource |
|----------|----------------|
| Capture  | Timer1         |
| Compare  | Timer1         |
| PWM      | Timer2         |

**TABLE 15-2: INTERACTION OF TWO CCP MODULES**

| CCPx Mode | CCPy Mode | Interaction                                                                                               |
|-----------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Capture   | Capture   | Same TMR1 time base                                                                                       |
| Capture   | Compare   | Same TMR1 time base                                                                                       |
| Compare   | Compare   | Same TMR1 time base                                                                                       |
| PWM       | PWM       | The PWMs will have the same frequency and update rate (TMR2 interrupt). The rising edges will be aligned. |
| PWM       | Capture   | None                                                                                                      |
| PWM       | Compare   | None                                                                                                      |

**Note:** CCPRx and CCPx throughout this document refer to CCPR1 or CCPR2 and CCP1 or CCP2, respectively.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 15-1: CCPxCON: CCPx CONTROL REGISTER

| U-0   | U-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| —     | —   | CCPxX | CCPxY | CCP1M3 | CCP1M2 | CCP1M1 | CCP1M0 |
| bit 7 |     |       |       |        |        |        | bit 0  |

### Legend:

R = Readable bit

W = Writable bit

U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'

-n = Value at POR

'1' = Bit is set

'0' = Bit is cleared

x = Bit is unknown

bit 7-6      **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4      **CCPxX:CCPxY:** PWM Least Significant bits

Capture mode:

Unused

Compare mode:

Unused

PWM mode:

These bits are the two LSBs of the PWM duty cycle. The eight MSBs are found in CCPRxL.

bit 3-0      **CCPxM<3:0>:** CCP Mode Select bits

0000 = Capture/Compare/PWM off (resets CCP module)

0001 = Unused (reserved)

0010 = Unused (reserved)

0011 = Unused (reserved)

0100 = Capture mode, every falling edge

0101 = Capture mode, every rising edge

0110 = Capture mode, every 4th rising edge

0111 = Capture mode, every 16th rising edge

1000 = Compare mode, set output on match (CCPxIF bit is set)

1001 = Compare mode, clear output on match (CCPxIF bit is set)

1010 = Compare mode, generate software interrupt on match (CCPxIF bit is set, CCPx pin is unaffected)

1011 = Compare mode, trigger special event (CCPxIF bit is set, TMR1 is reset and A/D conversion is started if the ADC module is enabled. CCPx pin is unaffected.)

11xx = PWM mode.

## 15.1 Capture Mode

In Capture mode, CCPRxH:CCPRxL captures the 16-bit value of the TMR1 register when an event occurs on pin CCPx. An event is defined as one of the following and is configured by the CCPxM<3:0> bits of the CCPxCON register:

- Every falling edge
- Every rising edge
- Every 4th rising edge
- Every 16th rising edge

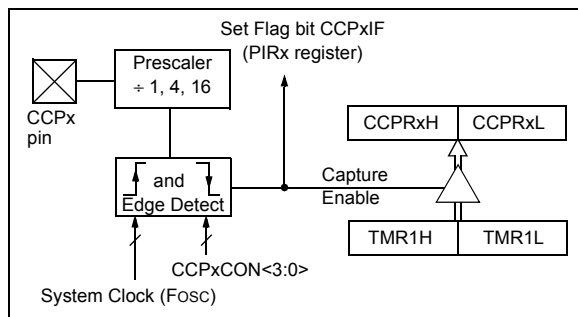
When a capture is made, the Interrupt Request Flag bit CCPxIF of the PIRx register is set. The interrupt flag must be cleared in software. If another capture occurs before the value in the CCPRxH, CCPRxL register pair is read, the old captured value is overwritten by the new captured value (see Figure 15-1).

### 15.1.1 CCPx PIN CONFIGURATION

In Capture mode, the CCPx pin should be configured as an input by setting the associated TRIS control bit.

**Note:** If the CCPx pin is configured as an output, a write to the port can cause a capture condition.

**FIGURE 15-1: CAPTURE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM**



### 15.1.2 TIMER1 MODE SELECTION

Timer1 must be running in Timer mode or Synchronized Counter mode for the CCP module to use the capture feature. In Asynchronous Counter mode, the capture operation may not work.

### 15.1.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT

When the Capture mode is changed, a false capture interrupt may be generated. The user should keep the CCPxIE interrupt enable bit of the PIRx register clear to avoid false interrupts. Additionally, the user should clear the CCPxIF interrupt flag bit of the PIRx register following any change in operating mode.

### 15.1.4 CCP PRESCALER

There are four prescaler settings specified by the CCPxM<3:0> bits of the CCPxCON register. Whenever the CCP module is turned off, or the CCP module is not in Capture mode, the prescaler counter is cleared. Any Reset will clear the prescaler counter.

Switching from one capture prescaler to another does not clear the prescaler and may generate a false interrupt. To avoid this unexpected operation, turn the module off by clearing the CCPxCON register before changing the prescaler (see Example 15-1).

**EXAMPLE 15-1: CHANGING BETWEEN CAPTURE PRESCALERS**

```

BANKSEL CCP1CON    ;Set Bank bits to point
                   ;to CCP1CON
CLRWF  CCP1CON      ;Turn CCP module off
MOVLW  NEW_CAPT_PS  ;Load the W reg with
                   ; the new prescaler
MOVWF  CCP1CON      ; move value and CCP ON
                   ;Load CCP1CON with this
                   ; value
    
```

## 15.2 Compare Mode

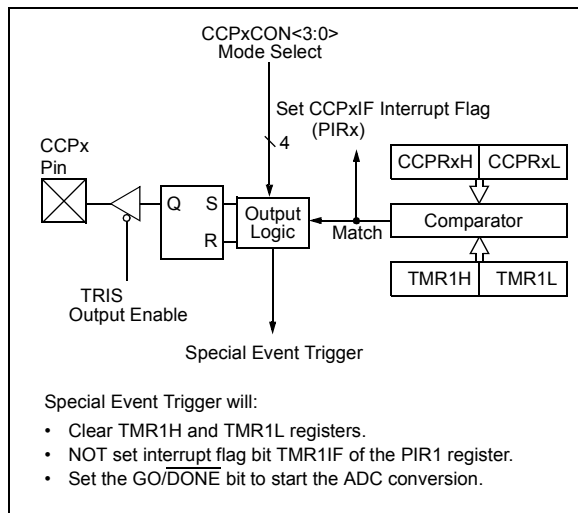
In Compare mode, the 16-bit CCPRx register value is constantly compared against the TMR1 register pair value. When a match occurs, the CCPx module may:

- Toggle the CCPx output.
- Set the CCPx output.
- Clear the CCPx output.
- Generate a Special Event Trigger.
- Generate a Software Interrupt.

The action on the pin is based on the value of the CCPxM<3:0> control bits of the CCPxCON register.

All Compare modes can generate an interrupt.

**FIGURE 15-2: COMPARE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM**



### 15.2.1 CCPx PIN CONFIGURATION

The user must configure the CCPx pin as an output by clearing the associated TRIS bit.

**Note:** Clearing the CCPxCON register will force the CCPx compare output latch to the default low level. This is not the PORT I/O data latch.

### 15.2.2 TIMER1 MODE SELECTION

In Compare mode, Timer1 must be running in either Timer mode or Synchronized Counter mode. The compare operation may not work in Asynchronous Counter mode.

### 15.2.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT MODE

When Generate Software Interrupt mode is chosen (CCPxM<3:0> = 1010), the CCPx module does not assert control of the CCPx pin (see the CCPxCON register).

### 15.2.4 SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER

When Special Event Trigger mode is chosen (CCPxM<3:0> = 1011), the CCPx module does the following:

- Resets Timer1
- Starts an ADC conversion if ADC is enabled

The CCPx module does not assert control of the CCPx pin in this mode (see the CCPxCON register).

The Special Event Trigger output of the CCP occurs immediately upon a match between the TMR1H, TMR1L register pair and the CCPRxH, CCPRxL register pair. The TMR1H, TMR1L register pair is not reset until the next rising edge of the Timer1 clock. This allows the CCPRxH, CCPRxL register pair to effectively provide a 16-bit programmable period register for Timer1.

**Note 1:** The Special Event Trigger from the CCP module does not set interrupt flag bit TMRxIF of the PIR1 register.

- 2: Removing the match condition by changing the contents of the CCPRxH and CCPRxL register pair, between the clock edge that generates the Special Event Trigger and the clock edge that generates the Timer1 Reset, will preclude the Reset from occurring.



## 15.3 PWM Mode

The PWM mode generates a Pulse-Width Modulated signal on the CCPx pin. The duty cycle, period and resolution are determined by the following registers:

- PR2
- T2CON
- CCPRxL
- CCPxCON

In Pulse-Width Modulation (PWM) mode, the CCP module produces up to a 10-bit resolution PWM output on the CCPx pin. Since the CCPx pin is multiplexed with the PORT data latch, the TRIS for that pin must be cleared to enable the CCPx pin output driver.

**Note:** Clearing the CCPxCON register will relinquish CCPx control of the CCPx pin.

Figure 15-3 shows a simplified block diagram of PWM operation.

Figure 15-4 shows a typical waveform of the PWM signal.

For a step-by-step procedure on how to set up the CCP module for PWM operation, see **Section 15.3.7 “Setup for PWM Operation”**.

The PWM output (Figure 15-2) has a time base (period) and a time that the output stays high (duty cycle).

**FIGURE 15-4: CCP PWM OUTPUT**

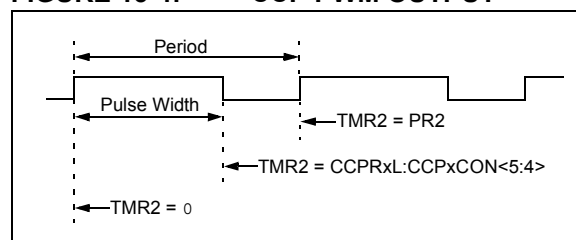
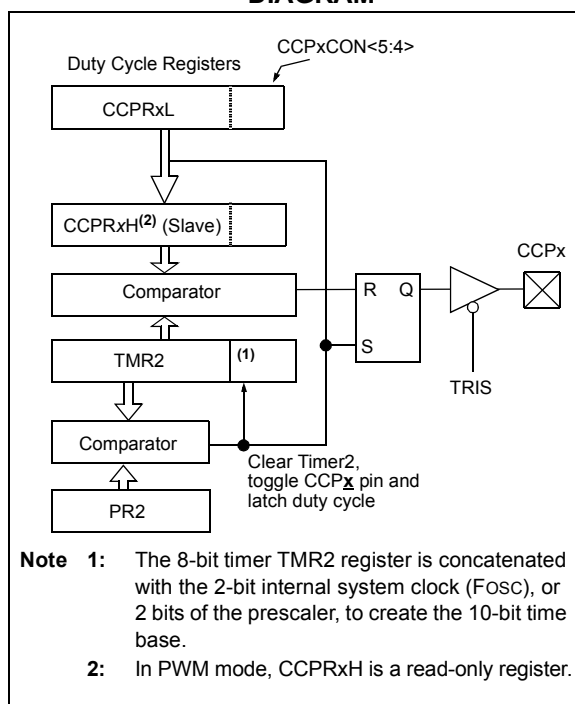


**FIGURE 15-3: SIMPLIFIED PWM BLOCK DIAGRAM**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 15.3.1 PWM PERIOD

The PWM period is specified by the PR2 register of Timer2. The PWM period can be calculated using the formula of Equation 15-1.

### EQUATION 15-1: PWM PERIOD

$$PWM\ Period = [(PR2) + 1] \bullet 4 \bullet T_{OSC} \bullet (TMR2\ Prescale\ Value)$$

**Note:**  $T_{OSC} = 1/F_{OSC}$

When TMR2 is equal to PR2, the following three events occur on the next increment cycle:

- TMR2 is cleared
- The CCPx pin is set. (Exception: If the PWM duty cycle = 0%, the pin will not be set.)
- The PWM duty cycle is latched from CCPRxL into CCPRxH.

**Note:** The Timer2 postscaler (see **Section 7.1 “Timer2 Operation”**) is not used in the determination of the PWM frequency.

## 15.3.2 PWM DUTY CYCLE

The PWM duty cycle is specified by writing a 10-bit value to multiple registers: CCPRxL register and CCPx<1:0> bits of the CCPxCON register. The CCPRxL contains the eight MSbs and the CCPx<1:0> bits of the CCPxCON register contain the two LSbs. CCPRxL and CCPx<1:0> bits of the CCPxCON register can be written to at any time. The duty cycle value is not latched into CCPRxH until after the period completes (i.e., a match between PR2 and TMR2 registers occurs). While using the PWM, the CCPRxH register is read-only.

Equation 15-2 is used to calculate the PWM pulse width.

Equation 15-3 is used to calculate the PWM duty cycle ratio.

### EQUATION 15-2: PULSE WIDTH

$$Pulse\ Width = (CCPRxL:CCPxCON<5:4>) \bullet T_{OSC} \bullet (TMR2\ Prescale\ Value)$$

### EQUATION 15-3: DUTY CYCLE RATIO

$$Duty\ Cycle\ Ratio = \frac{(CCPRxL:CCPxCON<5:4>)}{4(PR2 + 1)}$$

The CCPRxH register and a 2-bit internal latch are used to double buffer the PWM duty cycle. This double buffering is essential for glitchless PWM operation.

The 8-bit timer TMR2 register is concatenated with either the 2-bit internal system clock ( $F_{OSC}$ ), or 2 bits of the prescaler, to create the 10-bit time base. The system clock is used if the Timer2 prescaler is set to 1:1.

When the 10-bit time base matches the CCPRxH and 2-bit latch, then the CCPx pin is cleared (see Figure 15-3).

## 15.3.3 PWM RESOLUTION

The resolution determines the number of available duty cycles for a given period. For example, a 10-bit resolution will result in 1024 discrete duty cycles, whereas an 8-bit resolution will result in 256 discrete duty cycles.

The maximum PWM resolution is 10 bits when PR2 is 255. The resolution is a function of the PR2 register value as shown by Equation 15-4.

## EQUATION 15-4: PWM RESOLUTION

$$Resolution = \frac{\log[4(PR2 + 1)]}{\log(2)} \text{ bits}$$

Note: If the pulse width value is greater than the period the assigned PWM pin(s) will remain unchanged.

**TABLE 15-3: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS (Fosc = 20 MHz)**

| PWM Frequency             | 1.22 kHz | 4.88 kHz | 19.53 kHz | 78.12 kHz | 156.3 kHz | 208.3 kHz |
|---------------------------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Timer Prescale (1, 4, 16) | 16       | 4        | 1         | 1         | 1         | 1         |
| PR2 Value                 | 0xFF     | 0xFF     | 0xFF      | 0x3F      | 0x1F      | 0x17      |
| Maximum Resolution (bits) | 10       | 10       | 10        | 8         | 7         | 6.6       |

**TABLE 15-4: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS (Fosc = 8 MHz)**

| PWM Frequency             | 1.22 kHz | 4.90 kHz | 19.61 kHz | 76.92 kHz | 153.85 kHz | 200.0 kHz |
|---------------------------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| Timer Prescale (1, 4, 16) | 16       | 4        | 1         | 1         | 1          | 1         |
| PR2 Value                 | 0x65     | 0x65     | 0x65      | 0x19      | 0x0C       | 0x09      |
| Maximum Resolution (bits) | 8        | 8        | 8         | 6         | 5          | 5         |

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 15.3.4 OPERATION IN SLEEP MODE

In Sleep mode, the TMR2 register will not increment and the state of the module will not change. If the CCPx pin is driving a value, it will continue to drive that value. When the device wakes up, TMR2 will continue from its previous state.

## 15.3.5 CHANGES IN SYSTEM CLOCK FREQUENCY

The PWM frequency is derived from the system clock frequency. Any changes in the system clock frequency will result in changes to the PWM frequency. See **Section 4.0 “Oscillator Module (With Fail-Safe Clock Monitor)”** for additional details.

## 15.3.6 EFFECTS OF RESET

Any Reset will force all ports to Input mode and the CCP registers to their Reset states.

## 15.3.7 SETUP FOR PWM OPERATION

The following steps should be taken when configuring the CCP module for PWM operation:

1. Disable the PWM pin (CCPx) output drivers by setting the associated TRIS bit.
2. Set the PWM period by loading the PR2 register.
3. Configure the CCP module for the PWM mode by loading the CCPxCON register with the appropriate values.
4. Set the PWM duty cycle by loading the CCPRxL register and CCPx bits of the CCPxCON register.
5. Configure and start Timer2:
  - Clear the TMR2IF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register.
  - Set the Timer2 prescale value by loading the T2CKPS bits of the T2CON register.
  - Enable Timer2 by setting the TMR2ON bit of the T2CON register.
6. Enable PWM output after a new PWM cycle has started:
  - Wait until Timer2 overflows (TMR2IF bit of the PIR1 register is set).
  - Enable the CCPx pin output driver by clearing the associated TRIS bit.

**TABLE 15-5: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CAPTURE, COMPARE AND PWM**

| Name                 | Bit 7                                                                       | Bit 6   | Bit 5   | Bit 4   | Bit 3   | Bit 2  | Bit 1   | Bit 0   | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|--------|---------|---------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| CCPxCON              | —                                                                           | —       | CCPxX   | CCPxY   | CCPxM3  | CCPxM2 | CCPxM1  | CCPxM0  | --00 0000         | --00 0000                 |
| CCPRxL               | Capture/Compare/PWM Register X Low Byte                                     |         |         |         |         |        |         |         | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| CCPRxH               | Capture/Compare/PWM Register X High Byte                                    |         |         |         |         |        |         |         | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| CMCON1               | —                                                                           | —       | —       | —       | —       | —      | T1GSS   | C2SYNC  | ---- --10         | ---- --10                 |
| INTCON               | GIE                                                                         | PEIE    | TOIE    | INTE    | RBIE    | TOIF   | INTF    | RBIF    | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| LCDCON               | LCDEN                                                                       | SLPEN   | WERR    | VLCDEN  | CS1     | CS0    | LMUX1   | LMUX0   | 0001 0011         | 0001 0011                 |
| LCDSE1               | SE15                                                                        | SE14    | SE13    | SE12    | SE11    | SE10   | SE9     | SE8     | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIE1                 | EEIE                                                                        | ADIE    | RCIE    | TXIE    | SSPIE   | CCP1IE | TMR2IE  | TMR1IE  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIE2                 | OSFIE                                                                       | C2IE    | C1IE    | LCDIE   | —       | LVDIE  | —       | CCP2IE  | 0000 -0-0         | 0000 -0-0                 |
| PIR1                 | EEIF                                                                        | ADIF    | RCIF    | TXIF    | SSPIF   | CCP1IF | TMR2IF  | TMR1IF  | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR2                 | OSFIF                                                                       | C2IF    | C1IF    | LCDIF   | —       | LVDIF  | —       | CCP2IF  | 0000 -0-0         | 0000 -0-0                 |
| RCSTA                | SPEN                                                                        | RX9     | SREN    | CREN    | ADDEN   | FERR   | OERR    | RX9D    | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| SSPCON               | WCOL                                                                        | SSPOV   | SSPEN   | CKP     | SSPM3   | SSPM2  | SSPM1   | SSPM0   | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| T1CON                | T1GINV                                                                      | TMR1GE  | T1CKPS1 | T1CKPS0 | T1OSCEN | T1SYNC | TMR1CS  | TMR1ON  | 0000 0000         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| T2CON                | —                                                                           | TOUTPS3 | TOUTPS2 | TOUTPS1 | TOUTPS0 | TMR2ON | T2CKPS1 | T2CKPS0 | -000 0000         | -000 0000                 |
| TMR1L                | Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register |         |         |         |         |        |         |         | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| TMR1H                | Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register  |         |         |         |         |        |         |         | xxxx xxxx         | uuuu uuuu                 |
| TMR2                 | Timer2 Module Register                                                      |         |         |         |         |        |         |         | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| TRISC                | TRISC7                                                                      | TRISC6  | TRISC5  | TRISC4  | TRISC3  | TRISC2 | TRISC1  | TRISC0  | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |
| TRISD <sup>(1)</sup> | TRISD7                                                                      | TRISD6  | TRISD5  | TRISD4  | TRISD3  | TRISD2 | TRISD1  | TRISD0  | 1111 1111         | 1111 1111                 |

**Legend:** - = Unimplemented locations, read as '0', u = unchanged, x = unknown. Shaded cells are not used by the Capture, Compare and PWM.

**Note 1:** PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

## 16.0 SPECIAL FEATURES OF THE CPU

The PIC16F91X/946 has a host of features intended to maximize system reliability, minimize cost through elimination of external components, provide power-saving features and offer code protection.

These features are:

- Reset
  - Power-on Reset (POR)
  - Power-up Timer (PWRT)
  - Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
  - Brown-out Reset (BOR)
- Interrupts
- Watchdog Timer (WDT)
- Oscillator Selection
- Sleep
- Code Protection
- ID Locations
- In-Circuit Serial Programming™

The PIC16F91X/946 has two timers that offer necessary delays on power-up. One is the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST), intended to keep the chip in Reset until the crystal oscillator is stable. The other is the Power-up Timer (PWRT), which provides a fixed delay of 64 ms (nominal) on power-up only, designed to keep the part in Reset while the power supply stabilizes. There is also circuitry to reset the device if a brown-out occurs, which can use the Power-up Timer to provide at least a 64 ms Reset. With these three functions-on-chip, most applications need no external Reset circuitry.

The Sleep mode is designed to offer a very low-current Power-down mode. The user can wake-up from Sleep through:

- External Reset
- Watchdog Timer Wake-up
- An interrupt

Several oscillator options are also made available to allow the part to fit the application. The INTOSC option saves system cost, while the LP crystal option saves power. A set of Configuration bits are used to select various options (see Register 16-1).

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 16.1 Configuration Bits

The Configuration bits can be programmed (read as '0'), or left unprogrammed (read as '1') to select various device configurations as shown in Register 16-1. These bits are mapped in program memory location 2007h.

**Note:** Address 2007h is beyond the user program memory space. It belongs to the special configuration memory space (2000h-3FFFh), which can be accessed only during programming. See "PIC16F91X/946 Memory Programming Specification" (DS41244) for more information.

**REGISTER 16-1: CONFIG1: CONFIGURATION WORD REGISTER 1**

|        |   |   |       |       |      |        |        |
|--------|---|---|-------|-------|------|--------|--------|
| —      | — | — | DEBUG | FCMEN | IESO | BOREN1 | BOREN0 |
| bit 15 |   |   |       |       |      |        | bit 8  |

|       |    |       |      |      |       |       |       |
|-------|----|-------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|
| CPD   | CP | MCLRE | PWRT | WDTE | FOSC2 | FOSC1 | FOSC0 |
| bit 7 |    |       |      |      |       |       | bit 0 |

bit 15-13 **Unimplemented:** Read as '1'

bit 12 **DEBUG:** In-Circuit Debugger Mode bit

1 = In-Circuit Debugger disabled, RB6/ICSPCLK and RB7/ICSPDAT are general purpose I/O pins  
0 = In-Circuit Debugger enabled, RB6/ICSPCLK and RB7/ICSPDAT are dedicated to the debugger

bit 11 **FCMEN:** Fail-Safe Clock Monitor Enabled bit

1 = Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is enabled  
0 = Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is disabled

bit 10 **IESO:** Internal External Switchover bit

1 = Internal/External Switchover mode is enabled  
0 = Internal/External Switchover mode is disabled

bit 9-8 **BOREN<1:0>:** Brown-out Reset Selection bits<sup>(1)</sup>

11 = BOR enabled  
10 = BOR enabled during operation and disabled in Sleep  
01 = BOR controlled by SBOREN bit of the PCON register  
00 = BOR disabled

bit 7 **CPD:** Data Code Protection bit<sup>(2)</sup>

1 = Data memory code protection is disabled  
0 = Data memory code protection is enabled

bit 6 **CP:** Code Protection bit<sup>(3)</sup>

1 = Program memory code protection is disabled  
0 = Program memory code protection is enabled

bit 5 **MCLRE:** RE3/MCLR pin function select bit<sup>(4)</sup>

1 = RE3/MCLR pin function is MCLR  
0 = RE3/MCLR pin function is digital input, MCLR internally tied to VDD

bit 4 **PWRT:** Power-up Timer Enable bit

1 = PWRT disabled  
0 = PWRT enabled

bit 3 **WDTE:** Watchdog Timer Enable bit

1 = WDT enabled  
0 = WDT disabled and can be enabled by SWDTEN bit of the WDTCON register

bit 2-0 **FOSC<2:0>:** Oscillator Selection bits

111 = RC oscillator: CLKOUT function on RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT/T1OSO pin, RC on RA7/OSC1/CLKIN/T1OSI  
110 = RCIO oscillator: I/O function on RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT/T1OSO pin, RC on RA7/OSC1/CLKIN/T1OSI  
101 = INTOSC oscillator: CLKOUT function on RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT/T1OSO pin, I/O function on RA7/OSC1/CLKIN/T1OSI  
100 = INTOSCIO oscillator: I/O function on RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT/T1OSO pin, I/O function on RA7/OSC1/CLKIN/T1OSI  
011 = EC: I/O function on RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT/T1OSO pin, CLKIN on RA7/OSC1/CLKIN/T1OSI  
010 = HS oscillator: High-speed crystal/resonator on RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT/T1OSO and RA7/OSC1/CLKIN/T1OSI  
001 = XT oscillator: Crystal/resonator on RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT/T1OSO and RA7/OSC1/CLKIN/T1OSI  
000 = LP oscillator: Low-power crystal on RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT/T1OSO and RA7/OSC1/CLKIN/T1OSI

- Note**
- 1: Enabling Brown-out Reset does not automatically enable Power-up Timer.
  - 2: The entire data EEPROM will be erased when the code protection is turned off.
  - 3: The entire program memory will be erased when the code protection is turned off.
  - 4: When MCLR is asserted in INTOSC or RC mode, the internal clock oscillator is disabled.

## 16.2 Resets

The PIC16F91X/946 differentiates between various kinds of Reset:

- Power-on Reset (POR)
- WDT Reset during normal operation
- WDT Reset during Sleep
- $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  Reset during normal operation
- $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  Reset during Sleep
- Brown-out Reset (BOR)

Some registers are not affected in any Reset condition; their status is unknown on POR and unchanged in any other Reset. Most other registers are reset to a "Reset state" on:

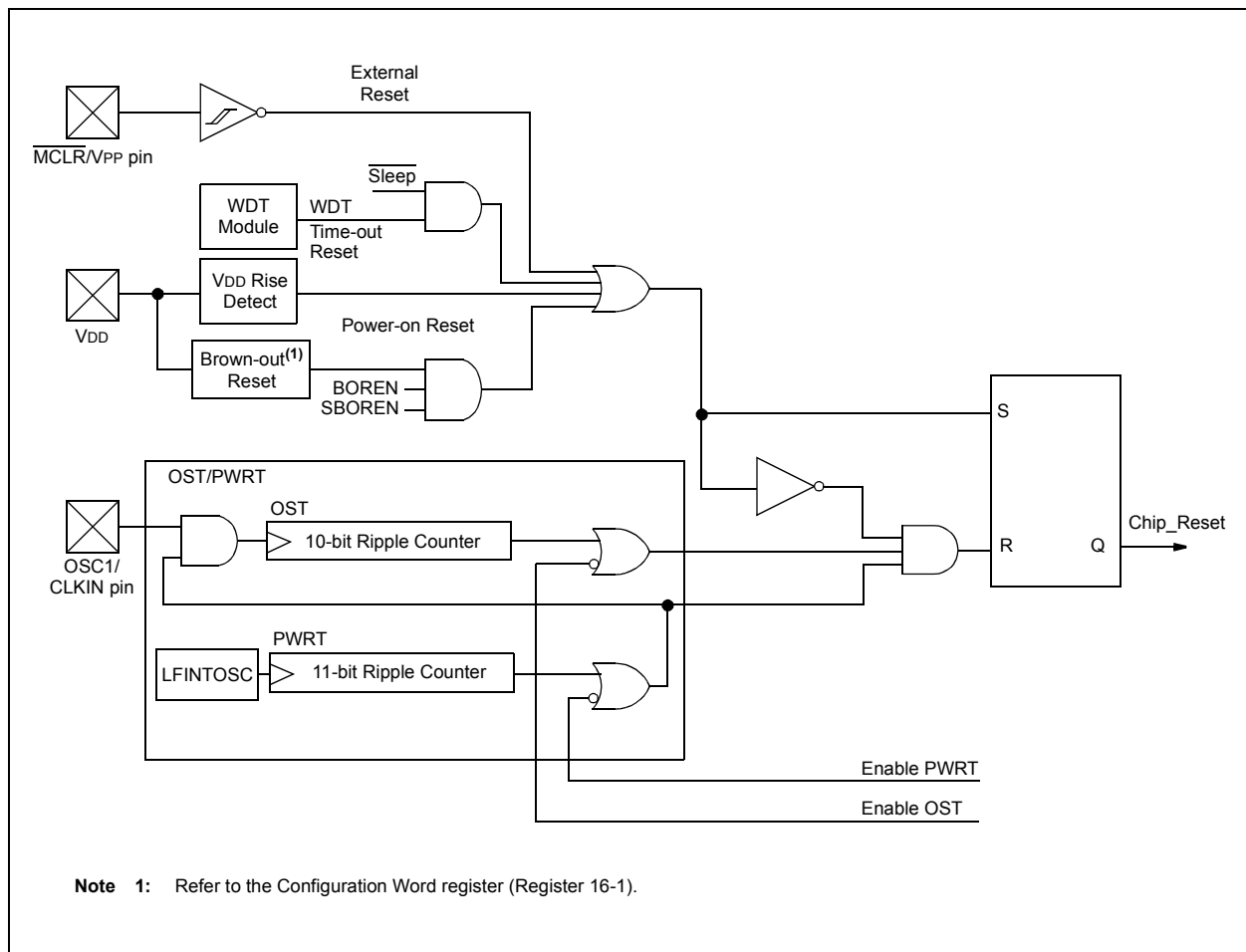
- Power-on Reset
- $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  Reset
- $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  Reset during Sleep
- WDT Reset
- Brown-out Reset (BOR)

They are not affected by a WDT wake-up since this is viewed as the resumption of normal operation.  $\overline{\text{TO}}$  and  $\overline{\text{PD}}$  bits are set or cleared differently in different Reset situations, as indicated in Table 16-2. These bits are used in software to determine the nature of the Reset. See Table 16-5 for a full description of Reset states of all registers.

A simplified block diagram of the On-Chip Reset Circuit is shown in Figure 16-1.

The  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  Reset path has a noise filter to detect and ignore small pulses. See **Section 19.0 "Electrical Specifications"** for pulse width specifications.

**FIGURE 16-1: SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM OF ON-CHIP RESET CIRCUIT**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 16.2.1 POWER-ON RESET (POR)

The on-chip POR circuit holds the chip in Reset until  $V_{DD}$  has reached a high enough level for proper operation. To take advantage of the POR, simply connect the  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  pin through a resistor to  $V_{DD}$ . This will eliminate external RC components usually needed to create Power-on Reset. A maximum rise time for  $V_{DD}$  is required. See **Section 19.0 “Electrical Specifications”** for details. If the BOR is enabled, the maximum rise time specification does not apply. The BOR circuitry will keep the device in Reset until  $V_{DD}$  reaches  $V_{BOR}$  (see **Section 16.2.4 “Brown-Out Reset (BOR)”**).

**Note:** The POR circuit does not produce an internal Reset when  $V_{DD}$  declines. To re-enable the POR,  $V_{DD}$  must reach  $V_{SS}$  for a minimum of 100  $\mu\text{s}$ .

When the device starts normal operation (exits the Reset condition), device operating parameters (i.e., voltage, frequency, temperature, etc.) must be met to ensure operation. If these conditions are not met, the device must be held in Reset until the operating conditions are met.

For additional information, refer to Application Note AN607, “Power-up Trouble Shooting” (DS00607).

## 16.2.2 $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$

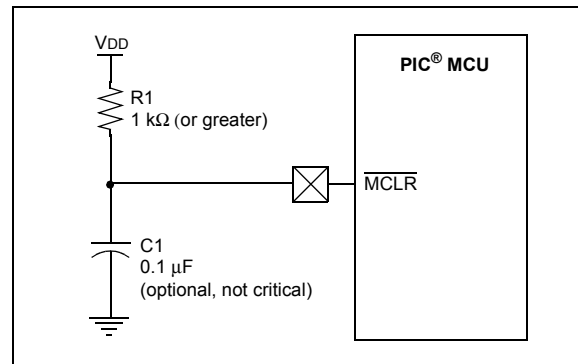
PIC16F91X/946 has a noise filter in the  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  Reset path. The filter will detect and ignore small pulses.

It should be noted that a WDT Reset does not drive  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  pin low.

Voltages applied to the pin that exceed its specification can result in both  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  Resets and excessive current beyond the device specification during the ESD event. For this reason, Microchip recommends that the  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  pin no longer be tied directly to  $V_{DD}$ . The use of an RC network, as shown in Figure 16-2, is suggested.

An internal  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  option is enabled by clearing the  $\overline{\text{MCLRE}}$  bit in the Configuration Word register. When  $\overline{\text{MCLRE}} = 0$ , the Reset signal to the chip is generated internally. When the  $\overline{\text{MCLRE}} = 1$ , the RE3/ $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  pin becomes an external Reset input. In this mode, the RE3/ $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  pin has a weak pull-up to  $V_{DD}$ . In-Circuit Serial Programming is not affected by selecting the internal  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  option.

**FIGURE 16-2: RECOMMENDED  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  CIRCUIT**



## 16.2.3 POWER-UP TIMER (PWRT)

The Power-up Timer provides a fixed 64 ms (nominal) time-out on power-up only, from POR or Brown-out Reset. The Power-up Timer operates from the 31 kHz LFINTOSC oscillator. For more information, see **Section 4.5 “Internal Clock Modes”**. The chip is kept in Reset as long as PWRT is active. The PWRT delay allows the  $V_{DD}$  to rise to an acceptable level. A Configuration bit,  $\overline{\text{PWRTÉ}}$ , can disable (if set) or enable (if cleared or programmed) the Power-up Timer. The Power-up Timer should be enabled when Brown-out Reset is enabled, although it is not required.

The Power-up Timer delay will vary from chip-to-chip and vary due to:

- $V_{DD}$  variation
- Temperature variation
- Process variation

See DC parameters for details (**Section 19.0 “Electrical Specifications”**).



## 16.2.4 BROWN-OUT RESET (BOR)

The BOREN0 and BOREN1 bits in the Configuration Word register selects one of four BOR modes. Two modes have been added to allow software or hardware control of the BOR enable. When BOREN<1:0> = 01, the SBOREN bit of the PCON register enables/disables the BOR allowing it to be controlled in software. By selecting BOREN<1:0>, the BOR is automatically disabled in Sleep to conserve power and enabled on wake-up. In this mode, the SBOREN bit is disabled. See Register 16-1 for the Configuration Word definition.

If VDD falls below VBOR for greater than parameter (TBOR) (see **Section 19.0 “Electrical Specifications”**), the Brown-out situation will reset the device. This will occur regardless of VDD slew rate. A Reset is not insured to occur if VDD falls below VBOR for less than parameter (TBOR).

On any Reset (Power-on, Brown-out Reset, Watchdog Timer, etc.), the chip will remain in Reset until VDD rises above VBOR (see Figure 16-3). The Power-up Timer will now be invoked, if enabled and will keep the chip in Reset an additional 64 ms.

**Note:** The Power-up Timer is enabled by the PWRTE bit in the Configuration Word.

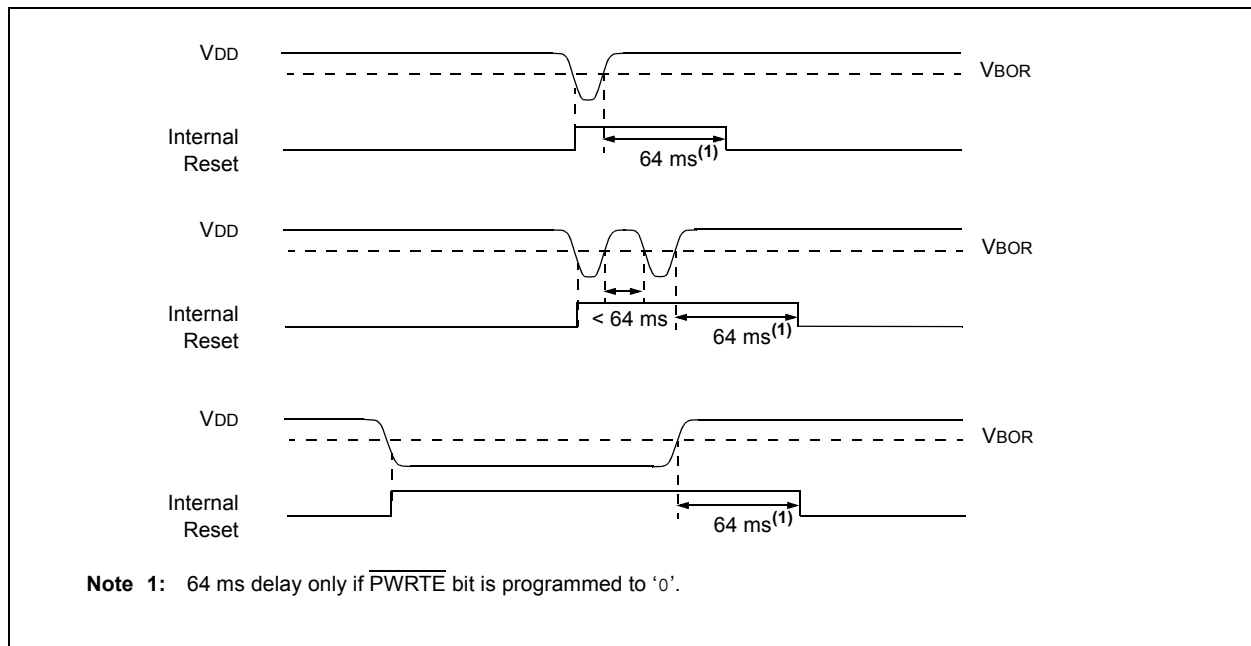
If VDD drops below VBOR while the Power-up Timer is running, the chip will go back into a Brown-out Reset and the Power-up Timer will be re-initialized. Once VDD rises above VBOR, the Power-up Timer will execute a 64 ms Reset.

## 16.2.5 BOR CALIBRATION

The PIC16F91X/946 stores the BOR calibration values in fuses located in the Calibration Word (2008h). The Calibration Word is not erased when using the specified bulk erase sequence in the “PIC16F91X/946 Memory Programming Specification” (DS41244) and thus, does not require reprogramming.

Address 2008h is beyond the user program memory space. It belongs to the special configuration memory space (2000h-3FFFh), which can be accessed only during programming. See “PIC16F91X/946 Memory Programming Specification” (DS41244) for more information.

**FIGURE 16-3: BROWN-OUT SITUATIONS**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 16.2.6 TIME-OUT SEQUENCE

On power-up, the time-out sequence is as follows: first, PWRT time-out is invoked after POR has expired, then OST is activated after the PWRT time-out has expired. The total time-out will vary based on oscillator configuration and PWRTE bit status. For example, in EC mode with PWRTE bit erased (PWRT disabled), there will be no time-out at all. Figure 16-4, Figure 16-5 and Figure 16-6 depict time-out sequences. The device can execute code from the INTOSC while OST is active, by enabling Two-Speed Start-up or Fail-Safe Monitor (see **Section 4.7.2 “Two-Speed Start-up Sequence”** and **Section 4.8 “Fail-Safe Clock Monitor”**).

Since the time-outs occur from the POR pulse, if MCLR is kept low long enough, the time-outs will expire. Then, bringing MCLR high will begin execution immediately (see Figure 16-5). This is useful for testing purposes or to synchronize more than one PIC16F91X/946 device operating in parallel.

Table 16-5 shows the Reset conditions for some special registers, while Table 16-5 shows the Reset conditions for all the registers.

## 16.2.7 POWER CONTROL (PCON) REGISTER

The Power Control (PCON) register (address 8Eh) has two Status bits to indicate what type of Reset that last occurred.

Bit 0 is  $\overline{\text{BOR}}$  (Brown-out Reset).  $\overline{\text{BOR}}$  is unknown on Power-on Reset. It must then be set by the user and checked on subsequent Resets to see if  $\overline{\text{BOR}} = 0$ , indicating that a Brown-out has occurred. The BOR Status bit is a “don’t care” and is not necessarily predictable if the brown-out circuit is disabled ( $\text{BOREN} < 1:0 > = 00$  in the Configuration Word register).

Bit 1 is  $\overline{\text{POR}}$  (Power-on Reset). It is a ‘0’ on Power-on Reset and unaffected otherwise. The user must write a ‘1’ to this bit following a Power-on Reset. On a subsequent Reset, if  $\overline{\text{POR}}$  is ‘0’, it will indicate that a Power-on Reset has occurred (i.e., VDD may have gone too low).

For more information, see **Section 16.2.4 “Brown-Out Reset (BOR)”**.

**TABLE 16-1: TIME-OUT IN VARIOUS SITUATIONS**

| Oscillator Configuration  | Power-up                                |                               | Brown-out Reset                         |                               | Wake-up from Sleep       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
|                           | $\overline{\text{PWRTE}} = 0$           | $\overline{\text{PWRTE}} = 1$ | $\overline{\text{PWRTE}} = 0$           | $\overline{\text{PWRTE}} = 1$ |                          |
| XT, HS, LP <sup>(1)</sup> | $\text{TPWRT} + 1024 \cdot \text{TOSC}$ | $1024 \cdot \text{TOSC}$      | $\text{TPWRT} + 1024 \cdot \text{TOSC}$ | $1024 \cdot \text{TOSC}$      | $1024 \cdot \text{TOSC}$ |
| RC, EC, INTOSC            | TPWRT                                   | —                             | TPWRT                                   | —                             | —                        |

**Note 1:** LP mode with T1OSC disabled.

**TABLE 16-2: PCON BITS AND THEIR SIGNIFICANCE**

| POR | BOR | TO | PD | Condition                          |
|-----|-----|----|----|------------------------------------|
| 0   | u   | 1  | 1  | Power-on Reset                     |
| 1   | 0   | 1  | 1  | Brown-out Reset                    |
| u   | u   | 0  | u  | WDT Reset                          |
| u   | u   | 0  | 0  | WDT Wake-up                        |
| u   | u   | u  | u  | MCLR Reset during normal operation |
| u   | u   | 1  | 0  | MCLR Reset during Sleep            |

**Legend:** u = unchanged, x = unknown

**TABLE 16-3: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH BROWN-OUT**

| Name   | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4                  | Bit 3                  | Bit 2 | Bit 1                   | Bit 0                   | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets <sup>(1)</sup> |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|------------------------|------------------------|-------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------|
| STATUS | IRP   | RP1   | RP0   | $\overline{\text{TO}}$ | $\overline{\text{PD}}$ | Z     | DC                      | C                       | 0001 1xxx         | 000q quuu                                |
| PCON   | —     | —     | —     | SBOREN                 | —                      | —     | $\overline{\text{POR}}$ | $\overline{\text{BOR}}$ | --01 --qq         | --0u --uu                                |

**Legend:** u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, reads as ‘0’, q = value depends on condition. Shaded cells are not used by BOR.

**Note 1:** Other (non Power-up) Resets include MCLR Reset and Watchdog Timer Reset during normal operation.

**FIGURE 16-4: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP (DELAYED  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ ): CASE 1**

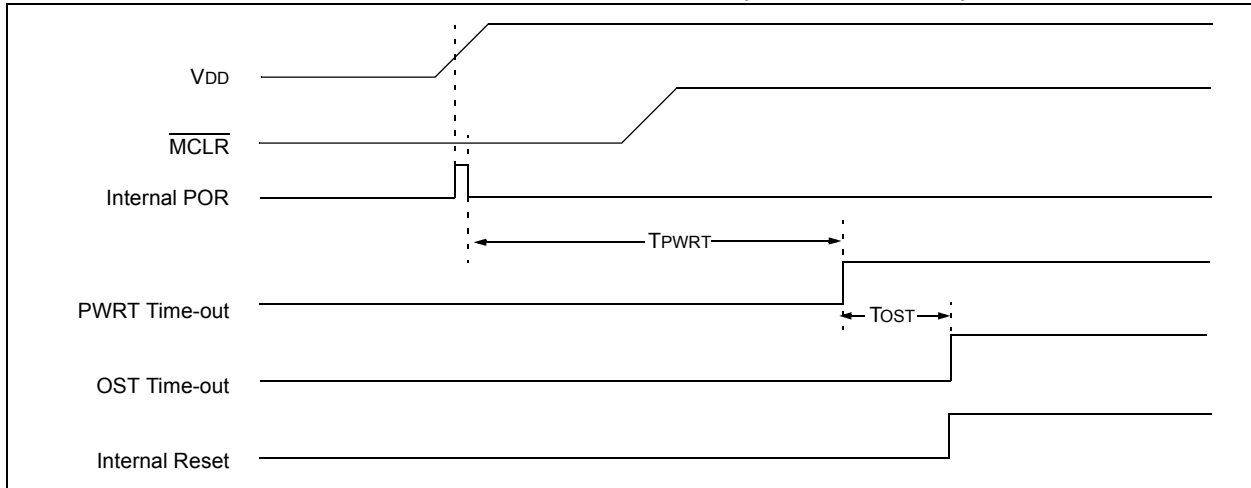


**FIGURE 16-5: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP (DELAYED  $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ ): CASE 2**

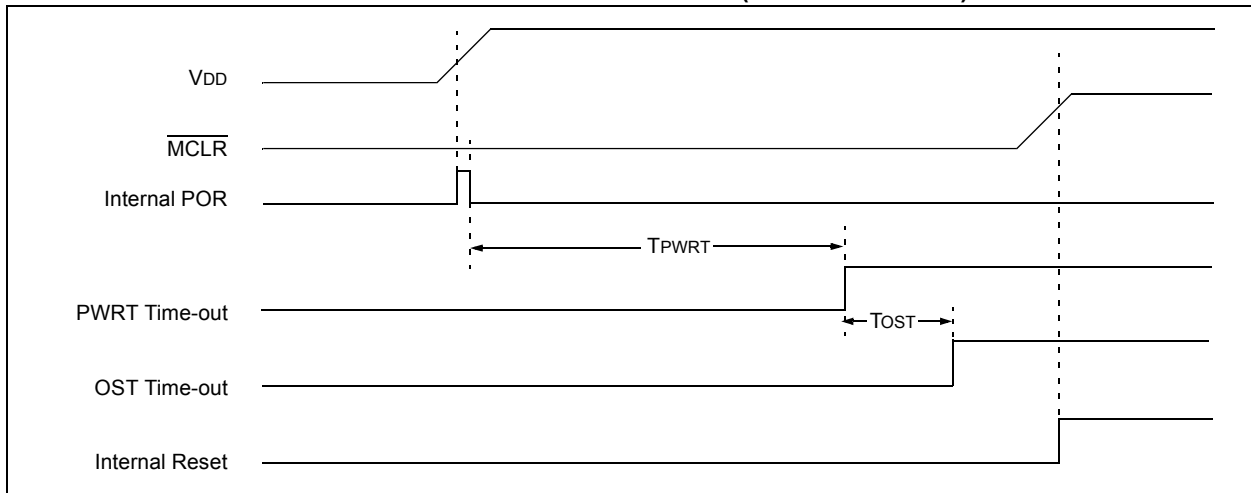
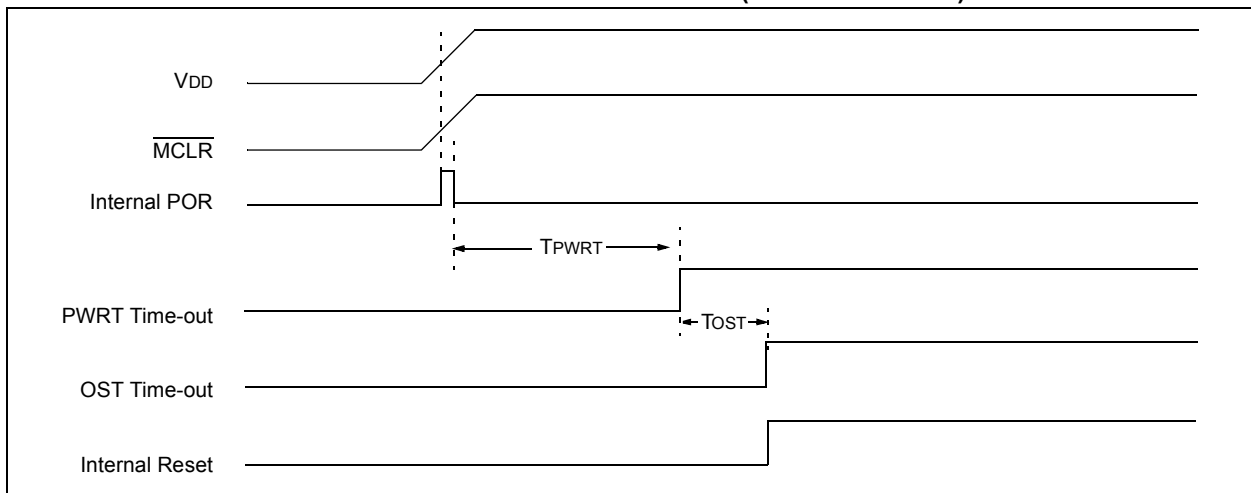


**FIGURE 16-6: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ( $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$  WITH VDD): CASE 3**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 16-4: INITIALIZATION CONDITION FOR REGISTERS**

| Register             | Address               | Power-on Reset                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCLR Reset</li> <li>• WDT Reset</li> <li>• Brown-out Reset<sup>(1)</sup></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wake-up from Sleep through interrupt</li> <li>• Wake-up from Sleep through WDT time-out</li> </ul> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| W                    | —                     | xxxx xxxx                             | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| INDF                 | 00h/80h/<br>100h/180h | xxxx xxxx                             | xxxx xxxx                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| TMR0                 | 01h/101h              | xxxx xxxx                             | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| PCL                  | 02h/82h/<br>102h/182h | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | PC + 1 <sup>(3)</sup>                                                                                                                       |
| STATUS               | 03h/83h/<br>103h/183h | 0001 1xxx                             | 000q quuu <sup>(4)</sup>                                                                                                     | uuuq quuu <sup>(4)</sup>                                                                                                                    |
| FSR                  | 04h/84h/<br>104h/184h | xxxx xxxx                             | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| PORTA                | 05h                   | xxxx xxxx                             | xxxx xxxx                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| PORTB                | 06h/106h              | xxxx xxxx                             | xxxx xxxx                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| PORTC                | 07h                   | xxxx xxxx                             | xxxx xxxx                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| PORTD <sup>(6)</sup> | 08h                   | xxxx xxxx                             | xxxx xxxx                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| PORTE                | 09h                   | ---- xxxx<br>xxxx xxxx <sup>(7)</sup> | ---- xxxx<br>xxxx xxxx <sup>(7)</sup>                                                                                        | ---- uuuu<br>uuuu uuuu <sup>(7)</sup>                                                                                                       |
| PCLATH               | 0Ah/8Ah/<br>10Ah/18Ah | ---0 0000                             | ---0 0000                                                                                                                    | ---u uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| INTCON               | 0Bh/8Bh/<br>10Bh/18Bh | 0000 000x                             | 0000 000x                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu <sup>(2)</sup>                                                                                                                    |
| PIR1                 | 0Ch                   | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu <sup>(2)</sup>                                                                                                                    |
| PIR2                 | 0Dh                   | 0000 -0-0                             | 0000 -0-0                                                                                                                    | uuuu -u-u                                                                                                                                   |
| TMR1L                | 0Eh                   | xxxx xxxx                             | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| TMR1H                | 0Fh                   | xxxx xxxx                             | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| T1CON                | 10h                   | 0000 0000                             | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| TMR2                 | 11h                   | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| T2CON                | 12h                   | -000 0000                             | -000 0000                                                                                                                    | -uuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| SSPBUF               | 13h                   | xxxx xxxx                             | xxxx xxxx                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| SSPCON               | 14h                   | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| CCPR1L               | 15h                   | xxxx xxxx                             | xxxx xxxx                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| CCPR1H               | 16h                   | xxxx xxxx                             | xxxx xxxx                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| CCP1CON              | 17h                   | --00 0000                             | --00 0000                                                                                                                    | --uu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| RCSTA                | 18h                   | ---0 1000                             | ---0 1000                                                                                                                    | ---u uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| TXREG                | 19h                   | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |

**Legend:** u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, reads as '0', q = value depends on condition.

**Note 1:** If VDD goes too low, Power-on Reset will be activated and registers will be affected differently.

**2:** One or more bits in INTCON and/or PIR1 will be affected (to cause wake-up).

**3:** When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIE bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0004h).

**4:** See Table 16-5 for Reset value for specific condition.

**5:** If Reset was due to brown-out, then bit 0 = 0. All other Resets will cause bit 0 = u.

**6:** PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

**7:** PIC16F946 only.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 16-4: INITIALIZATION CONDITION FOR REGISTERS (CONTINUED)**

| Register               | Address  | Power-on Reset                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCLR Reset</li> <li>• WDT Reset</li> <li>• Brown-out Reset<sup>(1)</sup></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wake-up from Sleep through interrupt</li> <li>• Wake-up from Sleep through WDT time-out</li> </ul> |
|------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RCREG                  | 1Ah      | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| CCPR2L <sup>(6)</sup>  | 1Bh      | xxxx xxxx                             | xxxx xxxx                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| CCPR2H <sup>(6)</sup>  | 1Ch      | xxxx xxxx                             | xxxx xxxx                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| CCP2CON <sup>(6)</sup> | 1Dh      | --00 0000                             | --00 0000                                                                                                                    | --uu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| ADRESH                 | 1Eh      | xxxx xxxx                             | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| ADCON0                 | 1Fh      | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| OPTION_REG             | 81h/181h | 1111 1111                             | 1111 1111                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| TRISA                  | 85h      | 1111 1111                             | 1111 1111                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| TRISB                  | 86h/186h | 1111 1111                             | 1111 1111                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| TRISC                  | 87h      | 1111 1111                             | 1111 1111                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| TRISD <sup>(6)</sup>   | 88h      | 1111 1111                             | 1111 1111                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| TRISE                  | 89h      | ---- 1111<br>1111 1111 <sup>(7)</sup> | ---- 1111<br>1111 1111 <sup>(7)</sup>                                                                                        | ---- uuuu<br>uuuu uuuu <sup>(7)</sup>                                                                                                       |
| PIE1                   | 8Ch      | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| PIE2                   | 8Dh      | 0000 -0-0                             | 0000 -0-0                                                                                                                    | uuuu -u-u                                                                                                                                   |
| PCON                   | 8Eh      | --01 --0x                             | --0u --uu <sup>(1,5)</sup>                                                                                                   | --uu --uu                                                                                                                                   |
| OSCCON                 | 8Fh      | -110 q000                             | -110 x000                                                                                                                    | -uuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| OSCTUNE                | 90h      | ---0 0000                             | ---u uuuu                                                                                                                    | ---u uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| ANSEL                  | 91h      | 1111 1111                             | 1111 1111                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| PR2                    | 92h      | 1111 1111                             | 1111 1111                                                                                                                    | 1111 1111                                                                                                                                   |
| SSPAD                  | 93h      | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| SSPSTAT                | 94h      | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| WPUB                   | 95h      | 1111 1111                             | 1111 1111                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| IOCB                   | 96h      | 0000 ----                             | 0000 ----                                                                                                                    | uuuu ----                                                                                                                                   |
| CMCON1                 | 97h      | ---- --10                             | ---- --10                                                                                                                    | ---- --uu                                                                                                                                   |
| TXSTA                  | 98h      | 0000 -010                             | 0000 -010                                                                                                                    | uuuu -uuu                                                                                                                                   |
| SPBRG                  | 99h      | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| CMCON0                 | 9Ch      | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| VRCON                  | 9Dh      | 0-0- 0000                             | 0-0- 0000                                                                                                                    | u-u- uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| ADRESL                 | 9Eh      | xxxx xxxx                             | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| ADCON1                 | 9Fh      | -000 ----                             | -000 ----                                                                                                                    | -uuu ----                                                                                                                                   |
| WDTCON                 | 105h     | ---0 1000                             | ---0 1000                                                                                                                    | ---u uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDCON                 | 107h     | 0001 0011                             | 0001 0011                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDPS                  | 108h     | 0000 0000                             | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |

**Legend:** u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, reads as '0', q = value depends on condition.

**Note 1:** If VDD goes too low, Power-on Reset will be activated and registers will be affected differently.

**2:** One or more bits in INTCON and/or PIR1 will be affected (to cause wake-up).

**3:** When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIE bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0004h).

**4:** See Table 16-5 for Reset value for specific condition.

**5:** If Reset was due to brown-out, then bit 0 = 0. All other Resets will cause bit 0 = u.

**6:** PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

**7:** PIC16F946 only.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 16-4: INITIALIZATION CONDITION FOR REGISTERS (CONTINUED)**

| Register                 | Address | Power-on Reset | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCLR Reset</li> <li>• WDT Reset</li> <li>• Brown-out Reset<sup>(1)</sup></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wake-up from Sleep through interrupt</li> <li>• Wake-up from Sleep through WDT time-out</li> </ul> |
|--------------------------|---------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LVDCON                   | 109h    | --00 -100      | --00 -100                                                                                                                    | --uu -uuu                                                                                                                                   |
| EEDATL                   | 10Ch    | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| EEADRL                   | 10Dh    | 0000 0000      | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| EEDATH                   | 10Eh    | --00 0000      | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| EEADRH                   | 10Fh    | ---0 0000      | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA0                 | 110h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA1                 | 111h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA2 <sup>(6)</sup>  | 112h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA3                 | 113h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA4                 | 114h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA5 <sup>(6)</sup>  | 115h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA6                 | 116h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA7                 | 117h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA8 <sup>(6)</sup>  | 118h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA9                 | 119h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA10                | 11Ah    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA11 <sup>(6)</sup> | 11Bh    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDSE0                   | 11Ch    | 0000 0000      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDSE1                   | 11Dh    | 0000 0000      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDSE2 <sup>(6)</sup>    | 11Eh    | 0000 0000      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| TRISF <sup>(7)</sup>     | 185h    | 1111 1111      | 1111 1111                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| TRISG <sup>(7)</sup>     | 187h    | --11 1111      | --11 1111                                                                                                                    | --uu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| PORTF <sup>(7)</sup>     | 188h    | xxxx xxxx      | 0000 0000                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| PORTG <sup>(7)</sup>     | 189h    | --xx xxxx      | --00 0000                                                                                                                    | --uu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA12 <sup>(7)</sup> | 190h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA13 <sup>(7)</sup> | 191h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA14 <sup>(7)</sup> | 192h    | ---- --xx      | ---- --uu                                                                                                                    | ---- --uu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA15 <sup>(7)</sup> | 193h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA16 <sup>(7)</sup> | 194h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA17 <sup>(7)</sup> | 195h    | ---- --xx      | ---- --uu                                                                                                                    | ---- --uu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA18 <sup>(7)</sup> | 196h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA19 <sup>(7)</sup> | 197h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA20 <sup>(7)</sup> | 198h    | ---- --xx      | ---- --uu                                                                                                                    | ---- --uu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA21 <sup>(7)</sup> | 199h    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |

**Legend:** u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, reads as '0', q = value depends on condition.

**Note 1:** If VDD goes too low, Power-on Reset will be activated and registers will be affected differently.

**2:** One or more bits in INTCON and/or PIR1 will be affected (to cause wake-up).

**3:** When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIE bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0004h).

**4:** See Table 16-5 for Reset value for specific condition.

**5:** If Reset was due to brown-out, then bit 0 = 0. All other Resets will cause bit 0 = u.

**6:** PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

**7:** PIC16F946 only.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 16-4: INITIALIZATION CONDITION FOR REGISTERS (CONTINUED)**

| Register                 | Address | Power-on Reset | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MCLR Reset</li> <li>• WDT Reset</li> <li>• Brown-out Reset<sup>(1)</sup></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wake-up from Sleep through interrupt</li> <li>• Wake-up from Sleep through WDT time-out</li> </ul> |
|--------------------------|---------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LCDDATA22 <sup>(7)</sup> | 19Ah    | xxxx xxxx      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDDATA23 <sup>(7)</sup> | 19Bh    | ---- --xx      | ---- --uu                                                                                                                    | ---- --uu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDSE3 <sup>(7)</sup>    | 19Ch    | 0000 0000      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDSE4 <sup>(7)</sup>    | 19Dh    | 0000 0000      | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                    | uuuu uuuu                                                                                                                                   |
| LCDSE5 <sup>(7)</sup>    | 19Eh    | ---- --00      | ---- --uu                                                                                                                    | ---- --uu                                                                                                                                   |
| EECON1                   | 18Ch    | x--- x000      | u--- q000                                                                                                                    | u--- uuuu                                                                                                                                   |

**Legend:** u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, reads as '0', q = value depends on condition.

**Note 1:** If VDD goes too low, Power-on Reset will be activated and registers will be affected differently.

2: One or more bits in INTCON and/or PIR1 will be affected (to cause wake-up).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIE bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0004h).

4: See Table 16-5 for Reset value for specific condition.

5: If Reset was due to brown-out, then bit 0 = 0. All other Resets will cause bit 0 = u.

6: PIC16F914/917 and PIC16F946 only.

7: PIC16F946 only.

**TABLE 16-5: INITIALIZATION CONDITION FOR SPECIAL REGISTERS**

| Condition                          | Program Counter       | STATUS Register | PCON Register |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| Power-on Reset                     | 0000h                 | 0001 1xxx       | ---1 --0x     |
| MCLR Reset during normal operation | 0000h                 | 000u uuuu       | ---u --uu     |
| MCLR Reset during Sleep            | 0000h                 | 0001 0uuu       | ---u --uu     |
| WDT Reset                          | 0000h                 | 0000 uuuu       | ---u --uu     |
| WDT Wake-up                        | PC + 1                | uuu0 0uuu       | ---u --uu     |
| Brown-out Reset                    | 0000h                 | 0001 1uuu       | ---1 --10     |
| Interrupt Wake-up from Sleep       | PC + 1 <sup>(1)</sup> | uuu1 0uuu       | ---u --uu     |

**Legend:** u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, reads as '0'.

**Note 1:** When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and Global Interrupt Enable bit, GIE, is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0004h) after execution of PC + 1.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 16.3 Interrupts

The PIC16F91X/946 has multiple sources of interrupt:

- External Interrupt RB0/INT/SEG0
- TMR0 Overflow Interrupt
- PORTB Change Interrupts
- 2 Comparator Interrupts
- A/D Interrupt
- Timer1 Overflow Interrupt
- EEPROM Data Write Interrupt
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor Interrupt
- LCD Interrupt
- PLVD Interrupt
- USART Receive and Transmit interrupts
- CCP1 and CCP2 Interrupts
- Timer2 Interrupt

The Interrupt Control (INTCON), Peripheral Interrupt Request 1 (PIR1) and Peripheral Interrupt Request 2 (PIR2) registers record individual interrupt requests in flag bits. The INTCON register also has individual and global interrupt enable bits.

A Global Interrupt Enable bit, GIE of the INTCON register, enables (if set) all unmasked interrupts, or disables (if cleared) all interrupts. Individual interrupts can be disabled through their corresponding enable bits in the INTCON, PIE1 and PIE2 registers. GIE is cleared on Reset.

The Return from Interrupt instruction, `RETFIE`, exits the interrupt routine, as well as sets the GIE bit, which re-enables unmasked interrupts.

The following interrupt flags are contained in the INTCON register:

- INT Pin Interrupt
- PORTB Change Interrupt
- TMR0 Overflow Interrupt

The peripheral interrupt flags are contained in the special registers, PIR1 and PIR2. The corresponding interrupt enable bit are contained in the special registers, PIE1 and PIE2.

The following interrupt flags are contained in the PIR1 register:

- EEPROM Data Write Interrupt
- A/D Interrupt
- USART Receive and Transmit Interrupts
- Timer1 Overflow Interrupt
- CCP1 Interrupt
- SSP Interrupt
- Timer2 Interrupt

The following interrupt flags are contained in the PIR2 register:

- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor Interrupt
- Comparator 1 and 2 Interrupts
- LCD Interrupt
- PLVD Interrupt
- CCP2 Interrupt

When an interrupt is serviced:

- The GIE is cleared to disable any further interrupt.
- The return address is pushed onto the stack.
- The PC is loaded with 0004h.

For external interrupt events, such as the INT pin or PORTB change interrupt, the interrupt latency will be three or four instruction cycles. The exact latency depends upon when the interrupt event occurs (see Figure 16-8). The latency is the same for one or two-cycle instructions. Once in the Interrupt Service Routine, the source(s) of the interrupt can be determined by polling the interrupt flag bits. The interrupt flag bit(s) must be cleared in software before re-enabling interrupts to avoid multiple interrupt requests.

**Note 1:** Individual interrupt flag bits are set, regardless of the status of their corresponding mask bit or the GIE bit.

**2:** When an instruction that clears the GIE bit is executed, any interrupts that were pending for execution in the next cycle are ignored. The interrupts, which were ignored, are still pending to be serviced when the GIE bit is set again.

For additional information on how a module generates an interrupt, refer to the respective peripheral section.

**Note:** The ANSEL and CMCON0 registers must be initialized to configure an analog channel as a digital input. Pins configured as analog inputs will read '0'. Also, if a LCD output function is active on an external interrupt pin, that interrupt function will be disabled.



## 16.3.1 RB0/INT/SEG0 INTERRUPT

External interrupt on RB0/INT/SEG0 pin is edge-triggered; either rising if the INTEDG bit of the OPTION register is set, or falling, if the INTEDG bit is clear. When a valid edge appears on the RB0/INT/SEG0 pin, the INTF bit of the INTCON register is set. This interrupt can be disabled by clearing the INTE control bit of the INTCON register. The INTF bit must be cleared in software in the Interrupt Service Routine before re-enabling this interrupt. The RB0/INT/SEG0 interrupt can wake-up the processor from Sleep if the INTE bit was set prior to going into Sleep. The status of the GIE bit decides whether or not the processor branches to the interrupt vector following wake-up (0004h). See **Section 16.5 “Power-Down Mode (Sleep)”** for details on Sleep and Figure 16-10 for timing of wake-up from Sleep through RB0/INT/SEG0 interrupt.

## 16.3.2 TMR0 INTERRUPT

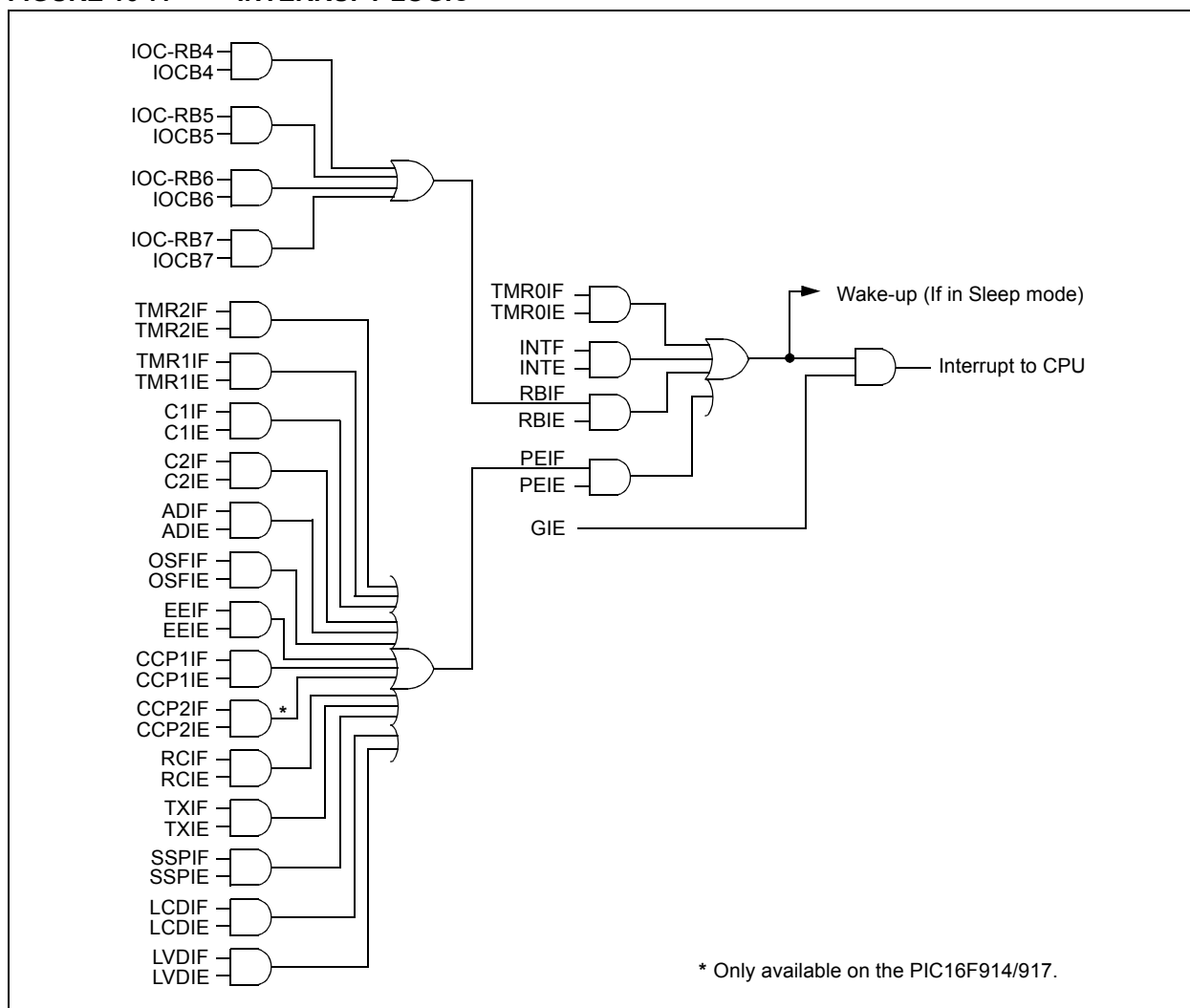
An overflow (FFh → 00h) in the TMR0 register will set the T0IF bit of the INTCON register. The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing T0IE bit of the INTCON register. See **Section 5.0 “Timer0 Module”** for operation of the Timer0 module.

## 16.3.3 PORTB INTERRUPT

An input change on PORTB change sets the RBIF bit of the INTCON register. The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing the RBIE bit of the INTCON register. Plus, individual pins can be configured through the IOCB register.

**Note:** If a change on the I/O pin should occur when the read operation is being executed (start of the Q2 cycle), then the RBIF interrupt flag may not get set.

**FIGURE 16-7: INTERRUPT LOGIC**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 16-8: INT PIN INTERRUPT TIMING**

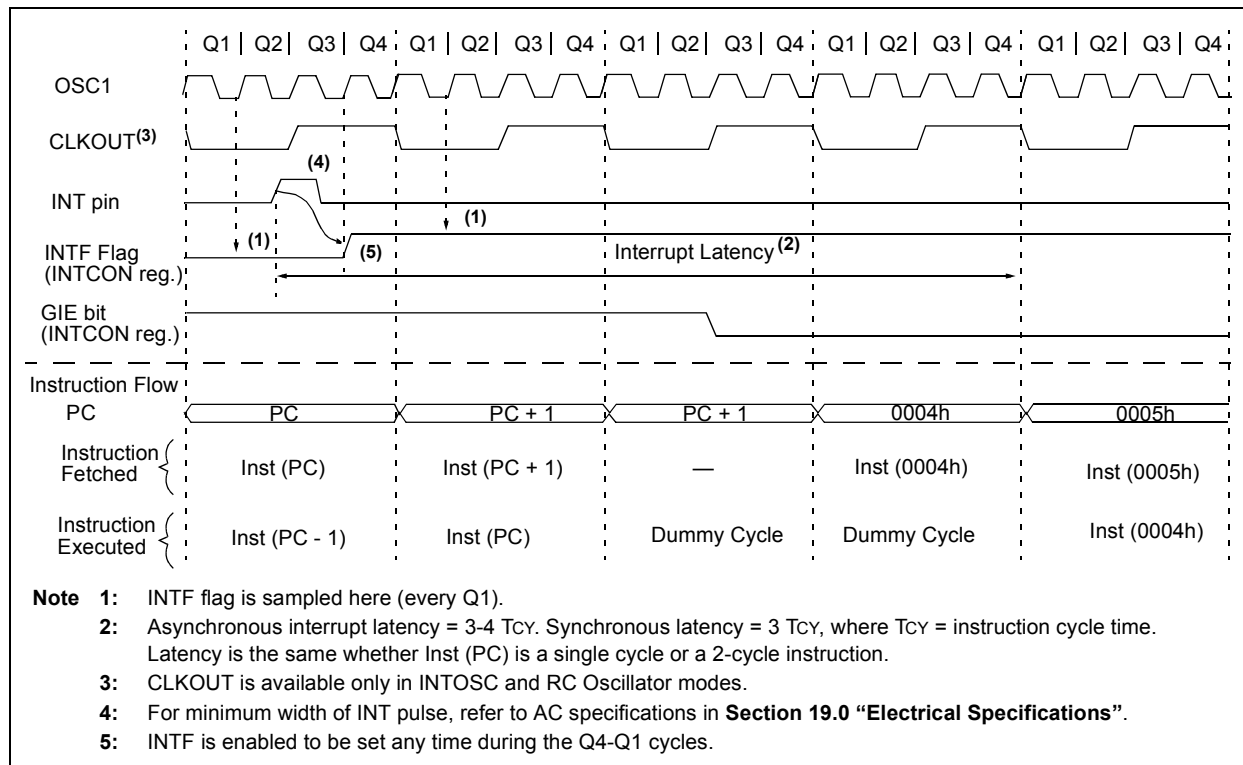


**TABLE 16-6: SUMMARY OF INTERRUPT REGISTERS**

| Name   | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  | Value on POR, BOR | Value on all other Resets |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| INTCON | GIE   | PEIE  | T0IE  | INTE  | RBIE  | T0IF   | INTF   | RBIF   | 0000 000x         | 0000 000x                 |
| PIR1   | EEIF  | ADIF  | RCIF  | TXIF  | SSPIF | CCP1IF | TMR2IF | TMR1IF | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIR2   | OSFIF | C2IF  | C1IF  | LCDIF | —     | LVDIF  | —      | CCP2IF | 0000 -0-0         | 0000 -0-0                 |
| PIE1   | EEIE  | ADIE  | RCIE  | TXIE  | SSPIE | CCP1IE | TMR2IE | TMR1IE | 0000 0000         | 0000 0000                 |
| PIE2   | OSFIE | C2IE  | C1IE  | LCDIE | —     | LVDIE  | —      | CCP2IE | 0000 -0-0         | 0000 -0-0                 |

**Legend:** x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Interrupt Module.

## 16.3.4 CONTEXT SAVING DURING INTERRUPTS

During an interrupt, only the return PC value is saved on the stack. Typically, users may wish to save key registers during an interrupt (e.g., W and STATUS registers). This must be implemented in software.

Since the lower 16 bytes of all banks are common in the PIC16F91X/946 (see Figure 2-3), temporary holding registers, W\_TEMP and STATUS\_TEMP, should be placed in here. These 16 locations do not require banking and therefore, make it easier to context save and restore. The same code shown in Example 16-1 can be used to:

- Store the W register
- Store the STATUS register
- Execute the ISR code
- Restore the STATUS register (Bank Select bits)
- Restore the W register

**Note:** The microcontroller does not normally require saving the PCLATH register unless it is modified in code either directly or via the `pagesel` macro. Then, the PCLATH register must be saved at the beginning of the ISR, managed for `CALLS` and `GOTOS` in the ISR and restored when the ISR is complete to ensure correct program flow.

### EXAMPLE 16-1: SAVING STATUS AND W REGISTERS IN RAM

```
MOVWF  W_TEMP          ;Copy W to TEMP register
SWAPF  STATUS,W         ;Swap status to be saved into W
CLRF   STATUS           ;bank 0, regardless of current bank, Clears IRP,RP1,RP0
MOVWF  STATUS_TEMP      ;Save status to bank zero STATUS_TEMP register
:
: (ISR)                 ;Insert user code here
:
SWAPF  STATUS_TEMP,W    ;Swap STATUS_TEMP register into W
                        ; (sets bank to original state)
MOVWF  STATUS           ;Move W into STATUS register
SWAPF  W_TEMP,F         ;Swap W_TEMP
SWAPF  W_TEMP,W         ;Swap W_TEMP into W
```



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## REGISTER 16-2: WDTCON – WATCHDOG TIMER CONTROL REGISTER (ADDRESS: 105h)

|       |     |     |        |        |        |        |        |
|-------|-----|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| U-0   | U-0 | U-0 | R/W-0  | R/W-1  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  | R/W-0  |
| —     | —   | —   | WDTPS3 | WDTPS2 | WDTPS1 | WDTPS0 | SWDTEN |
| bit 7 |     |     | bit 0  |        |        |        |        |

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4-1 **WDTPS<3:0>:** Watchdog Timer Period Select bits

Bit Value = Prescale Rate

0000 = 1:32  
 0001 = 1:64  
 0010 = 1:128  
 0011 = 1:256  
 0100 = 1:512 (Reset value)  
 0101 = 1:1024  
 0110 = 1:2048  
 0111 = 1:4096  
 1000 = 1:8192  
 1001 = 1:16384  
 1010 = 1:32768  
 1011 = 1:65536  
 1100 = reserved  
 1101 = reserved  
 1110 = reserved  
 1111 = reserved

bit 0 **SWDTEN:** Software Enable or Disable the Watchdog Timer bit<sup>(1)</sup>

1 = WDT is turned on

0 = WDT is turned off (Reset value)

**Note 1:** If WDTE Configuration bit = 1, then WDT is always enabled, irrespective of this control bit. If WDTE Configuration bit = 0, then it is possible to turn WDT on/off with this control bit.

### Legend:

R = Readable bit      W = Writable bit      U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'  
 - n = Value at POR      '1' = Bit is set      '0' = Bit is cleared      x = Bit is unknown

**TABLE 16-8: SUMMARY OF WATCHDOG TIMER REGISTERS**

| Name       | Bit 7 | Bit 6  | Bit 5 | Bit 4  | Bit 3  | Bit 2  | Bit 1  | Bit 0  |
|------------|-------|--------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| CONFIG     | CPD   | CP     | MCLRE | PWRTE  | WDTE   | FOSC2  | FOSC1  | FOSC0  |
| OPTION_REG | RBPU  | INTEDG | T0CS  | T0SE   | PSA    | PS2    | PS1    | PS0    |
| WDTCON     | —     | —      | —     | WDTPS3 | WDTPS2 | WDTPS1 | WDTPS0 | SWDTEN |

**Legend:** Shaded cells are not used by the Watchdog Timer.

**Note 1:** See Register 16-1 for operation of all Configuration Word register bits.

## 16.5 Power-Down Mode (Sleep)

The Power-down mode is entered by executing a `SLEEP` instruction.

If the Watchdog Timer is enabled:

- WDT will be cleared but keeps running.
- $\overline{PD}$  bit in the STATUS register is cleared.
- $\overline{TO}$  bit is set.
- Oscillator driver is turned off.
- Timer1 oscillator is unaffected
- I/O ports maintain the status they had before `SLEEP` was executed (driving high, low or high-impedance).

For lowest current consumption in this mode, all I/O pins should be either at VDD or VSS, with no external circuitry drawing current from the I/O pin, and the comparators and CVREF should be disabled. I/O pins that are high-impedance inputs should be pulled high or low externally to avoid switching currents caused by floating inputs. The T0CKI input should also be at VDD or VSS for lowest current consumption. The contribution from on-chip pull-ups on PORTB should be considered.

The  $\overline{MCLR}$  pin must be at a logic high level.

|              |                                                                                                       |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note:</b> | It should be noted that a Reset generated by a WDT time-out does not drive $\overline{MCLR}$ pin low. |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### 16.5.1 WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP

The device can wake-up from Sleep through one of the following events:

1. External Reset input on  $\overline{MCLR}$  pin.
2. Watchdog Timer wake-up (if WDT was enabled).
3. Interrupt from RB0/INT/SEG0 pin, PORTB change or a peripheral interrupt.

The first event will cause a device Reset. The two latter events are considered a continuation of program execution. The  $\overline{TO}$  and  $\overline{PD}$  bits in the STATUS register can be used to determine the cause of device Reset. The  $\overline{PD}$  bit, which is set on power-up, is cleared when Sleep is invoked.  $\overline{TO}$  bit is cleared if WDT wake-up occurred.

The following peripheral interrupts can wake the device from Sleep:

1. TMR1 Interrupt. Timer1 must be operating as an asynchronous counter.
2. USART Receive Interrupt (Sync Slave mode only)
3. A/D conversion (when A/D clock source is RC)
4. EEPROM write operation completion
5. Comparator output changes state
6. Interrupt-on-change
7. External Interrupt from INT pin
8. PLVD Interrupt
9. LCD Interrupt (if running during Sleep)

Other peripherals cannot generate interrupts since during Sleep, no on-chip clocks are present.

When the `SLEEP` instruction is being executed, the next instruction (`PC + 1`) is pre-fetched. For the device to wake-up through an interrupt event, the corresponding interrupt enable bit must be set (enabled). Wake-up is regardless of the state of the GIE bit. If the GIE bit is clear (disabled), the device continues execution at the instruction after the `SLEEP` instruction. If the GIE bit is set (enabled), the device executes the instruction after the `SLEEP` instruction, then branches to the interrupt address (0004h). In cases where the execution of the instruction following `SLEEP` is not desirable, the user should have a `NOP` after the `SLEEP` instruction.

|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Note:</b> | If the global interrupts are disabled (GIE is cleared), but any interrupt source has both its interrupt enable bit and the corresponding interrupt flag bits set, the device will immediately wake-up from Sleep. The <code>SLEEP</code> instruction is completely executed. |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

The WDT is cleared when the device wakes up from Sleep, regardless of the source of wake-up.

### 16.5.2 WAKE-UP USING INTERRUPTS

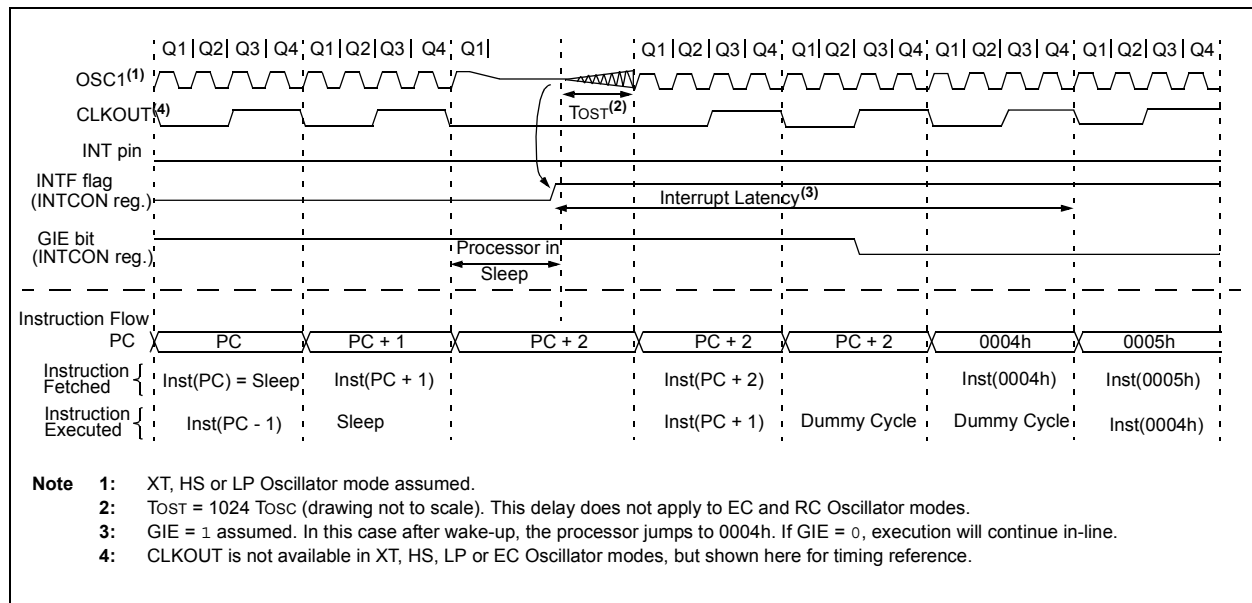
When global interrupts are disabled (GIE cleared) and any interrupt source has both its interrupt enable bit and interrupt flag bit set, one of the following will occur:

- If the interrupt occurs **before** the execution of a `SLEEP` instruction, the `SLEEP` instruction will complete as a `NOP`. Therefore, the WDT and WDT prescaler and postscaler (if enabled) will not be cleared, the  $\overline{TO}$  bit will not be set and the  $\overline{PD}$  bit will not be cleared.
- If the interrupt occurs **during or after** the execution of a `SLEEP` instruction, the device will immediately wake-up from Sleep. The `SLEEP` instruction will be completely executed before the wake-up. Therefore, the WDT and WDT prescaler and postscaler (if enabled) will be cleared, the  $\overline{TO}$  bit will be set and the  $\overline{PD}$  bit will be cleared.

Even if the flag bits were checked before executing a `SLEEP` instruction, it may be possible for flag bits to become set before the `SLEEP` instruction completes. To determine whether a `SLEEP` instruction executed, test the `PD` bit. If the `PD` bit is set, the `SLEEP` instruction was executed as a `NOP`.

To ensure that the WDT is cleared, a `CLRWDT` instruction should be executed before a `SLEEP` instruction.

**FIGURE 16-10: WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP THROUGH INTERRUPT**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 16.6 Code Protection

If the code protection bit(s) have not been programmed, the on-chip program memory can be read out using ICSP for verification purposes.

**Note:** The entire data EEPROM and Flash program memory will be erased when the code protection is turned off. See the “PIC16F91X/946 Memory Programming Specification” (DS41244) for more information.

## 16.7 ID Locations

Four memory locations (2000h-2003h) are designated as ID locations where the user can store checksum or other code identification numbers. These locations are not accessible during normal execution, but are readable and writable during Program/Verify mode. Only the Least Significant 7 bits of the ID locations are used.

## 16.8 In-Circuit Serial Programming

The PIC16F91X/946 microcontrollers can be serially programmed while in the end application circuit. This is simply done with two lines for clock and data and three other lines for:

- power
- ground
- programming voltage

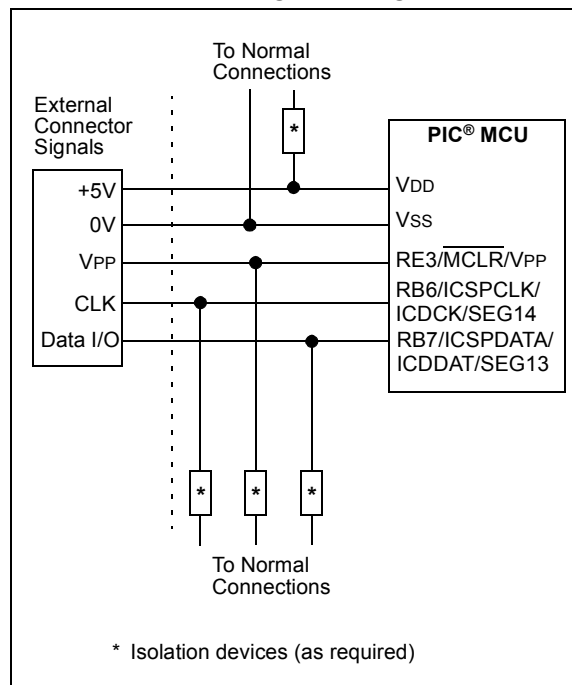
This allows customers to manufacture boards with unprogrammed devices and then program the microcontroller just before shipping the product. This also allows the most recent firmware or a custom firmware to be programmed.

The device is placed into a Program/Verify mode by holding the RB7/ICSPDAT/ICDDAT/SEG13 and RB6/ICSPCLK/ICDCK/SEG14 pins low, while raising the MCLR (VPP) pin from VIL to VIH. See “PIC16F91X/946 Memory Programming Specification” (DS41244) for more information. RB7 becomes the programming data and the RB6 becomes the programming clock. Both RB7 and RB6 are Schmitt Trigger inputs in this mode.

After Reset, to place the device into Program/Verify mode, the Program Counter (PC) is at location 0000h. A 6-bit command is then supplied to the device. Depending on the command, 14 bits of program data are then supplied to or from the device, depending on whether the command was a load or a read. For complete details of serial programming, please refer to the “PIC16F91X/946 Memory Programming Specification” (DS41244).

A typical In-Circuit Serial Programming connection is shown in Figure 16-11.

**FIGURE 16-11: TYPICAL IN-CIRCUIT SERIAL PROGRAMMING CONNECTION**





# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 16.9 In-Circuit Debugger

When the debug bit in the Configuration Word register is programmed to a '0', the In-Circuit Debugger functionality is enabled. This function allows simple debugging functions when used with MPLAB® ICD 2. When the microcontroller has this feature enabled, some of the resources are not available for general use. See Table 16-9 for more detail.

**Note:** The user's application must have the circuitry required to support ICD functionality. Once the ICD circuitry is enabled, normal device pin functions on RB6/ICSPCLK/ICDCK/SEG14 and RB7/ICSPDAT/ICDDAT/SEG13 will not be usable. The ICD circuitry uses these pins for communication with the ICD2 external debugger.

For more information, see "Using MPLAB® ICD 2" (DS51265), available on Microchip's web site ([www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com)).

### 16.9.1 ICD PINOUT

The devices in the PIC16F91X/946 family carry the circuitry for the In-Circuit Debugger on-chip and on existing device pins. This eliminates the need for a separate die or package for the ICD device. The pinout for the ICD device is the same as the devices (see **Section 1.0 "Device Overview"** for complete pinout and pin descriptions). Table 16-9 shows the location and function of the ICD related pins on the 28 and 40-pin devices.

**TABLE 16-9: PIC16F91X/946-ICD PIN DESCRIPTIONS**

| Pin Numbers   |               |                | Name     | Type | Pull-up | Description                             |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------|------|---------|-----------------------------------------|
| PDIP          |               | TQFP           |          |      |         |                                         |
| PIC16F914/917 | PIC16F913/916 | PIC16F946      |          |      |         |                                         |
| 40            | 28            | 24             | ICDDATA  | TTL  | —       | In Circuit Debugger Bidirectional data  |
| 39            | 27            | 23             | ICDCLK   | ST   | —       | In Circuit Debugger Bidirectional clock |
| 1             | 1             | 36             | MCLR/VPP | HV   | —       | Programming voltage                     |
| 11,32         | 20            | 10, 19, 38, 51 | VDD      | P    | —       | Power                                   |
| 12,31         | 8,19          | 9, 20, 41, 56  | VSS      | P    | —       | Ground                                  |
| —             | —             | 26             | AVDD     | P    | —       | Analog power                            |
| —             | —             | 25             | AVSS     | P    | —       | Analog ground                           |

**Legend:** TTL = TTL input buffer, ST = Schmitt Trigger input buffer, P = Power, HV = High Voltage

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

NOTES:

## 17.0 INSTRUCTION SET SUMMARY

The PIC16F913/914/916/917/946 instruction set is highly orthogonal and is comprised of three basic categories:

- **Byte-oriented** operations
- **Bit-oriented** operations
- **Literal and control** operations

Each PIC16 instruction is a 14-bit word divided into an **opcode**, which specifies the instruction type and one or more **operands**, which further specify the operation of the instruction. The formats for each of the categories is presented in Figure 17-1, while the various opcode fields are summarized in Table 17-1.

Table 17-2 lists the instructions recognized by the MPASM™ assembler.

For **byte-oriented** instructions, 'f' represents a file register designator and 'd' represents a destination designator. The file register designator specifies which file register is to be used by the instruction.

The destination designator specifies where the result of the operation is to be placed. If 'd' is zero, the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is one, the result is placed in the file register specified in the instruction.

For **bit-oriented** instructions, 'b' represents a bit field designator, which selects the bit affected by the operation, while 'f' represents the address of the file in which the bit is located.

For **literal and control** operations, 'k' represents an 8-bit or 11-bit constant, or literal value.

One instruction cycle consists of four oscillator periods; for an oscillator frequency of 4 MHz, this gives a nominal instruction execution time of 1 μs. All instructions are executed within a single instruction cycle, unless a conditional test is true, or the program counter is changed as a result of an instruction. When this occurs, the execution takes two instruction cycles, with the second cycle executed as a NOP.

All instruction examples use the format '0xhh' to represent a hexadecimal number, where 'h' signifies a hexadecimal digit.

### 17.1 Read-Modify-Write Operations

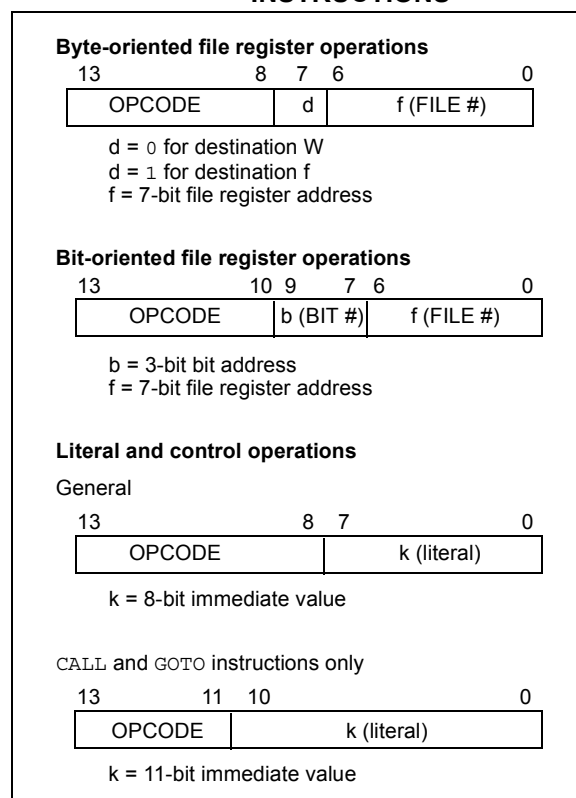
Any instruction that specifies a file register as part of the instruction performs a Read-Modify-Write (R-M-W) operation. The register is read, the data is modified, and the result is stored according to either the instruction, or the destination designator 'd'. A read operation is performed on a register even if the instruction writes to that register.

For example, a `CLRF PORTA` instruction will read PORTA, clear all the data bits, then write the result back to PORTA. This example would have the unintended consequence of clearing the condition that set the RBIF flag.

TABLE 17-1: OPCODE FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

| Field | Description                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| f     | Register file address (0x00 to 0x7F)                                                                                                                                   |
| W     | Working register (accumulator)                                                                                                                                         |
| b     | Bit address within an 8-bit file register                                                                                                                              |
| k     | Literal field, constant data or label                                                                                                                                  |
| x     | Don't care location (= 0 or 1).<br>The assembler will generate code with x = 0. It is the recommended form of use for compatibility with all Microchip software tools. |
| d     | Destination select; d = 0: store result in W, d = 1: store result in file register f. Default is d = 1.                                                                |
| PC    | Program Counter                                                                                                                                                        |
| TO    | Time-out bit                                                                                                                                                           |
| C     | Carry bit                                                                                                                                                              |
| DC    | Digit carry bit                                                                                                                                                        |
| Z     | Zero bit                                                                                                                                                               |
| PD    | Power-down bit                                                                                                                                                         |

FIGURE 17-1: GENERAL FORMAT FOR INSTRUCTIONS



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 17-2: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946 INSTRUCTION SET**

| Mnemonic,<br>Operands                  |      | Description                  | Cycles | 14-Bit Opcode |      |      |      | Status<br>Affected                | Notes   |
|----------------------------------------|------|------------------------------|--------|---------------|------|------|------|-----------------------------------|---------|
|                                        |      |                              |        | MSb           |      | LSb  |      |                                   |         |
| BYTE-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS |      |                              |        |               |      |      |      |                                   |         |
| ADDWF                                  | f, d | Add W and f                  | 1      | 00            | 0111 | dfff | ffff | C, DC, Z                          | 1, 2    |
| ANDWF                                  | f, d | AND W with f                 | 1      | 00            | 0101 | dfff | ffff | Z                                 | 1, 2    |
| CLRF                                   | f    | Clear f                      | 1      | 00            | 0001 | 1fff | ffff | Z                                 | 2       |
| CLRWF                                  | —    | Clear W                      | 1      | 00            | 0001 | 0xxx | xxxx | Z                                 |         |
| COMF                                   | f, d | Complement f                 | 1      | 00            | 1001 | dfff | ffff | Z                                 | 1, 2    |
| DECf                                   | f, d | Decrement f                  | 1      | 00            | 0011 | dfff | ffff | Z                                 | 1, 2    |
| DECFSZ                                 | f, d | Decrement f, Skip if 0       | 1(2)   | 00            | 1011 | dfff | ffff |                                   | 1, 2, 3 |
| INCF                                   | f, d | Increment f                  | 1      | 00            | 1010 | dfff | ffff | Z                                 | 1, 2    |
| INCFSZ                                 | f, d | Increment f, Skip if 0       | 1(2)   | 00            | 1111 | dfff | ffff |                                   | 1, 2, 3 |
| IORWF                                  | f, d | Inclusive OR W with f        | 1      | 00            | 0100 | dfff | ffff | Z                                 | 1, 2    |
| MOVF                                   | f, d | Move f                       | 1      | 00            | 1000 | dfff | ffff | Z                                 | 1, 2    |
| MOVWF                                  | f    | Move W to f                  | 1      | 00            | 0000 | 1fff | ffff |                                   |         |
| NOP                                    | —    | No Operation                 | 1      | 00            | 0000 | 0xx0 | 0000 |                                   |         |
| RLF                                    | f, d | Rotate Left f through Carry  | 1      | 00            | 1101 | dfff | ffff | C                                 | 1, 2    |
| RRF                                    | f, d | Rotate Right f through Carry | 1      | 00            | 1100 | dfff | ffff | C                                 | 1, 2    |
| SUBWF                                  | f, d | Subtract W from f            | 1      | 00            | 0010 | dfff | ffff | C, DC, Z                          | 1, 2    |
| SWAPF                                  | f, d | Swap nibbles in f            | 1      | 00            | 1110 | dfff | ffff |                                   | 1, 2    |
| XORWF                                  | f, d | Exclusive OR W with f        | 1      | 00            | 0110 | dfff | ffff | Z                                 | 1, 2    |
| BIT-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS  |      |                              |        |               |      |      |      |                                   |         |
| BCF                                    | f, b | Bit Clear f                  | 1      | 01            | 00bb | bfff | ffff |                                   | 1, 2    |
| BSF                                    | f, b | Bit Set f                    | 1      | 01            | 01bb | bfff | ffff |                                   | 1, 2    |
| BTFSC                                  | f, b | Bit Test f, Skip if Clear    | 1 (2)  | 01            | 10bb | bfff | ffff |                                   | 3       |
| BTFSS                                  | f, b | Bit Test f, Skip if Set      | 1 (2)  | 01            | 11bb | bfff | ffff |                                   | 3       |
| LITERAL AND CONTROL OPERATIONS         |      |                              |        |               |      |      |      |                                   |         |
| ADDLW                                  | k    | Add literal and W            | 1      | 11            | 111x | kkkk | kkkk | C, DC, Z                          |         |
| ANDLW                                  | k    | AND literal with W           | 1      | 11            | 1001 | kkkk | kkkk | Z                                 |         |
| CALL                                   | k    | Call Subroutine              | 2      | 10            | 0kkk | kkkk | kkkk |                                   |         |
| CLRWDT                                 | —    | Clear Watchdog Timer         | 1      | 00            | 0000 | 0110 | 0100 | $\overline{TO}$ , $\overline{PD}$ |         |
| GOTO                                   | k    | Go to address                | 2      | 10            | 1kkk | kkkk | kkkk |                                   |         |
| IORLW                                  | k    | Inclusive OR literal with W  | 1      | 11            | 1000 | kkkk | kkkk | Z                                 |         |
| MOVLW                                  | k    | Move literal to W            | 1      | 11            | 00xx | kkkk | kkkk |                                   |         |
| RETFIE                                 | —    | Return from interrupt        | 2      | 00            | 0000 | 0000 | 1001 |                                   |         |
| RETLW                                  | k    | Return with literal in W     | 2      | 11            | 01xx | kkkk | kkkk |                                   |         |
| RETURN                                 | —    | Return from Subroutine       | 2      | 00            | 0000 | 0000 | 1000 |                                   |         |
| SLEEP                                  | —    | Go into Standby mode         | 1      | 00            | 0000 | 0110 | 0011 | $\overline{TO}$ , $\overline{PD}$ |         |
| SUBLW                                  | k    | Subtract W from literal      | 1      | 11            | 110x | kkkk | kkkk | C, DC, Z                          |         |
| XORLW                                  | k    | Exclusive OR literal with W  | 1      | 11            | 1010 | kkkk | kkkk | Z                                 |         |

- Note 1:** When an I/O register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF GPIO, 1`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.
- 2:** If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and where applicable,  $d = 1$ ), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned to the Timer0 module.
- 3:** If the Program Counter (PC) is modified, or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP`.

## 17.2 Instruction Descriptions

### ADDLW Add literal and W

**Syntax:** [ *label* ] ADDLW *k*

**Operands:**  $0 \leq k \leq 255$

**Operation:**  $(W) + k \rightarrow (W)$

**Status Affected:** C, DC, Z

**Description:** The contents of the W register are added to the eight-bit literal 'k' and the result is placed in the W register.

### BCF Bit Clear f

**Syntax:** [ *label* ] BCF *f*,*b*

**Operands:**  $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
 $0 \leq b \leq 7$

**Operation:**  $0 \rightarrow (f<b>)$

**Status Affected:** None

**Description:** Bit 'b' in register 'f' is cleared.

### ADDWF Add W and f

**Syntax:** [ *label* ] ADDWF *f*,*d*

**Operands:**  $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
 $d \in [0,1]$

**Operation:**  $(W) + (f) \rightarrow (\text{destination})$

**Status Affected:** C, DC, Z

**Description:** Add the contents of the W register with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

### BSF Bit Set f

**Syntax:** [ *label* ] BSF *f*,*b*

**Operands:**  $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
 $0 \leq b \leq 7$

**Operation:**  $1 \rightarrow (f<b>)$

**Status Affected:** None

**Description:** Bit 'b' in register 'f' is set.

### ANDLW AND literal with W

**Syntax:** [ *label* ] ANDLW *k*

**Operands:**  $0 \leq k \leq 255$

**Operation:**  $(W) .\text{AND.} (k) \rightarrow (W)$

**Status Affected:** Z

**Description:** The contents of W register are AND'ed with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in the W register.

### BTFSC Bit Test f, Skip if Clear

**Syntax:** [ *label* ] BTFSC *f*,*b*

**Operands:**  $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
 $0 \leq b \leq 7$

**Operation:** skip if  $(f<b>) = 0$

**Status Affected:** None

**Description:** If bit 'b' in register 'f' is '1', the next instruction is executed.  
If bit 'b', in register 'f', is '0', the next instruction is discarded, and a NOP is executed instead, making this a 2-cycle instruction.

### ANDWF AND W with f

**Syntax:** [ *label* ] ANDWF *f*,*d*

**Operands:**  $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
 $d \in [0,1]$

**Operation:**  $(W) .\text{AND.} (f) \rightarrow (\text{destination})$

**Status Affected:** Z

**Description:** AND the W register with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## **BTFSS**      **Bit Test f, Skip if Set**

Syntax:      [ *label* ] BTFSS *f*,*b*  
Operands:     $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
               $0 \leq b < 7$   
Operation:    skip if (*f*<*b*>) = 1  
Status Affected: None  
Description:   If bit '*b*' in register '*f*' is '0', the next instruction is executed.  
                  If bit '*b*' is '1', then the next instruction is discarded and a NOP is executed instead, making this a 2-cycle instruction.

## **CLRWDT**      **Clear Watchdog Timer**

Syntax:      [ *label* ] CLRWDT  
Operands:    None  
Operation:    00h → WDT  
              0 → WDT prescaler,  
              1 →  $\overline{TO}$   
              1 →  $\overline{PD}$   
Status Affected:  $\overline{TO}$ ,  $\overline{PD}$   
Description:   CLRWDT instruction resets the Watchdog Timer. It also resets the prescaler of the WDT.  
                  Status bits  $\overline{TO}$  and  $\overline{PD}$  are set.

## **CALL**      **Call Subroutine**

Syntax:      [ *label* ] CALL *k*  
Operands:     $0 \leq k \leq 2047$   
Operation:    (PC)+1 → TOS,  
              *k* → PC<10:0>,  
              (PCLATH<4:3>) → PC<12:11>  
Status Affected: None  
Description:   Call Subroutine. First, return address (PC + 1) is pushed onto the stack. The eleven-bit immediate address is loaded into PC bits <10:0>. The upper bits of the PC are loaded from PCLATH. CALL is a two-cycle instruction.

## **COMF**      **Complement f**

Syntax:      [ *label* ] COMF *f*,*d*  
Operands:     $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
              *d* ∈ [0,1]  
Operation:    ( $\bar{f}$ ) → (destination)  
Status Affected: Z  
Description:   The contents of register '*f*' are complemented. If '*d*' is '0', the result is stored in W. If '*d*' is '1', the result is stored back in register '*f*'.

## **CLRF**      **Clear f**

Syntax:      [ *label* ] CLRF *f*  
Operands:     $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
Operation:    00h → (*f*)  
              1 → Z  
Status Affected: Z  
Description:   The contents of register '*f*' are cleared and the Z bit is set.

## **DECF**      **Decrement f**

Syntax:      [ *label* ] DECF *f*,*d*  
Operands:     $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
              *d* ∈ [0,1]  
Operation:    (*f*) - 1 → (destination)  
Status Affected: Z  
Description:   Decrement register '*f*'. If '*d*' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If '*d*' is '1', the result is stored back in register '*f*'.

## **CLRW**      **Clear W**

Syntax:      [ *label* ] CLRW  
Operands:    None  
Operation:    00h → (W)  
              1 → Z  
Status Affected: Z  
Description:   W register is cleared. Zero bit (Z) is set.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## **DECFSZ      Decrement f, Skip if 0**

Syntax:      **[ *label* ] DECFSZ f,d**

Operands:       $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
 $d \in [0,1]$

Operation:       $(f) - 1 \rightarrow (\text{destination});$   
skip if result = 0

Status Affected:      None

Description:      The contents of register 'f' are decremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'.  
If the result is '1', the next instruction is executed. If the result is '0', then a NOP is executed instead, making it a 2-cycle instruction.

## **INCFSZ      Increment f, Skip if 0**

Syntax:      **[ *label* ] INCFSZ f,d**

Operands:       $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
 $d \in [0,1]$

Operation:       $(f) + 1 \rightarrow (\text{destination});$   
skip if result = 0

Status Affected:      None

Description:      The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'.  
If the result is '1', the next instruction is executed. If the result is '0', a NOP is executed instead, making it a 2-cycle instruction.

## **GOTO      Unconditional Branch**

Syntax:      **[ *label* ] GOTO k**

Operands:       $0 \leq k \leq 2047$

Operation:       $k \rightarrow \text{PC}<10:0>$   
 $\text{PCLATH}<4:3> \rightarrow \text{PC}<12:11>$

Status Affected:      None

Description:      GOTO is an unconditional branch. The eleven-bit immediate value is loaded into PC bits <10:0>. The upper bits of PC are loaded from PCLATH<4:3>. GOTO is a two-cycle instruction.

## **IORLW      Inclusive OR literal with W**

Syntax:      **[ *label* ] IORLW k**

Operands:       $0 \leq k \leq 255$

Operation:       $(W) .\text{OR. } k \rightarrow (W)$

Status Affected:      Z

Description:      The contents of the W register are OR'ed with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in the W register.

## **INCF      Increment f**

Syntax:      **[ *label* ] INCF f,d**

Operands:       $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
 $d \in [0,1]$

Operation:       $(f) + 1 \rightarrow (\text{destination})$

Status Affected:      Z

Description:      The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'.

## **IORWF      Inclusive OR W with f**

Syntax:      **[ *label* ] IORWF f,d**

Operands:       $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
 $d \in [0,1]$

Operation:       $(W) .\text{OR. } (f) \rightarrow (\text{destination})$

Status Affected:      Z

Description:      Inclusive OR the W register with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

| <b>MOVF</b>      | <b>Move f</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Syntax:          | [ <i>label</i> ] MOVF f,d                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Operands:        | $0 \leq f \leq 127$<br>$d \in [0,1]$                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Operation:       | $(f) \rightarrow (\text{dest})$                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Status Affected: | Z                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Description:     | The contents of register f is moved to a destination dependent upon the status of d. If d = 0, destination is W register. If d = 1, the destination is file register f itself. d = 1 is useful to test a file register since status flag Z is affected. |
| Words:           | 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Cycles:          | 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Example:         | <pre>MOVF    FSR, 0</pre> <p>After Instruction</p> <p>W = value in FSR register</p> <p>Z = 1</p>                                                                                                                                                        |

| <b>MOVLW</b>     | <b>Move literal to W</b>                                                                      |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Syntax:          | [ <i>label</i> ] MOVLW k                                                                      |
| Operands:        | $0 \leq k \leq 255$                                                                           |
| Operation:       | $k \rightarrow (W)$                                                                           |
| Status Affected: | None                                                                                          |
| Description:     | The eight-bit literal 'k' is loaded into W register. The "don't cares" will assemble as '0's. |
| Words:           | 1                                                                                             |
| Cycles:          | 1                                                                                             |
| Example:         | <pre>MOVLW    0x5A</pre> <p>After Instruction</p> <p>W = 0x5A</p>                             |

| <b>MOVWF</b>     | <b>Move W to f</b>                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Syntax:          | [ <i>label</i> ] MOVWF f                                                                                                                                     |
| Operands:        | $0 \leq f \leq 127$                                                                                                                                          |
| Operation:       | $(W) \rightarrow (f)$                                                                                                                                        |
| Status Affected: | None                                                                                                                                                         |
| Description:     | Move data from W register to register 'f'.                                                                                                                   |
| Words:           | 1                                                                                                                                                            |
| Cycles:          | 1                                                                                                                                                            |
| Example:         | <pre>MOVW    OPTION<br/>F</pre> <p>Before Instruction</p> <p>OPTION = 0xFF</p> <p>W = 0x4F</p> <p>After Instruction</p> <p>OPTION = 0x4F</p> <p>W = 0x4F</p> |

| <b>NOP</b>       | <b>No Operation</b>  |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Syntax:          | [ <i>label</i> ] NOP |
| Operands:        | None                 |
| Operation:       | No operation         |
| Status Affected: | None                 |
| Description:     | No operation.        |
| Words:           | 1                    |
| Cycles:          | 1                    |
| Example:         | <pre>NOP</pre>       |



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

| <b>RETFIE</b>    | <b>Return from Interrupt</b>                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Syntax:          | [ <i>label</i> ] RETFIE                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Operands:        | None                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Operation:       | TOS → PC,<br>1 → GIE                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Status Affected: | None                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Description:     | Return from Interrupt. Stack is POPed and Top-of-Stack (TOS) is loaded in the PC. Interrupts are enabled by setting Global Interrupt Enable bit, GIE (INTCON<7>). This is a two-cycle instruction. |
| Words:           | 1                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Cycles:          | 2                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <u>Example:</u>  | <pre>RETFIE  After Interrupt     PC =  TOS     GIE =  1</pre>                                                                                                                                      |

| <b>RETLW</b>     | <b>Return with literal in W</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Syntax:          | [ <i>label</i> ] RETLW k                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Operands:        | 0 ≤ k ≤ 255                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Operation:       | k → (W);<br>TOS → PC                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Status Affected: | None                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Description:     | The W register is loaded with the eight bit literal 'k'. The program counter is loaded from the top of the stack (the return address). This is a two-cycle instruction.                                                                                                                  |
| Words:           | 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Cycles:          | 2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <u>Example:</u>  | <pre>CALL TABLE;W contains table     ;offset value     • ;W now has table value     •     •     ADDWF PC ;W = offset     RETLW k1 ;Begin table     RETLW k2 ;     •     •     •     RETLW kn ; End of table  Before Instruction     W = 0x07 After Instruction     W = value of k8</pre> |

| <b>RETURN</b>    | <b>Return from Subroutine</b>                                                                                                                  |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Syntax:          | [ <i>label</i> ] RETURN                                                                                                                        |
| Operands:        | None                                                                                                                                           |
| Operation:       | TOS → PC                                                                                                                                       |
| Status Affected: | None                                                                                                                                           |
| Description:     | Return from subroutine. The stack is POPed and the top of the stack (TOS) is loaded into the program counter. This is a two-cycle instruction. |

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## RLF Rotate Left f through Carry

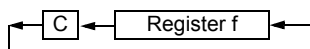
Syntax: `[label] RLF f,d`

Operands:  $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
 $d \in [0,1]$

Operation: See description below

Status Affected: C

Description: The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the left through the Carry flag. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.



Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Example: `RLF REG1, 0`

Before Instruction

```
REG1 = 1110 0110
C = 0
```

After Instruction

```
REG1 = 1110 0110
W = 1100 1100
C = 1
```

## SLEEP Enter Sleep mode

Syntax: `[label] SLEEP`

Operands: None

Operation:  $00h \rightarrow$  WDT,  
 $0 \rightarrow$  WDT prescaler,  
 $1 \rightarrow \overline{TO}$ ,  
 $0 \rightarrow \overline{PD}$

Status Affected:  $\overline{TO}$ ,  $\overline{PD}$

Description: The power-down Status bit,  $\overline{PD}$  is cleared. Time-out Status bit,  $\overline{TO}$  is set. Watchdog Timer and its prescaler are cleared. The processor is put into Sleep mode with the oscillator stopped.

## RRF Rotate Right f through Carry

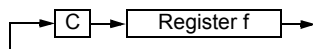
Syntax: `[label] RRF f,d`

Operands:  $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
 $d \in [0,1]$

Operation: See description below

Status Affected: C

Description: The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the right through the Carry flag. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed back in register 'f'.



## SUBLW Subtract W from literal

Syntax: `[label] SUBLW k`

Operands:  $0 \leq k \leq 255$

Operation:  $k - (W) \rightarrow (W)$

Status Affected: C, DC, Z

Description: The W register is subtracted (2's complement method) from the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in the W register.

|        |                 |
|--------|-----------------|
| C = 0  | W > k           |
| C = 1  | W ≤ k           |
| DC = 0 | W<3:0> > k<3:0> |
| DC = 1 | W<3:0> ≤ k<3:0> |

## **SUBWF**      **Subtract W from f**

Syntax:      **[ *label* ] SUBWF f,d**

Operands:     $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
                    $d \in [0,1]$

Operation:     $(f) - (W) \rightarrow (\text{destination})$

Status Affected: C, DC, Z

Description:   Subtract (2's complement method) W register from register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

|        |                      |
|--------|----------------------|
| C = 0  | $W > f$              |
| C = 1  | $W \leq f$           |
| DC = 0 | $W<3:0> > f<3:0>$    |
| DC = 1 | $W<3:0> \leq f<3:0>$ |

## **XORLW**      **Exclusive OR literal with W**

Syntax:      **[ *label* ] XORLW k**

Operands:     $0 \leq k \leq 255$

Operation:     $(W) .XOR. k \rightarrow (W)$

Status Affected: Z

Description:   The contents of the W register are XOR'ed with the eight-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in the W register.

## **SWAPF**      **Swap Nibbles in f**

Syntax:      **[ *label* ] SWAPF f,d**

Operands:     $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
                    $d \in [0,1]$

Operation:     $(f<3:0>) \rightarrow (\text{destination}<7:4>),$   
                    $(f<7:4>) \rightarrow (\text{destination}<3:0>)$

Status Affected: None

Description:   The upper and lower nibbles of register 'f' are exchanged. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is placed in register 'f'.

## **XORWF**      **Exclusive OR W with f**

Syntax:      **[ *label* ] XORWF f,d**

Operands:     $0 \leq f \leq 127$   
                    $d \in [0,1]$

Operation:     $(W) .XOR. (f) \rightarrow (\text{destination})$

Status Affected: Z

Description:   Exclusive OR the contents of the W register with register 'f'. If 'd' is '0', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

NOTES:

## 18.0 DEVELOPMENT SUPPORT

The PIC® microcontrollers are supported with a full range of hardware and software development tools:

- Integrated Development Environment
  - MPLAB® IDE Software
- Assemblers/Compilers/Linkers
  - MPASM™ Assembler
  - MPLAB C18 and MPLAB C30 C Compilers
  - MPLINK™ Object Linker/  
MPLIB™ Object Librarian
  - MPLAB ASM30 Assembler/Linker/Library
- Simulators
  - MPLAB SIM Software Simulator
- Emulators
  - MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator
  - MPLAB REAL ICE™ In-Circuit Emulator
- In-Circuit Debugger
  - MPLAB ICD 2
- Device Programmers
  - PICSTART® Plus Development Programmer
  - MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer
  - PICKit™ 2 Development Programmer
- Low-Cost Demonstration and Development Boards and Evaluation Kits

## 18.1 MPLAB Integrated Development Environment Software

The MPLAB IDE software brings an ease of software development previously unseen in the 8/16-bit microcontroller market. The MPLAB IDE is a Windows® operating system-based application that contains:

- A single graphical interface to all debugging tools
  - Simulator
  - Programmer (sold separately)
  - Emulator (sold separately)
  - In-Circuit Debugger (sold separately)
- A full-featured editor with color-coded context
- A multiple project manager
- Customizable data windows with direct edit of contents
- High-level source code debugging
- Visual device initializer for easy register initialization
- Mouse over variable inspection
- Drag and drop variables from source to watch windows
- Extensive on-line help
- Integration of select third party tools, such as HI-TECH Software C Compilers and IAR C Compilers

The MPLAB IDE allows you to:

- Edit your source files (either assembly or C)
- One touch assemble (or compile) and download to PIC MCU emulator and simulator tools (automatically updates all project information)
- Debug using:
  - Source files (assembly or C)
  - Mixed assembly and C
  - Machine code

MPLAB IDE supports multiple debugging tools in a single development paradigm, from the cost-effective simulators, through low-cost in-circuit debuggers, to full-featured emulators. This eliminates the learning curve when upgrading to tools with increased flexibility and power.

## 18.2 MPASM Assembler

The MPASM Assembler is a full-featured, universal macro assembler for all PIC MCUs.

The MPASM Assembler generates relocatable object files for the MPLINK Object Linker, Intel® standard HEX files, MAP files to detail memory usage and symbol reference, absolute LST files that contain source lines and generated machine code and COFF files for debugging.

The MPASM Assembler features include:

- Integration into MPLAB IDE projects
- User-defined macros to streamline assembly code
- Conditional assembly for multi-purpose source files
- Directives that allow complete control over the assembly process

## 18.3 MPLAB C18 and MPLAB C30 C Compilers

The MPLAB C18 and MPLAB C30 Code Development Systems are complete ANSI C compilers for Microchip's PIC18 and PIC24 families of microcontrollers and the dsPIC30 and dsPIC33 family of digital signal controllers. These compilers provide powerful integration capabilities, superior code optimization and ease of use not found with other compilers.

For easy source level debugging, the compilers provide symbol information that is optimized to the MPLAB IDE debugger.

## 18.4 MPLINK Object Linker/ MPLIB Object Librarian

The MPLINK Object Linker combines relocatable objects created by the MPASM Assembler and the MPLAB C18 C Compiler. It can link relocatable objects from precompiled libraries, using directives from a linker script.

The MPLIB Object Librarian manages the creation and modification of library files of precompiled code. When a routine from a library is called from a source file, only the modules that contain that routine will be linked in with the application. This allows large libraries to be used efficiently in many different applications.

The object linker/library features include:

- Efficient linking of single libraries instead of many smaller files
- Enhanced code maintainability by grouping related modules together
- Flexible creation of libraries with easy module listing, replacement, deletion and extraction

## 18.5 MPLAB ASM30 Assembler, Linker and Librarian

MPLAB ASM30 Assembler produces relocatable machine code from symbolic assembly language for dsPIC30F devices. MPLAB C30 C Compiler uses the assembler to produce its object file. The assembler generates relocatable object files that can then be archived or linked with other relocatable object files and archives to create an executable file. Notable features of the assembler include:

- Support for the entire dsPIC30F instruction set
- Support for fixed-point and floating-point data
- Command line interface
- Rich directive set
- Flexible macro language
- MPLAB IDE compatibility

## 18.6 MPLAB SIM Software Simulator

The MPLAB SIM Software Simulator allows code development in a PC-hosted environment by simulating the PIC MCUs and dsPIC® DSCs on an instruction level. On any given instruction, the data areas can be examined or modified and stimuli can be applied from a comprehensive stimulus controller. Registers can be logged to files for further run-time analysis. The trace buffer and logic analyzer display extend the power of the simulator to record and track program execution, actions on I/O, most peripherals and internal registers.

The MPLAB SIM Software Simulator fully supports symbolic debugging using the MPLAB C18 and MPLAB C30 C Compilers, and the MPASM and MPLAB ASM30 Assemblers. The software simulator offers the flexibility to develop and debug code outside of the hardware laboratory environment, making it an excellent, economical software development tool.

## 18.7 MPLAB ICE 2000 High-Performance In-Circuit Emulator

The MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator is intended to provide the product development engineer with a complete microcontroller design tool set for PIC microcontrollers. Software control of the MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator is advanced by the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment, which allows editing, building, downloading and source debugging from a single environment.

The MPLAB ICE 2000 is a full-featured emulator system with enhanced trace, trigger and data monitoring features. Interchangeable processor modules allow the system to be easily reconfigured for emulation of different processors. The architecture of the MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator allows expansion to support new PIC microcontrollers.

The MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator system has been designed as a real-time emulation system with advanced features that are typically found on more expensive development tools. The PC platform and Microsoft® Windows® 32-bit operating system were chosen to best make these features available in a simple, unified application.

## 18.8 MPLAB REAL ICE In-Circuit Emulator System

MPLAB REAL ICE In-Circuit Emulator System is Microchip's next generation high-speed emulator for Microchip Flash DSC® and MCU devices. It debugs and programs PIC® and dsPIC® Flash microcontrollers with the easy-to-use, powerful graphical user interface of the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment (IDE), included with each kit.

The MPLAB REAL ICE probe is connected to the design engineer's PC using a high-speed USB 2.0 interface and is connected to the target with either a connector compatible with the popular MPLAB ICD 2 system (RJ11) or with the new high speed, noise tolerant, low-voltage differential signal (LVDS) interconnection (CAT5).

MPLAB REAL ICE is field upgradeable through future firmware downloads in MPLAB IDE. In upcoming releases of MPLAB IDE, new devices will be supported, and new features will be added, such as software breakpoints and assembly code trace. MPLAB REAL ICE offers significant advantages over competitive emulators including low-cost, full-speed emulation, real-time variable watches, trace analysis, complex breakpoints, a ruggedized probe interface and long (up to three meters) interconnection cables.

## 18.9 MPLAB ICD 2 In-Circuit Debugger

Microchip's In-Circuit Debugger, MPLAB ICD 2, is a powerful, low-cost, run-time development tool, connecting to the host PC via an RS-232 or high-speed USB interface. This tool is based on the Flash PIC MCUs and can be used to develop for these and other PIC MCUs and dsPIC DSCs. The MPLAB ICD 2 utilizes the in-circuit debugging capability built into the Flash devices. This feature, along with Microchip's In-Circuit Serial Programming™ (ICSP™) protocol, offers cost-effective, in-circuit Flash debugging from the graphical user interface of the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment. This enables a designer to develop and debug source code by setting breakpoints, single stepping and watching variables, and CPU STATUS and peripheral registers. Running at full speed enables testing hardware and applications in real time. MPLAB ICD 2 also serves as a development programmer for selected PIC devices.

## 18.10 MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer

The MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer is a universal, CE compliant device programmer with programmable voltage verification at VDDMIN and VDDMAX for maximum reliability. It features a large LCD display (128 x 64) for menus and error messages and a modular, detachable socket assembly to support various package types. The ICSP™ cable assembly is included as a standard item. In Stand-Alone mode, the MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer can read, verify and program PIC devices without a PC connection. It can also set code protection in this mode. The MPLAB PM3 connects to the host PC via an RS-232 or USB cable. The MPLAB PM3 has high-speed communications and optimized algorithms for quick programming of large memory devices and incorporates an SD/MMC card for file storage and secure data applications.

## 18.11 PICSTART Plus Development Programmer

The PICSTART Plus Development Programmer is an easy-to-use, low-cost, prototype programmer. It connects to the PC via a COM (RS-232) port. MPLAB Integrated Development Environment software makes using the programmer simple and efficient. The PICSTART Plus Development Programmer supports most PIC devices in DIP packages up to 40 pins. Larger pin count devices, such as the PIC16C92X and PIC17C76X, may be supported with an adapter socket. The PICSTART Plus Development Programmer is CE compliant.

## 18.12 PICkit 2 Development Programmer

The PICkit™ 2 Development Programmer is a low-cost programmer and selected Flash device debugger with an easy-to-use interface for programming many of Microchip's baseline, mid-range and PIC18F families of Flash memory microcontrollers. The PICkit 2 Starter Kit includes a prototyping development board, twelve sequential lessons, software and HI-TECH's PICC™ Lite C compiler, and is designed to help get up to speed quickly using PIC® microcontrollers. The kit provides everything needed to program, evaluate and develop applications using Microchip's powerful, mid-range Flash memory family of microcontrollers.

## 18.13 Demonstration, Development and Evaluation Boards

A wide variety of demonstration, development and evaluation boards for various PIC MCUs and dsPIC DSCs allows quick application development on fully functional systems. Most boards include prototyping areas for adding custom circuitry and provide application firmware and source code for examination and modification.

The boards support a variety of features, including LEDs, temperature sensors, switches, speakers, RS-232 interfaces, LCD displays, potentiometers and additional EEPROM memory.

The demonstration and development boards can be used in teaching environments, for prototyping custom circuits and for learning about various microcontroller applications.

In addition to the PICDEM™ and dsPICDEM™ demonstration/development board series of circuits, Microchip has a line of evaluation kits and demonstration software for analog filter design, KEELOQ® security ICs, CAN, IrDA®, PowerSmart® battery management, SEEVAL® evaluation system, Sigma-Delta ADC, flow rate sensing, plus many more.

Check the Microchip web page ([www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com)) and the latest "Product Selector Guide" (DS00148) for the complete list of demonstration, development and evaluation kits.



## 19.0 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Absolute Maximum Ratings<sup>(†)</sup>

|                                                                                         |                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Ambient temperature under bias .....                                                    | -40° to +125°C        |
| Storage temperature .....                                                               | -65°C to +150°C       |
| Voltage on VDD with respect to VSS .....                                                | -0.3V to +6.5V        |
| Voltage on $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ with respect to VSS .....                           | -0.3V to +13.5V       |
| Voltage on all other pins with respect to VSS .....                                     | -0.3V to (VDD + 0.3V) |
| Total power dissipation <sup>(1)</sup> .....                                            | 800 mW                |
| Maximum current out of VSS pin .....                                                    | 95 mA                 |
| Maximum current into VDD pin .....                                                      | 95 mA                 |
| Input clamp current, I <sub>IK</sub> (V <sub>I</sub> < 0 or V <sub>I</sub> > VDD).....  | ±20 mA                |
| Output clamp current, I <sub>OK</sub> (V <sub>O</sub> < 0 or V <sub>O</sub> > VDD)..... | ±20 mA                |
| Maximum output current sunk by any I/O pin.....                                         | 25 mA                 |
| Maximum output current sourced by any I/O pin .....                                     | 25 mA                 |
| Maximum current sourced by all ports (combined) .....                                   | 90 mA                 |
| Maximum current sunk by all ports (combined) .....                                      | 90 mA                 |

**Note 1:** Power dissipation is calculated as follows:  $P_{DIS} = V_{DD} \times \{I_{DD} - \sum I_{OH}\} + \sum \{(V_{DD} - V_{OH}) \times I_{OH}\} + \sum (V_{OL} \times I_{OL})$ .

**2:** PORTD and PORTE are not implemented in PIC16F913/916 devices.

† NOTICE: Stresses above those listed under “Absolute Maximum Ratings” may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at those or any other conditions above those indicated in the operation listings of this specification is not implied. Exposure to maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 19-1: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH,  $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$**

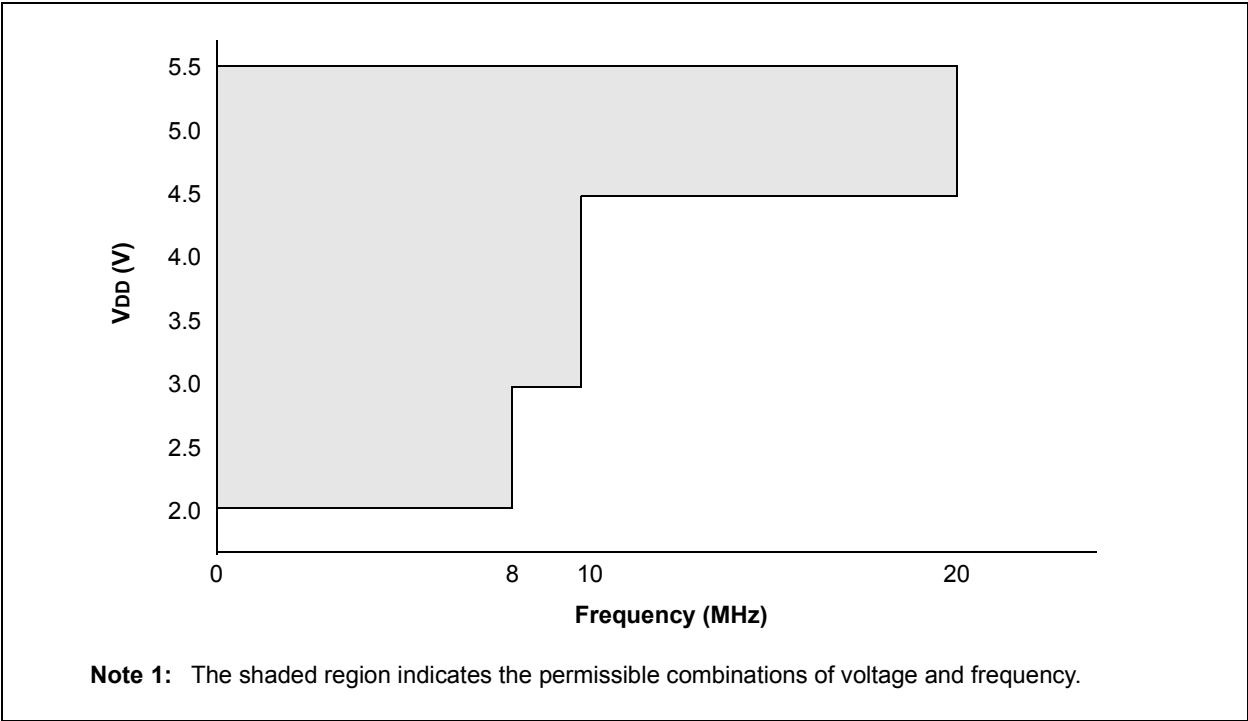
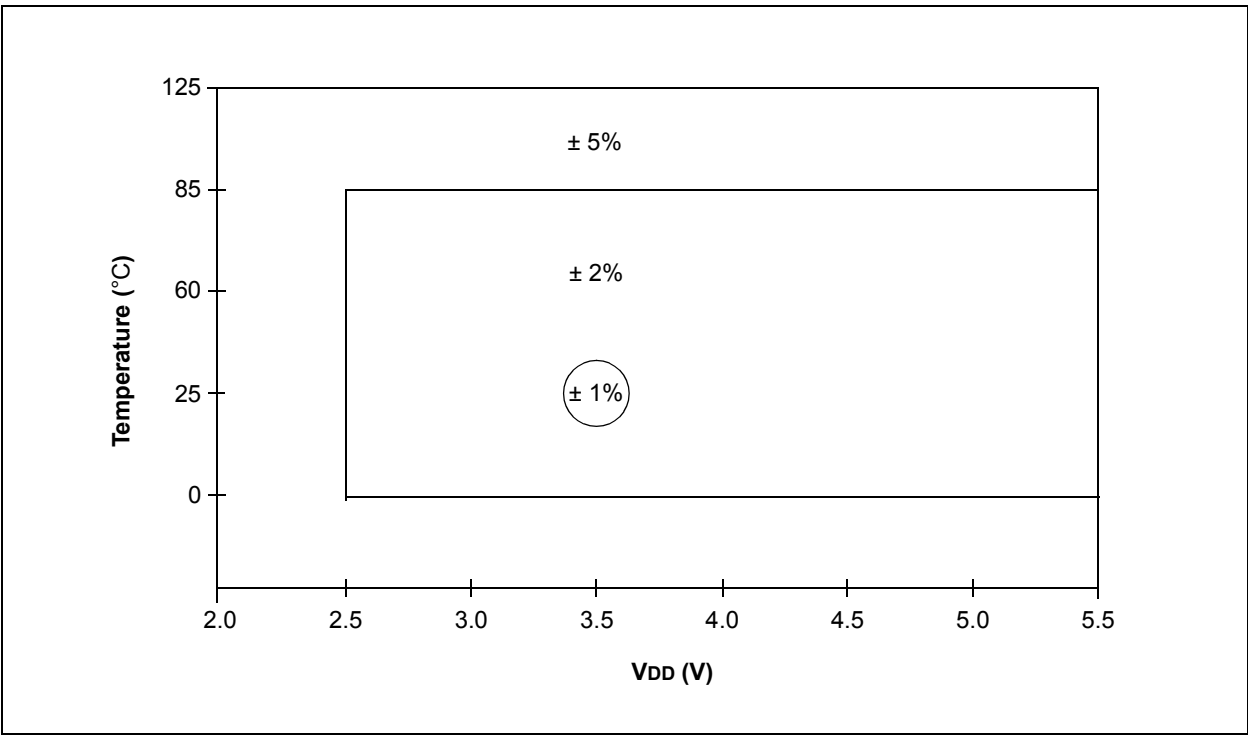


**FIGURE 19-2: HFINTOSC FREQUENCY ACCURACY OVER DEVICE V<sub>DD</sub> AND TEMPERATURE**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 19.1 DC Characteristics: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946-I (Industrial) PIC16F913/914/916/917/946-E (Extended)

| DC CHARACTERISTICS     |      |                                                                   | Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)                                     |                  |                          |                  |                                                                              |
|------------------------|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                        |      |                                                                   | Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended |                  |                          |                  |                                                                              |
| Param No.              | Sym. | Characteristic                                                    | Min.                                                                                        | Typ†             | Max.                     | Units            | Conditions                                                                   |
| D001<br>D001C<br>D001D | VDD  | <b>Supply Voltage</b>                                             | 2.0<br>2.0<br>3.0<br>4.5                                                                    | —<br>—<br>—<br>— | 5.5<br>5.5<br>5.5<br>5.5 | V<br>V<br>V<br>V | Fosc ≤ 8 MHz: HFINTOSC, EC<br>Fosc ≤ 4 MHz<br>Fosc ≤ 10 MHz<br>Fosc ≤ 20 MHz |
| D002*                  | VDR  | <b>RAM Data Retention Voltage<sup>(1)</sup></b>                   | 1.5                                                                                         | —                | —                        | V                | Device in Sleep mode                                                         |
| D003                   | VPOR | <b>VDD Start Voltage</b> to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal | —                                                                                           | VSS              | —                        | V                | See Section 16.2.1 “Power-on Reset (POR)” for details.                       |
| D004*                  | SVDD | <b>VDD Rise Rate</b> to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal     | 0.05                                                                                        | —                | —                        | V/ms             | See Section 16.2.1 “Power-on Reset (POR)” for details.                       |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in “Typ” column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**Note 1:** This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered in Sleep mode without losing RAM data.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 19.2 DC Characteristics: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946-I (Industrial) PIC16F913/914/916/917/946-E (Extended)

| DC CHARACTERISTICS |                                        | Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for extended |      |      |       |            |                           |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------|-------|------------|---------------------------|
| Param No.          | Device Characteristics                 | Min.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Typ† | Max. | Units | Conditions |                           |
|                    |                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |      |      |       | VDD        | Note                      |
| D010               | Supply Current (IDD) <sup>(1, 2)</sup> | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 13   | 19   | μA    | 2.0        | Fosc = 32 kHz             |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 22   | 30   | μA    | 3.0        | LP Oscillator mode        |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 33   | 60   | μA    | 5.0        |                           |
| D011*              |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 180  | 250  | μA    | 2.0        | Fosc = 1 MHz              |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 290  | 400  | μA    | 3.0        | XT Oscillator mode        |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 490  | 650  | μA    | 5.0        |                           |
| D012               |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 280  | 380  | μA    | 2.0        | Fosc = 4 MHz              |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 480  | 670  | μA    | 3.0        | XT Oscillator mode        |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 0.9  | 1.4  | mA    | 5.0        |                           |
| D013*              |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 170  | 295  | μA    | 2.0        | Fosc = 1 MHz              |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 280  | 480  | μA    | 3.0        | EC Oscillator mode        |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 470  | 690  | μA    | 5.0        |                           |
| D014               |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 290  | 450  | μA    | 2.0        | Fosc = 4 MHz              |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 490  | 720  | μA    | 3.0        | EC Oscillator mode        |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 0.85 | 1.3  | mA    | 5.0        |                           |
| D015               |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 8    | 20   | μA    | 2.0        | Fosc = 31 kHz             |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 16   | 40   | μA    | 3.0        | LFINTOSC mode             |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 31   | 65   | μA    | 5.0        |                           |
| D016*              |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 416  | 520  | μA    | 2.0        | Fosc = 4 MHz              |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 640  | 840  | μA    | 3.0        | HFINTOSC mode             |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 1.13 | 1.6  | mA    | 5.0        |                           |
| D017               |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 0.65 | 0.9  | mA    | 2.0        | Fosc = 8 MHz              |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 1.01 | 1.3  | mA    | 3.0        | HFINTOSC mode             |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 1.86 | 2.3  | mA    | 5.0        |                           |
| D018               |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 340  | 580  | μA    | 2.0        | Fosc = 4 MHz              |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 550  | 900  | μA    | 3.0        | EXTRC mode <sup>(3)</sup> |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 0.92 | 1.4  | mA    | 5.0        |                           |
| D019               |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 3.8  | 4.7  | mA    | 4.5        | Fosc = 20 MHz             |
|                    |                                        | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 4.0  | 4.8  | mA    | 5.0        | HS Oscillator mode        |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

- Note 1:** The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are: OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD; MCLR = VDD; WDT disabled.
- 2:** The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
- 3:** For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be extended by the formula  $I_R = V_{DD}/2R_{EXT}$  (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 19.3 DC Characteristics: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946-I (Industrial)

| DC CHARACTERISTICS |                                                          | Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for industrial |      |      |       |            |                                                              |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------|-------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Param No.          | Device Characteristics                                   | Min.                                                                                                                                                    | Typ† | Max. | Units | Conditions |                                                              |
|                    |                                                          |                                                                                                                                                         |      |      |       | VDD        | Note                                                         |
| D020               | Power-down Base Current(I <sub>PD</sub> ) <sup>(2)</sup> | —                                                                                                                                                       | 0.05 | 1.2  | μA    | 2.0        | WDT, BOR, Comparators, VREF and T1OSC disabled               |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 0.15 | 1.5  | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 0.35 | 1.8  | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 150  | 500  | nA    | 3.0        | $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +25^{\circ}\text{C}$      |
| D021               |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 1.0  | 2.2  | μA    | 2.0        | WDT Current <sup>(1)</sup>                                   |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 2.0  | 4.0  | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 3.0  | 7.0  | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D022A              |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 42   | 60   | μA    | 3.0        | BOR Current <sup>(1)</sup>                                   |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 85   | 122  | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D022B              |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 22   | 28   | μA    | 2.0        | PLVD Current                                                 |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 25   | 35   | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 33   | 45   | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D023               |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 32   | 45   | μA    | 2.0        | Comparator Current <sup>(1)</sup> , both comparators enabled |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 60   | 78   | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 120  | 160  | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D024               |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 30   | 36   | μA    | 2.0        | CVREF Current <sup>(1)</sup> (high range)                    |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 45   | 55   | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 75   | 95   | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D025*              |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 39   | 47   | μA    | 2.0        | CVREF Current <sup>(1)</sup> (low range)                     |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 59   | 72   | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 98   | 124  | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D026               |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 2.0  | 5.0  | μA    | 2.0        | T1OSC Current <sup>(1)</sup> , 32.768 kHz                    |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 2.5  | 5.5  | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 3.0  | 7.0  | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D027               |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 0.30 | 1.6  | μA    | 3.0        | A/D Current <sup>(1)</sup> , no conversion in progress       |
|                    |                                                          | —                                                                                                                                                       | 0.36 | 1.9  | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

- Note 1:** The peripheral current is the sum of the base I<sub>DD</sub> or I<sub>PD</sub> and the additional current consumed when this peripheral is enabled. The peripheral Δ current can be determined by subtracting the base I<sub>DD</sub> or I<sub>PD</sub> current from this limit. Max values should be used when calculating total current consumption.
- 2:** The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 19.4 DC Characteristics: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946-E (Extended)

| DC CHARACTERISTICS |                                              | Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature    -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended |      |      |       |            |                                                              |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------|-------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Param No.          | Device Characteristics                       | Min.                                                                                                                 | Typ† | Max. | Units | Conditions |                                                              |
|                    |                                              |                                                                                                                      |      |      |       | VDD        | Note                                                         |
| D020E              | Power-down Base Current (IPD) <sup>(2)</sup> | —                                                                                                                    | 0.05 | 9    | μA    | 2.0        | WDT, BOR, Comparators, VREF and T1OSC disabled               |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 0.15 | 11   | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 0.35 | 15   | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D021E              |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 1    | 28   | μA    | 2.0        | WDT Current <sup>(1)</sup>                                   |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 2    | 30   | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 3    | 35   | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D022E              |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 42   | 65   | μA    | 3.0        | BOR Current <sup>(1)</sup>                                   |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 85   | 127  | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D022B              |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 22   | 48   | μA    | 2.0        | PLVD Current                                                 |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 25   | 55   | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 33   | 65   | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D023E              |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 32   | 45   | μA    | 2.0        | Comparator Current <sup>(1)</sup> , both comparators enabled |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 60   | 78   | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 120  | 160  | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D024E              |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 30   | 70   | μA    | 2.0        | CVREF Current <sup>(1)</sup> (high range)                    |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 45   | 90   | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 75   | 120  | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D025E*             |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 39   | 91   | μA    | 2.0        | CVREF Current <sup>(1)</sup> (low range)                     |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 59   | 117  | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 98   | 156  | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D026E              |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 3.5  | 18   | μA    | 2.0        | T1OSC Current <sup>(1)</sup> , 32.768 kHz                    |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 4    | 21   | μA    | 3.0        |                                                              |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 5    | 24   | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |
| D027E              |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 0.30 | 12   | μA    | 3.0        | A/D Current <sup>(1)</sup> , no conversion in progress       |
|                    |                                              | —                                                                                                                    | 0.36 | 16   | μA    | 5.0        |                                                              |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

- Note 1:** The peripheral current is the sum of the base IDD or IPD and the additional current consumed when this peripheral is enabled. The peripheral Δ current can be determined by subtracting the base IDD or IPD current from this limit. Max values should be used when calculating total current consumption.
- 2:** The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 19.5 DC Characteristics: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946-I (Industrial) PIC16F913/914/916/917/946-E (Extended)

| DC CHARACTERISTICS |                  |                                                            | Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)                                                                                                               |           |                 |               |                                                                               |
|--------------------|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                    |                  |                                                            | Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ for industrial<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ for extended |           |                 |               |                                                                               |
| Param No.          | Sym.             | Characteristic                                             | Min.                                                                                                                                                                  | Typ†      | Max.            | Units         | Conditions                                                                    |
| D030               | V <sub>IL</sub>  | <b>Input Low Voltage</b><br>I/O Port:<br>with TTL buffer   | V <sub>SS</sub>                                                                                                                                                       | —         | 0.8             | V             | $4.5\text{V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{V}$                                    |
| D030A              |                  |                                                            | V <sub>SS</sub>                                                                                                                                                       | —         | $0.15 V_{DD}$   | V             | $2.0\text{V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 4.5\text{V}$                                    |
| D031               |                  | with Schmitt Trigger buffer                                | V <sub>SS</sub>                                                                                                                                                       | —         | $0.2 V_{DD}$    | V             | $2.0\text{V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{V}$                                    |
| D032               |                  | <u>MCLR</u> , OSC1 (RC mode) <sup>(1)</sup>                | V <sub>SS</sub>                                                                                                                                                       | —         | $0.2 V_{DD}$    | V             |                                                                               |
| D033               |                  | OSC1 (XT mode)                                             | V <sub>SS</sub>                                                                                                                                                       | —         | 0.3             | V             |                                                                               |
| D033A              |                  | OSC1 (HS mode)                                             | V <sub>SS</sub>                                                                                                                                                       | —         | $0.3 V_{DD}$    | V             |                                                                               |
| D040               | V <sub>IH</sub>  | <b>Input High Voltage</b><br>I/O ports:<br>with TTL buffer | 2.0                                                                                                                                                                   | —         | V <sub>DD</sub> | V             | $4.5\text{V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{V}$                                    |
| D040A              |                  |                                                            | $0.25 V_{DD} + 0.8$                                                                                                                                                   | —         | V <sub>DD</sub> | V             | $2.0\text{V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 4.5\text{V}$                                    |
| D041               |                  | with Schmitt Trigger buffer                                | $0.8 V_{DD}$                                                                                                                                                          | —         | V <sub>DD</sub> | V             | $2.0\text{V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{V}$                                    |
| D042               |                  | <u>MCLR</u>                                                | $0.8 V_{DD}$                                                                                                                                                          | —         | V <sub>DD</sub> | V             |                                                                               |
| D043               |                  | OSC1 (XT mode)                                             | 1.6                                                                                                                                                                   | —         | V <sub>DD</sub> | V             |                                                                               |
| D043A              |                  | OSC1 (HS mode)                                             | $0.7 V_{DD}$                                                                                                                                                          | —         | V <sub>DD</sub> | V             |                                                                               |
| D043B              |                  | OSC1 (RC mode)                                             | $0.9 V_{DD}$                                                                                                                                                          | —         | V <sub>DD</sub> | V             | (Note 1)                                                                      |
| D060               | I <sub>IL</sub>  | <b>Input Leakage Current</b> <sup>(2)</sup><br>I/O ports   | —                                                                                                                                                                     | $\pm 0.1$ | $\pm 1$         | $\mu\text{A}$ | $V_{SS} \leq V_{PIN} \leq V_{DD}$ ,<br>Pin at high-impedance                  |
| D061               |                  | <u>MCLR</u> <sup>(3)</sup>                                 | —                                                                                                                                                                     | $\pm 0.1$ | $\pm 5$         | $\mu\text{A}$ | $V_{SS} \leq V_{PIN} \leq V_{DD}$                                             |
| D063               |                  | OSC1                                                       | —                                                                                                                                                                     | $\pm 0.1$ | $\pm 5$         | $\mu\text{A}$ | $V_{SS} \leq V_{PIN} \leq V_{DD}$ , XT, HS and<br>LP oscillator configuration |
| D070*              | I <sub>PUR</sub> | PORTB Weak Pull-up Current                                 | 50                                                                                                                                                                    | 250       | 400             | $\mu\text{A}$ | $V_{DD} = 5.0\text{V}$ , $V_{PIN} = V_{SS}$                                   |
| D080               | V <sub>OL</sub>  | <b>Output Low Voltage</b> <sup>(5)</sup><br>I/O ports      | —                                                                                                                                                                     | —         | 0.6             | V             | I <sub>OL</sub> = 8.5 mA, $V_{DD} = 4.5\text{V}$ (Ind.)                       |
| D090               | V <sub>OH</sub>  | <b>Output High Voltage</b> <sup>(5)</sup><br>I/O ports     | $V_{DD} - 0.7$                                                                                                                                                        | —         | —               | V             | I <sub>OH</sub> = -3.0 mA, $V_{DD} = 4.5\text{V}$ (Ind.)                      |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**Note 1:** In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKIN pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended to use an external clock in RC mode.

**2:** Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

**3:** The leakage current on the MCLR pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

**4:** See **Section 13.0 "Data EEPROM and Flash Program Memory Control"** for additional information.

**5:** Including OSC2 in CLKOUT mode.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 19.5 DC Characteristics: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946-I (Industrial) PIC16F913/914/916/917/946-E (Extended) (Continued)

| DC CHARACTERISTICS |       |                                                                  | Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial<br>-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended |      |      |       |                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------|-------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Param No.          | Sym.  | Characteristic                                                   | Min.                                                                                                                                                   | Typ† | Max. | Units | Conditions                                                                                                              |
| D101*              | COSC2 | <b>Capacitive Loading Specs on Output Pins</b><br>OSC2 pin       | —                                                                                                                                                      | —    | 15   | pF    | In XT, HS and LP modes when external clock is used to drive OSC1                                                        |
| D101A*             | CIO   | All I/O pins                                                     | —                                                                                                                                                      | —    | 50   | pF    |                                                                                                                         |
| D120               | ED    | <b>Data EEPROM Memory</b><br>Byte Endurance                      | 100K                                                                                                                                                   | 1M   | —    | E/W   | -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C<br>+85°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C<br>Using EECON1 to read/write<br>V <sub>MIN</sub> = Minimum operating voltage |
| D120A              | ED    | Byte Endurance                                                   | 10K                                                                                                                                                    | 100K | —    | E/W   |                                                                                                                         |
| D121               | VDRW  | VDD for Read/Write                                               | V <sub>MIN</sub>                                                                                                                                       | —    | 5.5  | V     |                                                                                                                         |
| D122               | TDEW  | Erase/Write Cycle Time                                           | —                                                                                                                                                      | 5    | 6    | ms    |                                                                                                                         |
| D123               | TRETD | Characteristic Retention                                         | 40                                                                                                                                                     | —    | —    | Year  |                                                                                                                         |
| D124               | TREF  | Number of Total Erase/Write Cycles before Refresh <sup>(4)</sup> | 1M                                                                                                                                                     | 10M  | —    | E/W   |                                                                                                                         |
| D130               | EP    | <b>Program Flash Memory</b><br>Cell Endurance                    | 10K                                                                                                                                                    | 100K | —    | E/W   | -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C<br>+85°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C<br>V <sub>MIN</sub> = Minimum operating voltage                               |
| D130A              | ED    | Cell Endurance                                                   | 1K                                                                                                                                                     | 10K  | —    | E/W   |                                                                                                                         |
| D131               | VPR   | VDD for Read                                                     | V <sub>MIN</sub>                                                                                                                                       | —    | 5.5  | V     |                                                                                                                         |
| D132               | VPEW  | VDD for Erase/Write                                              | 4.5                                                                                                                                                    | —    | 5.5  | V     |                                                                                                                         |
| D133               | TPEW  | Erase/Write cycle time                                           | —                                                                                                                                                      | —    | 3    | ms    |                                                                                                                         |
| D134               | TRETD | Characteristic Retention                                         | 40                                                                                                                                                     | —    | —    | Year  |                                                                                                                         |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

- Note 1:** In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKIN pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended to use an external clock in RC mode.
- 2:** Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.
- 3:** The leakage current on the MCLR pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.
- 4:** See **Section 13.0 "Data EEPROM and Flash Program Memory Control"** for additional information.
- 5:** Including OSC2 in CLKOUT mode.



## 19.6 Thermal Considerations

| Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)                        |                |                                           |      |                      |                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------|------|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ |                |                                           |      |                      |                                                                                      |
| Param No.                                                                      | Symbol         | Characteristic                            | Typ. | Units                | Conditions                                                                           |
| TH01                                                                           | $\theta_{JA}$  | Thermal Resistance<br>Junction to Ambient | 60.0 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 28-pin PDIP package                                                                  |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 80.0 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 28-pin SOIC package                                                                  |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 90.0 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 28-pin SSOP package                                                                  |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 27.5 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 28-pin QFN 6x6 mm package                                                            |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 47.2 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 40-pin PDIP package                                                                  |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 46.0 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 44-pin TQFP package                                                                  |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 24.4 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 44-pin QFN 8x8 mm package                                                            |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 77.0 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 64-pin TQFP package                                                                  |
| TH02                                                                           | $\theta_{JC}$  | Thermal Resistance<br>Junction to Case    | 31.4 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 28-pin PDIP package                                                                  |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 24.0 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 28-pin SOIC package                                                                  |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 24.0 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 28-pin SSOP package                                                                  |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 20.0 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 28-pin QFN 6x6 mm package                                                            |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 24.7 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 40-pin PDIP package                                                                  |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 14.5 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 44-pin TQFP package                                                                  |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 20.0 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 44-pin QFN 8x8 mm package                                                            |
|                                                                                |                |                                           | 24.4 | $^{\circ}\text{C/W}$ | 64-pin TQFP package                                                                  |
| TH03                                                                           | $T_J$          | Junction Temperature                      | 150  | $^{\circ}\text{C}$   | For derated power calculations                                                       |
| TH04                                                                           | PD             | Power Dissipation                         | —    | W                    | $PD = P_{INTERNAL} + P_{I/O}$                                                        |
| TH05                                                                           | $P_{INTERNAL}$ | Internal Power Dissipation                | —    | W                    | $P_{INTERNAL} = I_{DD} \times V_{DD}$<br><b>(NOTE 1)</b>                             |
| TH06                                                                           | $P_{I/O}$      | I/O Power Dissipation                     | —    | W                    | $P_{I/O} = \Sigma (I_{OL} \times V_{OL}) + \Sigma (I_{OH} \times (V_{DD} - V_{OH}))$ |
| TH07                                                                           | $P_{DER}$      | Derated Power                             | —    | W                    | $P_{DER} = (T_J - T_A) / \theta_{JA}$<br><b>(NOTE 2, 3)</b>                          |

**Note 1:**  $I_{DD}$  is current to run the chip alone without driving any load on the output pins.

**2:**  $T_A$  = Ambient Temperature.

**3:** Maximum allowable power dissipation is the lower value of either the absolute maximum total power dissipation or derated power ( $P_{DER}$ ).

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 19.7 Timing Parameter Symbolology

The timing parameter symbols have been created with one of the following formats:

- 1. TppS2ppS
- 2. TppS

| T |           | T |      |
|---|-----------|---|------|
| F | Frequency | T | Time |

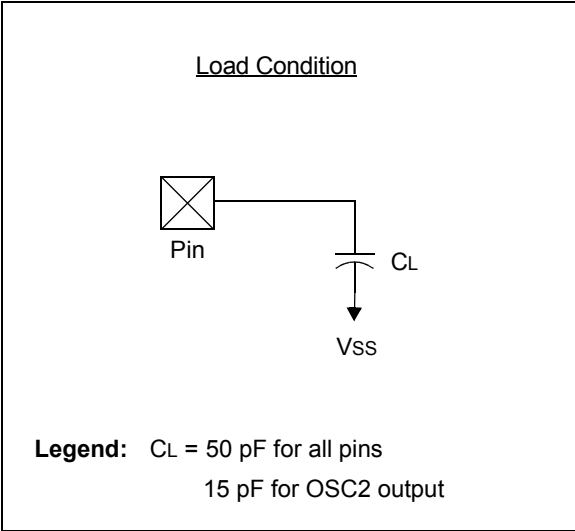
Lowercase letters (pp) and their meanings:

| pp |                   |     |                                    |
|----|-------------------|-----|------------------------------------|
| cc | CCP1              | osc | OSC1                               |
| ck | CLKOUT            | rd  | $\overline{RD}$                    |
| cs | $\overline{CS}$   | rw  | $\overline{RD}$ or $\overline{WR}$ |
| di | SDI               | sc  | SCK                                |
| do | SDO               | ss  | $\overline{SS}$                    |
| dt | Data in           | t0  | T0CKI                              |
| io | I/O port          | t1  | T1CKI                              |
| mc | $\overline{MCLR}$ | wr  | $\overline{WR}$                    |

Uppercase letters and their meanings:

| S |                          |   |                |
|---|--------------------------|---|----------------|
| F | Fall                     | P | Period         |
| H | High                     | R | Rise           |
| I | Invalid (High-impedance) | V | Valid          |
| L | Low                      | Z | High-impedance |

FIGURE 19-3: LOAD CONDITIONS



## 19.8 AC Characteristics: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946 (Industrial, Extended)

**FIGURE 19-4: CLOCK TIMING**

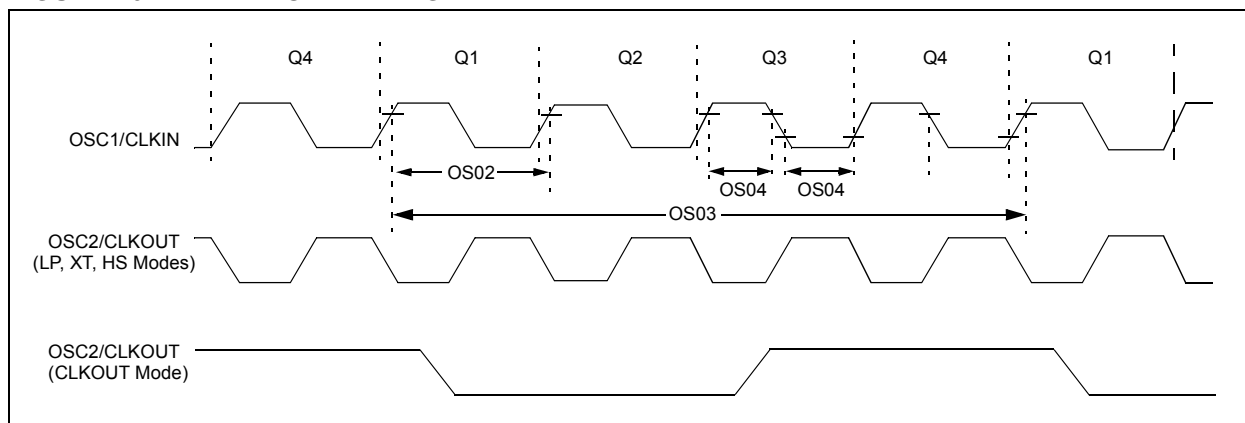


**TABLE 19-1: CLOCK OSCILLATOR TIMING REQUIREMENTS**

| Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)                        |            |                                          |      |        |        |       |                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------------------------------------|------|--------|--------|-------|--------------------|
| Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ |            |                                          |      |        |        |       |                    |
| Param No.                                                                      | Sym.       | Characteristic                           | Min. | Typ†   | Max.   | Units | Conditions         |
| OS01                                                                           | Fosc       | External CLKIN Frequency <sup>(1)</sup>  | DC   | —      | 37     | kHz   | LP Oscillator mode |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | DC   | —      | 4      | MHz   | XT Oscillator mode |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | DC   | —      | 20     | MHz   | HS Oscillator mode |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | DC   | —      | 20     | MHz   | EC Oscillator mode |
|                                                                                |            | Oscillator Frequency <sup>(1)</sup>      | —    | 32.768 | —      | kHz   | LP Oscillator mode |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | 0.1  | —      | 4      | MHz   | XT Oscillator mode |
| OS02                                                                           | Tosc       | External CLKIN Period <sup>(1)</sup>     | 27   | —      | ∞      | μs    | LP Oscillator mode |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | 250  | —      | ∞      | ns    | XT Oscillator mode |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | 50   | —      | ∞      | ns    | HS Oscillator mode |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | 50   | —      | ∞      | ns    | EC Oscillator mode |
|                                                                                |            | Oscillator Period <sup>(1)</sup>         | —    | 30.5   | —      | μs    | LP Oscillator mode |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | 250  | —      | 10,000 | ns    | XT Oscillator mode |
| OS03                                                                           | Tcy        | Instruction Cycle Time <sup>(1)</sup>    | 50   | —      | 1,000  | ns    | HS Oscillator mode |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | 250  | —      | —      | ns    | RC Oscillator mode |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | 200  | Tcy    | DC     | ns    | Tcy = 4/Fosc       |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | 200  | Tcy    | DC     | ns    | Tcy = 4/Fosc       |
| OS04*                                                                          | TosH, TosL | External CLKIN High, External CLKIN Low  | 2    | —      | —      | μs    | LP oscillator      |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | 100  | —      | —      | ns    | XT oscillator      |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | 20   | —      | —      | ns    | HS oscillator      |
| OS05*                                                                          | TosR, TosF | External CLKIN Rise, External CLKIN Fall | 0    | —      | ∞      | ns    | LP oscillator      |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | 0    | —      | ∞      | ns    | XT oscillator      |
|                                                                                |            |                                          | 0    | —      | ∞      | ns    | HS oscillator      |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**Note 1:** Instruction cycle period (Tcy) equals four times the input oscillator time base period. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type under standard operating conditions with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at "min" values with an external clock applied to OSC1 pin. When an external clock input is used, the "max" cycle time limit is "DC" (no clock) for all devices.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 19-2: OSCILLATOR PARAMETERS**

| Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ |            |                                                        |                 |      |      |      |               |                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------|------|------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Param No.                                                                                                                                 | Sym.       | Characteristic                                         | Freq. Tolerance | Min. | Typ† | Max. | Units         | Conditions                                                                                                                                                                   |
| OS06                                                                                                                                      | TWARM      | Internal Oscillator Switch when running <sup>(3)</sup> | —               | —    | —    | 2    | TOSC          | Slowest clock                                                                                                                                                                |
| OS07                                                                                                                                      | Tsc        | Fail-Safe Sample Clock Period <sup>(1)</sup>           | —               | —    | 21   | —    | ms            | LFINTOSC/64                                                                                                                                                                  |
| OS08                                                                                                                                      | HFOSC      | Internal Calibrated HFINTOSC Frequency <sup>(2)</sup>  | $\pm 1\%$       | 7.92 | 8.0  | 8.08 | MHz           | $V_{DD} = 3.5\text{V}$ , $25^{\circ}\text{C}$                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                           |            |                                                        | $\pm 2\%$       | 7.84 | 8.0  | 8.16 | MHz           | $2.5\text{V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{V}$ , $0^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                                           |            |                                                        | $\pm 5\%$       | 7.60 | 8.0  | 8.40 | MHz           | $2.0\text{V} \leq V_{DD} \leq 5.5\text{V}$ , $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +85^{\circ}\text{C}$ (Ind.), $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ (Ext.) |
| OS09*                                                                                                                                     | LFOSC      | Internal Uncalibrated LFINTOSC Frequency               | —               | 15   | 31   | 45   | kHz           |                                                                                                                                                                              |
| OS10*                                                                                                                                     | TOSC<br>ST | HFINTOSC Oscillator Wake-up from Sleep Start-up Time   | —               | 5.5  | 12   | 24   | $\mu\text{s}$ | $V_{DD} = 2.0\text{V}$ , $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$                                                                                                      |
|                                                                                                                                           |            |                                                        | —               | 3.5  | 7    | 14   | $\mu\text{s}$ | $V_{DD} = 3.0\text{V}$ , $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$                                                                                                      |
|                                                                                                                                           |            |                                                        | —               | 3    | 6    | 11   | $\mu\text{s}$ | $V_{DD} = 5.0\text{V}$ , $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$                                                                                                      |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V,  $25^{\circ}\text{C}$  unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

- Note 1:** Instruction cycle period (TCY) equals four times the input oscillator time base period. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type under standard operating conditions with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at "min" values with an external clock applied to the OSC1 pin. When an external clock input is used, the "max" cycle time limit is "DC" (no clock) for all devices.
- 2:** To ensure these oscillator frequency tolerances,  $V_{DD}$  and  $V_{SS}$  must be capacitively decoupled as close to the device as possible. 0.1  $\mu\text{F}$  and 0.01  $\mu\text{F}$  values in parallel are recommended.
- 3:** By design.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 19-5: CLKOUT AND I/O TIMING**

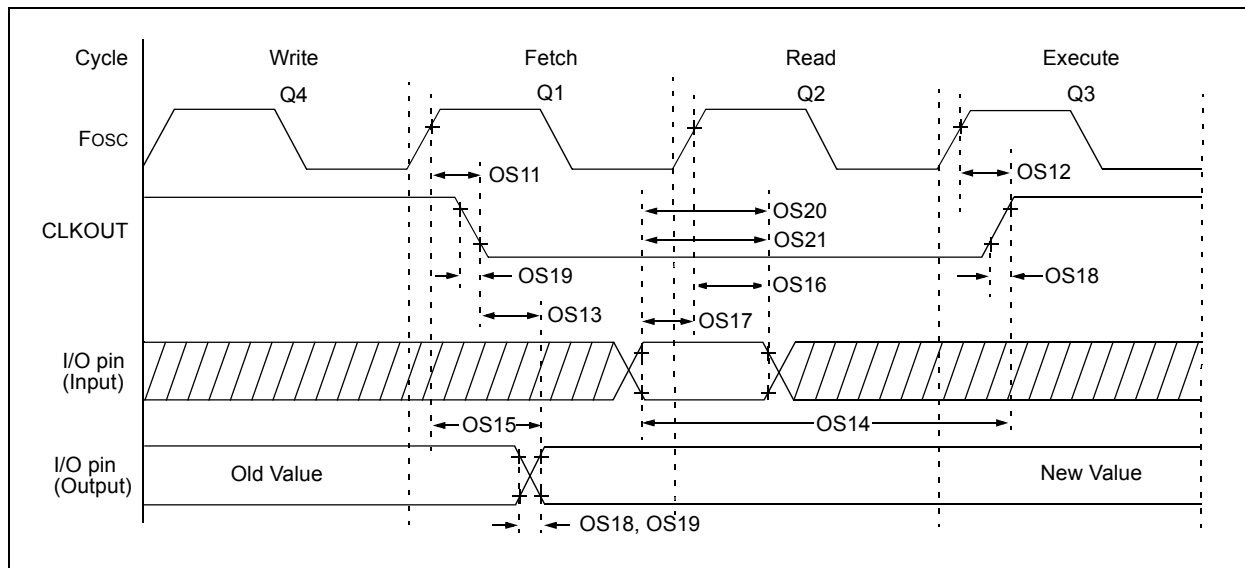


**TABLE 19-3: CLKOUT AND I/O TIMING PARAMETERS**

| Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ |          |                                                           |               |          |          |       |                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------|----------|-------|--------------------------|
| Param No.                                                                                                                                 | Symbol   | Characteristic                                            | Min.          | Typ†     | Max.     | Units | Conditions               |
| OS11                                                                                                                                      | TosH2ckL | Fosc↑ to CLKOUT↓ <sup>(1)</sup>                           | —             | —        | 70       | ns    | VDD = 5.0V               |
| OS12                                                                                                                                      | TosH2ckH | Fosc↑ to CLKOUT↑ <sup>(1)</sup>                           | —             | —        | 72       | ns    | VDD = 5.0V               |
| OS13                                                                                                                                      | TckL2ioV | CLKOUT↓ to Port out valid <sup>(1)</sup>                  | —             | —        | 20       | ns    |                          |
| OS14                                                                                                                                      | TioV2ckH | Port input valid before CLKOUT↑ <sup>(1)</sup>            | Tosc + 200 ns | —        | —        | ns    |                          |
| OS15*                                                                                                                                     | TosH2ioV | Fosc↑ (Q1 cycle) to Port out valid                        | —             | 50       | 70       | ns    | VDD = 5.0V               |
| OS16                                                                                                                                      | TosH2ioI | Fosc↑ (Q2 cycle) to Port input invalid (I/O in hold time) | 50            | —        | —        | ns    | VDD = 5.0V               |
| OS17                                                                                                                                      | TioV2osH | Port input valid to Fosc↑ (Q2 cycle) (I/O in setup time)  | 20            | —        | —        | ns    |                          |
| OS18                                                                                                                                      | TioR     | Port output rise time <sup>(2)</sup>                      | —             | 15<br>40 | 72<br>32 | ns    | VDD = 2.0V<br>VDD = 5.0V |
| OS19                                                                                                                                      | TioF     | Port output fall time <sup>(2)</sup>                      | —             | 28<br>15 | 55<br>30 | ns    | VDD = 2.0V<br>VDD = 5.0V |
| OS20*                                                                                                                                     | TINP     | INT pin input high or low time                            | 25            | —        | —        | ns    |                          |
| OS21*                                                                                                                                     | TRAP     | PORTA interrupt-on-change new input level time            | TCY           | —        | —        | ns    |                          |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated.

**Note 1:** Measurements are taken in RC mode where CLKOUT output is 4 x Tosc.

**2:** Includes OSC2 in CLKOUT mode.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 19-6: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER AND POWER-UP TIMER TIMING**

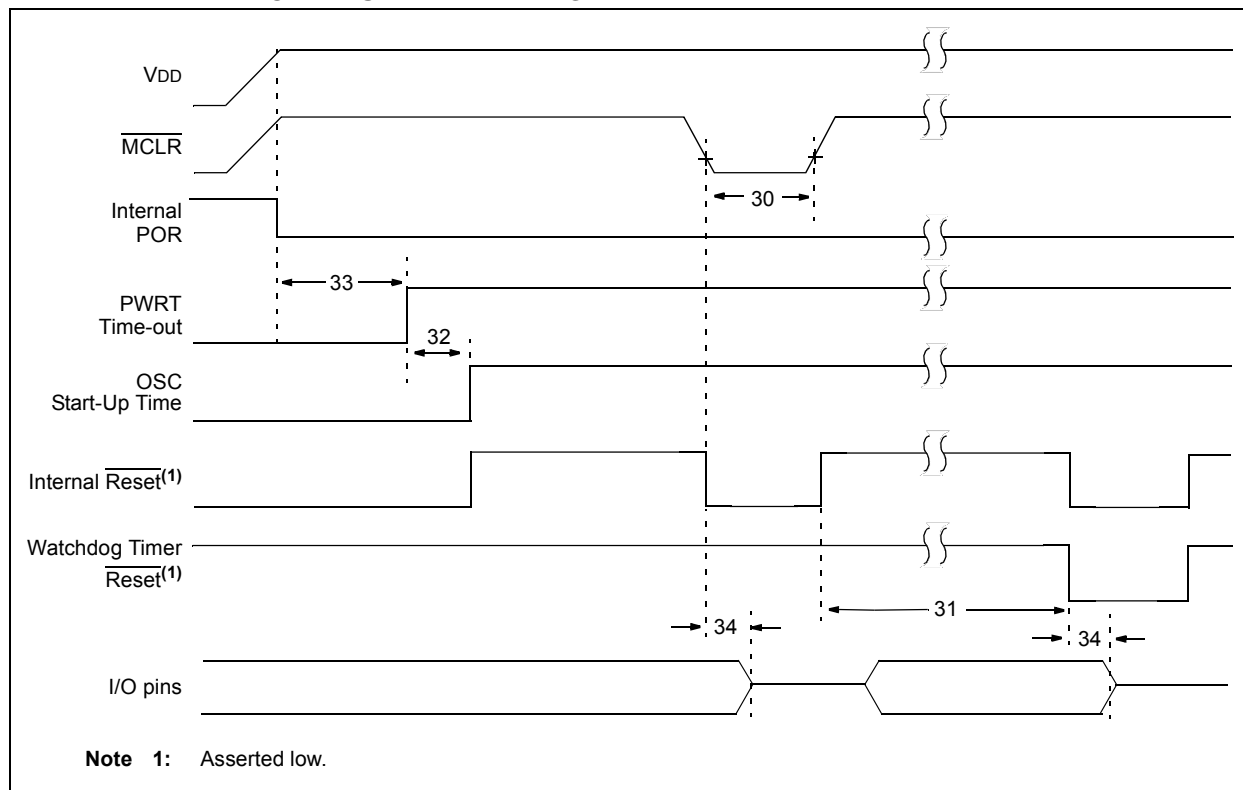
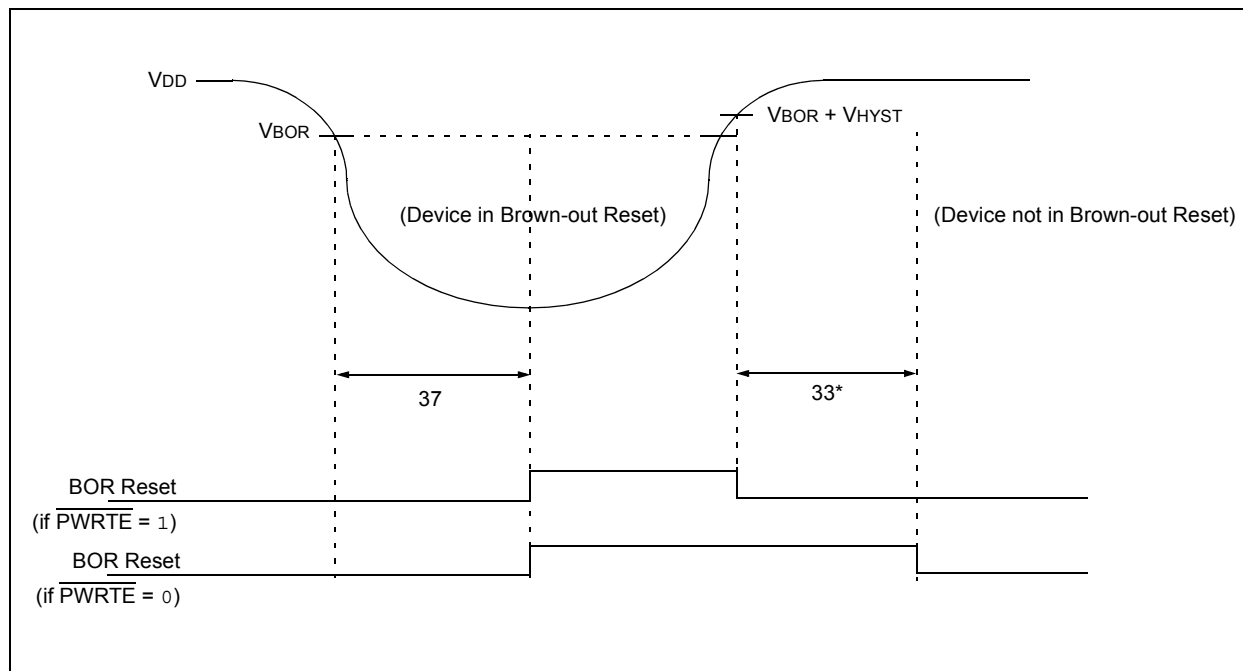


**FIGURE 19-7: BROWN-OUT RESET TIMING AND CHARACTERISTICS**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 19-4: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER, POWER-UP TIMER AND BROWN-OUT RESET PARAMETERS**

| Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ |        |                                                          |            |          |             |                                |                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|----------------------------------------------------------|------------|----------|-------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Param No.                                                                                                                                 | Symbol | Characteristic                                           | Min.       | Typ†     | Max.        | Units                          | Conditions                                                                                                              |
| 30                                                                                                                                        | TMCL   | MCLR Pulse Width (low)                                   | 2<br>5     | —<br>—   | —<br>—      | $\mu\text{s}$<br>$\mu\text{s}$ | $V_{DD} = 5\text{V}$ , $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$<br>$V_{DD} = 5\text{V}$                           |
| 31                                                                                                                                        | TWDT   | Watchdog Timer Time-out Period (No Prescaler)            | 10<br>10   | 16<br>16 | 29<br>31    | ms<br>ms                       | $V_{DD} = 5\text{V}$ , $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$<br>$V_{DD} = 5\text{V}$                           |
| 32                                                                                                                                        | TOST   | Oscillation Start-up Timer Period <sup>(1, 2)</sup>      | —          | 1024     | —           | T <sub>OSC</sub>               | (NOTE 3)                                                                                                                |
| 33*                                                                                                                                       | TPWRT  | Power-up Timer Period                                    | 40         | 65       | 140         | ms                             |                                                                                                                         |
| 34*                                                                                                                                       | TIOZ   | I/O High-impedance from MCLR Low or Watchdog Timer Reset | —          | —        | 2.0         | $\mu\text{s}$                  |                                                                                                                         |
| 35                                                                                                                                        | VBOR   | Brown-out Reset Voltage                                  | 2.0<br>2.0 | —<br>—   | 2.2<br>2.25 | V<br>V                         | $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+85^{\circ}\text{C}$ , (NOTE 4)<br>$-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ to $+125^{\circ}\text{C}$ , (NOTE 4) |
| 36*                                                                                                                                       | VHYS   | Brown-out Reset Hysteresis                               | —          | 50       | —           | mV                             |                                                                                                                         |
| 37*                                                                                                                                       | TBOR   | Brown-out Reset Minimum Detection Period                 | 100        | —        | —           | $\mu\text{s}$                  | $V_{DD} \leq V_{BOR}$                                                                                                   |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**Note 1:** Instruction cycle period (T<sub>CY</sub>) equals four times the input oscillator time base period. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type under standard operating conditions with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at "min" values with an external clock applied to the OSC1 pin. When an external clock input is used, the "max" cycle time limit is "DC" (no clock) for all devices.

**2:** By design.

**3:** Period of the slower clock.

**4:** To ensure these voltage tolerances, V<sub>DD</sub> and V<sub>SS</sub> must be capacitively decoupled as close to the device as possible. 0.1  $\mu\text{F}$  and 0.01  $\mu\text{F}$  values in parallel are recommended.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 19-8: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMINGS**

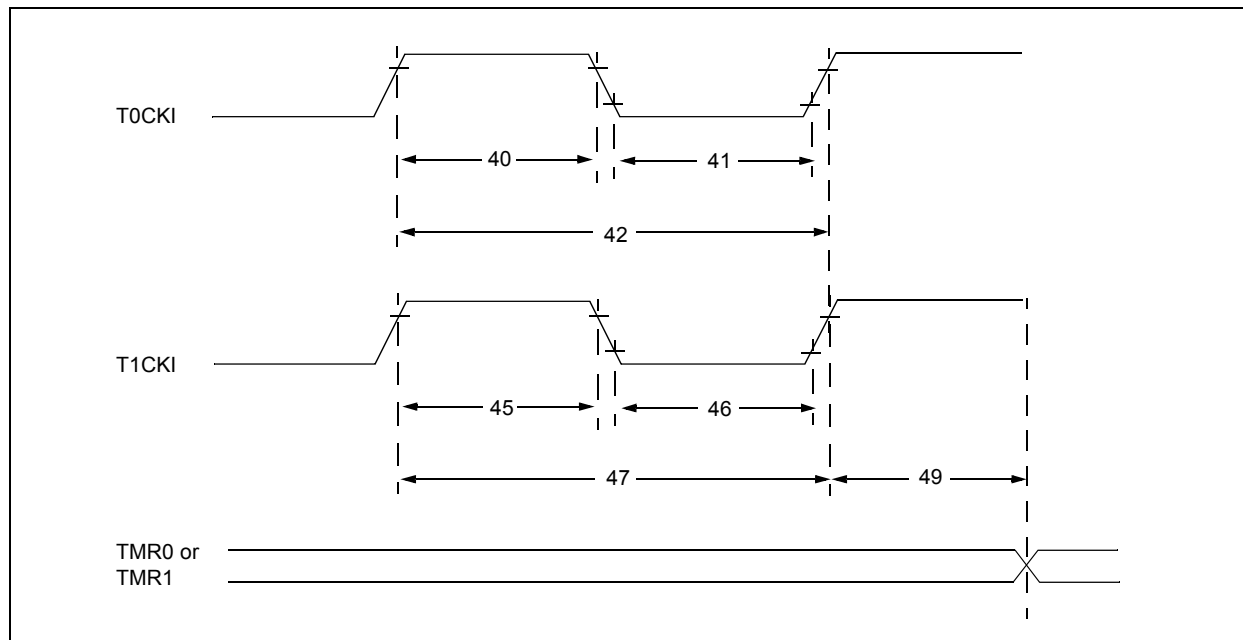


**TABLE 19-5: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK REQUIREMENTS**

| Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)                        |           |                                                                                     |                             |                                                |        |             |       |                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------|--------|-------------|-------|-------------------------------------|
| Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ |           |                                                                                     |                             |                                                |        |             |       |                                     |
| Param No.                                                                      | Symbol    | Characteristic                                                                      |                             | Min.                                           | Typ†   | Max.        | Units | Conditions                          |
| 40*                                                                            | Tt0H      | T0CKI High Pulse Width                                                              | No Prescaler                | $0.5 T_{CY} + 20$                              | —      | —           | ns    |                                     |
|                                                                                |           |                                                                                     | With Prescaler              | 10                                             | —      | —           | ns    |                                     |
| 41*                                                                            | Tt0L      | T0CKI Low Pulse Width                                                               | No Prescaler                | $0.5 T_{CY} + 20$                              | —      | —           | ns    |                                     |
|                                                                                |           |                                                                                     | With Prescaler              | 10                                             | —      | —           | ns    |                                     |
| 42*                                                                            | Tt0P      | T0CKI Period                                                                        |                             | Greater of:<br>$20$ or $\frac{T_{CY} + 40}{N}$ | —      | —           | ns    | N = prescale value (2, 4, ..., 256) |
| 45*                                                                            | Tt1H      | T1CKI High Time                                                                     | Synchronous, No Prescaler   | $0.5 T_{CY} + 20$                              | —      | —           | ns    |                                     |
|                                                                                |           |                                                                                     | Synchronous, with Prescaler | 15                                             | —      | —           | ns    |                                     |
|                                                                                |           |                                                                                     | Asynchronous                | 30                                             | —      | —           | ns    |                                     |
| 46*                                                                            | Tt1L      | T1CKI Low Time                                                                      | Synchronous, No Prescaler   | $0.5 T_{CY} + 20$                              | —      | —           | ns    |                                     |
|                                                                                |           |                                                                                     | Synchronous, with Prescaler | 15                                             | —      | —           | ns    |                                     |
|                                                                                |           |                                                                                     | Asynchronous                | 30                                             | —      | —           | ns    |                                     |
| 47*                                                                            | Tt1P      | T1CKI Input Period                                                                  | Synchronous                 | Greater of:<br>$30$ or $\frac{T_{CY} + 40}{N}$ | —      | —           | ns    | N = prescale value (1, 2, 4, 8)     |
|                                                                                |           |                                                                                     | Asynchronous                | 60                                             | —      | —           | ns    |                                     |
| 48                                                                             | Ft1       | Timer1 Oscillator Input Frequency Range (oscillator enabled by setting bit T1OSCEN) |                             | —                                              | 32.768 | —           | kHz   |                                     |
| 49*                                                                            | TCKEZTMR1 | Delay from External Clock Edge to Timer Increment                                   |                             | $2 T_{osc}$                                    | —      | $7 T_{osc}$ | —     | Timers in Sync mode                 |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 19-6: COMPARATOR SPECIFICATIONS**

| Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ |         |                                        |         |      |           |                |               |                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|----------------------------------------|---------|------|-----------|----------------|---------------|--------------------|
| Param No.                                                                                                                                 | Symbol  | Characteristics                        |         | Min. | Typ†      | Max.           | Units         | Comments           |
| CM01                                                                                                                                      | VOS     | Input Offset Voltage                   |         | —    | $\pm 5.0$ | $\pm 10$       | mV            | $(V_{DD} - 1.5)/2$ |
| CM02                                                                                                                                      | VCM     | Input Common Mode Voltage              |         | 0    | —         | $V_{DD} - 1.5$ | V             |                    |
| CM03*                                                                                                                                     | CMRR    | Common Mode Rejection Ratio            |         | +55  | —         | —              | dB            |                    |
| CM04*                                                                                                                                     | TRT     | Response Time                          | Falling | —    | 150       | 600            | ns            | <b>(NOTE 1)</b>    |
|                                                                                                                                           |         |                                        | Rising  | —    | 200       | 1000           | ns            |                    |
| CM05*                                                                                                                                     | TMC2COV | Comparator Mode Change to Output Valid |         | —    | —         | 10             | $\mu\text{s}$ |                    |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**Note 1:** Response time is measured with one comparator input at  $(V_{DD} - 1.5)/2 - 100\text{ mV}$  to  $(V_{DD} - 1.5)/2 + 20\text{ mV}$ .

**TABLE 19-7: COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE (CVREF) SPECIFICATIONS**

| Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ |        |                              |      |             |           |               |                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|------------------------------|------|-------------|-----------|---------------|----------------------|
| Param No.                                                                                                                                 | Symbol | Characteristics              | Min. | Typ†        | Max.      | Units         | Comments             |
| CV01*                                                                                                                                     | CLSB   | Step Size <sup>(2)</sup>     | —    | $V_{DD}/24$ | —         | V             | Low Range (VRR = 1)  |
|                                                                                                                                           |        |                              | —    | $V_{DD}/32$ | —         | V             | High Range (VRR = 0) |
| CV02*                                                                                                                                     | CACC   | Absolute Accuracy            | —    | —           | $\pm 1/2$ | LSb           | Low Range (VRR = 1)  |
|                                                                                                                                           |        |                              | —    | —           | $\pm 1/2$ | LSb           | High Range (VRR = 0) |
| CV03*                                                                                                                                     | CR     | Unit Resistor Value (R)      | —    | 2k          | —         | $\Omega$      |                      |
| CV04*                                                                                                                                     | CST    | Settling Time <sup>(1)</sup> | —    | —           | 10        | $\mu\text{s}$ |                      |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**Note 1:** Settling time measured while VRR = 1 and VR<3:0> transitions from '0000' to '1111'.

**2:** See **Section 8.10 "Comparator Voltage Reference"** for more information.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 19-8: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946 A/D CONVERTER (ADC) CHARACTERISTICS**

| Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ |                  |                                                |                 |      |                                    |               |                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------|------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Param No.                                                                                                                                 | Sym.             | Characteristic                                 | Min.            | Typ† | Max.                               | Units         | Conditions                                                                                               |
| AD01                                                                                                                                      | NR               | Resolution                                     | —               | —    | 10 bits                            | bit           |                                                                                                          |
| AD02                                                                                                                                      | EIL              | Integral Error                                 | —               | —    | $\pm 1$                            | LSb           | $V_{\text{REF}} = 5.12\text{V}$                                                                          |
| AD03                                                                                                                                      | EDL              | Differential Error                             | —               | —    | $\pm 1$                            | LSb           | No missing codes to 10 bits<br>$V_{\text{REF}} = 5.12\text{V}$                                           |
| AD04                                                                                                                                      | EOFF             | Offset Error                                   | —               | —    | $\pm 1$                            | LSb           | $V_{\text{REF}} = 5.12\text{V}$                                                                          |
| AD07                                                                                                                                      | EGN              | Gain Error                                     | —               | —    | $\pm 1$                            | LSb           | $V_{\text{REF}} = 5.12\text{V}$                                                                          |
| AD06<br>AD06A                                                                                                                             | $V_{\text{REF}}$ | Reference Voltage <sup>(1)</sup>               | 2.2<br>2.7      | —    | $V_{\text{DD}}$<br>$V_{\text{DD}}$ | V             | Absolute minimum to ensure 1 LSb accuracy                                                                |
| AD07                                                                                                                                      | $V_{\text{AIN}}$ | Full-Scale Range                               | $V_{\text{SS}}$ | —    | $V_{\text{REF}}$                   | V             |                                                                                                          |
| AD08                                                                                                                                      | $Z_{\text{AIN}}$ | Recommended Impedance of Analog Voltage Source | —               | —    | 10                                 | k $\Omega$    |                                                                                                          |
| AD09*                                                                                                                                     | IREF             | $V_{\text{REF}}$ Input Current <sup>(1)</sup>  | 10              | —    | 1000                               | $\mu\text{A}$ | During $V_{\text{AIN}}$ acquisition.<br>Based on differential of $V_{\text{HOLD}}$ to $V_{\text{AIN}}$ . |
|                                                                                                                                           |                  |                                                | —               | —    | 50                                 | $\mu\text{A}$ | During A/D conversion cycle.                                                                             |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**Note 1:** ADC  $V_{\text{REF}}$  is from external  $V_{\text{REF}}$  or  $V_{\text{DD}}$  pin, whichever is selected as reference input.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 19-9: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946 A/D CONVERSION REQUIREMENTS**

| Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)<br>Operating temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ |      |                                                                 |      |                          |      |               |                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------|--------------------------|------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Param No.                                                                                                                                 | Sym. | Characteristic                                                  | Min. | Typ†                     | Max. | Units         | Conditions                                                                                                                                                   |
| AD130*                                                                                                                                    | TAD  | A/D Clock Period                                                | 1.6  | —                        | 9.0  | $\mu\text{s}$ | TOSC-based, $V_{\text{REF}} \geq 3.0\text{V}$                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                           |      |                                                                 | 3.0  | —                        | 9.0  | $\mu\text{s}$ | TOSC-based, $V_{\text{REF}}$ full range                                                                                                                      |
|                                                                                                                                           |      | A/D Internal RC Oscillator Period                               | 3.0  | 6.0                      | 9.0  | $\mu\text{s}$ | ADCS<1:0> = 11 (ADRC mode)<br>At $V_{\text{DD}} = 2.5\text{V}$                                                                                               |
|                                                                                                                                           |      |                                                                 | 1.6  | 4.0                      | 6.0  | $\mu\text{s}$ | At $V_{\text{DD}} = 5.0\text{V}$                                                                                                                             |
| AD131                                                                                                                                     | TCNV | Conversion Time (not including Acquisition Time) <sup>(1)</sup> | —    | 11                       | —    | TAD           | Set GO/DONE bit to new data in A/D Result register                                                                                                           |
| AD132*                                                                                                                                    | TACQ | Acquisition Time                                                | —    | 11.5                     | —    | $\mu\text{s}$ |                                                                                                                                                              |
| AD133*                                                                                                                                    | TAMP | Amplifier Settling Time                                         | —    | —                        | 5    | $\mu\text{s}$ |                                                                                                                                                              |
| AD134                                                                                                                                     | TGO  | Q4 to A/D Clock Start                                           | —    | Tosc/2                   | —    | —             | If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of $T_{\text{CY}}$ is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed. |
|                                                                                                                                           |      |                                                                 | —    | Tosc/2 + $T_{\text{CY}}$ | —    | —             |                                                                                                                                                              |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**Note 1:** ADRESH and ADRESL registers may be read on the following  $T_{\text{CY}}$  cycle.

**2:** See **Section 12.3 "A/D Acquisition Requirements"** for minimum conditions.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 19-9: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946 A/D CONVERSION TIMING (NORMAL MODE)**

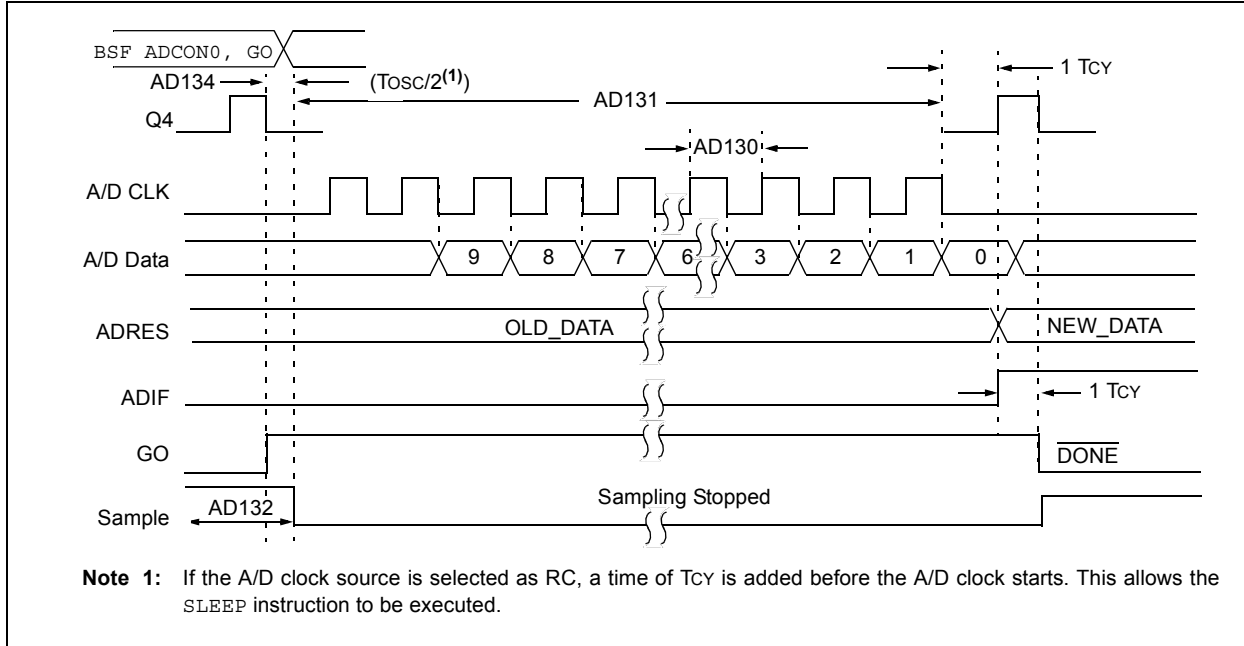
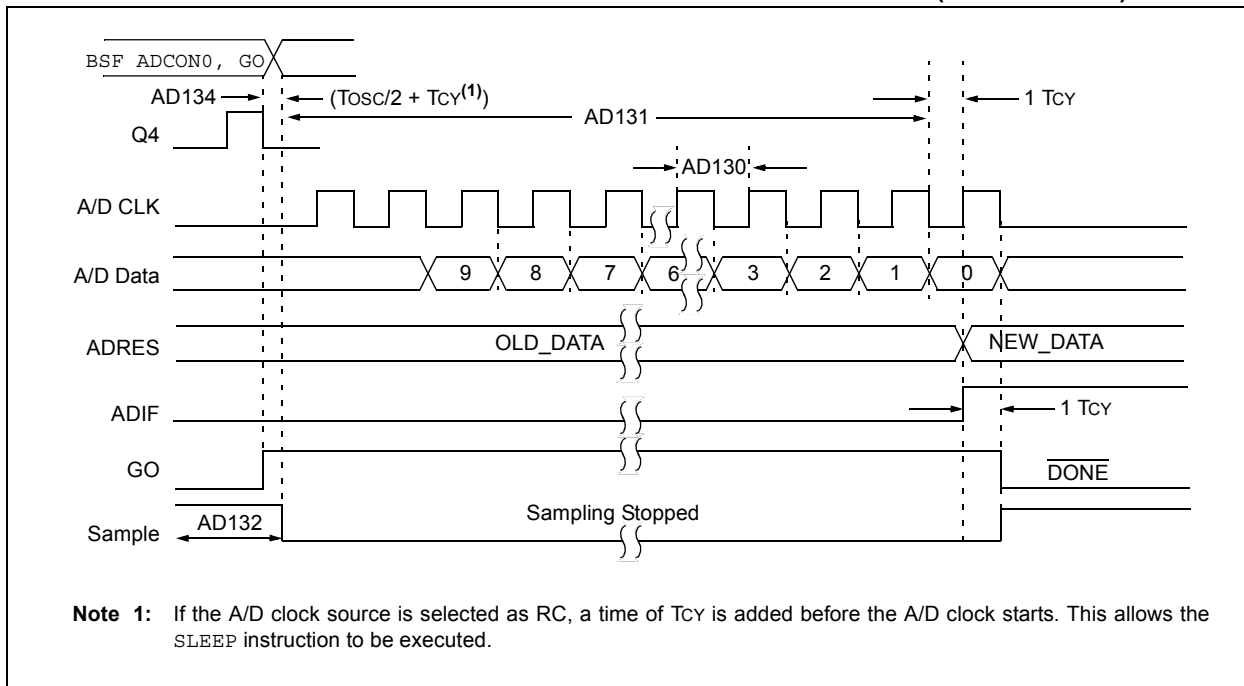


**FIGURE 19-10: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946 A/D CONVERSION TIMING (SLEEP MODE)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 19-11: USART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING**

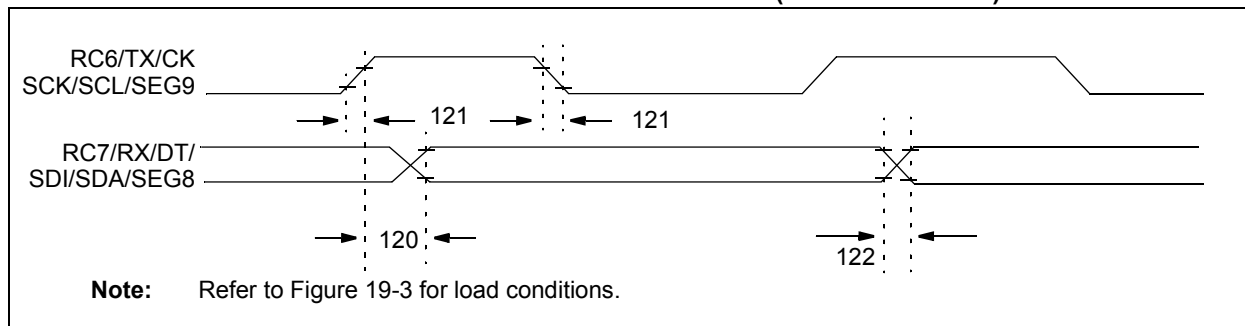


**TABLE 19-10: USART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION REQUIREMENTS**

| Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)                        |           |                                                              |          |      |      |       |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------|------|-------|------------|
| Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ |           |                                                              |          |      |      |       |            |
| Param. No.                                                                     | Symbol    | Characteristic                                               |          | Min. | Max. | Units | Conditions |
| 120                                                                            | TCKH2DT V | SYNC XMIT (Master and Slave)<br>Clock high to data-out valid | 3.0-5.5V | —    | 80   | ns    |            |
|                                                                                |           |                                                              | 2.0-5.5V | —    | 100  | ns    |            |
| 121                                                                            | TCKRF     | Clock out rise time and fall time<br>(Master mode)           | 3.0-5.5V | —    | 45   | ns    |            |
|                                                                                |           |                                                              | 2.0-5.5V | —    | 50   | ns    |            |
| 122                                                                            | TDTRF     | Data-out rise time and fall time                             | 3.0-5.5V | —    | 45   | ns    |            |
|                                                                                |           |                                                              | 2.0-5.5V | —    | 50   | ns    |            |

**FIGURE 19-12: USART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING**

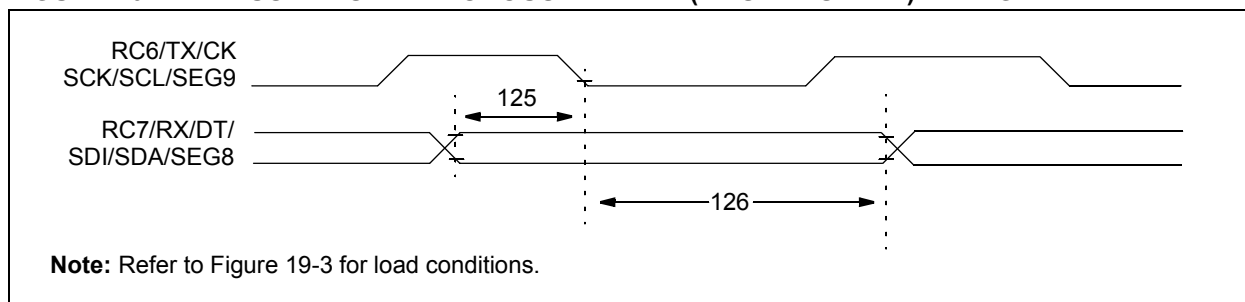


**TABLE 19-11: USART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE REQUIREMENTS**

| Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) |          |                                                                            |      |      |       |            |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|------|-------|------------|
| Operating Temperature      -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C          |          |                                                                            |      |      |       |            |
| Param. No.                                              | Symbol   | Characteristic                                                             | Min. | Max. | Units | Conditions |
| 125                                                     | TdTV2CKL | <u>SYNC RCV (Master and Slave)</u><br>Data-hold before CK ↓ (DT hold time) | 10   | —    | ns    |            |
| 126                                                     | TckL2DTL | Data-hold after CK ↓ (DT hold time)                                        | 15   | —    | ns    |            |

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 19-13: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM TIMINGS**

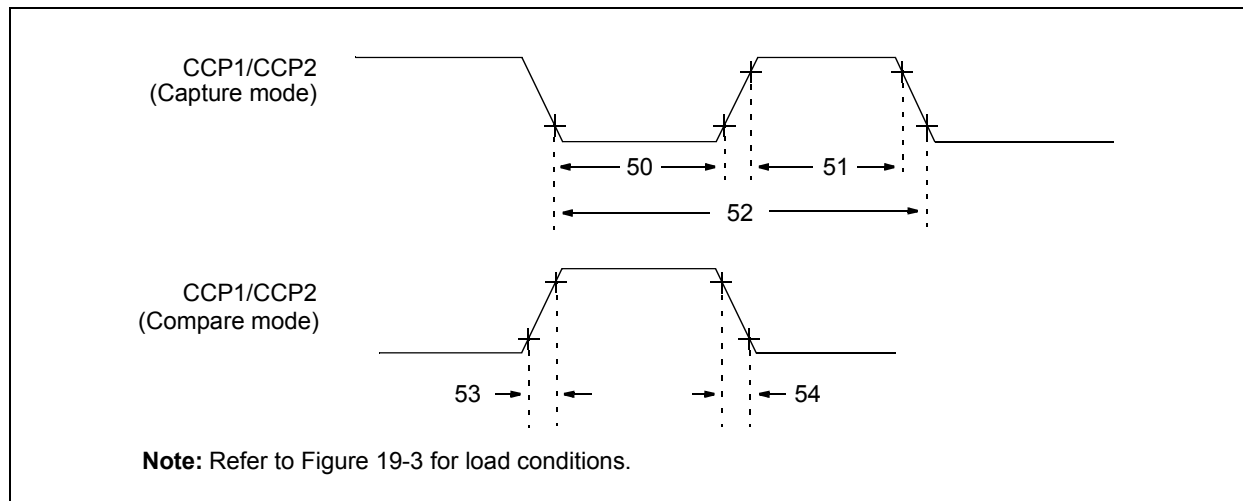


**TABLE 19-12: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM (CCP) REQUIREMENTS**

| Param. No. | Sym. | Characteristic          |                |          | Min.                   | Typ† | Max. | Units | Conditions                     |
|------------|------|-------------------------|----------------|----------|------------------------|------|------|-------|--------------------------------|
| 50*        | TcCL | CCPx<br>input low time  | No Prescaler   |          | 0.5TcCY + 5            | —    | —    | ns    |                                |
|            |      |                         | With Prescaler | 3.0-5.5V | 10                     | —    | —    | ns    |                                |
|            |      |                         |                | 2.0-5.5V | 20                     | —    | —    | ns    |                                |
| 51*        | TcCH | CCPx<br>input high time | No Prescaler   |          | 0.5TcCY + 5            | —    | —    | ns    |                                |
|            |      |                         | With Prescaler | 3.0-5.5V | 10                     | —    | —    | ns    |                                |
|            |      |                         |                | 2.0-5.5V | 20                     | —    | —    | ns    |                                |
| 52*        | TcCP | CCPx input period       |                |          | $\frac{3TcCY + 40}{N}$ | —    | —    | ns    | N = prescale value (1,4 or 16) |
| 53*        | TcCR | CCPx output fall time   |                | 3.0-5.5V | —                      | 10   | 25   | ns    |                                |
|            |      |                         |                | 2.0-5.5V | —                      | 25   | 50   | ns    |                                |
| 54*        | TcCF | CCPx output fall time   |                | 3.0-5.5V | —                      | 10   | 25   | ns    |                                |
|            |      |                         |                | 2.0-5.5V | —                      | 25   | 45   | ns    |                                |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. Parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 19-13: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946 PLVD CHARACTERISTICS:**

| DC CHARACTERISTICS |                    |                 | Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)                        |          |                |                 |       |                                                  |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------------|-----------------|-------|--------------------------------------------------|
|                    |                    |                 | Operating Temperature $-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq T_A \leq +125^{\circ}\text{C}$ |          |                |                 |       |                                                  |
|                    |                    |                 | Operating Voltage $V_{DD}$ Range 2.0V-5.5V                                     |          |                |                 |       |                                                  |
| Sym.               | Characteristic     |                 | Min.                                                                           | Typ†     | Max.<br>(85°C) | Max.<br>(125°C) | Units | Conditions                                       |
| VPLVD              | PLVD Voltage       | LVDL<2:0> = 001 | 1.900                                                                          | 2.0      | 2.100          | 2.125           | V     |                                                  |
|                    |                    | LVDL<2:0> = 010 | 2.000                                                                          | 2.1      | 2.200          | 2.225           | V     |                                                  |
|                    |                    | LVDL<2:0> = 011 | 2.100                                                                          | 2.2      | 2.300          | 2.325           | V     |                                                  |
|                    |                    | LVDL<2:0> = 100 | 2.200                                                                          | 2.3      | 2.400          | 2.425           | V     |                                                  |
|                    |                    | LVDL<2:0> = 101 | 3.825                                                                          | 4.0      | 4.175          | 4.200           | V     |                                                  |
|                    |                    | LVDL<2:0> = 110 | 4.025                                                                          | 4.2      | 4.375          | 4.400           | V     |                                                  |
|                    |                    | LVDL<2:0> = 111 | 4.425                                                                          | 4.5      | 4.675          | 4.700           | V     |                                                  |
| *TPLVDS            | PLVD Settling time |                 | —                                                                              | 50<br>25 | —              | —               | μs    | V <sub>DD</sub> = 5.0V<br>V <sub>DD</sub> = 3.0V |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested

† Data in “Typ” column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 19-14: SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 0, SMP = 0)**

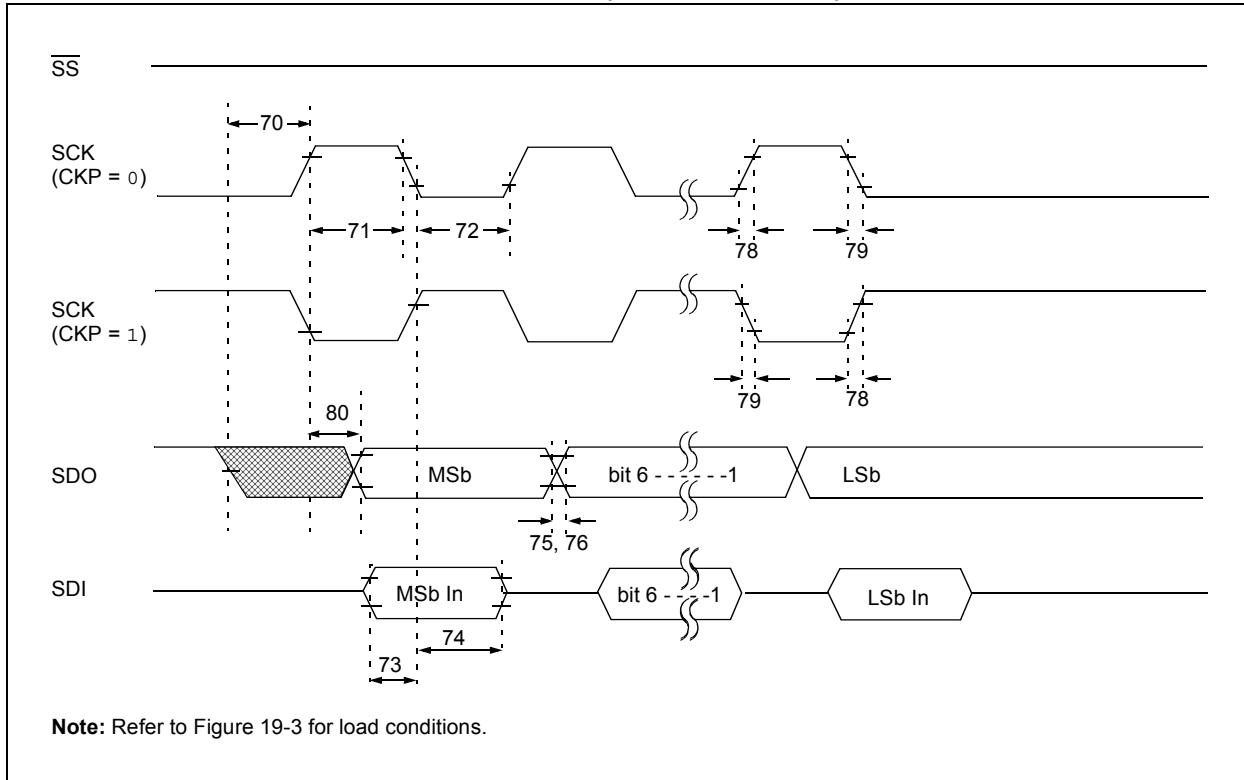


**FIGURE 19-15: SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 1, SMP = 1)**

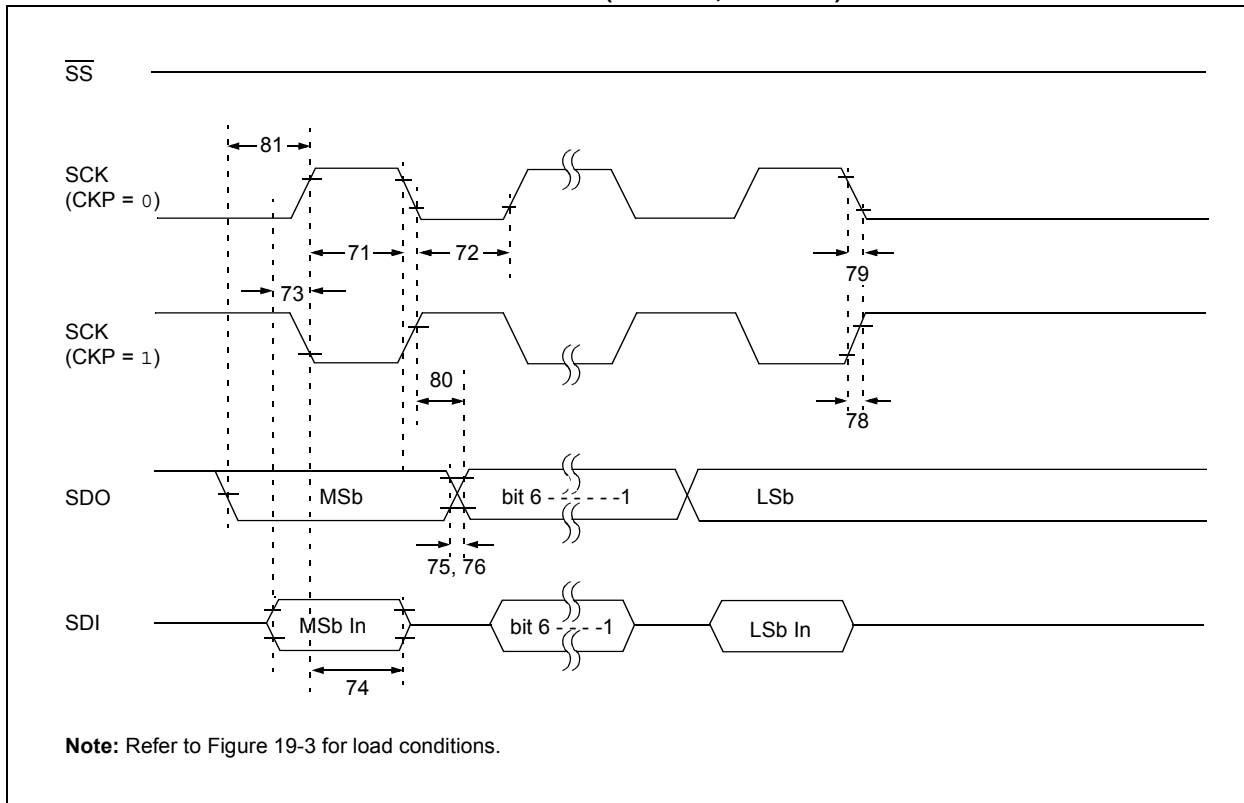




**FIGURE 19-16: SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 0)**

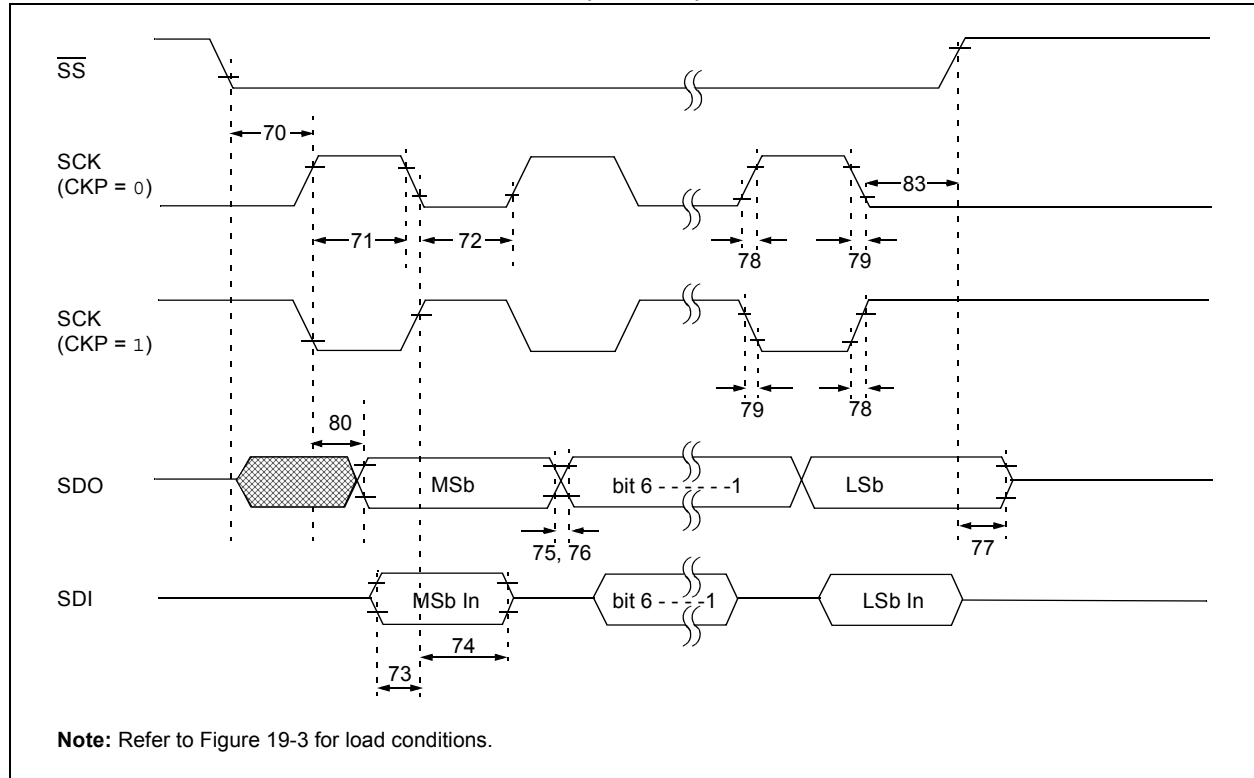
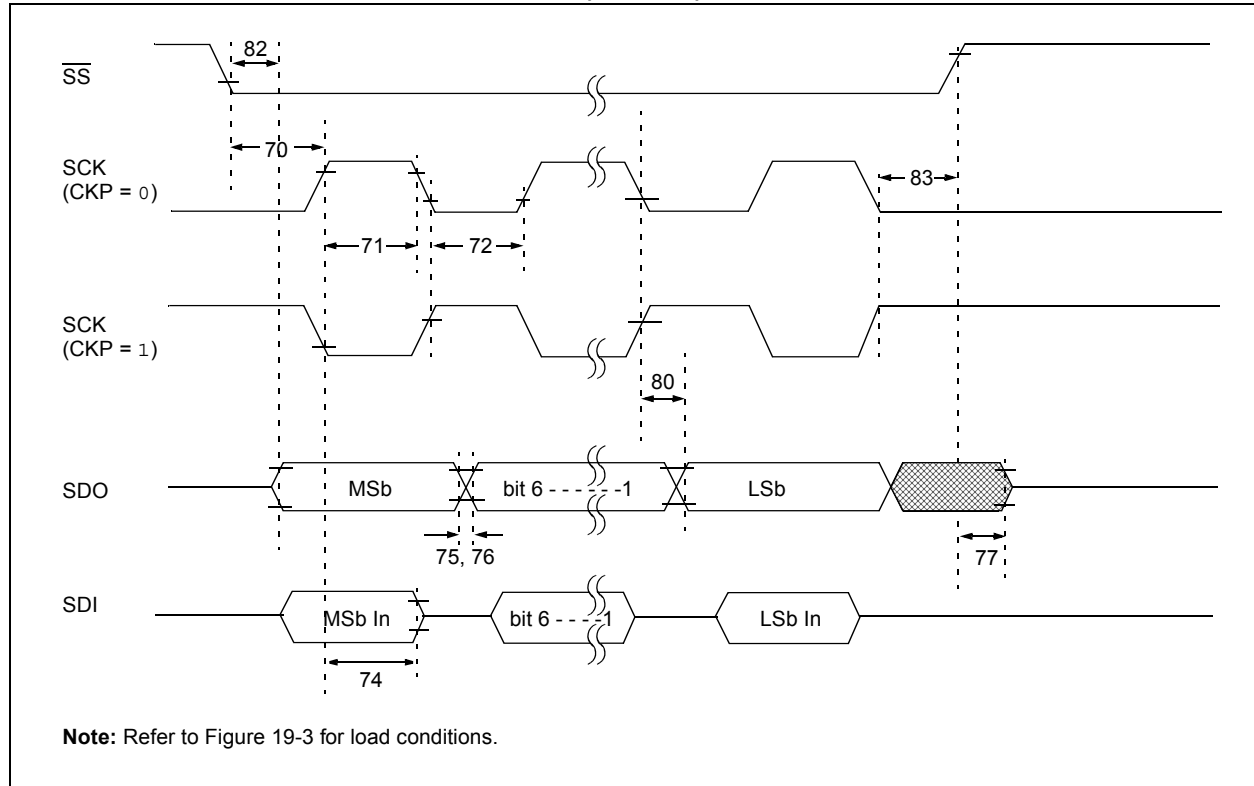


**FIGURE 19-17: SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 1)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

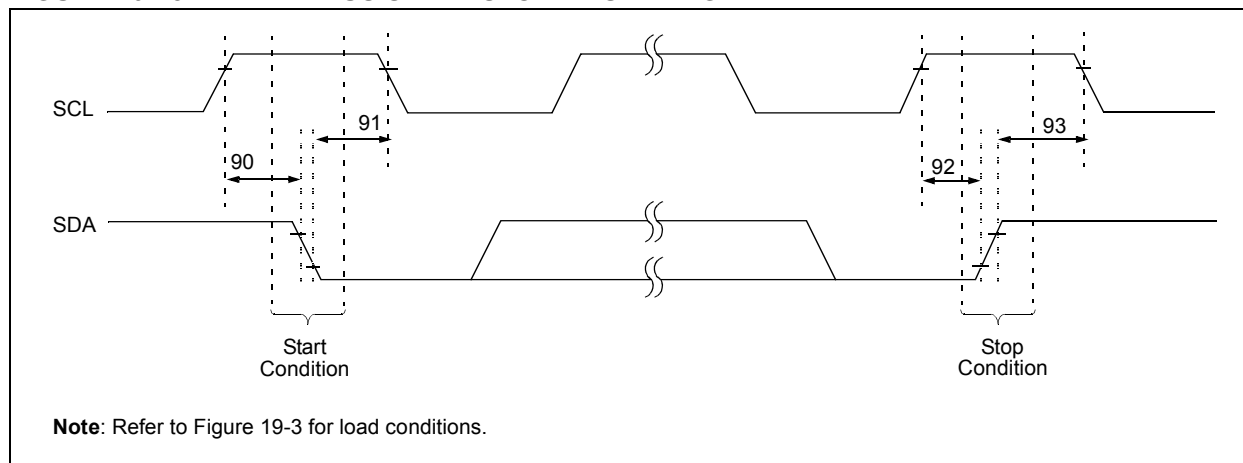
**TABLE 19-14: SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS**

| Param No. | Symbol             | Characteristic                                                        |          | Min.        | Typ† | Max. | Units | Conditions |
|-----------|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-------------|------|------|-------|------------|
| 70*       | TssL2sch, TssL2scL | $\overline{SS}\downarrow$ to SCK $\downarrow$ or SCK $\uparrow$ input |          | Tcy         | —    | —    | ns    |            |
| 71*       | Tsch               | SCK input high time (Slave mode)                                      |          | Tcy + 20    | —    | —    | ns    |            |
| 72*       | TscL               | SCK input low time (Slave mode)                                       |          | Tcy + 20    | —    | —    | ns    |            |
| 73*       | TdIV2sch, TdIV2scL | Setup time of SDI data input to SCK edge                              |          | 100         | —    | —    | ns    |            |
| 74*       | Tsch2diL, TscL2diL | Hold time of SDI data input to SCK edge                               |          | 100         | —    | —    | ns    |            |
| 75*       | TdoR               | SDO data output rise time                                             | 3.0-5.5V | —           | 10   | 25   | ns    |            |
|           |                    |                                                                       | 2.0-5.5V | —           | 25   | 50   | ns    |            |
| 76*       | TdoF               | SDO data output fall time                                             |          | —           | 10   | 25   | ns    |            |
| 77*       | Tssh2doZ           | $\overline{SS}\uparrow$ to SDO output high-impedance                  |          | 10          | —    | 50   | ns    |            |
| 78*       | TscR               | SCK output rise time (Master mode)                                    | 3.0-5.5V | —           | 10   | 25   | ns    |            |
|           |                    |                                                                       | 2.0-5.5V | —           | 25   | 50   | ns    |            |
| 79*       | TscF               | SCK output fall time (Master mode)                                    |          | —           | 10   | 25   | ns    |            |
| 80*       | Tsch2doV, TscL2doV | SDO data output valid after SCK edge                                  | 3.0-5.5V | —           | —    | 50   | ns    |            |
|           |                    |                                                                       | 2.0-5.5V | —           | —    | 145  | ns    |            |
| 81*       | TdoV2sch, TdoV2scL | SDO data output setup to SCK edge                                     |          | Tcy         | —    | —    | ns    |            |
| 82*       | TssL2doV           | SDO data output valid after $\overline{SS}\downarrow$ edge            |          | —           | —    | 50   | ns    |            |
| 83*       | Tsch2ssh, TscL2ssh | $\overline{SS}\uparrow$ after SCK edge                                |          | 1.5Tcy + 40 | —    | —    | ns    |            |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 5.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

**FIGURE 19-18: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING**



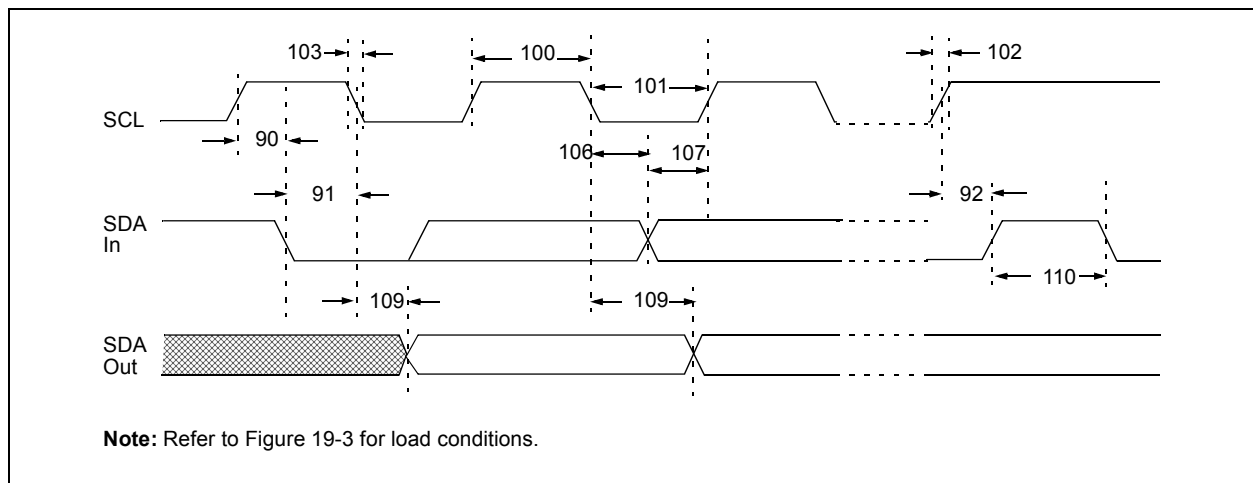
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 19-15: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BUS START/STOP BITS REQUIREMENTS**

| Param No. | Symbol  | Characteristic             |              | Min. | Typ. | Max. | Units | Conditions                                            |
|-----------|---------|----------------------------|--------------|------|------|------|-------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 90*       | TSU:STA | Start condition Setup time | 400 kHz mode | 600  | —    | —    | ns    | Only relevant for Repeated Start condition            |
| 91*       | THD:STA | Start condition Hold time  | 400 kHz mode | 600  | —    | —    | ns    | After this period, the first clock pulse is generated |
| 92*       | TSU:STO | Stop condition Setup time  | 400 kHz mode | 600  | —    | —    | ns    |                                                       |
| 93        | THD:STO | Stop condition Hold time   | 400 kHz mode | 600  | —    | —    | ns    |                                                       |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

**FIGURE 19-19: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BUS DATA TIMING**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**TABLE 19-16: I<sup>2</sup>C™ BUS DATA REQUIREMENTS**

| Param. No. | Symbol         | Characteristic             |              | Min.                   | Max. | Units | Conditions                                                    |
|------------|----------------|----------------------------|--------------|------------------------|------|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 100*       | THIGH          | Clock high time            | 400 kHz mode | 0.6                    | —    | μs    | Device must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz                    |
|            |                |                            | SSP Module   | 1.5T <sub>CY</sub>     | —    |       |                                                               |
| 101*       | TLOW           | Clock low time             | 400 kHz mode | 1.3                    | —    | μs    | Device must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz                    |
|            |                |                            | SSP Module   | 1.5T <sub>CY</sub>     | —    |       |                                                               |
| 102*       | TR             | SDA and SCL rise time      | 400 kHz mode | 20 + 0.1C <sub>B</sub> | 250  | ns    | C <sub>B</sub> is specified to be from 10-400 pF              |
| 103*       | TF             | SDA and SCL fall time      | 400 kHz mode | 20 + 0.1C <sub>B</sub> | 250  | ns    | C <sub>B</sub> is specified to be from 10-400 pF              |
| 90*        | TSU:STA        | Start condition setup time | 400 kHz mode | 1.3                    | —    | μs    | Only relevant for Repeated Start condition                    |
| 91*        | THD:STA        | Start condition hold time  | 400 kHz mode | 0.6                    | —    | μs    | After this period the first clock pulse is generated          |
| 106*       | THD:DAT        | Data input hold time       | 400 kHz mode | 0                      | 0.9  | μs    |                                                               |
| 107*       | TSU:DAT        | Data input setup time      | 400 kHz mode | 100                    | —    | ns    | (Note 2)                                                      |
| 92*        | TSU:STO        | Stop condition setup time  | 400 kHz mode | 0.6                    | —    | μs    |                                                               |
| 109*       | TAA            | Output valid from clock    | 400 kHz mode | —                      | —    | ns    | (Note 1)                                                      |
| 110*       | TBUF           | Bus free time              | 400 kHz mode | 1.3                    | —    | μs    | Time the bus must be free before a new transmission can start |
|            | C <sub>B</sub> | Bus capacitive loading     |              | —                      | 400  | pF    |                                                               |

\* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

- Note 1:** As a transmitter, the device must provide this internal minimum delay time to bridge the undefined region (min. 300 ns) of the falling edge of SCL to avoid unintended generation of Start or Stop conditions.
- Note 2:** A Fast mode (400 kHz) I<sup>2</sup>C bus device can be used in a Standard mode (100 kHz) I<sup>2</sup>C bus system, but the requirement TSU:DAT ≥ 250 ns must then be met. This will automatically be the case if the device does not stretch the low period of the SCL signal. If such a device does stretch the low period of the SCL signal, it must output the next data bit to the SDA line TR max. + TSU:DAT = 1000 + 250 = 1250 ns (according to the Standard mode I<sup>2</sup>C bus specification), before the SCL line is released.

## 20.0 DC AND AC CHARACTERISTICS GRAPHS AND TABLES

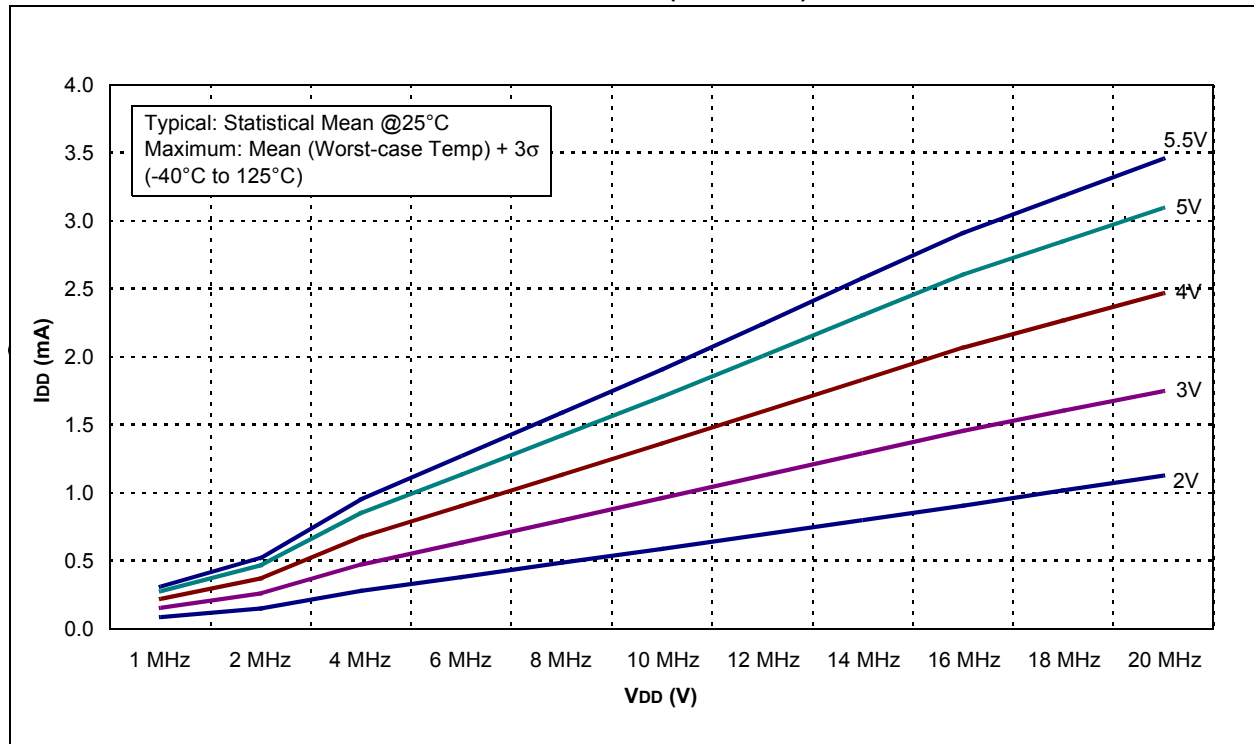
The graphs and tables provided in this section are for **design guidance** and are **not tested**.

In some graphs or tables, the data presented are **outside specified operating range** (i.e., outside specified  $V_{DD}$  range). This is for **information only** and devices are ensured to operate properly only within the specified range.

**Note:** The graphs and tables provided following this note are a statistical summary based on a limited number of samples and are provided for informational purposes only. The performance characteristics listed herein are not tested or guaranteed. In some graphs or tables, the data presented may be outside the specified operating range (e.g., outside specified power supply range) and therefore, outside the warranted range.

“Typical” represents the mean of the distribution at 25°C. “Maximum” or “minimum” represents (mean + 3 $\sigma$ ) or (mean - 3 $\sigma$ ) respectively, where  $\sigma$  is a standard deviation, over each temperature range.

**FIGURE 20-1: TYPICAL  $I_{DD}$  vs.  $F_{OSC}$  OVER  $V_{DD}$  (EC MODE)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 20-2: MAXIMUM  $I_{DD}$  vs.  $F_{osc}$  OVER  $V_{DD}$  (EC MODE)

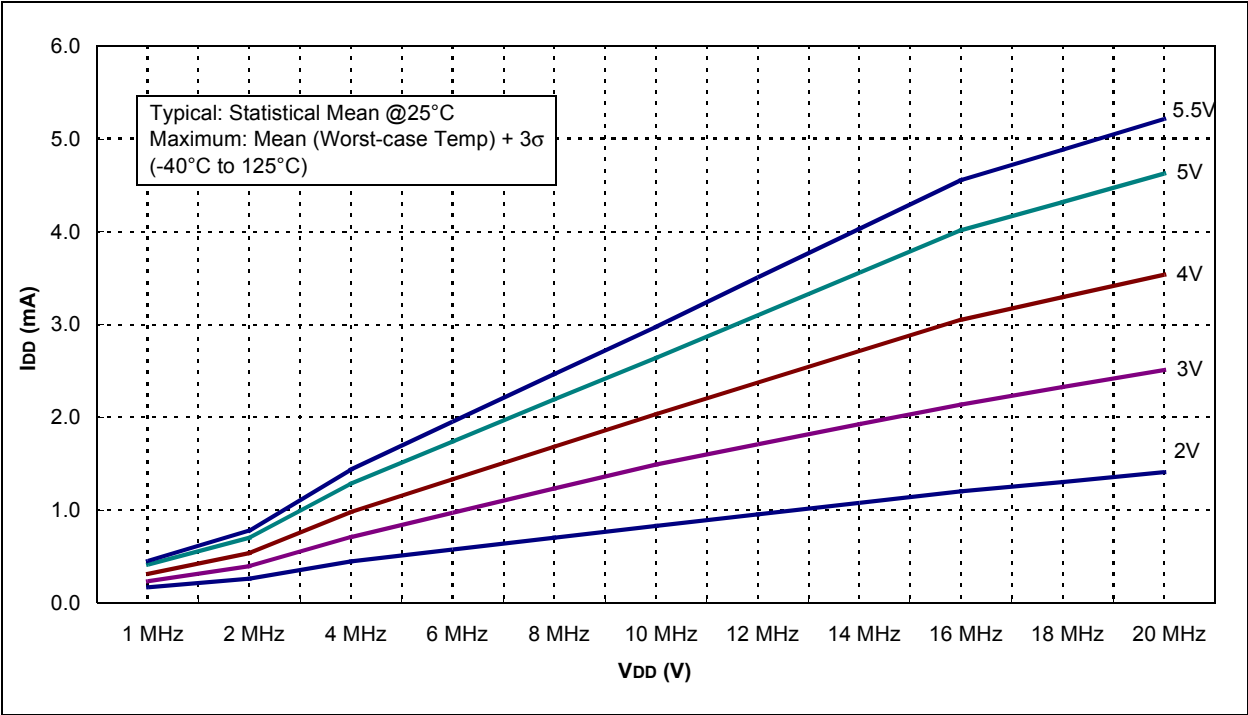
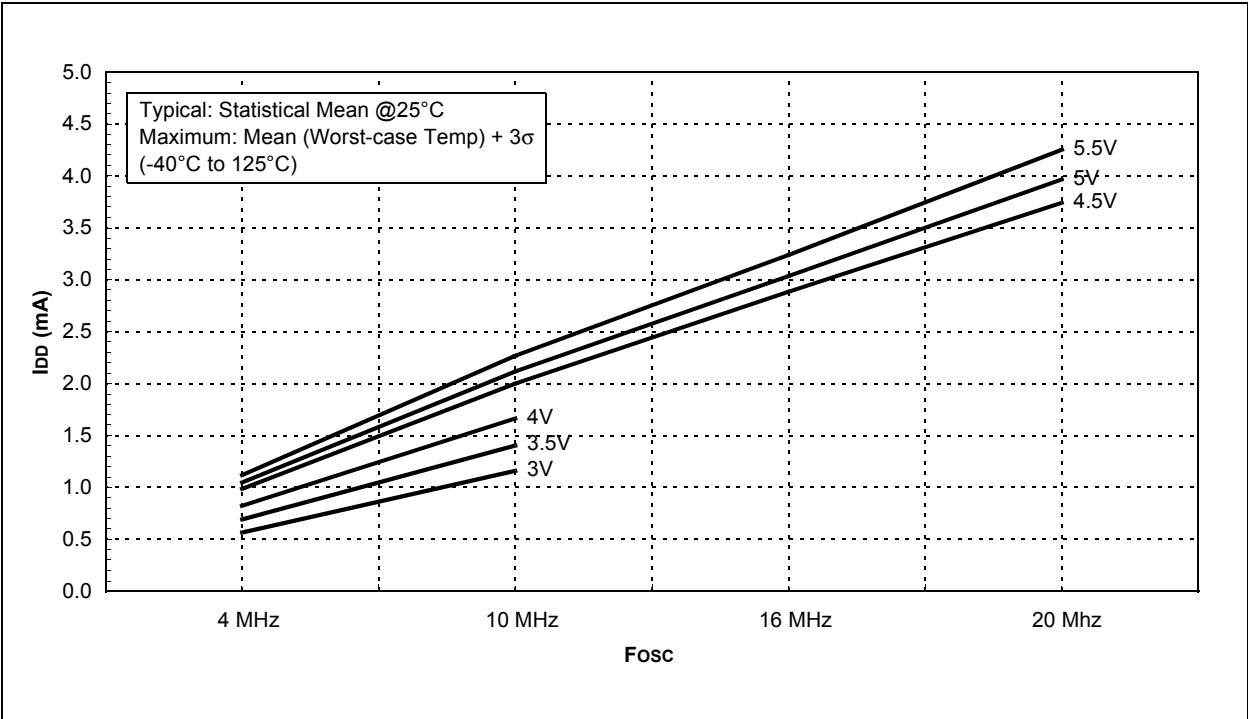


FIGURE 20-3: TYPICAL  $I_{DD}$  vs.  $F_{osc}$  OVER  $V_{DD}$  (HS MODE)



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 20-4: MAXIMUM  $I_{DD}$  vs.  $F_{osc}$  OVER  $V_{DD}$  (HS MODE)**

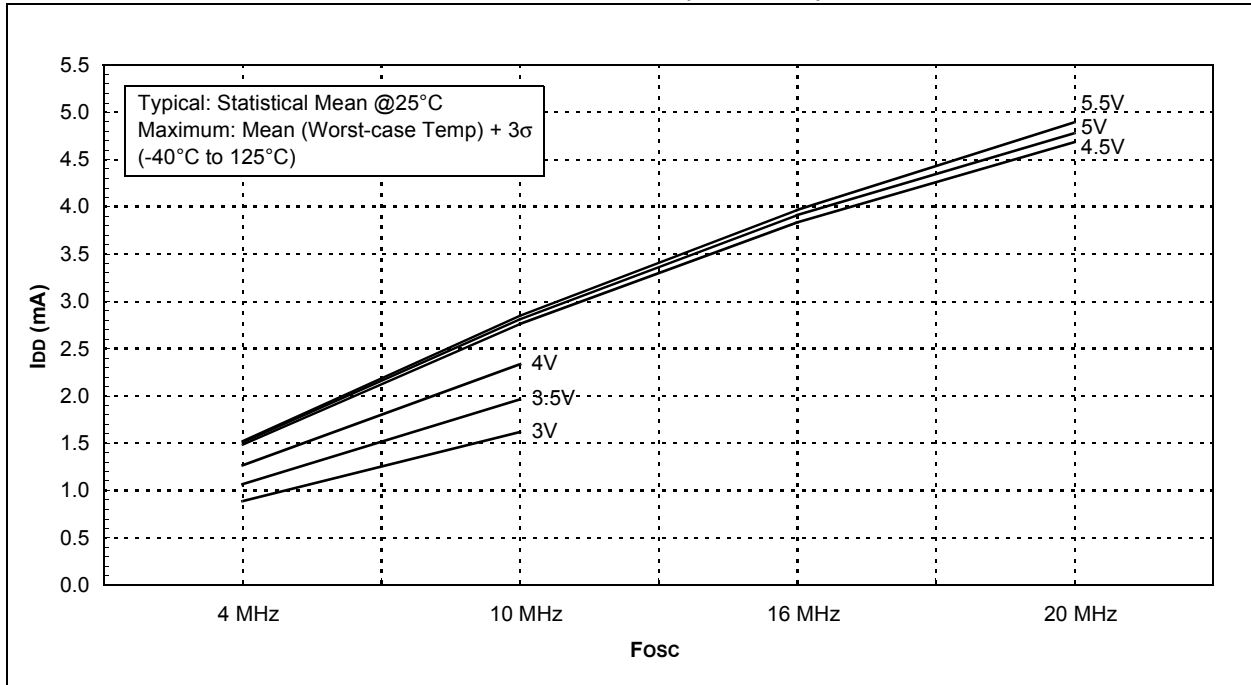
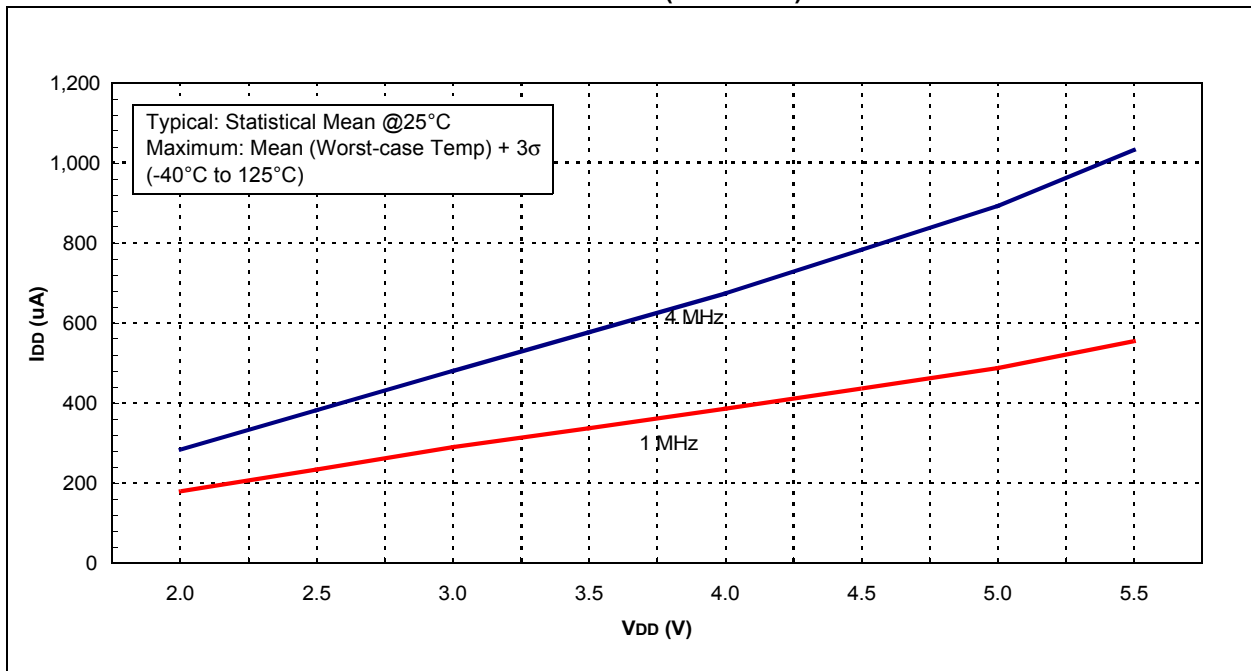


**FIGURE 20-5: TYPICAL  $I_{DD}$  vs.  $V_{DD}$  OVER  $F_{osc}$  (XT MODE)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 20-6: MAXIMUM  $I_{DD}$  vs.  $V_{DD}$  OVER  $F_{osc}$  (XT MODE)

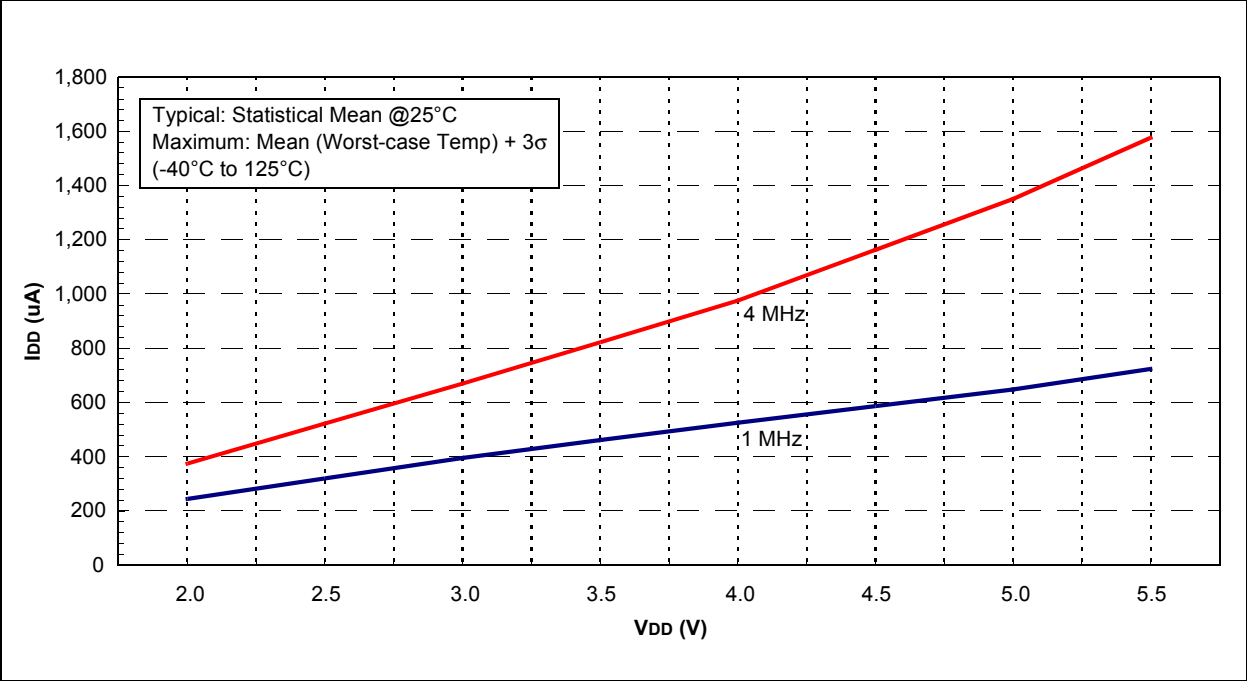


FIGURE 20-7: TYPICAL  $I_{DD}$  vs.  $V_{DD}$  OVER  $F_{osc}$  (EXTRC MODE)

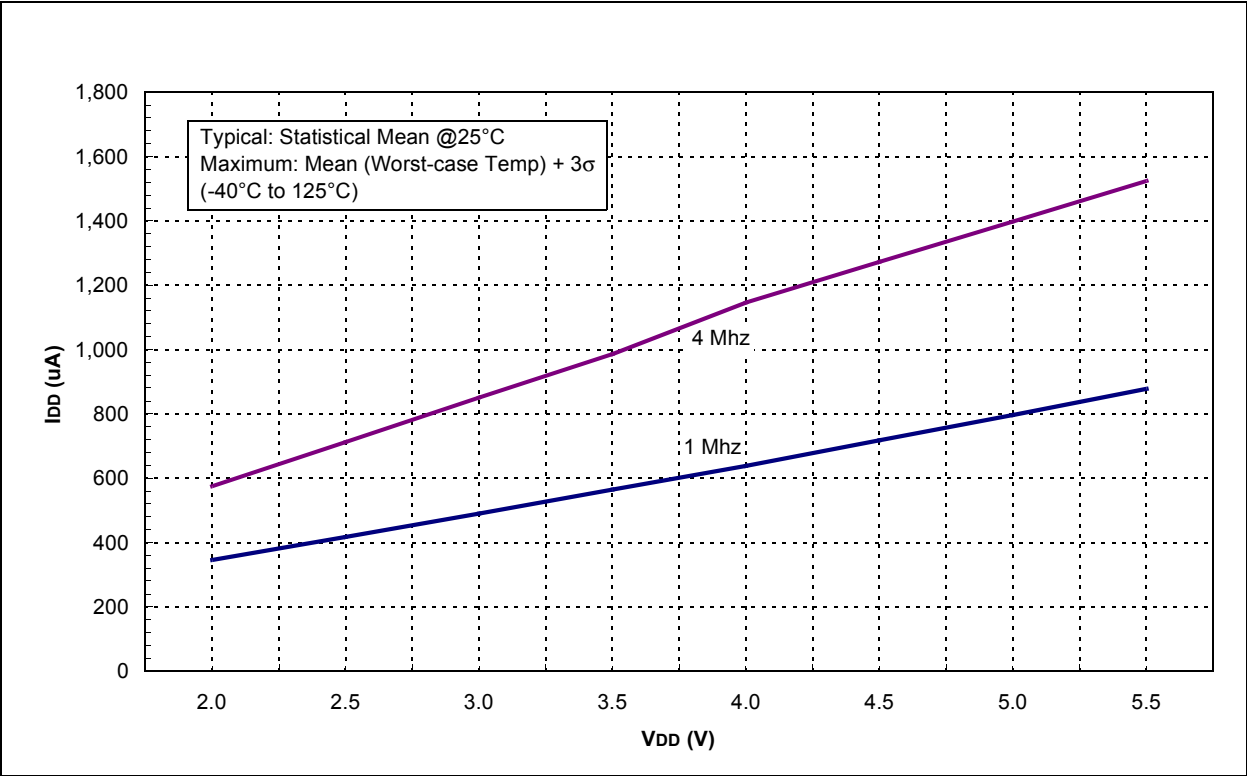




**FIGURE 20-8: MAXIMUM  $I_{DD}$  vs.  $V_{DD}$  (EXTRC MODE)**

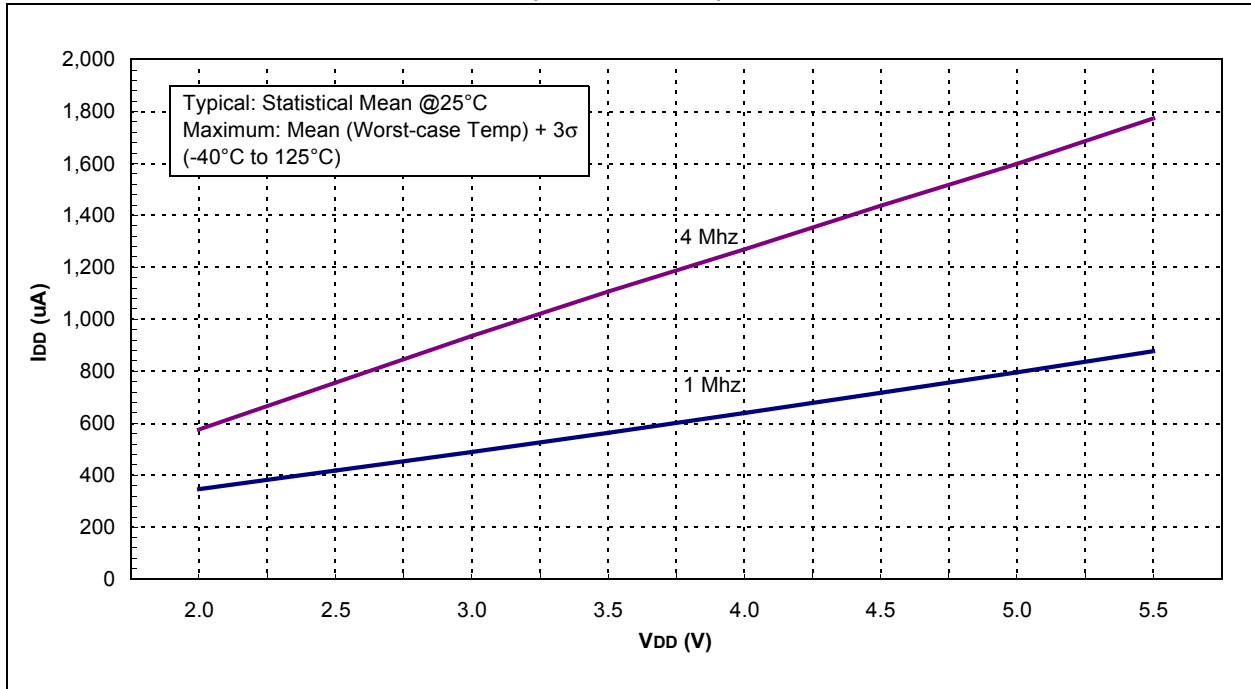
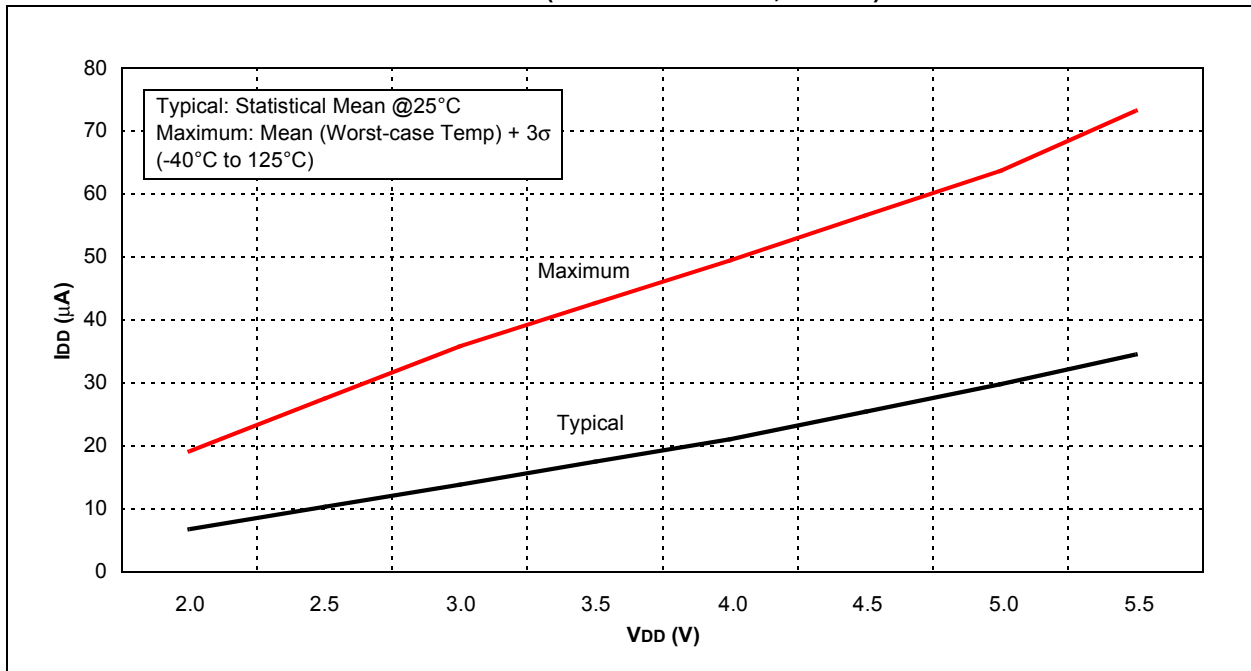


**FIGURE 20-9:  $I_{DD}$  vs.  $V_{DD}$  OVER  $F_{osc}$  (LFINTOSC MODE, 31 kHz)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 20-10: I<sub>DD</sub> vs. V<sub>DD</sub> (LP MODE)

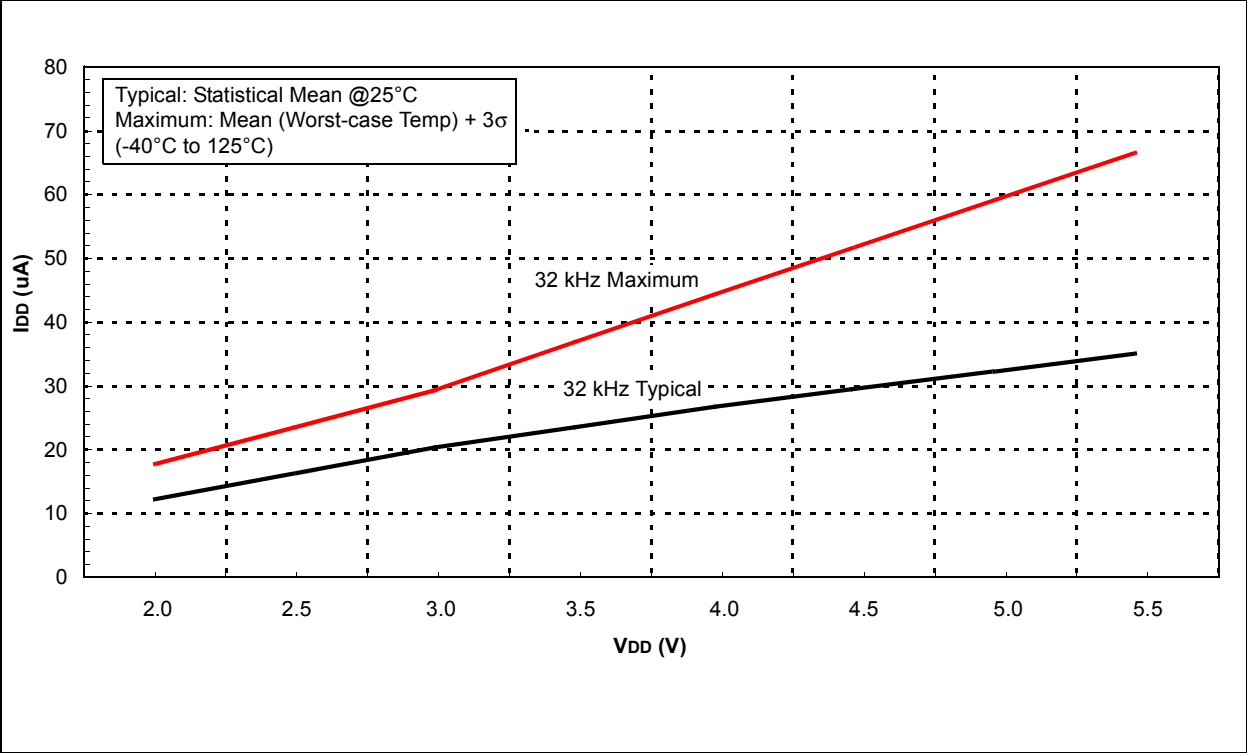
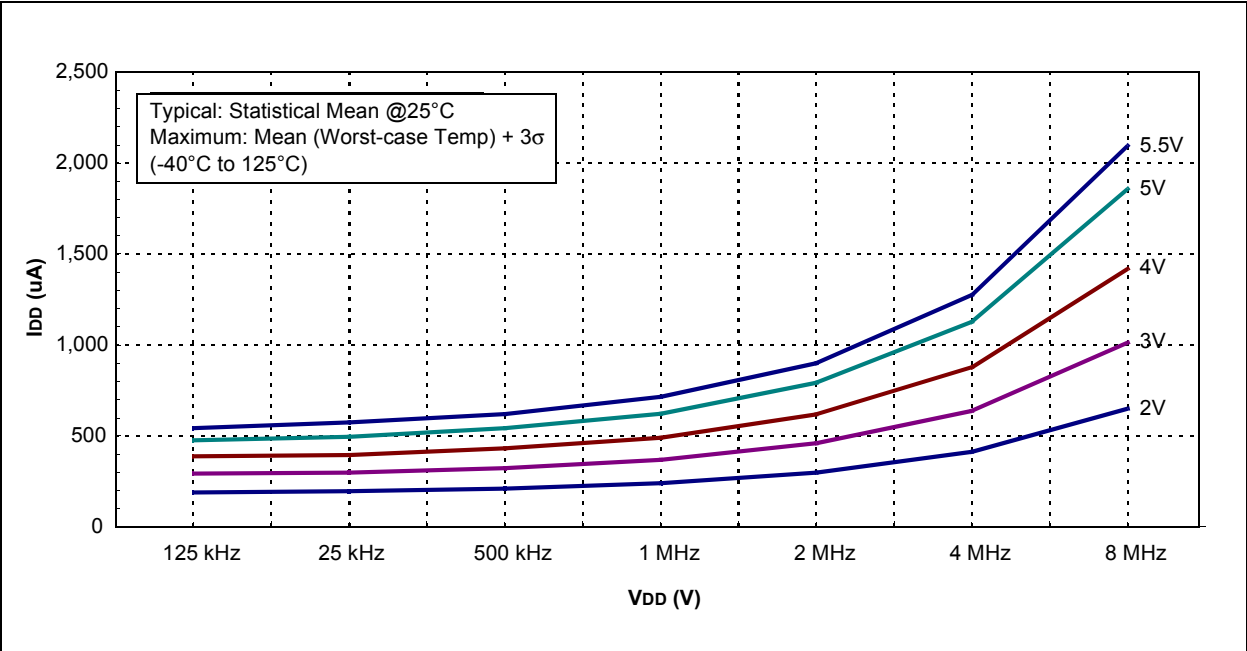


FIGURE 20-11: TYPICAL I<sub>DD</sub> vs. F<sub>osc</sub> OVER V<sub>DD</sub> (HFINTOSC MODE)



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 20-12: MAXIMUM  $I_{DD}$  vs.  $F_{OSC}$  OVER  $V_{DD}$  (HFINTOSC MODE)**

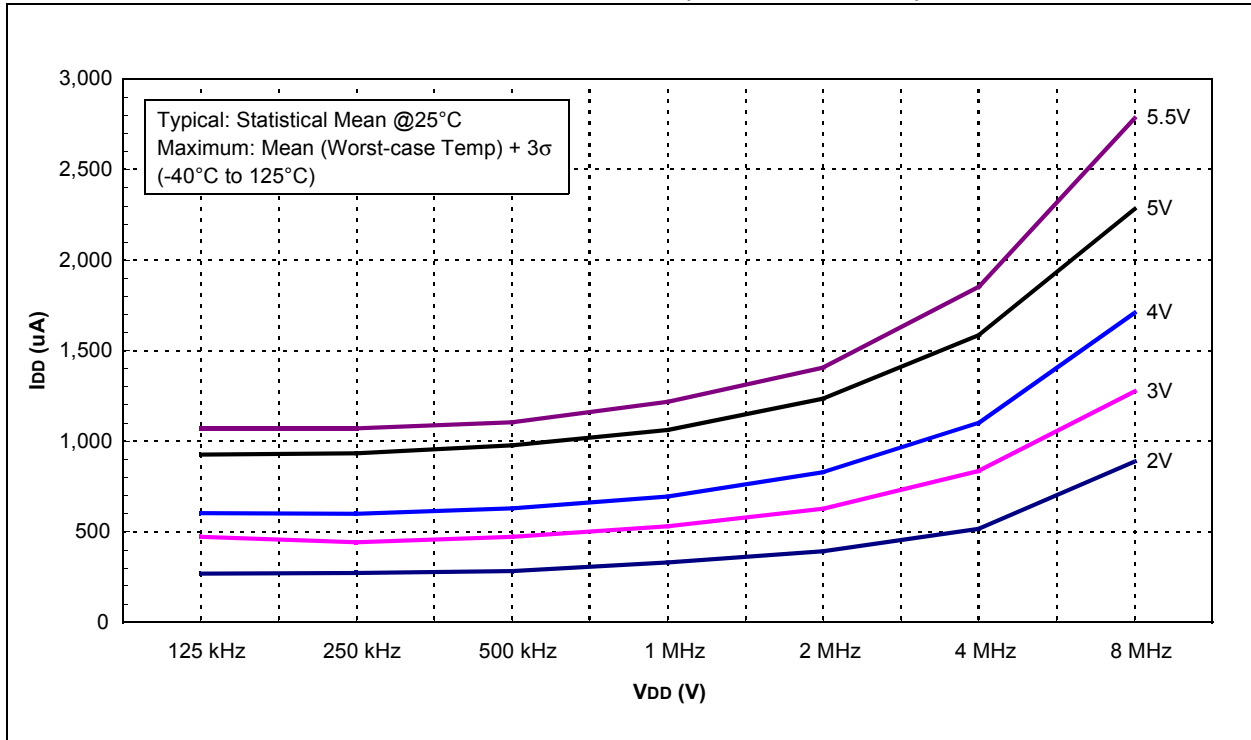
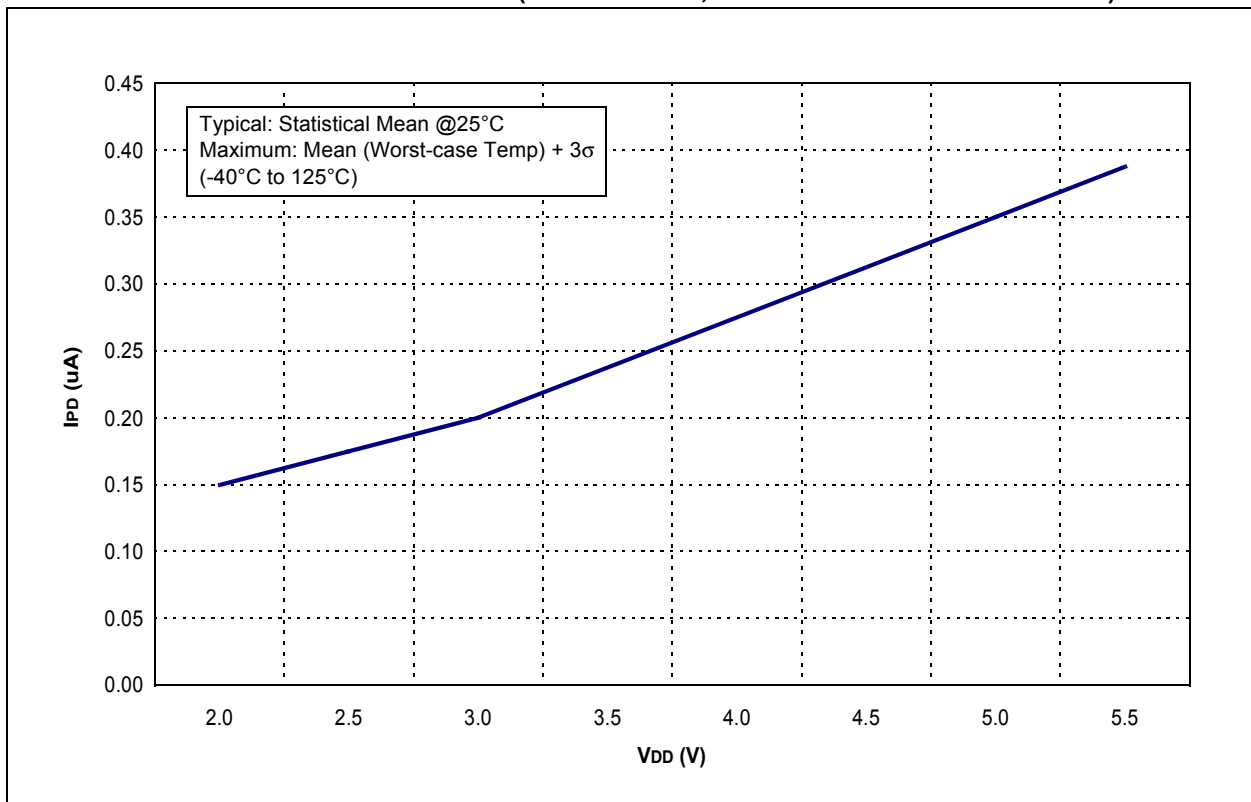


**FIGURE 20-13: TYPICAL  $I_{PD}$  vs.  $V_{DD}$  (SLEEP MODE, ALL PERIPHERALS DISABLED)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 20-14: MAXIMUM IPD vs. VDD (SLEEP MODE, ALL PERIPHERALS DISABLED)

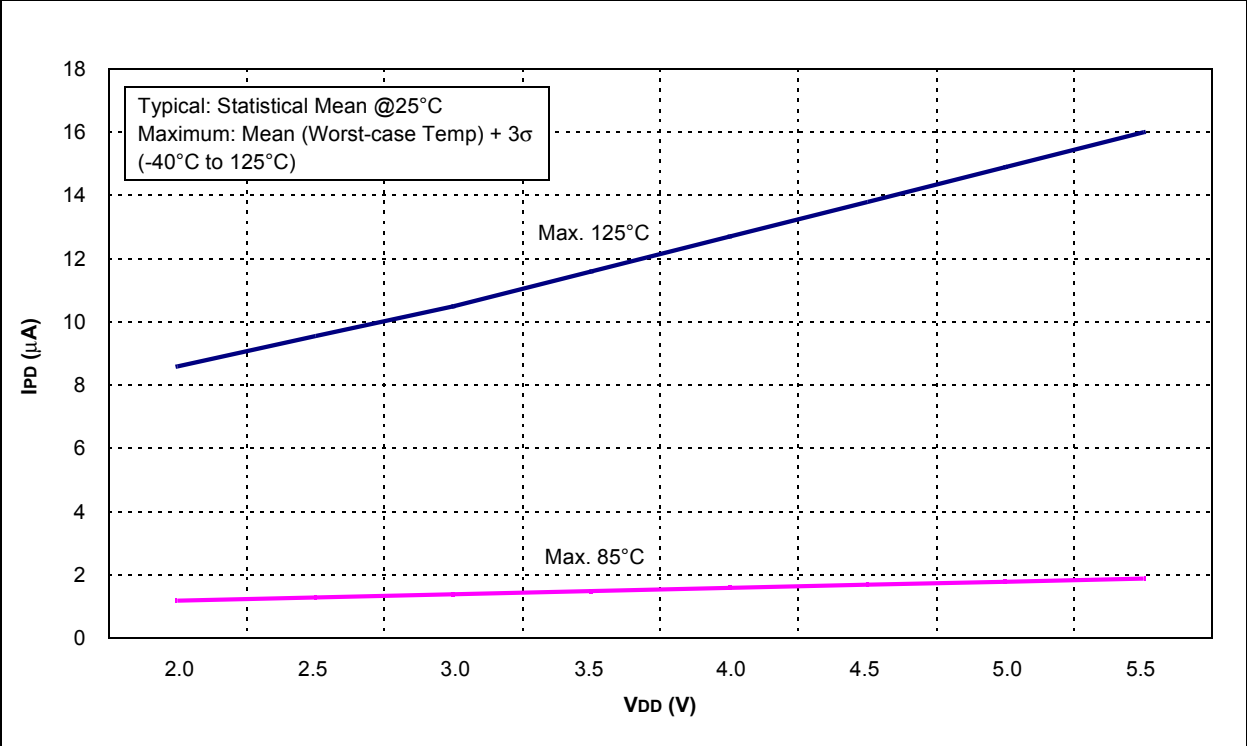


FIGURE 20-15: COMPARATOR IPD vs. VDD (BOTH COMPARATORS ENABLED)

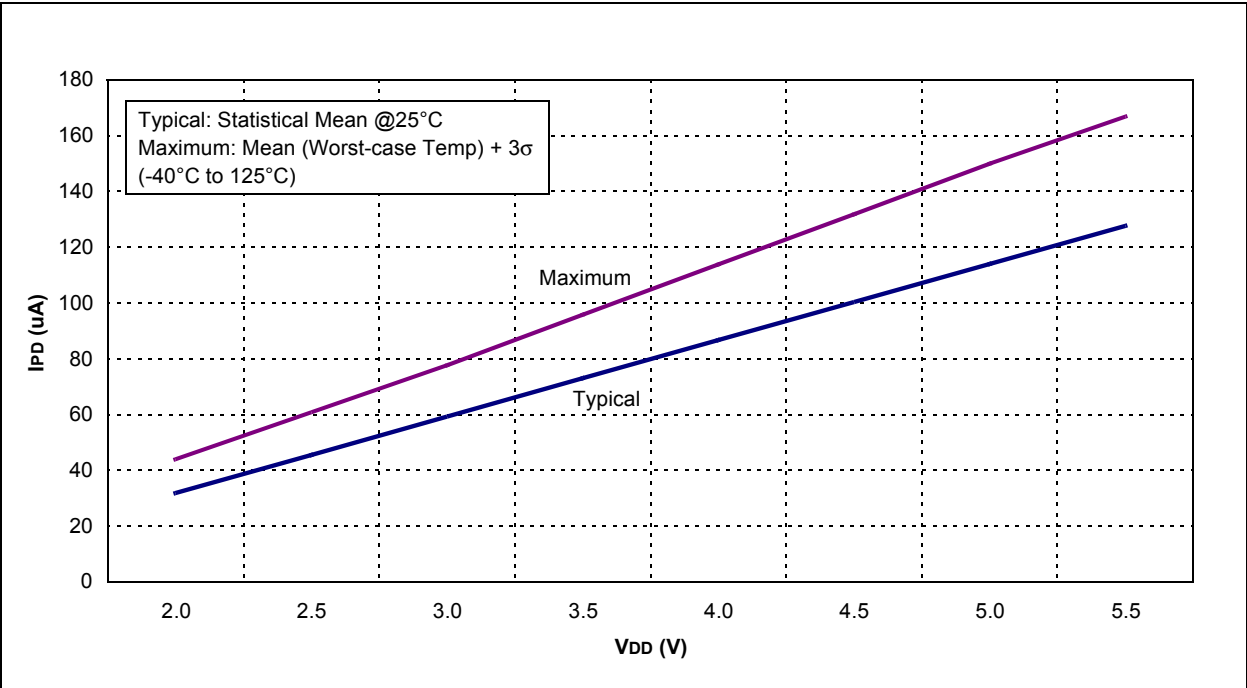


**FIGURE 20-16: BOR IPD vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE**

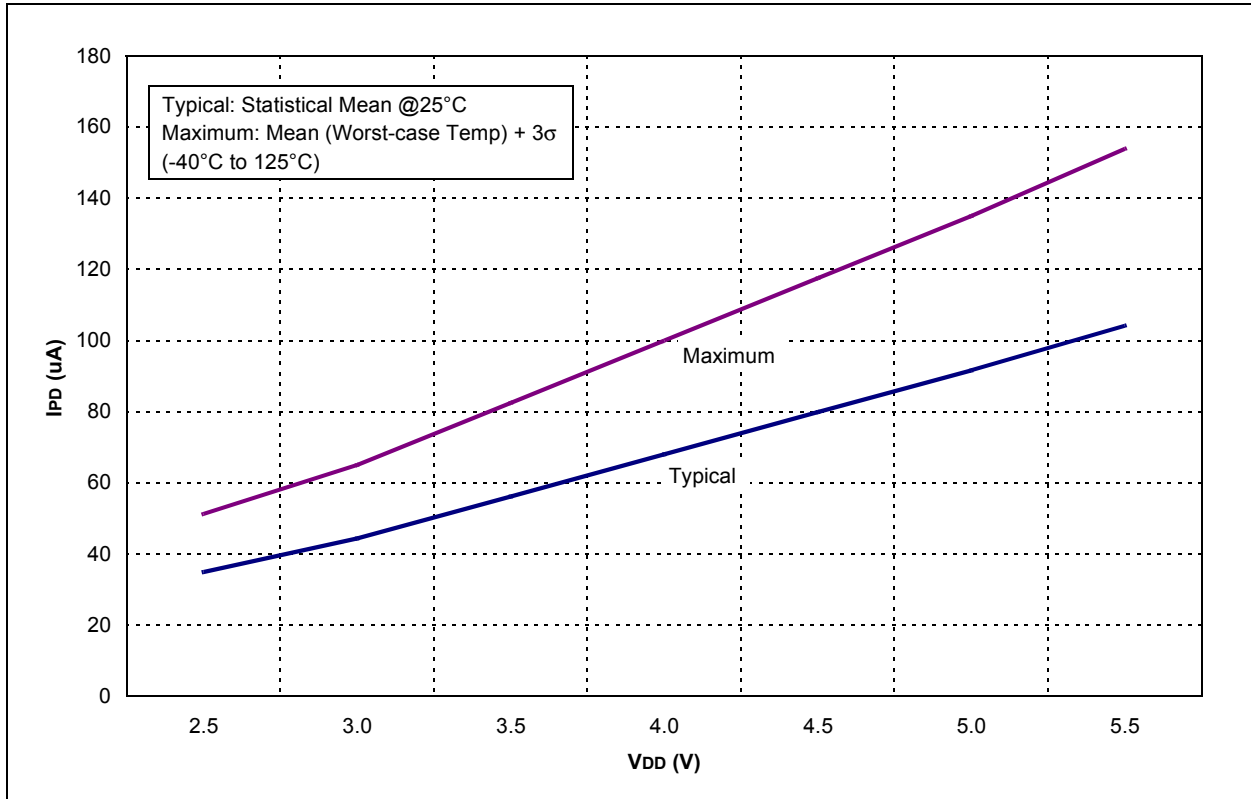
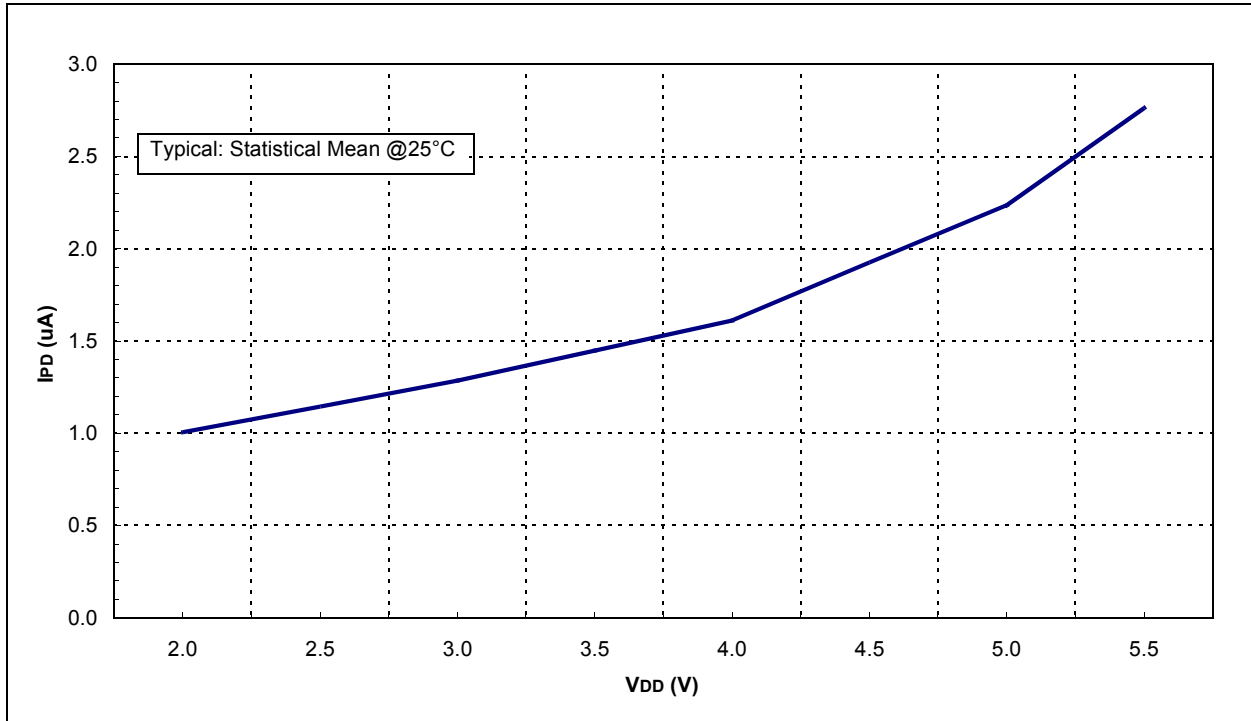


**FIGURE 20-17: TYPICAL WDT IPD vs. VDD (25°C)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 20-18: MAXIMUM WDT IPD vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE

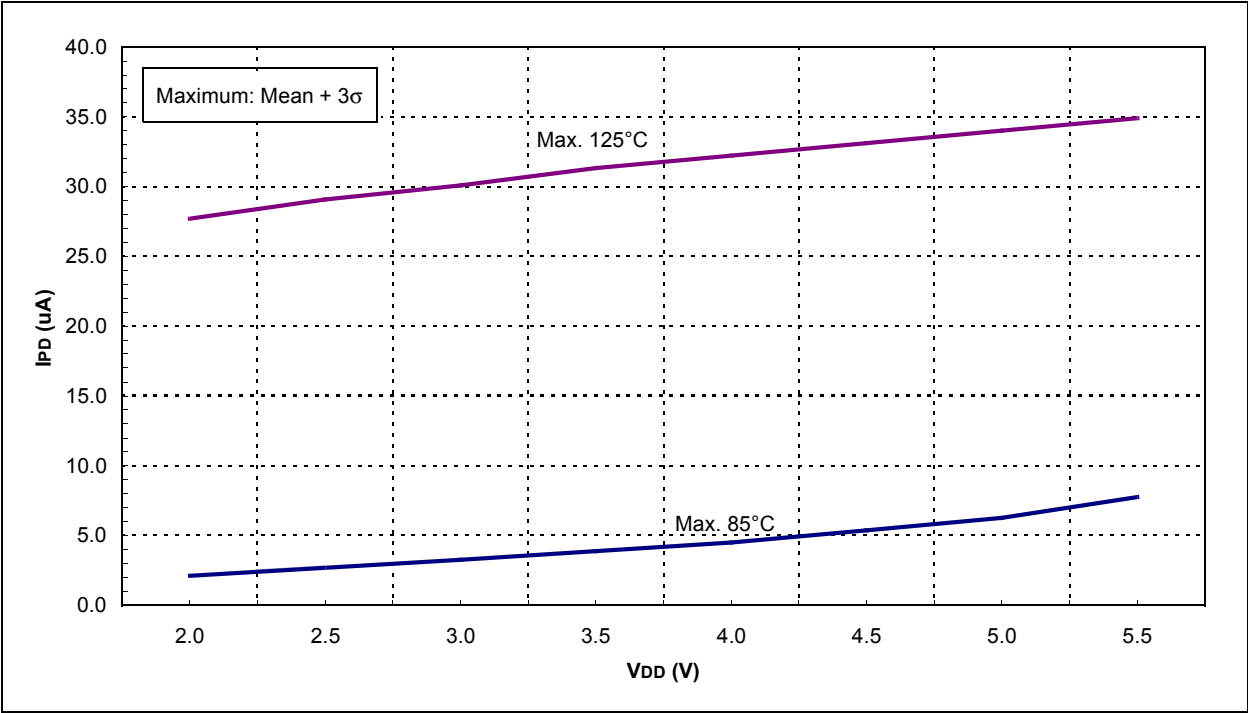


FIGURE 20-19: WDT PERIOD vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE

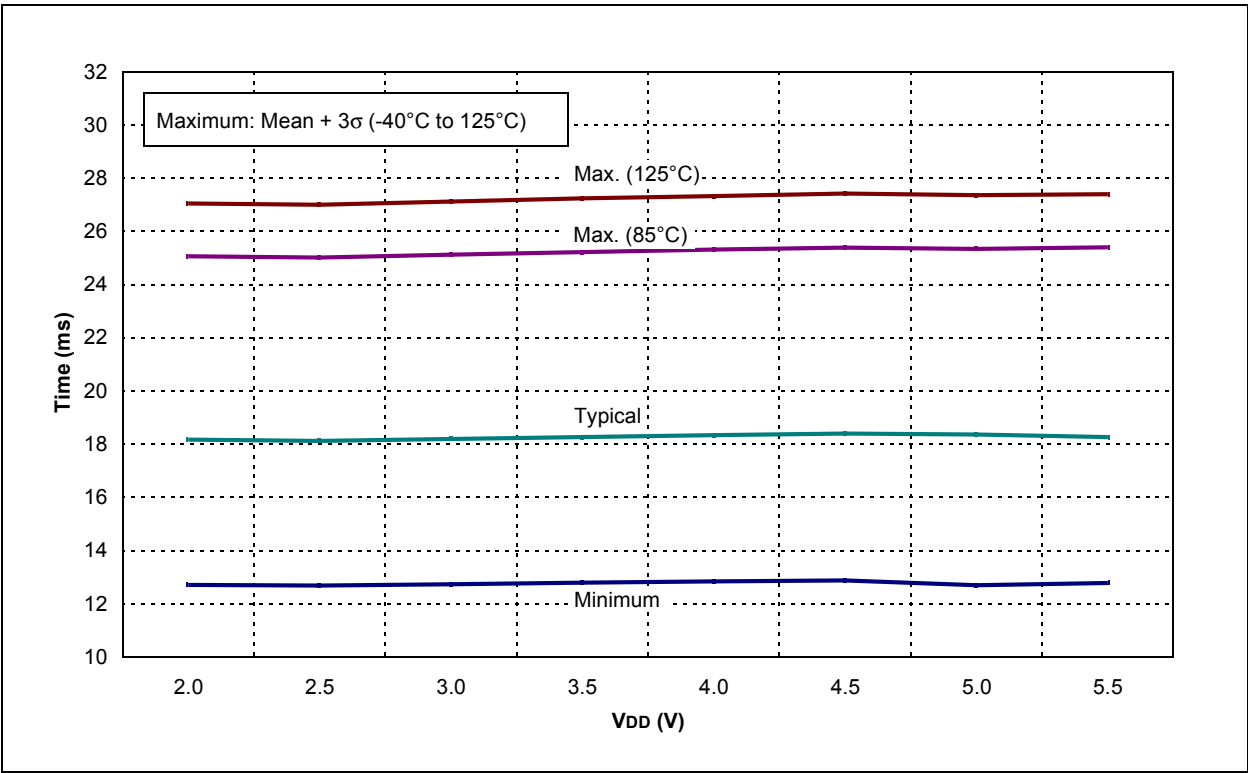


**FIGURE 20-20: WDT PERIOD vs. TEMPERATURE (V<sub>DD</sub> = 5.0V)**

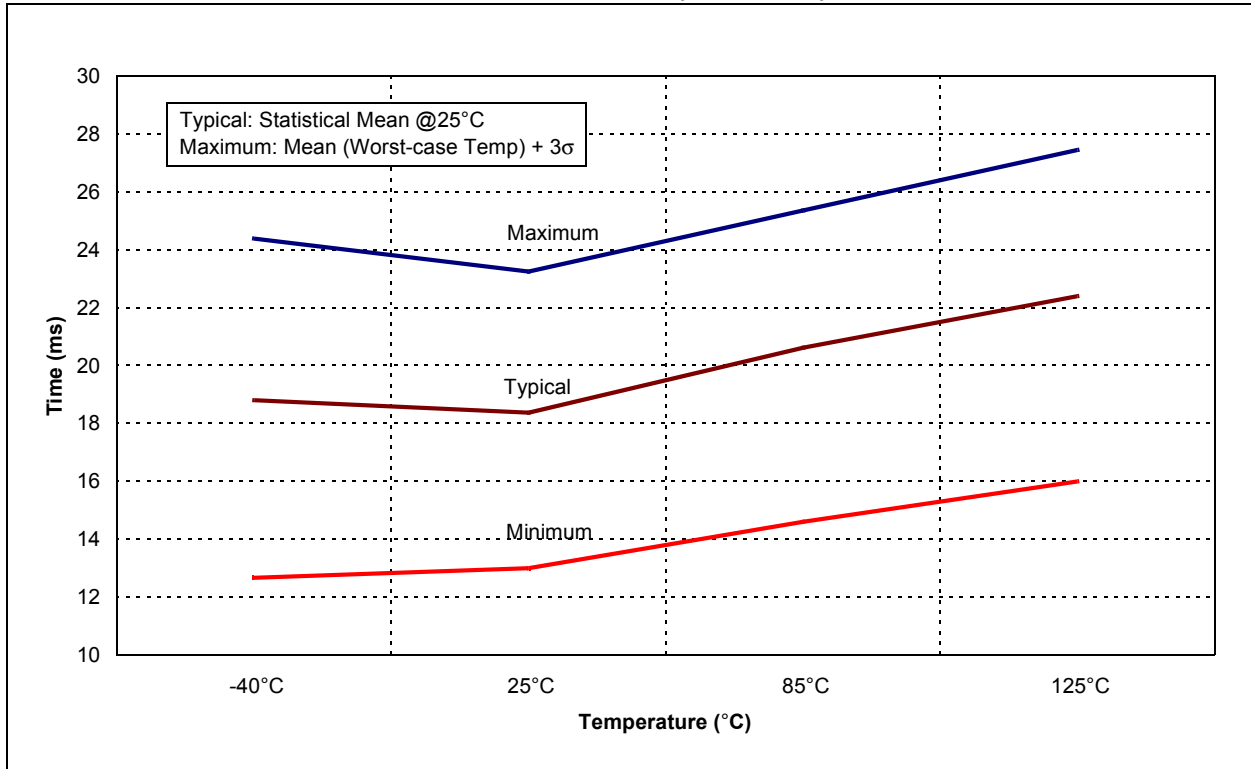
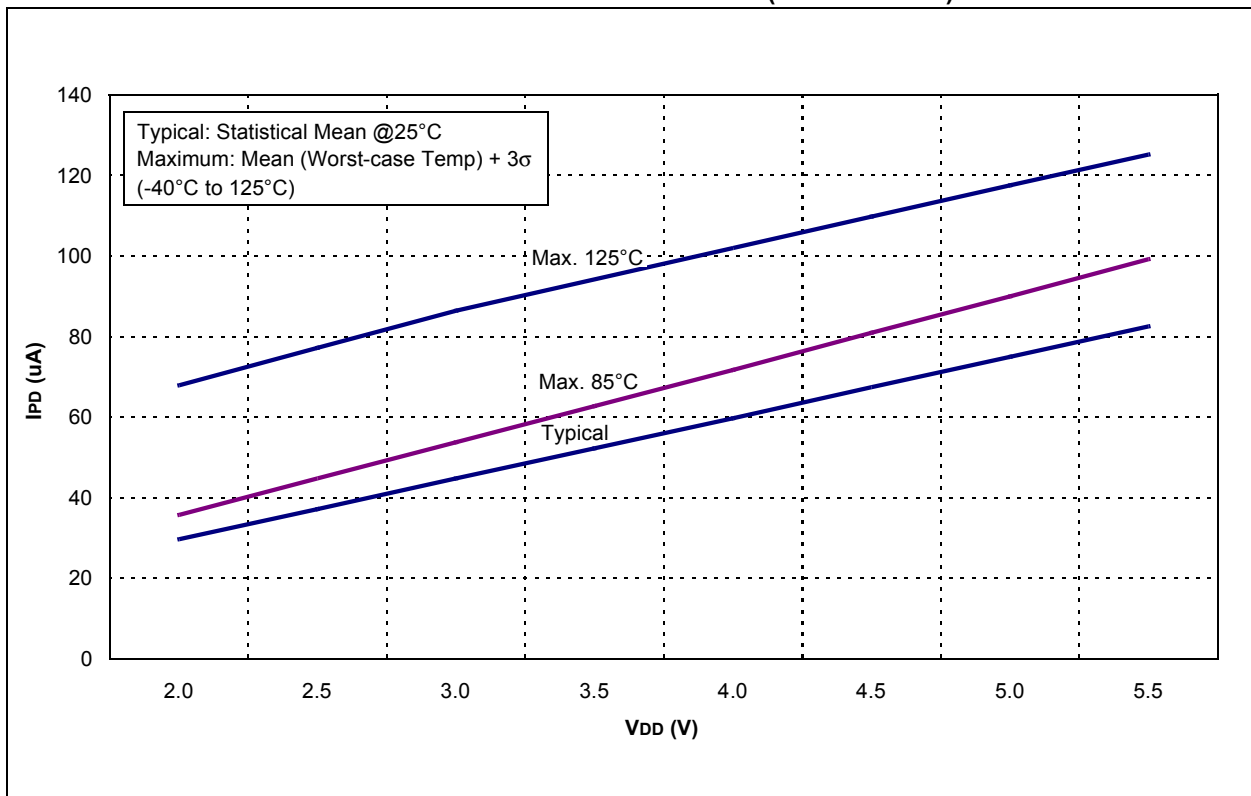


**FIGURE 20-21: CVREF IPD vs. V<sub>DD</sub> OVER TEMPERATURE (HIGH RANGE)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 20-22: CVREF IPD vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE (LOW RANGE)

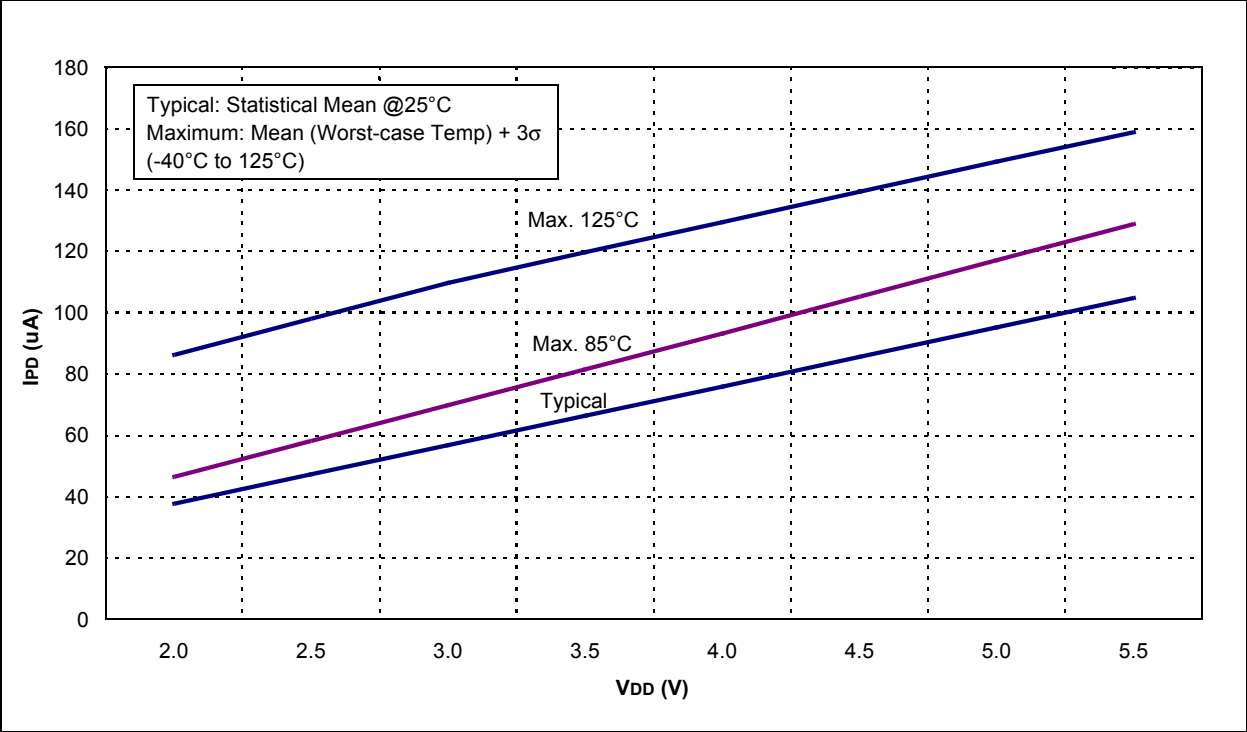
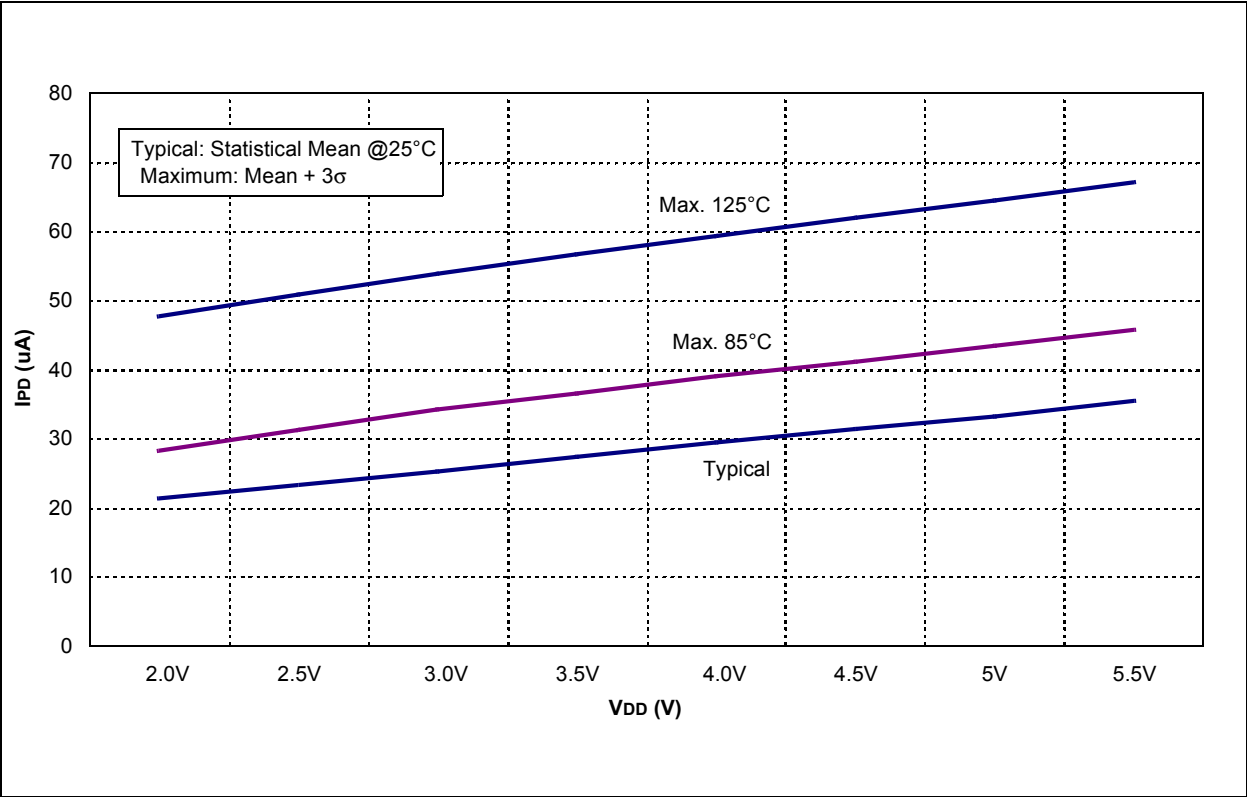


FIGURE 20-23: LVD IPD vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE





# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 20-24: T1OSC IPD vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE (32 kHz)

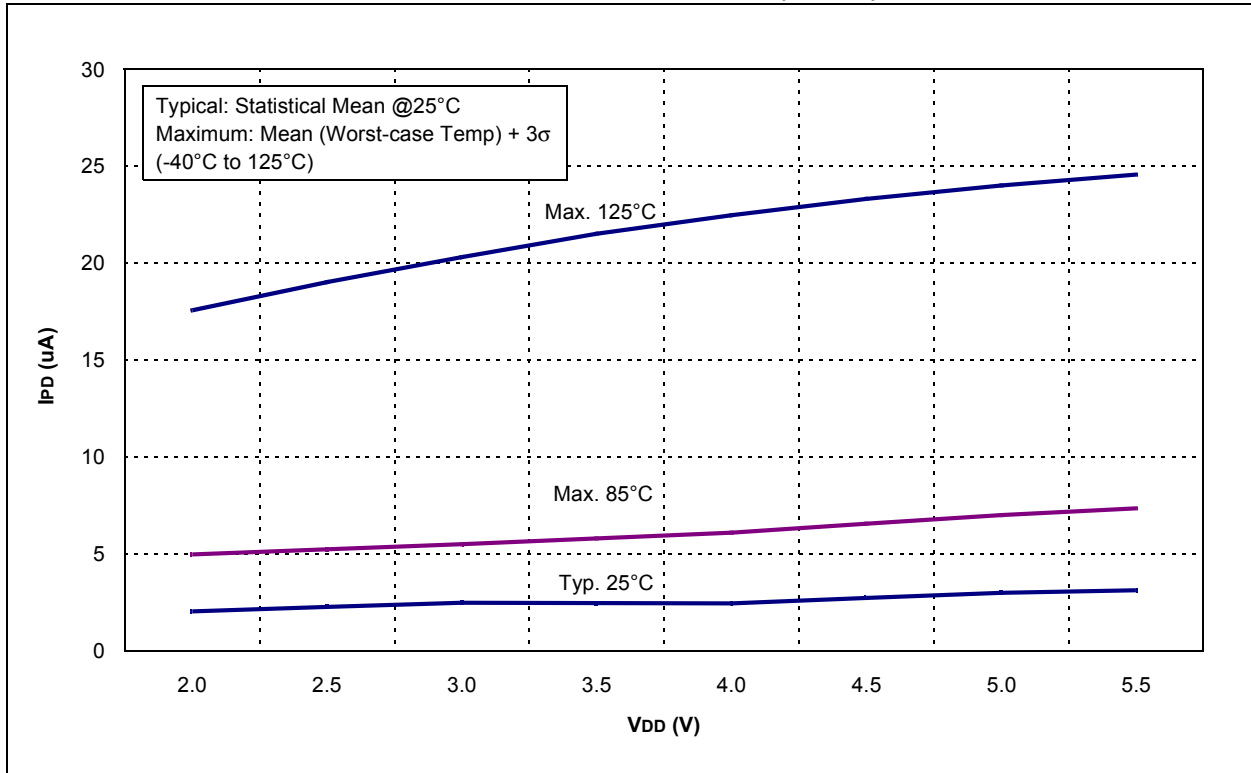
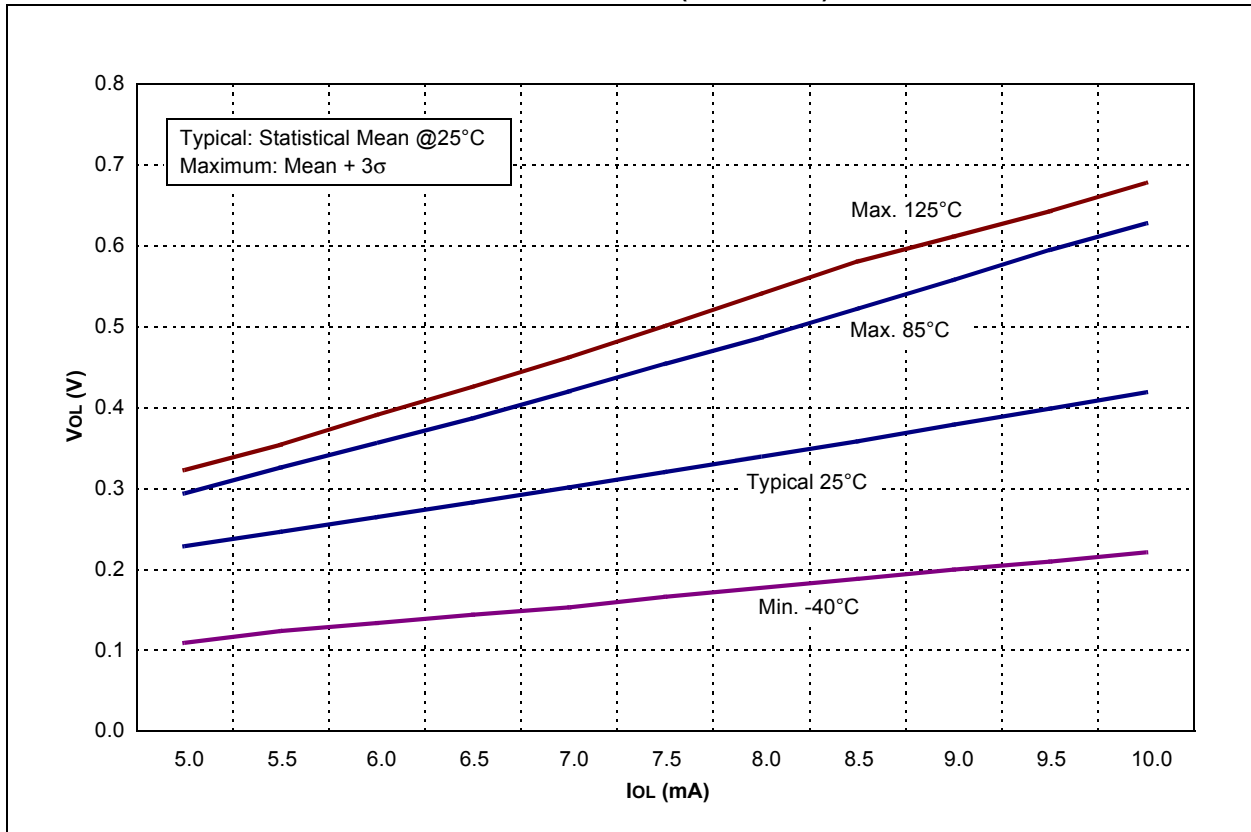


FIGURE 20-25: VOL vs. IOL OVER TEMPERATURE (VDD = 3.0V)



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 20-26:  $V_{OL}$  vs.  $I_{OL}$  OVER TEMPERATURE ( $V_{DD} = 5.0V$ )

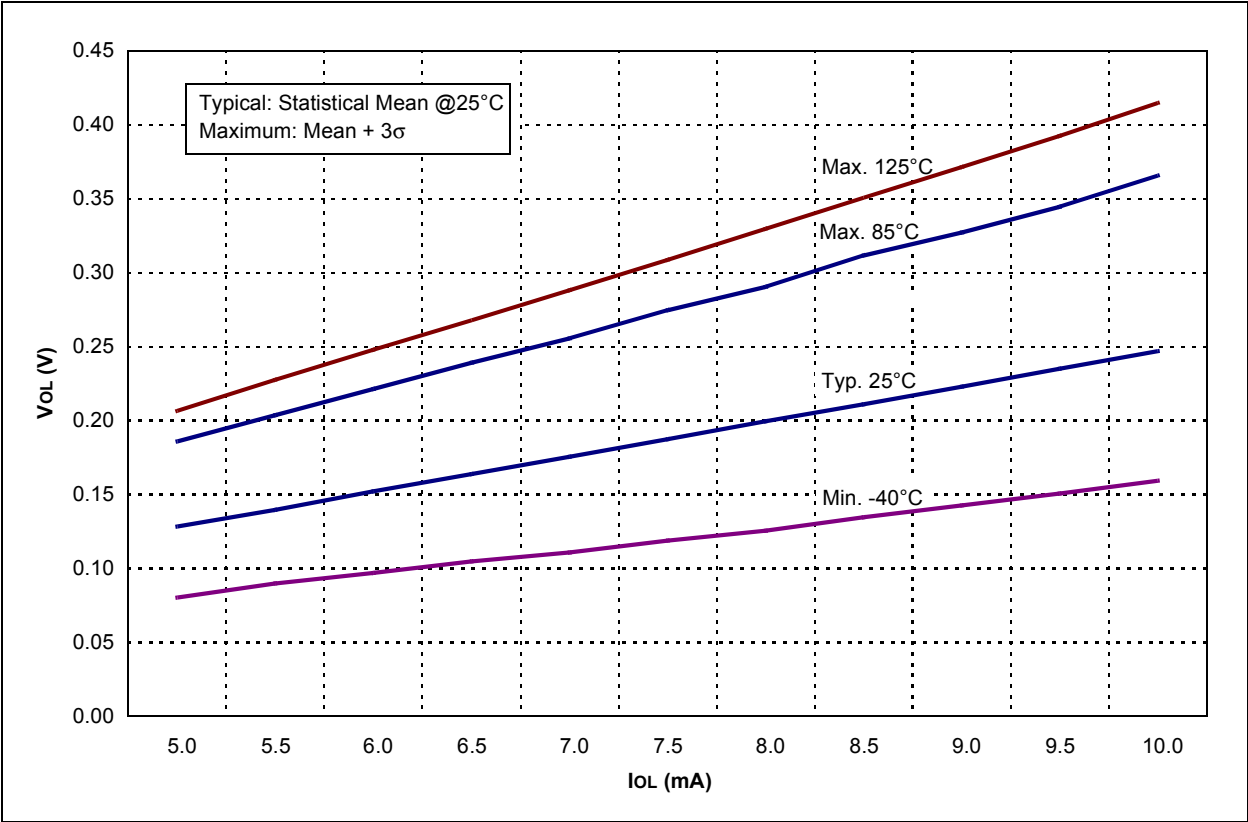


FIGURE 20-27:  $V_{OH}$  vs.  $I_{OH}$  OVER TEMPERATURE ( $V_{DD} = 3.0V$ )

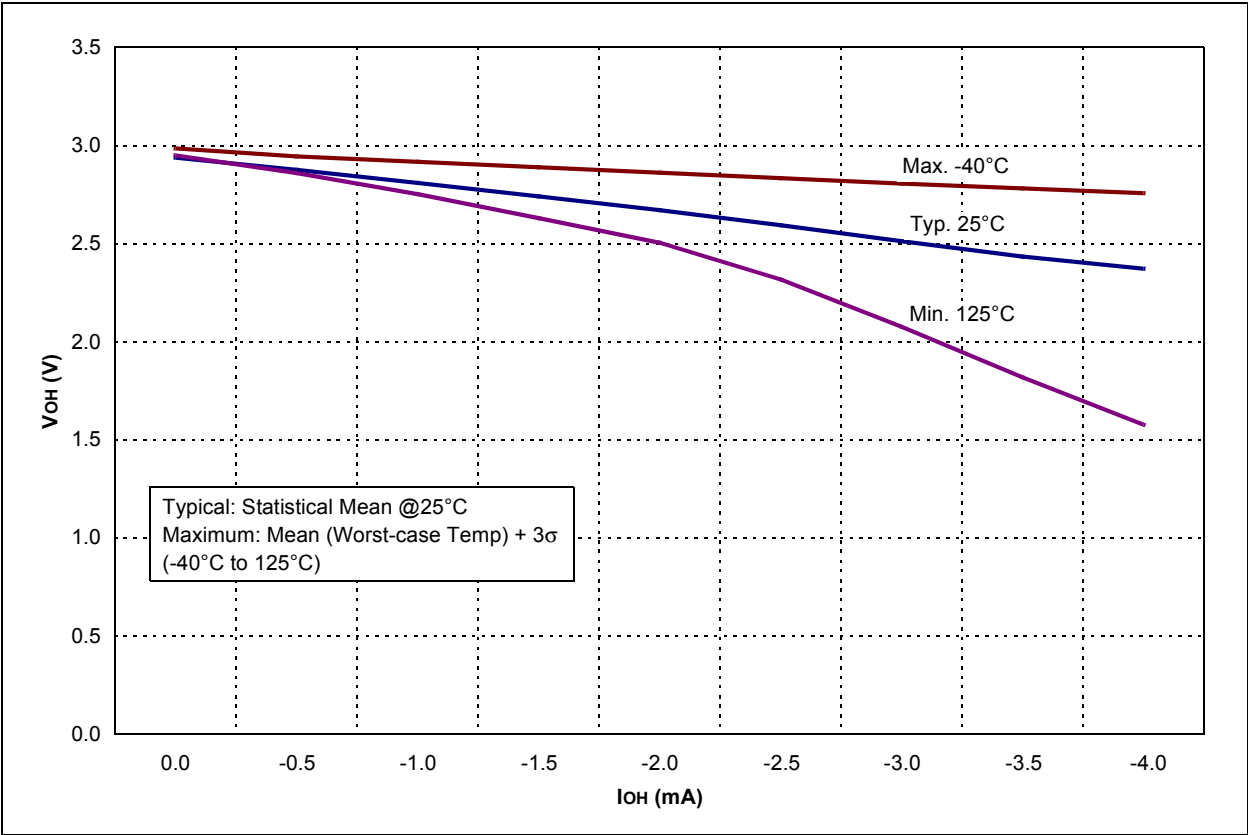


**FIGURE 20-28:  $V_{OH}$  vs.  $I_{OH}$  OVER TEMPERATURE ( $V_{DD} = 5.0V$ )**

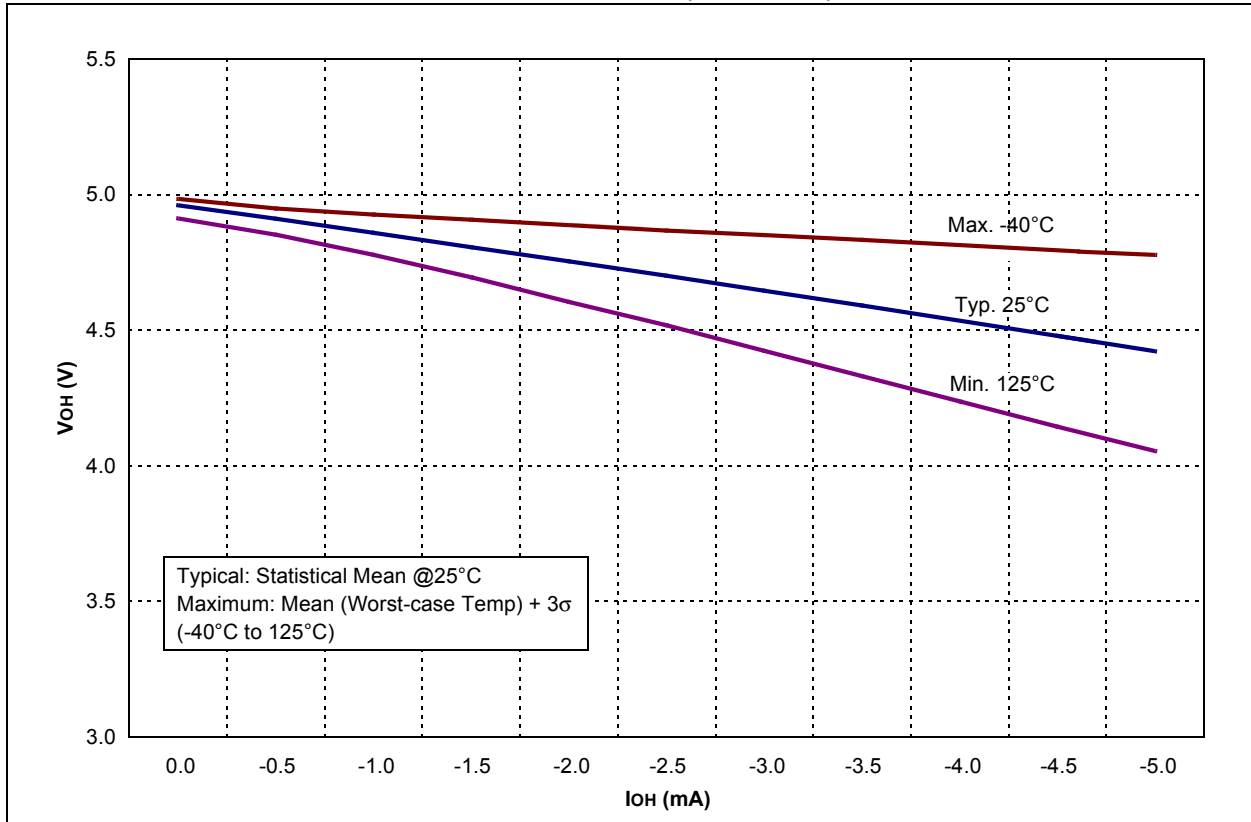
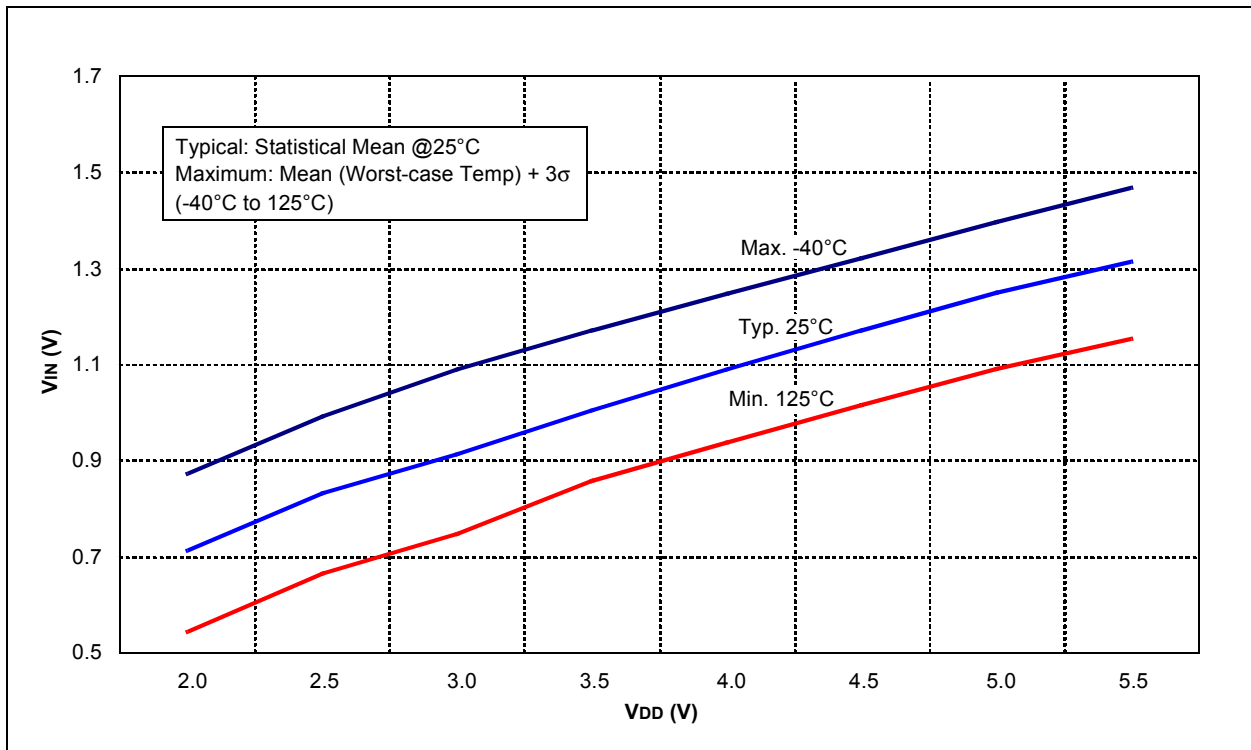


**FIGURE 20-29: TTL INPUT THRESHOLD  $V_{IN}$  vs.  $V_{DD}$  OVER TEMPERATURE**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 20-30: SCHMITT TRIGGER INPUT THRESHOLD VIN vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE

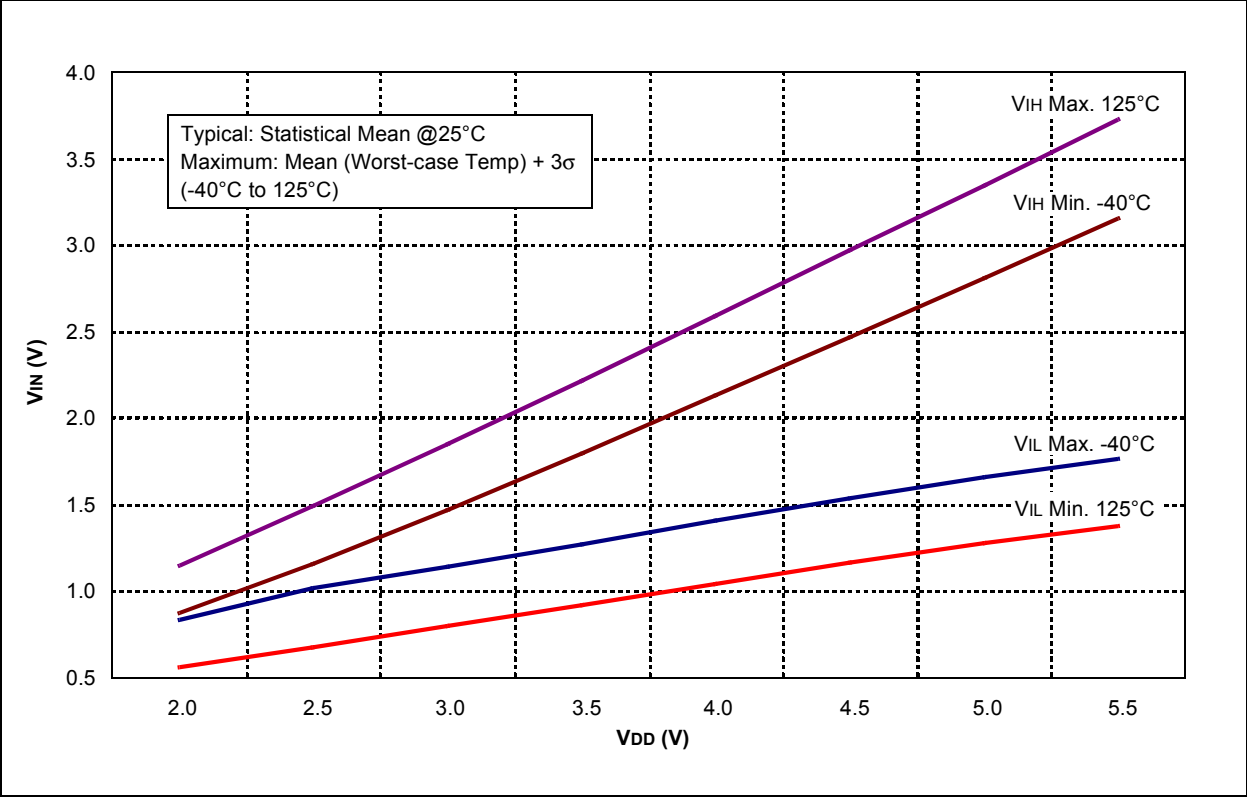


FIGURE 20-31: COMPARATOR RESPONSE TIME (RISING EDGE)

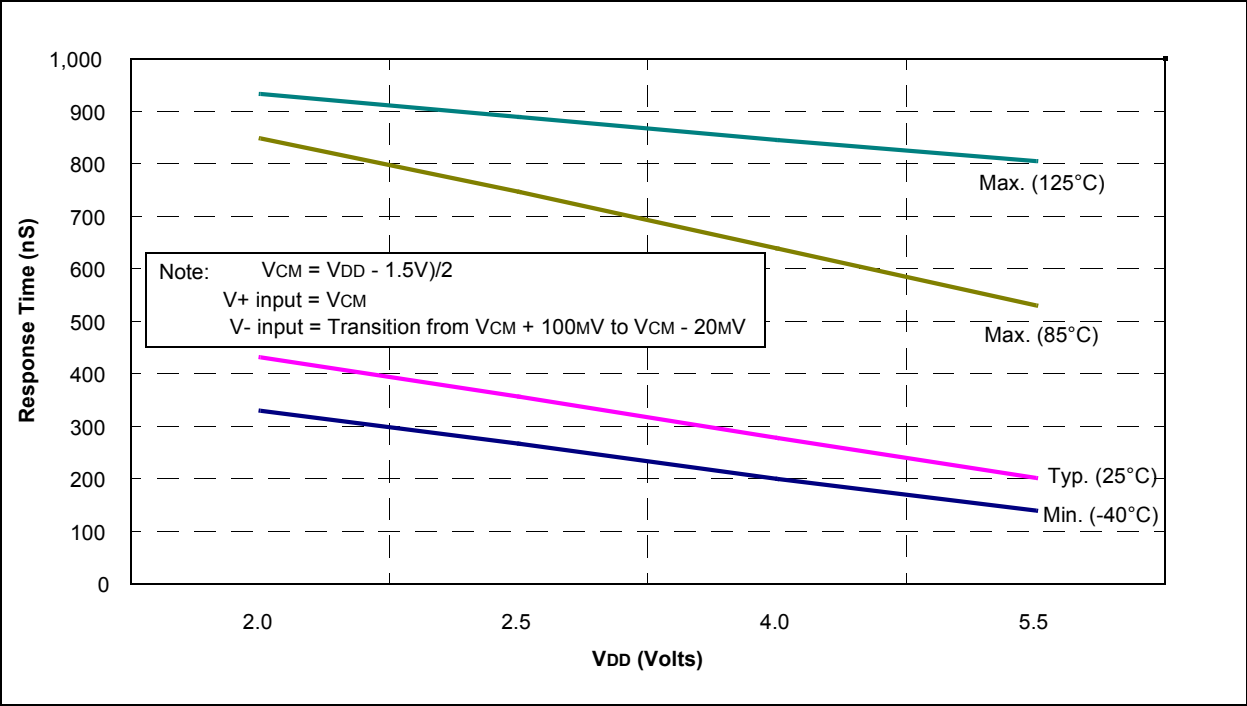


**FIGURE 20-32: COMPARATOR RESPONSE TIME (FALLING EDGE)**

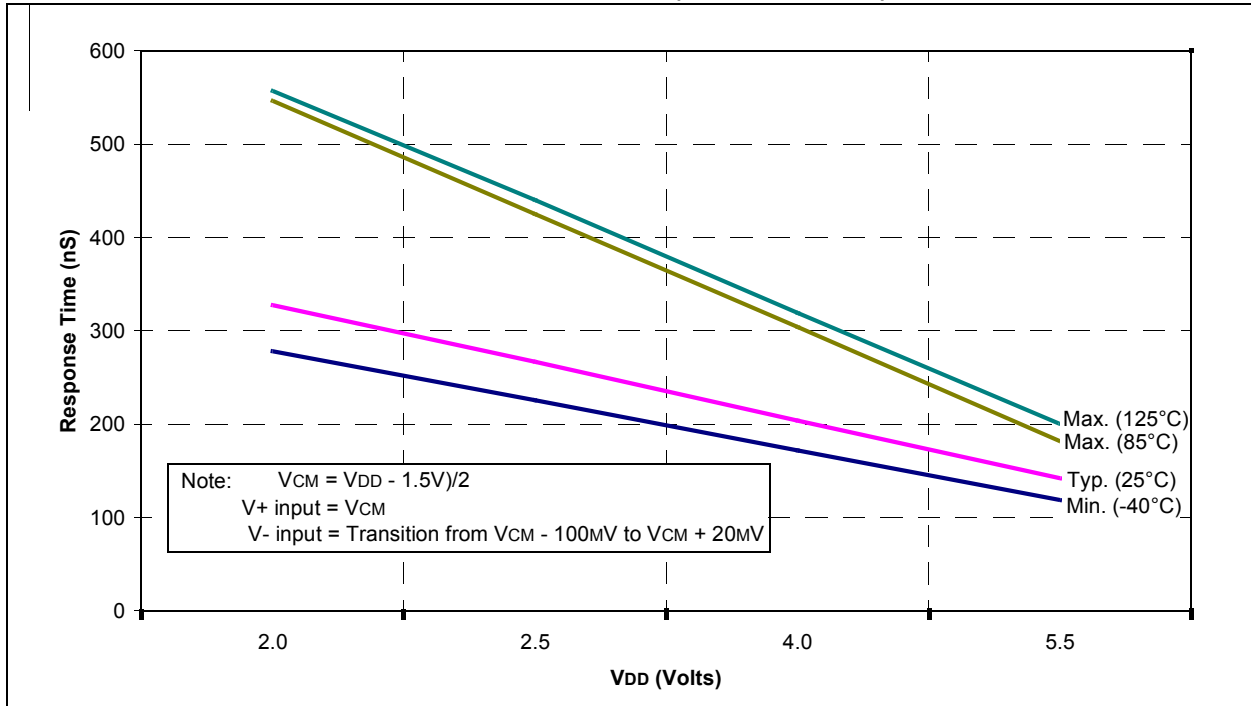
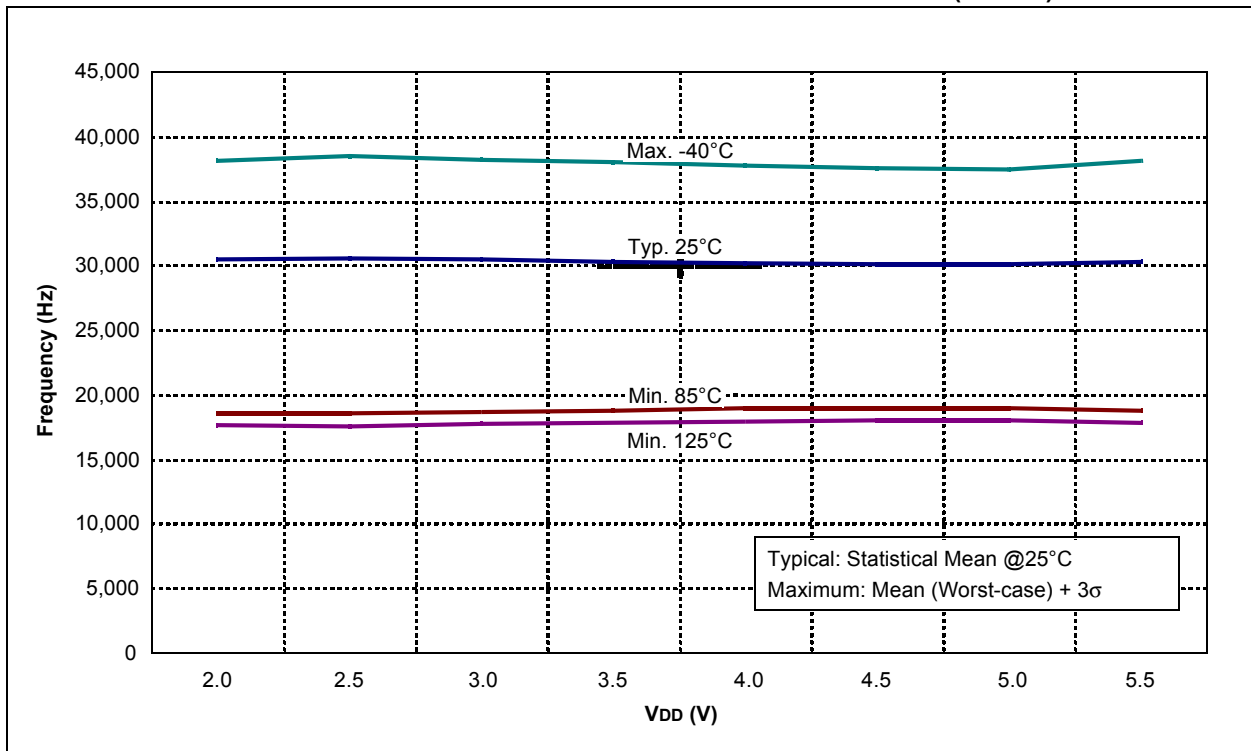


**FIGURE 20-33: LFINTOSC FREQUENCY vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE (31 kHz)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 20-34: ADC CLOCK PERIOD vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE

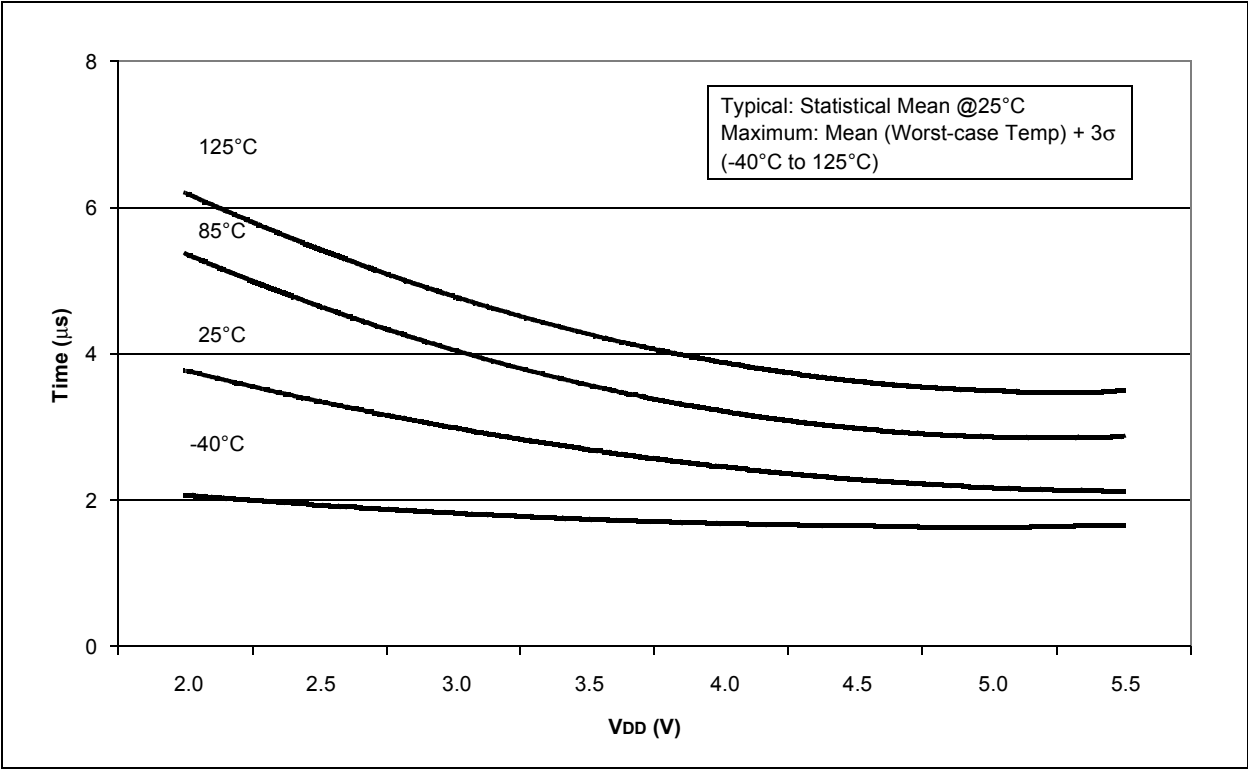
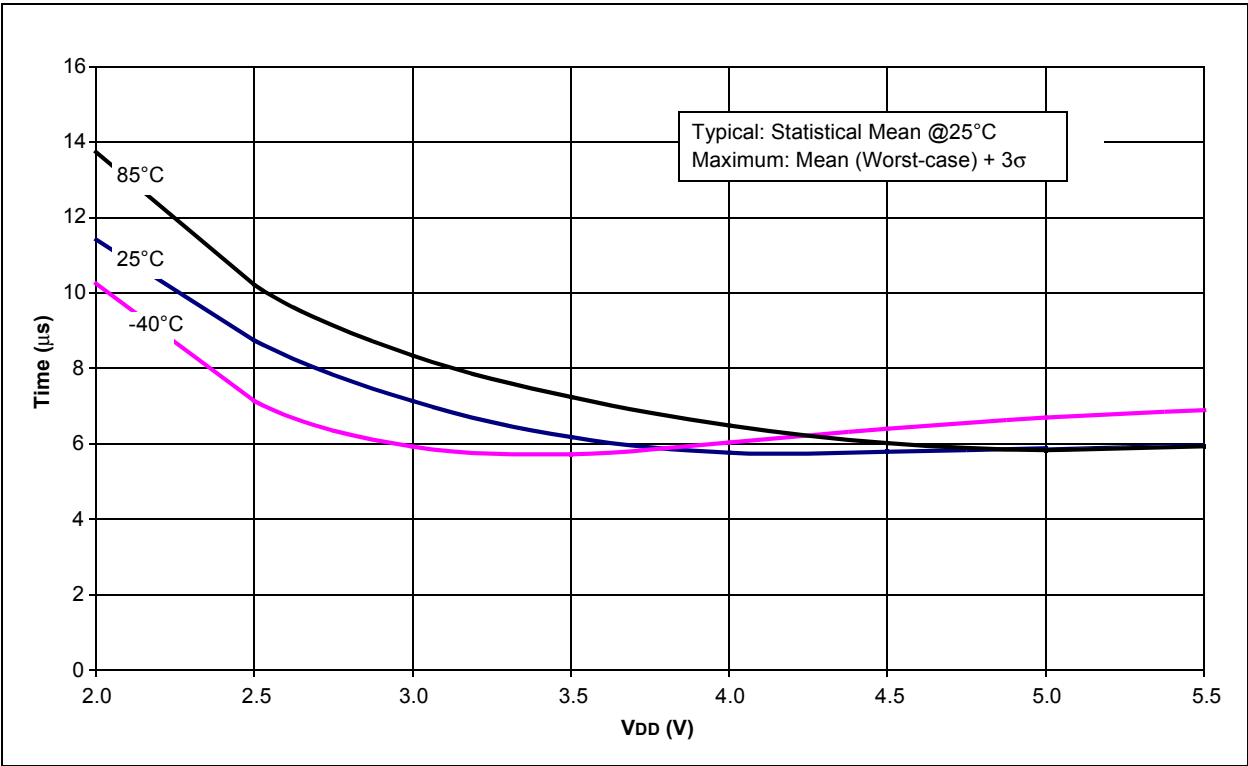


FIGURE 20-35: TYPICAL HFINTOSC START-UP TIMES vs. VDD OVER TEMPERATURE



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 20-36: MAXIMUM HFINTOSC START-UP TIMES vs. V<sub>DD</sub> OVER TEMPERATURE

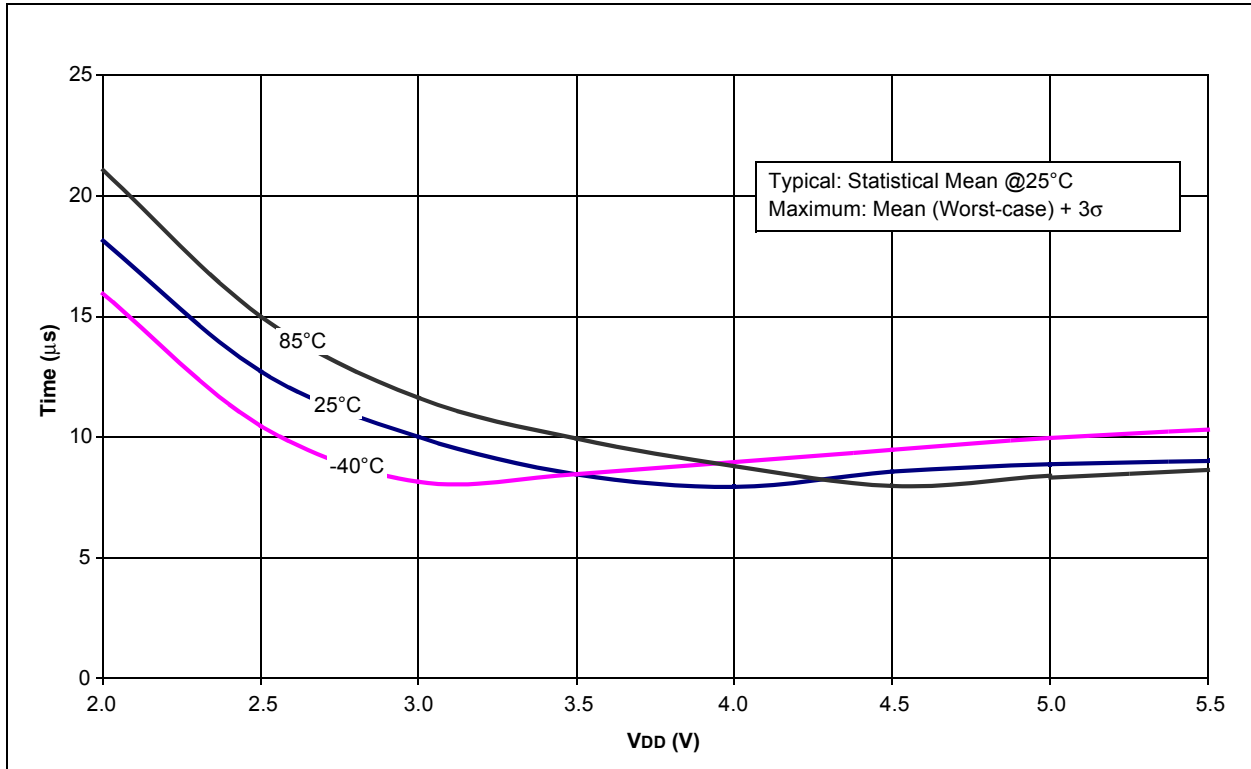
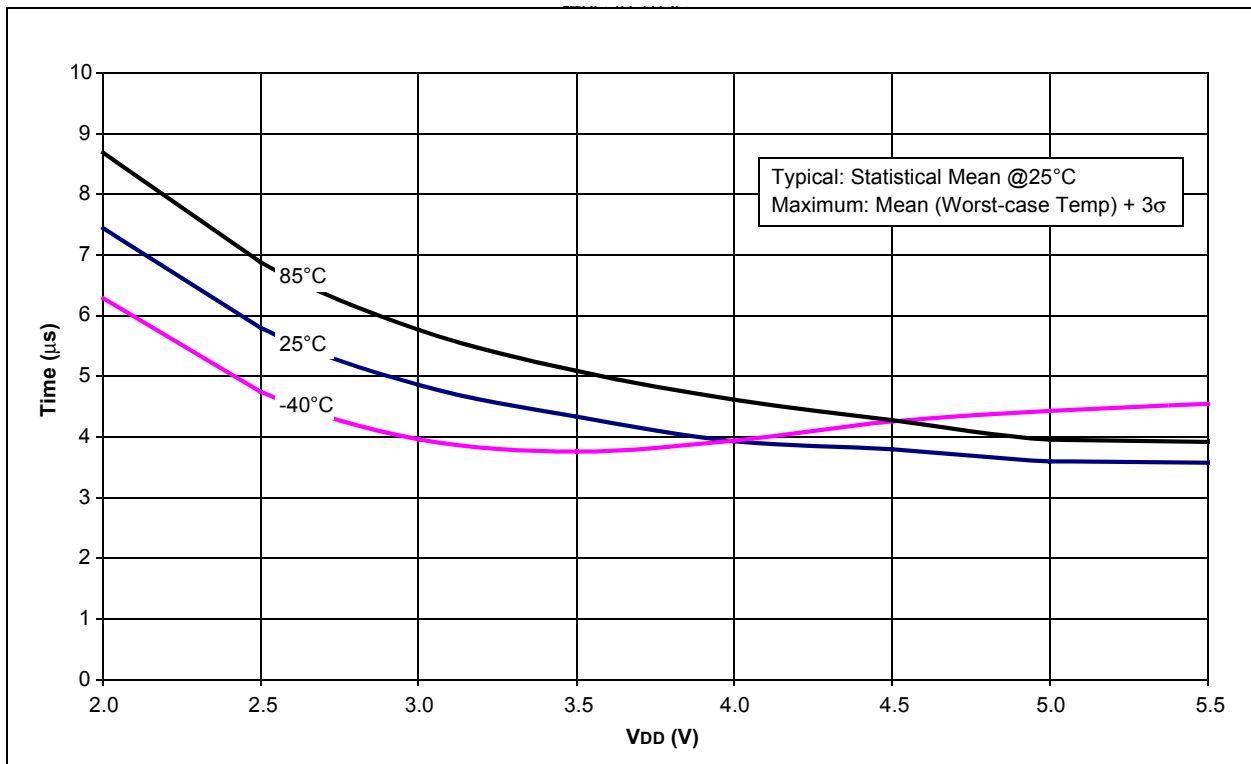


FIGURE 20-37: MINIMUM HFINTOSC START-UP TIMES vs. V<sub>DD</sub> OVER TEMPERATURE



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

FIGURE 20-38: TYPICAL HFINTOSC FREQUENCY CHANGE vs. VDD (25°C)

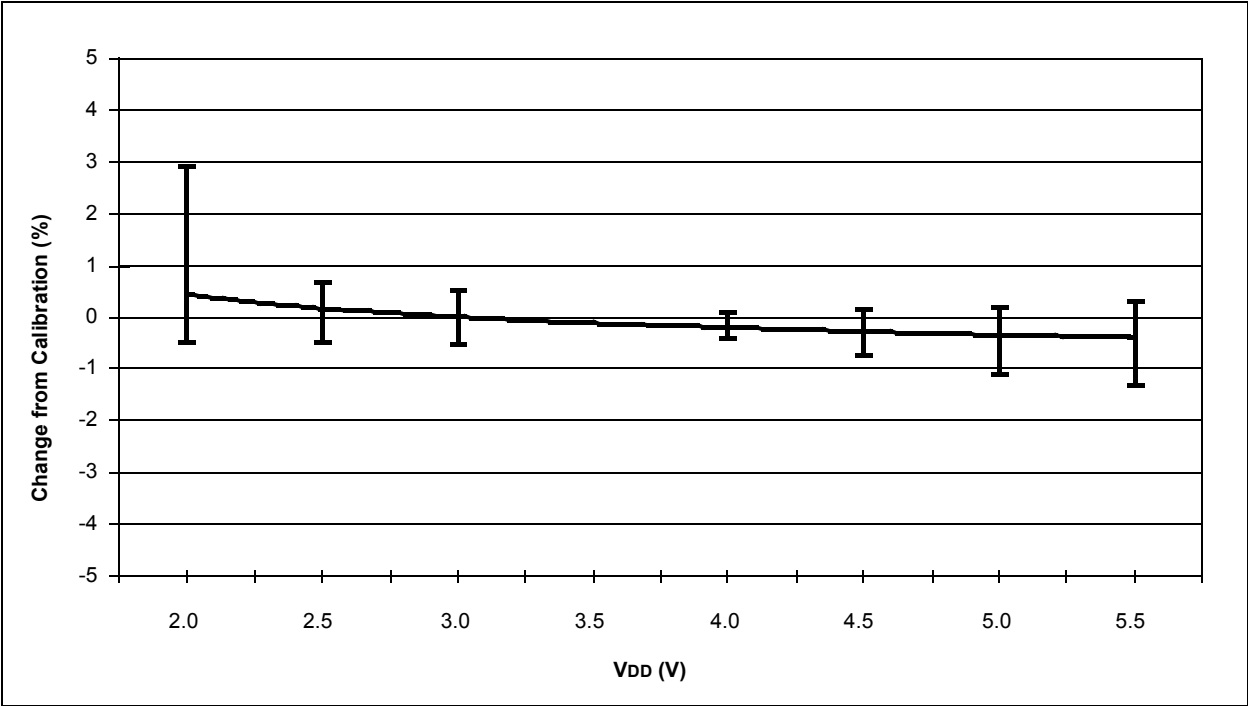
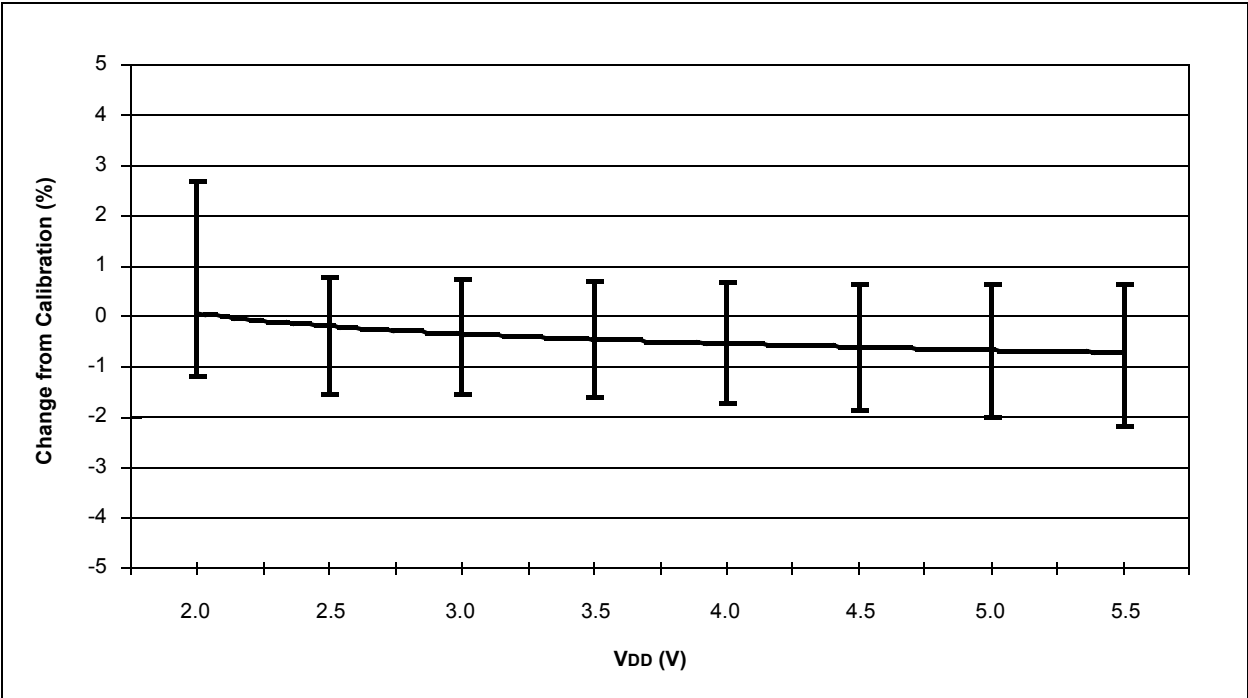


FIGURE 20-39: TYPICAL HFINTOSC FREQUENCY CHANGE OVER DEVICE VDD (85°C)





# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

**FIGURE 20-40: TYPICAL HFINTOSC FREQUENCY CHANGE vs. V<sub>DD</sub> (125°C)**

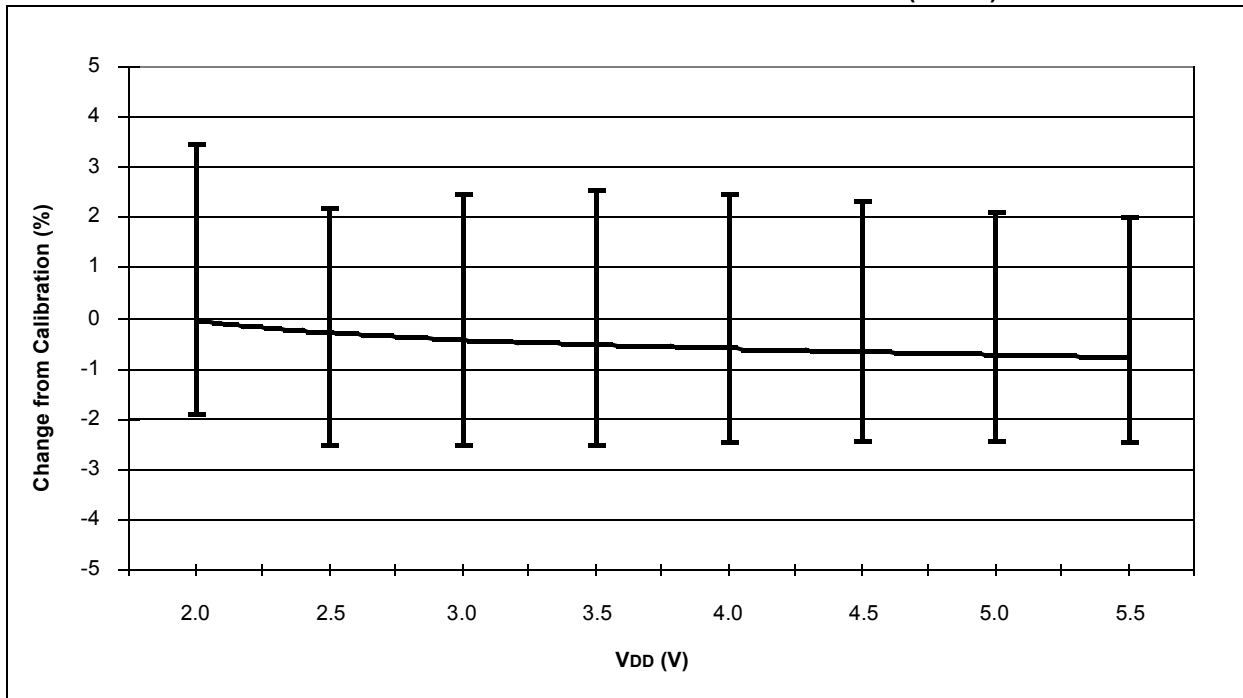
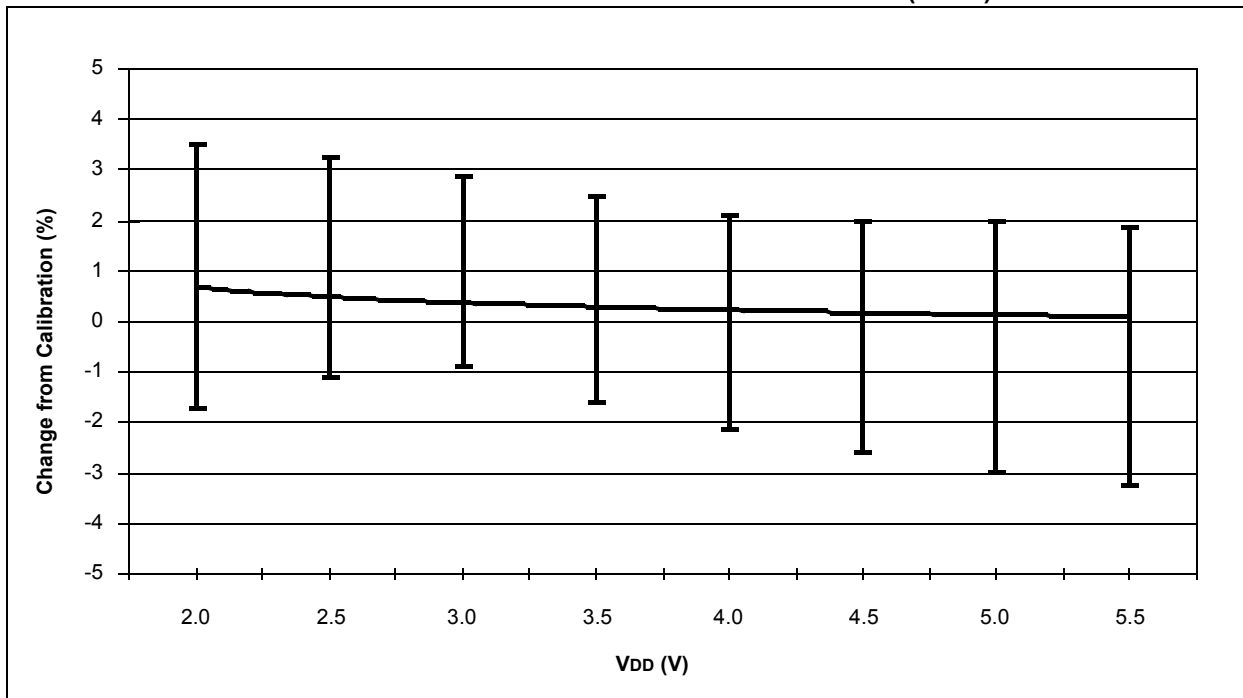


**FIGURE 20-41: TYPICAL HFINTOSC FREQUENCY CHANGE vs. V<sub>DD</sub> (-40°C)**



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

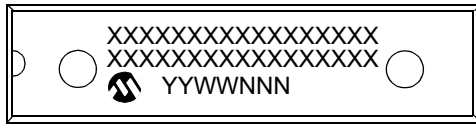
---

NOTES:

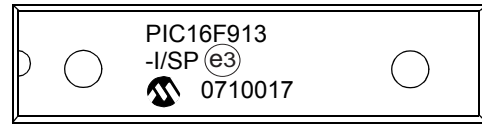
## 21.0 PACKAGING INFORMATION

### 21.1 Package Marking Information

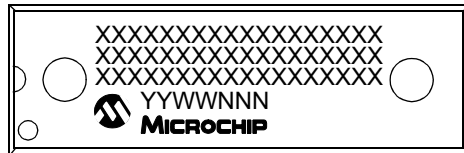
28-Lead SPDIP



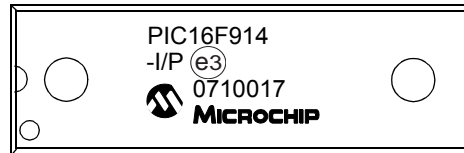
Example



40-Lead PDIP



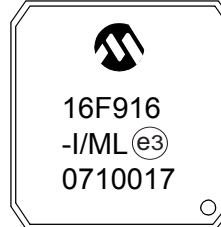
Example



28-Lead QFN



Example



|                |        |                                                                                                                  |
|----------------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Legend:</b> | XX...X | Customer-specific information                                                                                    |
|                | Y      | Year code (last digit of calendar year)                                                                          |
|                | YY     | Year code (last 2 digits of calendar year)                                                                       |
|                | WW     | Week code (week of January 1 is week '01')                                                                       |
|                | NNN    | Alphanumeric traceability code                                                                                   |
|                | (e3)   | Pb-free JEDEC designator for Matte Tin (Sn)                                                                      |
|                | *      | This package is Pb-free. The Pb-free JEDEC designator (e3) can be found on the outer packaging for this package. |

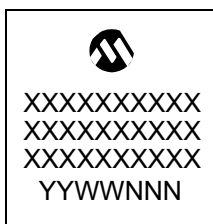
**Note:** In the event the full Microchip part number cannot be marked on one line, it will be carried over to the next line, thus limiting the number of available characters for customer-specific information.

- \* Standard PIC<sup>®</sup> device marking consists of Microchip part number, year code, week code and traceability code. For PIC<sup>®</sup> device marking beyond this, certain price adders apply. Please check with your Microchip Sales Office. For QTP devices, any special marking adders are included in QTP price.

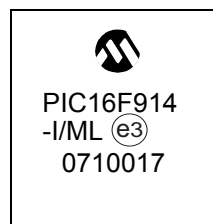
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## Package Marking Information (Continued)

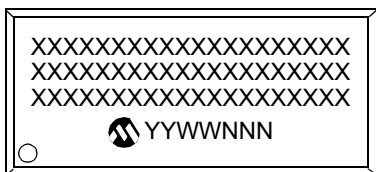
44-Lead QFN



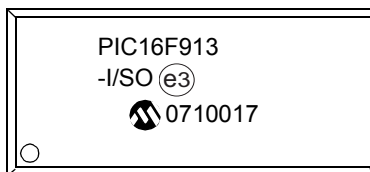
Example



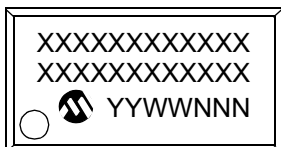
28-Lead SOIC



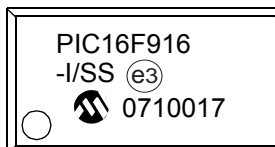
Example



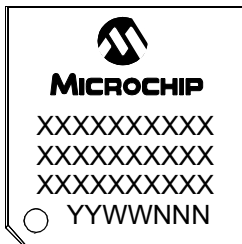
28-Lead SSOP



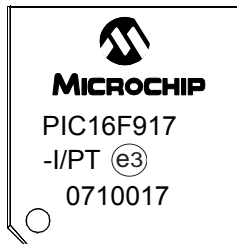
Example



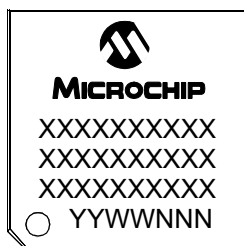
44-Lead TQFP



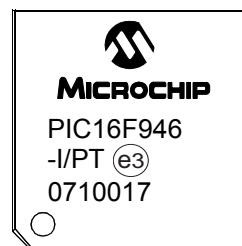
Example



64-Lead TQFP (10x10x1mm)



Example



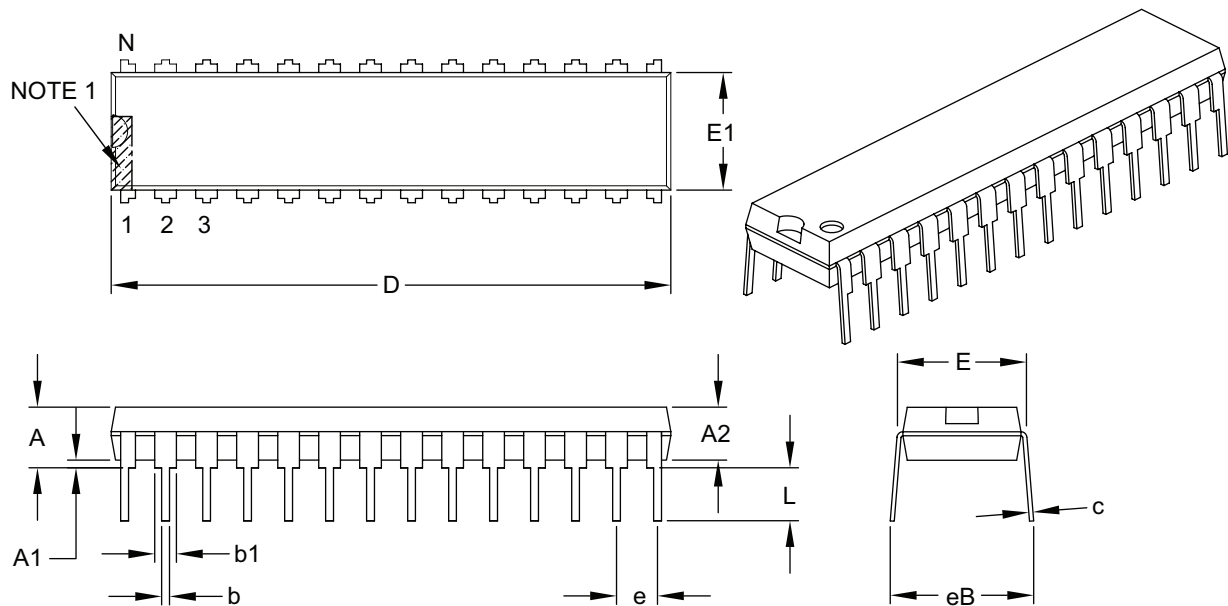
# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 21.2 Package Details

The following sections give the technical details of the packages.

### 28-Lead Skinny Plastic Dual In-Line (SP) – 300 mil Body [SPDIP]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



| Units                      |    | INCHES   |       |       |
|----------------------------|----|----------|-------|-------|
| Dimension Limits           |    | MIN      | NOM   | MAX   |
| Number of Pins             | N  | 28       |       |       |
| Pitch                      | e  | .100 BSC |       |       |
| Top to Seating Plane       | A  | –        | –     | .200  |
| Molded Package Thickness   | A2 | .120     | .135  | .150  |
| Base to Seating Plane      | A1 | .015     | –     | –     |
| Shoulder to Shoulder Width | E  | .290     | .310  | .335  |
| Molded Package Width       | E1 | .240     | .285  | .295  |
| Overall Length             | D  | 1.345    | 1.365 | 1.400 |
| Tip to Seating Plane       | L  | .110     | .130  | .150  |
| Lead Thickness             | c  | .008     | .010  | .015  |
| Upper Lead Width           | b1 | .040     | .050  | .070  |
| Lower Lead Width           | b  | .014     | .018  | .022  |
| Overall Row Spacing §      | eB | –        | –     | .430  |

**Notes:**

- Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
- § Significant Characteristic.
- Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" per side.
- Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M.

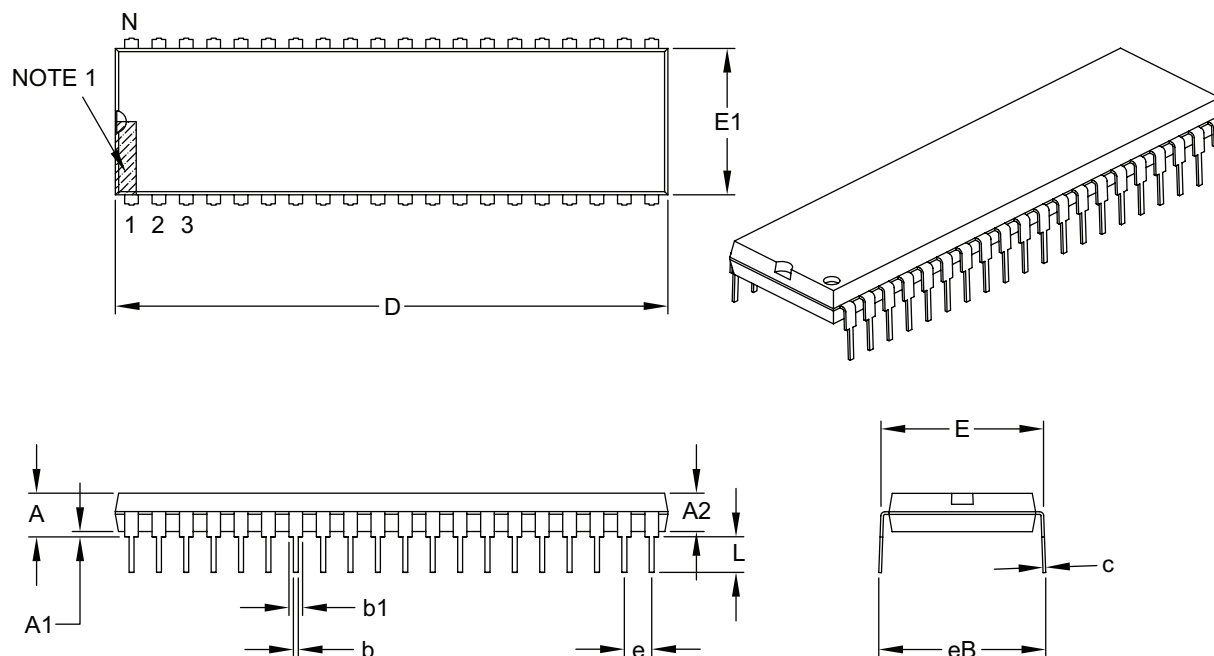
BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-070B

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 40-Lead Plastic Dual In-Line (P) – 600 mil Body [PDIP]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packageing>



| Units                      |    | INCHES   |     |       |
|----------------------------|----|----------|-----|-------|
| Dimension Limits           |    | MIN      | NOM | MAX   |
| Number of Pins             | N  | 40       |     |       |
| Pitch                      | e  | .100 BSC |     |       |
| Top to Seating Plane       | A  | –        | –   | .250  |
| Molded Package Thickness   | A2 | .125     | –   | .195  |
| Base to Seating Plane      | A1 | .015     | –   | –     |
| Shoulder to Shoulder Width | E  | .590     | –   | .625  |
| Molded Package Width       | E1 | .485     | –   | .580  |
| Overall Length             | D  | 1.980    | –   | 2.095 |
| Tip to Seating Plane       | L  | .115     | –   | .200  |
| Lead Thickness             | c  | .008     | –   | .015  |
| Upper Lead Width           | b1 | .030     | –   | .070  |
| Lower Lead Width           | b  | .014     | –   | .023  |
| Overall Row Spacing §      | eB | –        | –   | .700  |

### Notes:

- Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
- § Significant Characteristic.
- Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010" per side.
- Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M.

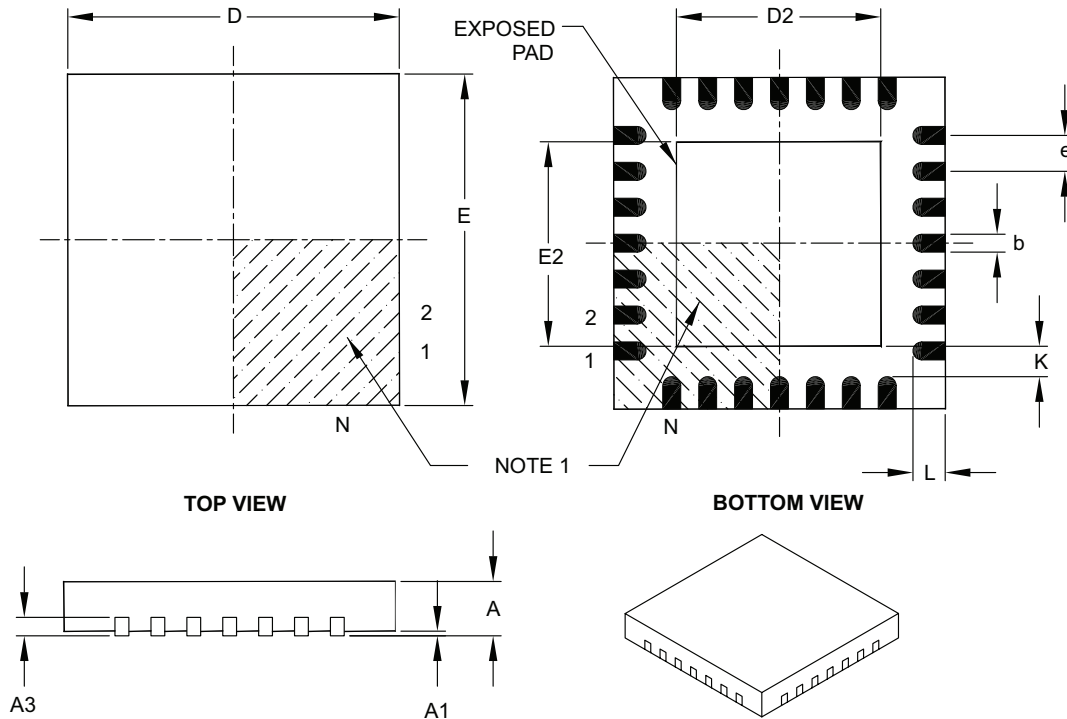
BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-016B

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 28-Lead Plastic Quad Flat, No Lead Package (ML) – 6x6 mm Body [QFN] with 0.55 mm Contact Length

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



| Dimension Limits       | Units | MILLIMETERS |      |      |
|------------------------|-------|-------------|------|------|
|                        |       | MIN         | NOM  | MAX  |
| Number of Pins         | N     | 28          |      |      |
| Pitch                  | e     | 0.65 BSC    |      |      |
| Overall Height         | A     | 0.80        | 0.90 | 1.00 |
| Standoff               | A1    | 0.00        | 0.02 | 0.05 |
| Contact Thickness      | A3    | 0.20 REF    |      |      |
| Overall Width          | E     | 6.00 BSC    |      |      |
| Exposed Pad Width      | E2    | 3.65        | 3.70 | 4.20 |
| Overall Length         | D     | 6.00 BSC    |      |      |
| Exposed Pad Length     | D2    | 3.65        | 3.70 | 4.20 |
| Contact Width          | b     | 0.23        | 0.30 | 0.35 |
| Contact Length         | L     | 0.50        | 0.55 | 0.70 |
| Contact-to-Exposed Pad | K     | 0.20        | —    | —    |

### Notes:

- Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
- Package is saw singulated.
- Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M.

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

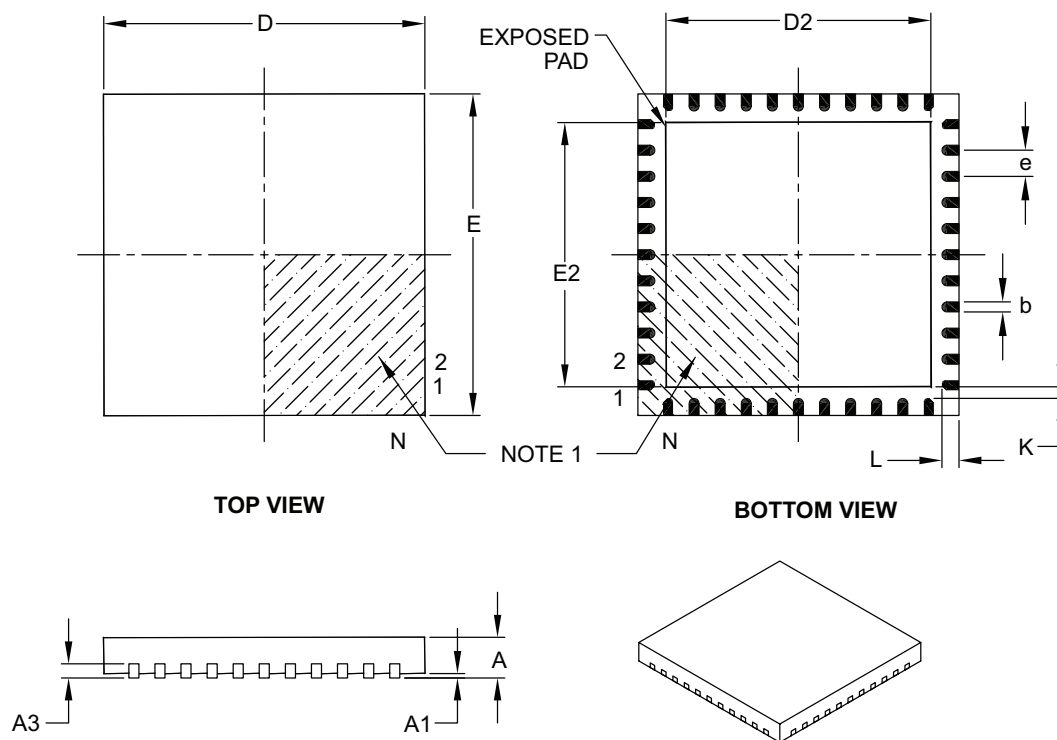
REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-105B

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 44-Lead Plastic Quad Flat, No Lead Package (ML) – 8x8 mm Body [QFN]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



|                        | Units | MILLIMETERS |      |      |
|------------------------|-------|-------------|------|------|
|                        |       | MIN         | NOM  | MAX  |
| Number of Pins         | N     | 44          |      |      |
| Pitch                  | e     | 0.65 BSC    |      |      |
| Overall Height         | A     | 0.80        | 0.90 | 1.00 |
| Standoff               | A1    | 0.00        | 0.02 | 0.05 |
| Contact Thickness      | A3    | 0.20 REF    |      |      |
| Overall Width          | E     | 8.00 BSC    |      |      |
| Exposed Pad Width      | E2    | 6.30        | 6.45 | 6.80 |
| Overall Length         | D     | 8.00 BSC    |      |      |
| Exposed Pad Length     | D2    | 6.30        | 6.45 | 6.80 |
| Contact Width          | b     | 0.25        | 0.30 | 0.38 |
| Contact Length         | L     | 0.30        | 0.40 | 0.50 |
| Contact-to-Exposed Pad | K     | 0.20        | —    | —    |

### Notes:

- Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
- Package is saw singulated.
- Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M.

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

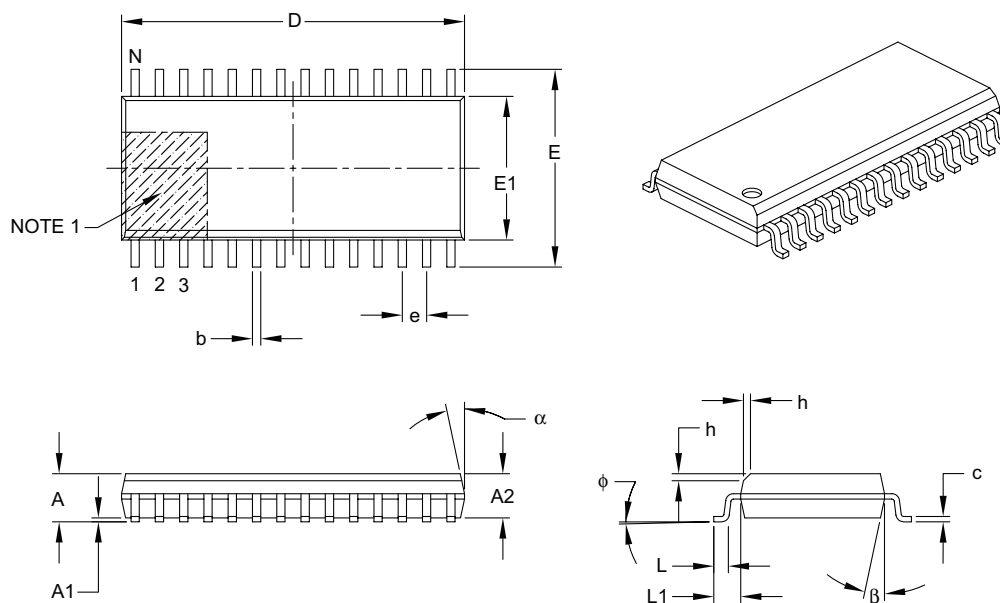
Microchip Technology Drawing C04-103B



# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 28-Lead Plastic Small Outline (SO) – Wide, 7.50 mm Body [SOIC]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



| Units                    |    | MILLIMETERS |     |      |
|--------------------------|----|-------------|-----|------|
| Dimension Limits         |    | MIN         | NOM | MAX  |
| Number of Pins           | N  | 28          |     |      |
| Pitch                    | e  | 1.27 BSC    |     |      |
| Overall Height           | A  | –           | –   | 2.65 |
| Molded Package Thickness | A2 | 2.05        | –   | –    |
| Standoff §               | A1 | 0.10        | –   | 0.30 |
| Overall Width            | E  | 10.30 BSC   |     |      |
| Molded Package Width     | E1 | 7.50 BSC    |     |      |
| Overall Length           | D  | 17.90 BSC   |     |      |
| Chamfer (optional)       | h  | 0.25        | –   | 0.75 |
| Foot Length              | L  | 0.40        | –   | 1.27 |
| Footprint                | L1 | 1.40 REF    |     |      |
| Foot Angle Top           | φ  | 0°          | –   | 8°   |
| Lead Thickness           | c  | 0.18        | –   | 0.33 |
| Lead Width               | b  | 0.31        | –   | 0.51 |
| Mold Draft Angle Top     | α  | 5°          | –   | 15°  |
| Mold Draft Angle Bottom  | β  | 5°          | –   | 15°  |

### Notes:

- Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
- § Significant Characteristic.
- Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed 0.15 mm per side.
- Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M.

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

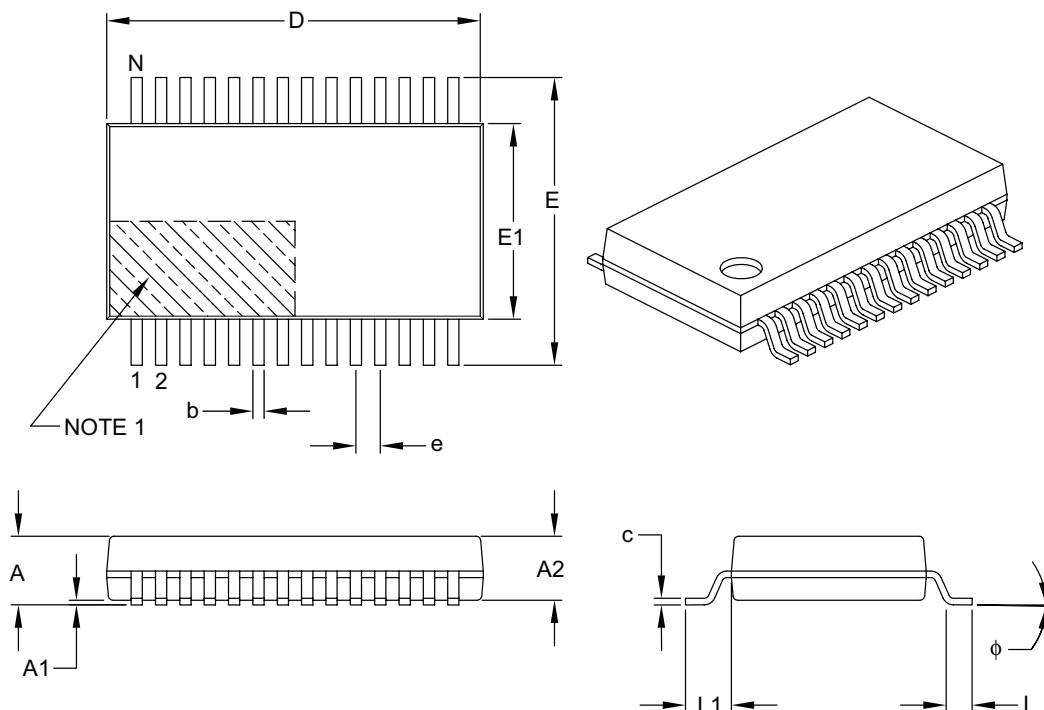
REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-052B

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 28-Lead Plastic Shrink Small Outline (SS) – 5.30 mm Body [SSOP]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



| Units                    |    | MILLIMETERS |       |       |
|--------------------------|----|-------------|-------|-------|
| Dimension Limits         |    | MIN         | NOM   | MAX   |
| Number of Pins           | N  | 28          |       |       |
| Pitch                    | e  | 0.65 BSC    |       |       |
| Overall Height           | A  | –           | –     | 2.00  |
| Molded Package Thickness | A2 | 1.65        | 1.75  | 1.85  |
| Standoff                 | A1 | 0.05        | –     | –     |
| Overall Width            | E  | 7.40        | 7.80  | 8.20  |
| Molded Package Width     | E1 | 5.00        | 5.30  | 5.60  |
| Overall Length           | D  | 9.90        | 10.20 | 10.50 |
| Foot Length              | L  | 0.55        | 0.75  | 0.95  |
| Footprint                | L1 | 1.25 REF    |       |       |
| Lead Thickness           | c  | 0.09        | –     | 0.25  |
| Foot Angle               | φ  | 0°          | 4°    | 8°    |
| Lead Width               | b  | 0.22        | –     | 0.38  |

### Notes:

- Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
- Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed 0.20 mm per side.
- Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M.

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

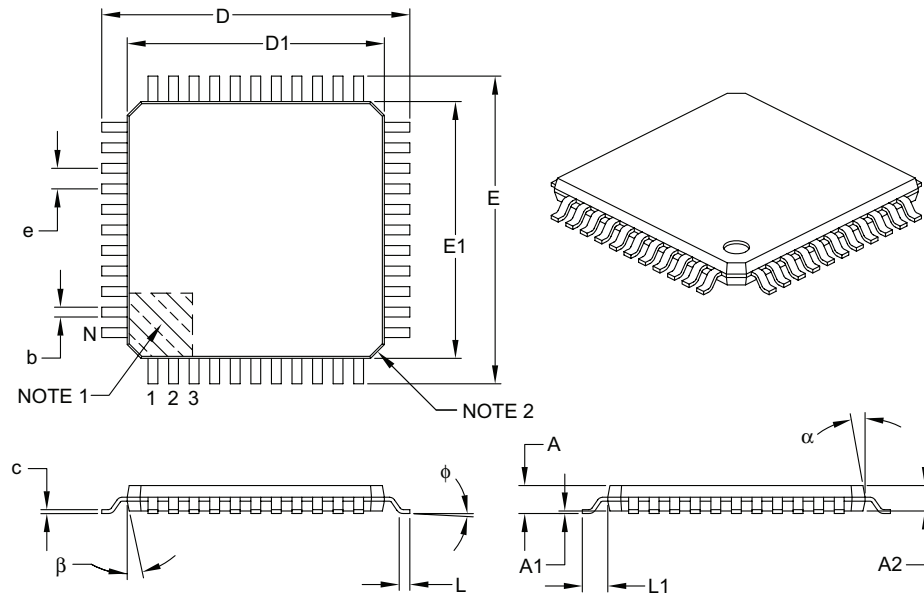
REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-073B

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 44-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) – 10x10x1 mm Body, 2.00 mm Footprint [TQFP]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



| Units                    |    | MILLIMETERS |      |      |
|--------------------------|----|-------------|------|------|
| Dimension Limits         |    | MIN         | NOM  | MAX  |
| Number of Leads          | N  | 44          |      |      |
| Lead Pitch               | e  | 0.80 BSC    |      |      |
| Overall Height           | A  | –           | –    | 1.20 |
| Molded Package Thickness | A2 | 0.95        | 1.00 | 1.05 |
| Standoff                 | A1 | 0.05        | –    | 0.15 |
| Foot Length              | L  | 0.45        | 0.60 | 0.75 |
| Footprint                | L1 | 1.00 REF    |      |      |
| Foot Angle               | φ  | 0°          | 3.5° | 7°   |
| Overall Width            | E  | 12.00 BSC   |      |      |
| Overall Length           | D  | 12.00 BSC   |      |      |
| Molded Package Width     | E1 | 10.00 BSC   |      |      |
| Molded Package Length    | D1 | 10.00 BSC   |      |      |
| Lead Thickness           | c  | 0.09        | –    | 0.20 |
| Lead Width               | b  | 0.30        | 0.37 | 0.45 |
| Mold Draft Angle Top     | α  | 11°         | 12°  | 13°  |
| Mold Draft Angle Bottom  | β  | 11°         | 12°  | 13°  |

### Notes:

- Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
- Chamfers at corners are optional; size may vary.
- Dimensions D1 and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed 0.25 mm per side.
- Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M.

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

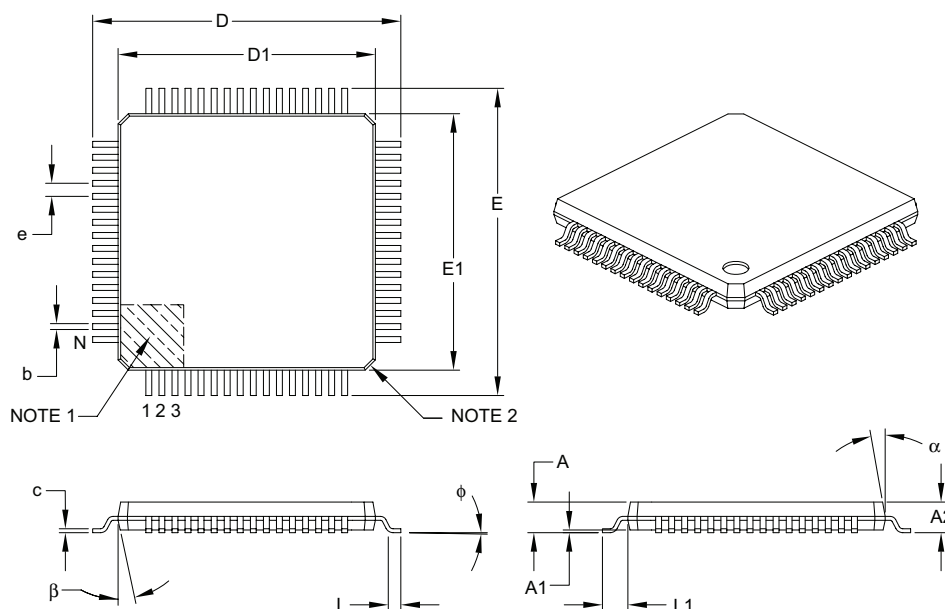
REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-076B

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## 64-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) – 10x10x1 mm Body, 2.00 mm Footprint [TQFP]

**Note:** For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at <http://www.microchip.com/packaging>



| Units                    |          | MILLIMETERS |      |      |
|--------------------------|----------|-------------|------|------|
| Dimension Limits         |          | MIN         | NOM  | MAX  |
| Number of Leads          | N        | 64          |      |      |
| Lead Pitch               | e        | 0.50 BSC    |      |      |
| Overall Height           | A        | –           | –    | 1.20 |
| Molded Package Thickness | A2       | 0.95        | 1.00 | 1.05 |
| Standoff                 | A1       | 0.05        | –    | 0.15 |
| Foot Length              | L        | 0.45        | 0.60 | 0.75 |
| Footprint                | L1       | 1.00 REF    |      |      |
| Foot Angle               | $\phi$   | 0°          | 3.5° | 7°   |
| Overall Width            | E        | 12.00 BSC   |      |      |
| Overall Length           | D        | 12.00 BSC   |      |      |
| Molded Package Width     | E1       | 10.00 BSC   |      |      |
| Molded Package Length    | D1       | 10.00 BSC   |      |      |
| Lead Thickness           | c        | 0.09        | –    | 0.20 |
| Lead Width               | b        | 0.17        | 0.22 | 0.27 |
| Mold Draft Angle Top     | $\alpha$ | 11°         | 12°  | 13°  |
| Mold Draft Angle Bottom  | $\beta$  | 11°         | 12°  | 13°  |

### Notes:

- Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
- Chamfers at corners are optional; size may vary.
- Dimensions D1 and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed 0.25 mm per side.
- Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M.

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-085B

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## APPENDIX A: DATA SHEET REVISION HISTORY

### Revision A

This is a new data sheet.

### Revision B

Updated Peripheral Features.

Page 2, Table: Corrected I/O numbers.

Figure 8-3: Revised Comparator I/O operating modes.

Register 9-1, Table: Corrected max. number of pixels.

### Revision C

Correction to Pin Description Table.

Correction to IPD base and T1OSC.

### Revision D

Revised references 31.25 kHz to 31 kHz.

Revised Standby Current to 100 nA.

Revised 9.1: internal RC oscillator to internal LF oscillator.

### Revision E

Removed "Advance Information" from Section 19.0 Electrical Specifications. Removed 28-Lead Plastic Quad Flat No Lead Package (ML) (QFN-S) package.

### Revision F

Updates throughout document. Removed "Preliminary" from Data Sheet. Added Characterization Data chapter. Update Electrical Specifications chapter. Added PIC16F946 device.

## APPENDIX B: MIGRATING FROM OTHER PIC<sup>®</sup> DEVICES

This discusses some of the issues in migrating from other PIC<sup>®</sup> devices to the PIC16F91X/946 family of devices.

### B.1 PIC16F676 to PIC16F91X/946

TABLE B-1: FEATURE COMPARISON

| Feature                            | PIC16F676     | PIC16F91X/<br>946 |
|------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| Max. Operating Speed               | 20 MHz        | 20 MHz            |
| Max. Program Memory (Words)        | 1K            | 8K                |
| Max. SRAM (Bytes)                  | 64            | 352               |
| A/D Resolution                     | 10-bit        | 10-bit            |
| Data EEPROM (bytes)                | 128           | 256               |
| Timers (8/16-bit)                  | 1/1           | 2/1               |
| Oscillator Modes                   | 8             | 8                 |
| Brown-out Reset                    | Y             | Y                 |
| Internal Pull-ups                  | RB0/1/2/4/5   | RB<7:0>           |
| Interrupt-on-change                | RB0/1/2/3/4/5 | RB<7:4>           |
| Comparator                         | 1             | 2                 |
| USART                              | N             | Y                 |
| Extended WDT                       | N             | Y                 |
| Software Control Option of WDT/BOR | N             | Y                 |
| INTOSC Frequencies                 | 4 MHz         | 32 kHz - 8 MHz    |
| Clock Switching                    | N             | Y                 |

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

## APPENDIX C: CONVERSION CONSIDERATIONS

Considerations for converting from previous versions of devices to the ones listed in this data sheet are listed in Table C-1.

**TABLE C-1: CONVERSION CONSIDERATIONS**

| Characteristic                  | PIC16F91X/946                                               | PIC16F87X                                               | PIC16F87XA                                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Pins                            | 28/40/64                                                    | 28/40                                                   | 28/40                                                    |
| Timers                          | 3                                                           | 3                                                       | 3                                                        |
| Interrupts                      | 11 or 12                                                    | 13 or 14                                                | 14 or 15                                                 |
| Communication                   | USART, SSP <sup>(1)</sup><br>(SPI, I <sup>2</sup> C™ Slave) | PSP, USART, SSP<br>(SPI, I <sup>2</sup> C Master/Slave) | PSP, USART, SSP<br>(SPI, I <sup>2</sup> C Master/Slave)  |
| Frequency                       | 20 MHz                                                      | 20 MHz                                                  | 20 MHz                                                   |
| Voltage                         | 2.0V-5.5V                                                   | 2.2V-5.5V                                               | 2.0V-5.5V                                                |
| A/D                             | 10-bit,<br>7 conversion clock selects                       | 10-bit,<br>4 conversion clock selects                   | 10-bit,<br>7 conversion clock selects                    |
| CCP                             | 2                                                           | 2                                                       | 2                                                        |
| Comparator                      | 2                                                           | —                                                       | 2                                                        |
| Comparator Voltage Reference    | Yes                                                         | —                                                       | Yes                                                      |
| Program Memory                  | 4K, 8K Flash                                                | 4K, 8K Flash<br>(Erase/Write on<br>single-word)         | 4K, 8K Flash<br>(Erase/Write on<br>four-word blocks)     |
| RAM                             | 256, 336, 352 bytes                                         | 192, 368 bytes                                          | 192, 368 bytes                                           |
| EEPROM Data                     | 256 bytes                                                   | 128, 256 bytes                                          | 128, 256 bytes                                           |
| Code Protection                 | On/Off                                                      | Segmented, starting at end<br>of program memory         | On/Off                                                   |
| Program Memory Write Protection | —                                                           | On/Off                                                  | Segmented, starting at<br>beginning of<br>program memory |
| LCD Module                      | 16, 24 segment drivers,<br>4 commons                        | —                                                       | —                                                        |
| Other                           | In-Circuit Debugger,<br>Low-Voltage Programming             | In-Circuit Debugger,<br>Low-Voltage Programming         | In-Circuit Debugger,<br>Low-Voltage Programming          |

**Note 1:** SSP and USART share the same pins on the PIC16F91X.

## INDEX

### A

|                                                 |          |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------|
| A/D                                             |          |
| Specifications.....                             | 272, 273 |
| Absolute Maximum Ratings .....                  | 255      |
| AC Characteristics                              |          |
| Industrial and Extended .....                   | 265      |
| Load Conditions .....                           | 264      |
| ACK pulse .....                                 | 202      |
| ADC .....                                       | 175      |
| Acquisition Requirements .....                  | 183      |
| Associated registers.....                       | 185      |
| Block Diagram.....                              | 175      |
| Calculating Acquisition Time.....               | 183      |
| Channel Selection .....                         | 176      |
| Configuration.....                              | 176      |
| Configuring Interrupt .....                     | 179      |
| Conversion Clock.....                           | 176      |
| Conversion Procedure .....                      | 179      |
| Internal Sampling Switch (Rss) Impedance.....   | 183      |
| Interrupts.....                                 | 177      |
| Operation .....                                 | 178      |
| Operation During Sleep .....                    | 178      |
| Port Configuration .....                        | 176      |
| Reference Voltage (VREF).....                   | 176      |
| Result Formatting.....                          | 178      |
| Source Impedance.....                           | 183      |
| Special Event Trigger.....                      | 178      |
| Starting an A/D Conversion .....                | 178      |
| ADCON0 Register.....                            | 180      |
| ADCON1 Register.....                            | 181      |
| Addressable Universal Synchronous               |          |
| Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (AUSART)..... | 121      |
| ADRESH Register (ADFM = 0) .....                | 182      |
| ADRESH Register (ADFM = 1) .....                | 182      |
| ADRESL Register (ADFM = 0).....                 | 182      |
| ADRESL Register (ADFM = 1).....                 | 182      |
| Analog Input Connection Considerations.....     | 111      |
| Analog-to-Digital Converter. See ADC            |          |
| ANSEL Register.....                             | 43       |
| Assembler                                       |          |
| MPASM Assembler.....                            | 252      |
| AUSART .....                                    | 121      |
| Associated Registers                            |          |
| Baud Rate Generator.....                        | 132      |
| Asynchronous Mode .....                         | 123      |
| Associated Registers                            |          |
| Receive.....                                    | 129      |
| Transmit.....                                   | 125      |
| Baud Rate Generator (BRG) .....                 | 132      |
| Receiver.....                                   | 126      |
| Setting up 9-bit Mode with Address Detect.....  | 128      |
| Transmitter.....                                | 123      |
| Baud Rate Generator (BRG)                       |          |
| Baud Rate Error, Calculating .....              | 132      |
| Baud Rates, Asynchronous Modes .....            | 133      |
| Formulas .....                                  | 132      |
| High Baud Rate Select (BRGH Bit) .....          | 132      |
| Synchronous Master Mode.....                    | 135, 139 |
| Associated Registers                            |          |
| Receive.....                                    | 138      |
| Transmit.....                                   | 136      |
| Reception.....                                  | 137      |
| Transmission .....                              | 135      |
| Synchronous Slave Mode                          |          |

### Associated Registers

|                    |     |
|--------------------|-----|
| Receive .....      | 140 |
| Transmit .....     | 139 |
| Reception .....    | 140 |
| Transmission ..... | 139 |

### B

|                                                 |          |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------|
| BF bit .....                                    | 194      |
| Block Diagram of RF.....                        | 83       |
| Block Diagrams                                  |          |
| (CCP) Capture Mode Operation .....              | 213      |
| ADC .....                                       | 175      |
| ADC Transfer Function .....                     | 184      |
| Analog Input Model.....                         | 111, 184 |
| AUSART Receive .....                            | 122      |
| AUSART Transmit.....                            | 121      |
| CCP PWM .....                                   | 215      |
| Clock Source .....                              | 87       |
| Comparator 1.....                               | 110      |
| Comparator 2.....                               | 110      |
| Comparator Modes.....                           | 113      |
| Compare .....                                   | 214      |
| Crystal Operation.....                          | 90       |
| External RC Mode .....                          | 91       |
| Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM).....             | 97       |
| In-Circuit Serial Programming Connections ..... | 238      |
| Interrupt Logic.....                            | 231      |
| LCD Clock Generation.....                       | 150      |
| LCD Driver Module .....                         | 144      |
| LCD Resistor Ladder Connection.....             | 148      |
| MCLR Circuit .....                              | 222      |
| On-Chip Reset Circuit.....                      | 221      |
| PIC16F913/916 .....                             | 15       |
| PIC16F914/917 .....                             | 16       |
| PIC16F946 .....                                 | 17       |
| RA0 Pin .....                                   | 45       |
| RA1 Pin .....                                   | 46       |
| RA2 Pin .....                                   | 47       |
| RA3 Pin .....                                   | 48       |
| RA4 Pin .....                                   | 49       |
| RA5 Pin .....                                   | 50       |
| RA6 Pin .....                                   | 51       |
| RA7 Pin .....                                   | 52       |
| RB Pins.....                                    | 56       |
| RB4 Pin .....                                   | 57       |
| RB5 Pin .....                                   | 58       |
| RB6 Pin .....                                   | 59       |
| RB7 Pin .....                                   | 60       |
| RC0 Pin .....                                   | 63       |
| RC1 Pin .....                                   | 64       |
| RC2 Pin .....                                   | 64       |
| RC3 Pin .....                                   | 65       |
| RC4 Pin .....                                   | 66       |
| RC5 Pin .....                                   | 67       |
| RC6 Pin .....                                   | 68       |
| RC7 Pin .....                                   | 69       |
| RD Pins .....                                   | 74       |
| RD0 Pin .....                                   | 73       |
| RD1 Pin .....                                   | 73       |
| RD2 Pin .....                                   | 74       |
| RE Pins.....                                    | 78       |
| RE Pins.....                                    | 79       |
| Resonator Operation .....                       | 90       |
| RF Pins .....                                   | 83       |

# PIC16F917/916/914/913

|                                                  |          |                                                 |          |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------|----------|
| RG Pins.....                                     | 85       | Assigning Prescaler to WDT.....                 | 100      |
| SSP (I <sup>2</sup> C Mode).....                 | 202      | Call of a Subroutine in Page 1 from Page 0..... | 40       |
| SSP (SPI Mode).....                              | 193      | Changing Between Capture Prescalers.....        | 213      |
| Timer1.....                                      | 102      | Indirect Addressing.....                        | 41       |
| Timer2.....                                      | 107      | Initializing PORTA.....                         | 44       |
| TMR0/WDT Prescaler.....                          | 99       | Initializing PORTB.....                         | 53       |
| Watchdog Timer (WDT).....                        | 234      | Initializing PORTC.....                         | 62       |
| Brown-out Reset (BOR).....                       | 223      | Initializing PORTD.....                         | 71       |
| Associated Registers.....                        | 224      | Initializing PORTE.....                         | 76       |
| Calibration.....                                 | 223      | Initializing PORTF.....                         | 81       |
| Specifications.....                              | 269      | Initializing PORTG.....                         | 84       |
| Timing and Characteristics.....                  | 268      | Loading the SSPBUF (SSPSR) Register.....        | 196      |
| <b>C</b>                                         |          | Saving Status and W Registers in RAM.....       | 233      |
| C Compilers                                      |          | Code Protection.....                            | 238      |
| MPLAB C18.....                                   | 252      | Comparator.....                                 | 109      |
| MPLAB C30.....                                   | 252      | C2OUT as T1 Gate.....                           | 117      |
| Capture Module. See Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP)    |          | Configurations.....                             | 112      |
| Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP).....                   | 211      | Interrupts.....                                 | 114      |
| Associated registers w/ Capture/Compare/PWM..... | 218      | Operation.....                                  | 109, 114 |
| Capture Mode.....                                | 213      | Operation During Sleep.....                     | 115      |
| CCPx Pin Configuration.....                      | 213      | Response Time.....                              | 114      |
| Compare Mode.....                                | 214      | Synchronizing COUT w/Timer1.....                | 117      |
| CCPx Pin Configuration.....                      | 214      | Comparator Module                               |          |
| Software Interrupt Mode.....                     | 213, 214 | Associated registers.....                       | 119      |
| Special Event Trigger.....                       | 214      | Comparator Voltage Reference (CVREF)            |          |
| Timer1 Mode Selection.....                       | 213, 214 | Response Time.....                              | 114      |
| Interaction of Two CCP Modules (table).....      | 211      | Comparator Voltage Reference (CVREF).....       | 118      |
| Prescaler.....                                   | 213      | Effects of a Reset.....                         | 115      |
| PWM Mode.....                                    | 215      | Specifications.....                             | 271      |
| Duty Cycle.....                                  | 216      | Comparators                                     |          |
| Effects of Reset.....                            | 218      | C2OUT as T1 Gate.....                           | 103      |
| Example PWM Frequencies and                      |          | Effects of a Reset.....                         | 115      |
| Resolutions, 20 MHz.....                         | 217      | Specifications.....                             | 271      |
| Example PWM Frequencies and                      |          | Compare Module. See Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP)   |          |
| Resolutions, 8 MHz.....                          | 217      | CONFIG1 Register.....                           | 220      |
| Operation in Sleep Mode.....                     | 218      | Configuration Bits.....                         | 220      |
| Setup for Operation.....                         | 218      | Conversion Considerations.....                  | 316      |
| System Clock Frequency Changes.....              | 218      | CPU Features.....                               | 219      |
| PWM Period.....                                  | 216      | Customer Change Notification Service.....       | 325      |
| Setup for PWM Operation.....                     | 218      | Customer Notification Service.....              | 325      |
| Timer Resources.....                             | 211      | Customer Support.....                           | 325      |
| CCP. See Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP)               |          | <b>D</b>                                        |          |
| CCPxCON Register.....                            | 212      | D/A bit.....                                    | 194      |
| CKE bit.....                                     | 194      | Data EEPROM Memory.....                         | 187      |
| CKP bit.....                                     | 195      | Associated Registers.....                       | 192      |
| Clock Sources                                    |          | Reading.....                                    | 190      |
| External Modes.....                              | 89       | Writing.....                                    | 190      |
| EC.....                                          | 89       | Data Memory.....                                | 24       |
| HS.....                                          | 90       | Data/Address bit (D/A).....                     | 194      |
| LP.....                                          | 90       | DC and AC Characteristics                       |          |
| OST.....                                         | 89       | Graphs and Tables.....                          | 283      |
| RC.....                                          | 91       | DC Characteristics                              |          |
| XT.....                                          | 90       | Extended and Industrial.....                    | 261      |
| Internal Modes.....                              | 91       | Industrial and Extended.....                    | 257      |
| Frequency Selection.....                         | 93       | Development Support.....                        | 251      |
| HFINTOSC.....                                    | 91       | Device Overview.....                            | 15       |
| INTOSC.....                                      | 91       | <b>E</b>                                        |          |
| INTOSCIO.....                                    | 91       | EEADRH Registers.....                           | 187, 188 |
| LFINTOSC.....                                    | 93       | EEADRL Register.....                            | 188      |
| Clock Switching.....                             | 95       | EEADRL Registers.....                           | 187      |
| CMCON0 Register.....                             | 116      | EECON1 Register.....                            | 187, 189 |
| CMCON1 Register.....                             | 117      | EECON2 Register.....                            | 187      |
| Code Examples                                    |          | EEDATH Register.....                            | 188      |
| A/D Conversion.....                              | 179      | EEDATL Register.....                            | 188      |
| Assigning Prescaler to Timer0.....               | 100      |                                                 |          |



# PIC16F917/916/914/913

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Effects of Reset                |     |
| PWM mode .....                  | 218 |
| Electrical Specifications ..... | 255 |
| Errata .....                    | 13  |

## F

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Fail-Safe Clock Monitor .....      | 97  |
| Fail-Safe Condition Clearing ..... | 97  |
| Fail-Safe Detection .....          | 97  |
| Fail-Safe Operation .....          | 97  |
| Reset or Wake-up from Sleep .....  | 97  |
| Firmware Instructions .....        | 241 |
| Flash Program Memory .....         | 187 |
| Fuses. See Configuration Bits      |     |

## G

|                                     |    |
|-------------------------------------|----|
| General Purpose Register File ..... | 24 |
|-------------------------------------|----|

## I

|                                                   |     |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| I/O Ports .....                                   | 43  |
| I <sup>2</sup> C Mode                             |     |
| Addressing .....                                  | 203 |
| Associated Registers .....                        | 209 |
| Master Mode .....                                 | 208 |
| Mode Selection .....                              | 202 |
| Multi-Master Mode .....                           | 208 |
| Operation .....                                   | 202 |
| Reception .....                                   | 204 |
| Slave Mode                                        |     |
| SCL and SDA pins .....                            | 202 |
| Transmission .....                                | 206 |
| ID Locations .....                                | 238 |
| In-Circuit Debugger .....                         | 239 |
| In-Circuit Serial Programming (ICSP) .....        | 238 |
| Indirect Addressing, INDF and FSR Registers ..... | 41  |
| Instruction Format .....                          | 241 |
| Instruction Set .....                             | 241 |
| ADDLW .....                                       | 243 |
| ADDWF .....                                       | 243 |
| ANDLW .....                                       | 243 |
| ANDWF .....                                       | 243 |
| BCF .....                                         | 243 |
| BSF .....                                         | 243 |
| BTFSC .....                                       | 243 |
| BTFSS .....                                       | 244 |
| CALL .....                                        | 244 |
| CLRF .....                                        | 244 |
| CLRW .....                                        | 244 |
| CLRWDI .....                                      | 244 |
| COMF .....                                        | 244 |
| DECF .....                                        | 244 |
| DECFSZ .....                                      | 245 |
| GOTO .....                                        | 245 |
| INCF .....                                        | 245 |
| INCFSZ .....                                      | 245 |
| IORLW .....                                       | 245 |
| IORWF .....                                       | 245 |
| MOVF .....                                        | 246 |
| MOVLW .....                                       | 246 |
| MOVWF .....                                       | 246 |
| NOP .....                                         | 246 |
| RETFIE .....                                      | 247 |
| RETLW .....                                       | 247 |
| RETURN .....                                      | 247 |
| RLF .....                                         | 248 |
| RRF .....                                         | 248 |

|                                                                        |          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| SLEEP .....                                                            | 248      |
| SUBLW .....                                                            | 248      |
| SUBWF .....                                                            | 249      |
| SWAPF .....                                                            | 249      |
| XORLW .....                                                            | 249      |
| XORWF .....                                                            | 249      |
| Summary Table .....                                                    | 242      |
| INTCON Register .....                                                  | 34       |
| Inter-Integrated Circuit (I <sup>2</sup> C). See I <sup>2</sup> C Mode |          |
| Internal Oscillator Block                                              |          |
| INTOSC                                                                 |          |
| Specifications .....                                                   | 266, 267 |
| Internal Sampling Switch (Rss) Impedance .....                         | 183      |
| Internet Address .....                                                 | 325      |
| Interrupts .....                                                       | 230      |
| ADC .....                                                              | 179      |
| Associated Registers .....                                             | 232      |
| Comparator .....                                                       | 114      |
| Context Saving .....                                                   | 233      |
| Interrupt-on-change .....                                              | 53       |
| PORTB Interrupt-on-Change .....                                        | 231      |
| RB0/INT/SEG0 .....                                                     | 231      |
| TMR0 .....                                                             | 231      |
| TMR1 .....                                                             | 104      |
| INTOSC Specifications .....                                            | 266, 267 |
| IOCB Register .....                                                    | 54       |

## L

### LCD

|                                           |          |
|-------------------------------------------|----------|
| Associated Registers .....                | 168      |
| Bias Types .....                          | 148      |
| Clock Source Selection .....              | 148      |
| Configuring the Module .....              | 167      |
| Disabling the Module .....                | 167      |
| Frame Frequency .....                     | 149      |
| Interrupts .....                          | 164      |
| LCDCON Register .....                     | 143      |
| LCDDATA Register .....                    | 143      |
| LCDPS Register .....                      | 143      |
| Multiplex Types .....                     | 149      |
| Operation During Sleep .....              | 165      |
| Pixel Control .....                       | 149      |
| Prescaler .....                           | 148      |
| Segment Enables .....                     | 149      |
| Waveform Generation .....                 | 153      |
| LCDCON Register .....                     | 143, 145 |
| LCDDATA Register .....                    | 143      |
| LCDDATAx Registers .....                  | 147      |
| LCDPS Register .....                      | 143, 146 |
| LP Bits .....                             | 148      |
| LCDSen Registers .....                    | 147      |
| Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) Driver ..... | 143      |
| Load Conditions .....                     | 264      |

## M

|                                                                        |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| MCLR .....                                                             | 222 |
| Internal .....                                                         | 222 |
| Memory Organization .....                                              | 23  |
| Data .....                                                             | 24  |
| Program .....                                                          | 23  |
| Microchip Internet Web Site .....                                      | 325 |
| Migrating from other PIC Microcontroller Devices .....                 | 315 |
| MPLAB ASM30 Assembler, Linker, Librarian .....                         | 252 |
| MPLAB ICD 2 In-Circuit Debugger .....                                  | 253 |
| MPLAB ICE 2000 High-Performance Universal<br>In-Circuit Emulator ..... | 253 |

# PIC16F917/916/914/913

|                                                      |     |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| MPLAB Integrated Development Environment Software .. | 251 |
| MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer .....                    | 253 |
| MPLAB REAL ICE In-Circuit Emulator System .....      | 253 |
| MPLINK Object Linker/MPLIB Object Librarian .....    | 252 |

## O

|                                 |         |
|---------------------------------|---------|
| OPCODE Field Descriptions ..... | 241     |
| OPTION_Register .....           | 33      |
| OPTION_REG Register .....       | 101     |
| OSCCON Register .....           | 88      |
| Oscillator                      |         |
| Associated registers .....      | 98, 106 |
| Oscillator Module .....         | 87      |
| EC .....                        | 87      |
| HFINTOSC .....                  | 87      |
| HS .....                        | 87      |
| INTOSC .....                    | 87      |
| INTOSCIO .....                  | 87      |
| LFINTOSC .....                  | 87      |
| LP .....                        | 87      |
| RC .....                        | 87      |
| RCIO .....                      | 87      |
| XT .....                        | 87      |
| Oscillator Parameters .....     | 266     |
| Oscillator Specifications ..... | 265     |
| Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) |         |
| Specifications .....            | 269     |
| Oscillator Switching            |         |
| Fail-Safe Clock Monitor .....   | 97      |
| Two-Speed Clock Start-up .....  | 95      |
| OSCTUNE Register .....          | 92      |

## P

|                                            |          |
|--------------------------------------------|----------|
| P (Stop) bit .....                         | 194      |
| Packaging .....                            | 305      |
| Marking .....                              | 305, 306 |
| PDIP Details .....                         | 307      |
| Paging, Program Memory .....               | 40       |
| PCL and PCLATH .....                       | 40       |
| Computed GOTO .....                        | 40       |
| Stack .....                                | 40       |
| PCON Register .....                        | 39, 224  |
| PICSTART Plus Development Programmer ..... | 254      |
| PIE1 Register .....                        | 35       |
| PIE2 Register .....                        | 36       |
| Pin Diagram                                |          |
| PIC16F913/916, 28-pin .....                | 4        |
| PIC16F914/917, 40-pin .....                | 2        |
| PIC16F914/917, 44-pin .....                | 7        |
| PIC16F946, 64-Pin .....                    | 10       |
| Pinout Description .....                   | 18       |
| PIR1 Register .....                        | 37       |
| PIR2 Register .....                        | 38       |
| PLVD                                       |          |
| Associated Registers .....                 | 173      |
| PORTA                                      |          |
| Additional Pin Functions                   |          |
| ANSEL Register .....                       | 43       |
| Associated Registers .....                 | 52       |
| Pin Descriptions and Diagrams .....        | 45       |
| RA0 .....                                  | 45       |
| RA1 .....                                  | 46       |
| RA2 .....                                  | 47       |
| RA3 .....                                  | 48       |
| RA4 .....                                  | 49       |
| RA5 .....                                  | 50       |

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| RA6 .....                           | 51  |
| RA7 .....                           | 52  |
| Registers .....                     | 44  |
| Specifications .....                | 267 |
| PORTA Register .....                | 44  |
| PORTB                               |     |
| Additional Pin Functions .....      | 53  |
| Weak Pull-up .....                  | 53  |
| Associated Registers .....          | 53  |
| Interrupt-on-change .....           | 53  |
| Pin Descriptions and Diagrams ..... | 56  |
| RB0 .....                           | 56  |
| RB1 .....                           | 56  |
| RB2 .....                           | 56  |
| RB3 .....                           | 56  |
| RB4 .....                           | 57  |
| RB5 .....                           | 58  |
| RB6 .....                           | 59  |
| RB7 .....                           | 60  |
| Registers .....                     | 53  |
| PORTB Register .....                | 54  |
| PORTC                               |     |
| Associated Registers .....          | 70  |
| Pin Descriptions and Diagrams ..... | 63  |
| RC0 .....                           | 63  |
| RC1 .....                           | 63  |
| RC2 .....                           | 63  |
| RC3 .....                           | 65  |
| RC4 .....                           | 66  |
| RC5 .....                           | 67  |
| RC6 .....                           | 68  |
| RC7 .....                           | 69  |
| Registers .....                     | 62  |
| Specifications .....                | 267 |
| PORTC Register .....                | 62  |
| PORTD                               |     |
| Associated Registers .....          | 75  |
| Pin Descriptions and Diagrams ..... | 72  |
| RD0 .....                           | 72  |
| RD1 .....                           | 72  |
| RD2 .....                           | 72  |
| RD3 .....                           | 72  |
| RD4 .....                           | 72  |
| RD5 .....                           | 72  |
| RD6 .....                           | 72  |
| RD7 .....                           | 72  |
| Registers .....                     | 71  |
| PORTD Register .....                | 71  |
| PORTE                               |     |
| Associated Registers .....          | 80  |
| Pin Descriptions and Diagrams ..... | 77  |
| RE0 .....                           | 77  |
| RE1 .....                           | 77  |
| RE2 .....                           | 77  |
| RE3 .....                           | 77  |
| RE4 .....                           | 77  |
| RE5 .....                           | 77  |
| RE6 .....                           | 77  |
| RE7 .....                           | 77  |
| Registers .....                     | 76  |
| PORTE Register .....                | 76  |
| PORTF                               |     |
| Associated Registers .....          | 83  |
| Pin Descriptions and Diagrams ..... | 82  |
| Registers .....                     | 81  |

# PIC16F917/916/914/913

|                                                     |     |                                                  |          |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------------------------|----------|
| RF0 .....                                           | 82  | LCDSEn (LCD Segment Enable) .....                | 147      |
| RF1 .....                                           | 82  | LVDCON (Low-Voltage Detect Control) .....        | 173      |
| RF2 .....                                           | 82  | OPTION_REG (OPTION).....                         | 33, 101  |
| RF3 .....                                           | 82  | OSCCON (Oscillator Control).....                 | 88       |
| RF4 .....                                           | 82  | OSCTUNE (Oscillator Tuning).....                 | 92       |
| RF5 .....                                           | 82  | PCON (Power Control Register).....               | 39       |
| RF6 .....                                           | 82  | PCON (Power Control).....                        | 224      |
| RF7 .....                                           | 82  | PIE1 (Peripheral Interrupt Enable 1) .....       | 35       |
| PORTF Register .....                                | 81  | PIE2 (Peripheral Interrupt Enable 2) .....       | 36       |
| PORTG .....                                         |     | PIR1 (Peripheral Interrupt Register 1).....      | 37       |
| Associated Registers .....                          | 86  | PIR2 (Peripheral Interrupt Request 2).....       | 38       |
| Pin Descriptions and Diagrams.....                  | 85  | PORTA .....                                      | 44       |
| Registers.....                                      | 84  | PORTB .....                                      | 54       |
| RG0.....                                            | 85  | PORTC .....                                      | 62       |
| RG1.....                                            | 85  | PORTD .....                                      | 71       |
| RG2.....                                            | 85  | PORTE .....                                      | 76       |
| RG3.....                                            | 85  | PORTF .....                                      | 81       |
| RG4.....                                            | 85  | PORTG .....                                      | 84       |
| RG5.....                                            | 85  | RCSTA (Receive Status and Control) .....         | 131      |
| PORTG Register.....                                 | 84  | Reset Values .....                               | 226      |
| Power-Down Mode (Sleep).....                        | 236 | Reset Values (Special Registers).....            | 229      |
| Power-on Reset .....                                | 222 | Special Function Register Map .....              |          |
| Power-up Timer (PWRT) .....                         | 222 | PIC16F913/916 .....                              | 25       |
| Specifications.....                                 | 269 | PIC16F914/917 .....                              | 26       |
| Precision Internal Oscillator Parameters.....       | 267 | PIC16F946 .....                                  | 27       |
| Prescaler .....                                     |     | Special Register Summary .....                   |          |
| Shared WDT/Timer0 .....                             | 100 | Bank 0 .....                                     | 28       |
| Switching Prescaler Assignment.....                 | 100 | Bank 1 .....                                     | 29       |
| Product Identification System .....                 | 327 | Bank 2 .....                                     | 30       |
| Program Memory .....                                | 23  | Bank 3 .....                                     | 31       |
| Map and Stack (PIC16F913/914) .....                 | 23  | SSPCON (Sync Serial Port Control) Register ..... | 195      |
| Map and Stack (PIC16F916/917/946) .....             | 23  | SSPSTAT (Sync Serial Port Status) Register ..... | 194      |
| Paging.....                                         | 40  | STATUS .....                                     | 32       |
| Programmable Low-Voltage Detect (PLVD) Module ..... | 171 | T1CON .....                                      | 105      |
| PLVD Operation.....                                 | 171 | T2CON .....                                      | 108      |
| Programming, Device Instructions .....              | 241 | TRISA (Tri-State PORTA) .....                    | 44       |
| <b>R</b> .....                                      |     | TRISB (Tri-State PORTB) .....                    | 54       |
| R/W bit .....                                       | 194 | TRISC (Tri-State PORTC).....                     | 62       |
| RCREG .....                                         | 128 | TRISD (Tri-State PORTD).....                     | 71       |
| RCSTA Register .....                                | 131 | TRISE (Tri-State PORTE) .....                    | 76       |
| Reader Response .....                               | 326 | TRISF (Tri-State PORTF).....                     | 81       |
| Read-Modify-Write Operations .....                  | 241 | TRISG (Tri-State PORTG).....                     | 84       |
| Receive Overflow Indicator bit (SSPOV) .....        | 195 | TXSTA (Transmit Status and Control).....         | 130      |
| Registers .....                                     |     | VRCON (Voltage Reference Control).....           | 118      |
| ADCON0 (ADC Control 0) .....                        | 180 | WDTCN (Watchdog Timer Control) .....             | 235      |
| ADCON1 (ADC Control 1) .....                        | 181 | WPUB (Weak Pull-up PORTB).....                   | 55       |
| ADRESH (ADC Result High) with ADFM = 0).....        | 182 | Reset .....                                      | 221      |
| ADRESH (ADC Result High) with ADFM = 1).....        | 182 | Revision History.....                            | 315      |
| ADRESL (ADC Result Low) with ADFM = 0).....         | 182 | <b>S</b> .....                                   |          |
| ADRESL (ADC Result Low) with ADFM = 1).....         | 182 | S (Start) bit .....                              | 194      |
| ANSEL (Analog Select).....                          | 43  | Slave Select Synchronization .....               | 199      |
| CCPxCON (CCP Operation).....                        | 212 | SMP bit .....                                    | 194      |
| CMCON0 (Comparator Control 0) .....                 | 116 | Software Simulator (MPLAB SIM) .....             | 252      |
| CMCON1 (Comparator Control 1) .....                 | 117 | SPBRG .....                                      | 132      |
| CONFIG1 (Configuration Word Register 1) .....       | 220 | Special Event Trigger .....                      | 178      |
| EEADRH (EEPROM Address High Byte) .....             | 188 | Special Function Registers.....                  | 24       |
| EEADRL (EEPROM Address Low Byte).....               | 188 | SPI Mode .....                                   | 193, 199 |
| EECON1 (EEPROM Control 1).....                      | 189 | Associated Registers .....                       | 201      |
| EEDATH (EEPROM Data High Byte) .....                | 188 | Bus Mode Compatibility.....                      | 201      |
| EEDATL (EEPROM Data Low Byte).....                  | 188 | Effects of a Reset .....                         | 201      |
| INTCON (Interrupt Control).....                     | 34  | Enabling SPI I/O .....                           | 197      |
| IOCB (PORTB Interrupt-on-change).....               | 54  | Master Mode.....                                 | 198      |
| LCDCON (LCD Control).....                           | 145 | Master/Slave Connection .....                    | 197      |
| LCDDATAx (LCD Data) .....                           | 147 | Serial Clock (SCK pin).....                      | 193      |
| LCDPS (LCD Prescaler Select) .....                  | 146 | Serial Data In (SDI pin).....                    | 193      |

# PIC16F917/916/914/913

|                                                       |          |                                                                               |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Serial Data Out (SDO pin) .....                       | 193      | Asynchronous Transmission.....                                                | 124 |
| Slave Select .....                                    | 193      | Asynchronous Transmission (Back-to-Back).....                                 | 124 |
| Slave Select Synchronization .....                    | 199      | Brown-out Reset (BOR).....                                                    | 268 |
| Sleep Operation .....                                 | 201      | Brown-out Reset Situations .....                                              | 223 |
| SPI Clock .....                                       | 198      | Capture/Compare/PWM .....                                                     | 276 |
| Typical Connection .....                              | 197      | CLKOUT and I/O .....                                                          | 267 |
| SSP                                                   |          | Clock Synchronization .....                                                   | 209 |
| Overview                                              |          | Clock Timing .....                                                            | 265 |
| SPI Master/Slave Connection .....                     | 197      | Comparator Output.....                                                        | 109 |
| SSP I <sup>2</sup> C Operation .....                  | 202      | Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM).....                                           | 98  |
| Slave Mode .....                                      | 202      | I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Data.....                                                | 281 |
| SSP Module                                            |          | I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Start/Stop Bits .....                                    | 280 |
| Clock Synchronization and the CKP Bit.....            | 208      | I <sup>2</sup> C Reception (7-bit Address).....                               | 204 |
| SPI Master Mode .....                                 | 198      | I <sup>2</sup> C Slave Mode (Transmission, 10-bit Address).....               | 207 |
| SPI Slave Mode .....                                  | 199      | I <sup>2</sup> C Slave Mode with SEN = 0 (Reception,<br>10-bit Address) ..... | 205 |
| SSPBUF .....                                          | 198      | I <sup>2</sup> C Transmission (7-bit Address).....                            | 206 |
| SSPSR .....                                           | 198      | INT Pin Interrupt .....                                                       | 232 |
| SSPCON Register.....                                  | 195      | Internal Oscillator Switch Timing .....                                       | 94  |
| SSPEN bit .....                                       | 195      | LCD Interrupt Timing in Quarter-Duty Cycle Drive ...                          | 164 |
| SSPM bits .....                                       | 195      | LCD Sleep Entry/Exit when SLPEN = 1 or CS = 00 ..                             | 166 |
| SSPOV bit .....                                       | 195      | Reset, WDT, OST and Power-up Timer .....                                      | 268 |
| SSPSTAT Register .....                                | 194      | Slave Synchronization .....                                                   | 199 |
| STATUS Register.....                                  | 32       | SPI Master Mode (CKE = 1, SMP = 1) .....                                      | 278 |
| Synchronous Serial Port Enable bit (SSPEN).....       | 195      | SPI Mode (Master Mode).....                                                   | 198 |
| Synchronous Serial Port Mode Select bits (SSPM) ..... | 195      | SPI Mode (Slave Mode with CKE = 0).....                                       | 200 |
| Synchronous Serial Port. See SSP                      |          | SPI Mode (Slave Mode with CKE = 1).....                                       | 200 |
| T                                                     |          | SPI Slave Mode (CKE = 0) .....                                                | 279 |
| T1CON Register.....                                   | 105      | SPI Slave Mode (CKE = 1) .....                                                | 279 |
| T2CON Register.....                                   | 108      | Synchronous Reception (Master Mode, SREN) .....                               | 138 |
| Thermal Considerations .....                          | 263      | Synchronous Transmission .....                                                | 136 |
| Time-out Sequence .....                               | 224      | Synchronous Transmission (Through TXEN) .....                                 | 136 |
| Timer0 .....                                          | 99       | Time-out Sequence                                                             |     |
| Associated Registers .....                            | 101      | Case 1 .....                                                                  | 225 |
| External Clock .....                                  | 100      | Case 2 .....                                                                  | 225 |
| Interrupt.....                                        | 101      | Case 3 .....                                                                  | 225 |
| Operation .....                                       | 99, 102  | Timer0 and Timer1 External Clock .....                                        | 270 |
| Specifications .....                                  | 270      | Timer1 Incrementing Edge .....                                                | 104 |
| T0CKI .....                                           | 100      | Two Speed Start-up .....                                                      | 96  |
| Timer1 .....                                          | 102      | Type-A in 1/2 Mux, 1/2 Bias Drive .....                                       | 154 |
| Associated registers.....                             | 106      | Type-A in 1/2 Mux, 1/3 Bias Drive .....                                       | 156 |
| Asynchronous Counter Mode .....                       | 103      | Type-A in 1/3 Mux, 1/2 Bias Drive .....                                       | 158 |
| Reading and Writing .....                             | 103      | Type-A in 1/3 Mux, 1/3 Bias Drive .....                                       | 160 |
| Interrupt.....                                        | 104      | Type-A in 1/4 Mux, 1/3 Bias Drive .....                                       | 162 |
| Modes of Operation .....                              | 102      | Type-A/Type-B in Static Drive .....                                           | 153 |
| Operation During Sleep .....                          | 104      | Type-B in 1/2 Mux, 1/2 Bias Drive .....                                       | 155 |
| Oscillator .....                                      | 103      | Type-B in 1/2 Mux, 1/3 Bias Drive .....                                       | 157 |
| Prescaler .....                                       | 103      | Type-B in 1/3 Mux, 1/2 Bias Drive .....                                       | 159 |
| Specifications .....                                  | 270      | Type-B in 1/3 Mux, 1/3 Bias Drive .....                                       | 161 |
| Timer1 Gate                                           |          | Type-B in 1/4 Mux, 1/3 Bias Drive .....                                       | 163 |
| Inverting Gate .....                                  | 103      | USART Synchronous Receive (Master/Slave).....                                 | 275 |
| Selecting Source.....                                 | 103, 117 | USART Synchronous Transmission (Master/Slave).....                            | 275 |
| Synchronizing COUT w/Timer1 .....                     | 117      | Wake-up from Interrupt.....                                                   | 237 |
| TMR1H Register .....                                  | 102      | Timing Parameter Symbolology .....                                            | 264 |
| TMR1L Register .....                                  | 102      | Timing Requirements                                                           |     |
| Timer2 .....                                          |          | I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Data.....                                                | 282 |
| Associated registers.....                             | 108      | I <sup>2</sup> C Bus Start/Stop Bits .....                                    | 281 |
| Timers                                                |          | SPI Mode .....                                                                | 280 |
| Timer1                                                |          | TRISA                                                                         |     |
| T1CON .....                                           | 105      | Registers .....                                                               | 44  |
| Timer2                                                |          | TRISA Register .....                                                          | 44  |
| T2CON .....                                           | 108      | TRISB                                                                         |     |
| Timing Diagrams                                       |          | Registers .....                                                               | 53  |
| A/D Conversion .....                                  | 274      | TRISB Register .....                                                          | 54  |
| A/D Conversion (Sleep Mode) .....                     | 274      | TRISC                                                                         |     |
| Asynchronous Reception .....                          | 128      |                                                                               |     |

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Registers.....                     | 62  |
| TRISC Register.....                | 62  |
| TRISD                              |     |
| Registers.....                     | 71  |
| TRISD Register.....                | 71  |
| TRISE                              |     |
| Registers.....                     | 76  |
| TRISE Register.....                | 76  |
| TRISF                              |     |
| Registers.....                     | 81  |
| TRISF Register.....                | 81  |
| TRISG                              |     |
| Registers.....                     | 84  |
| TRISG Register.....                | 84  |
| Two-Speed Clock Start-up Mode..... | 95  |
| TXREG.....                         | 123 |
| TXSTA Register.....                | 130 |
| BRGH Bit.....                      | 132 |

## U

|                                               |     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| UA.....                                       | 194 |
| Update Address bit, UA.....                   | 194 |
| USART                                         |     |
| Synchronous Master Mode                       |     |
| Requirements, Synchronous Receive.....        | 275 |
| Requirements, Synchronous Transmission.....   | 275 |
| Timing Diagram, Synchronous Receive.....      | 275 |
| Timing Diagram, Synchronous Transmission..... | 275 |

## V

|                                           |     |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|
| Voltage Reference. See Comparator Voltage |     |
| Reference (CVREF)                         |     |
| Voltage References                        |     |
| Associated registers.....                 | 119 |
| VREF. SEE ADC Reference Voltage           |     |

## W

|                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------|-----|
| Wake-up Using Interrupts.....          | 236 |
| Watchdog Timer (WDT).....              | 234 |
| Associated Registers.....              | 235 |
| Clock Source.....                      | 234 |
| Modes.....                             | 234 |
| Period.....                            | 234 |
| Specifications.....                    | 269 |
| WCOL bit.....                          | 195 |
| WDTCON Register.....                   | 235 |
| WPUB Register.....                     | 55  |
| Write Collision Detect bit (WCOL)..... | 195 |
| WWW Address.....                       | 325 |
| WWW, On-Line Support.....              | 13  |

# PIC16F917/916/914/913

---

NOTES:

## THE MICROCHIP WEB SITE

Microchip provides online support via our WWW site at [www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com). This web site is used as a means to make files and information easily available to customers. Accessible by using your favorite Internet browser, the web site contains the following information:

- **Product Support** – Data sheets and errata, application notes and sample programs, design resources, user's guides and hardware support documents, latest software releases and archived software
- **General Technical Support** – Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), technical support requests, online discussion groups, Microchip consultant program member listing
- **Business of Microchip** – Product selector and ordering guides, latest Microchip press releases, listing of seminars and events, listings of Microchip sales offices, distributors and factory representatives

## CUSTOMER CHANGE NOTIFICATION SERVICE

Microchip's customer notification service helps keep customers current on Microchip products. Subscribers will receive e-mail notification whenever there are changes, updates, revisions or errata related to a specified product family or development tool of interest.

To register, access the Microchip web site at [www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com), click on Customer Change Notification and follow the registration instructions.

## CUSTOMER SUPPORT

Users of Microchip products can receive assistance through several channels:

- Distributor or Representative
- Local Sales Office
- Field Application Engineer (FAE)
- Technical Support
- Development Systems Information Line

Customers should contact their distributor, representative or field application engineer (FAE) for support. Local sales offices are also available to help customers. A listing of sales offices and locations is included in the back of this document.

**Technical support is available through the web site at: <http://support.microchip.com>**

# PIC16F913/914/916/917/946

---

## READER RESPONSE

It is our intention to provide you with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip product. If you wish to provide your comments on organization, clarity, subject matter, and ways in which our documentation can better serve you, please FAX your comments to the Technical Publications Manager at (480) 792-4150.

Please list the following information, and use this outline to provide us with your comments about this document.

To: Technical Publications Manager  
RE: Reader Response  
From: Name \_\_\_\_\_  
Company \_\_\_\_\_  
Address \_\_\_\_\_  
City / State / ZIP / Country \_\_\_\_\_  
Telephone: (\_\_\_\_) \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_ FAX: (\_\_\_\_) \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_

Application (optional):

Would you like a reply? \_\_Y \_\_N

Device: PIC16F913/914/916/917/946 Literature Number: DS41250F

Questions:

1. What are the best features of this document?

---

---

2. How does this document meet your hardware and software development needs?

---

---

3. Do you find the organization of this document easy to follow? If not, why?

---

---

4. What additions to the document do you think would enhance the structure and subject?

---

---

5. What deletions from the document could be made without affecting the overall usefulness?

---

---

6. Is there any incorrect or misleading information (what and where)?

---

---

7. How would you improve this document?

---

---



## PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

To order or obtain information, e.g., on pricing or delivery, refer to the factory or the listed sales office.

| <u>PART NO.</u>           | <u>X</u>                                                                                                                                                                                             | <u>/XX</u> | <u>XXX</u> |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------|
| Device                    | Temperature Range                                                                                                                                                                                    | Package    | Pattern    |
| <b>Device:</b>            | PIC16F913, PIC16F913T <sup>(1)</sup><br>PIC16F914, PIC16F914T <sup>(1)</sup><br>PIC16F916, PIC16F916T <sup>(1)</sup><br>PIC16F917, PIC16F917T <sup>(1)</sup><br>PIC16F946, PIC16F946T <sup>(1)</sup> |            |            |
| <b>Temperature Range:</b> | I = -40°C to +85°C<br>E = -40°C to +125°C                                                                                                                                                            |            |            |
| <b>Package:</b>           | ML = Micro Lead Frame (QFN)<br>P = Plastic DIP<br>PT = TQFP (Thin Quad Flatpack)<br>SO = SOIC<br>SP = Skinny Plastic DIP<br>SS = SSOP                                                                |            |            |
| <b>Pattern:</b>           | 3-Digit Pattern Code for QTP (blank otherwise)                                                                                                                                                       |            |            |

**Examples:**  
a) PIC16F913-E/SP 301 = Extended Temp., skinny PDIP package, 20 MHz, QTP pattern #301  
b) PIC16F913-I/SO = Industrial Temp., SOIC package, 20 MHz  
  
**Note 1:** T = In tape and reel.

\* JW Devices are UV erasable and can be programmed to any device configuration. JW Devices meet the electrical requirement of each oscillator type.



---

## WORLDWIDE SALES AND SERVICE

---

### AMERICAS

#### Corporate Office

2355 West Chandler Blvd.  
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199  
Tel: 480-792-7200  
Fax: 480-792-7277  
Technical Support:  
<http://support.microchip.com>  
Web Address:  
[www.microchip.com](http://www.microchip.com)

#### Atlanta

Duluth, GA  
Tel: 678-957-9614  
Fax: 678-957-1455

#### Boston

Westborough, MA  
Tel: 774-760-0087  
Fax: 774-760-0088

#### Chicago

Itasca, IL  
Tel: 630-285-0071  
Fax: 630-285-0075

#### Dallas

Addison, TX  
Tel: 972-818-7423  
Fax: 972-818-2924

#### Detroit

Farmington Hills, MI  
Tel: 248-538-2250  
Fax: 248-538-2260

#### Kokomo

Kokomo, IN  
Tel: 765-864-8360  
Fax: 765-864-8387

#### Los Angeles

Mission Viejo, CA  
Tel: 949-462-9523  
Fax: 949-462-9608

#### Santa Clara

Santa Clara, CA  
Tel: 408-961-6444  
Fax: 408-961-6445

#### Toronto

Mississauga, Ontario,  
Canada  
Tel: 905-673-0699  
Fax: 905-673-6509

### ASIA/PACIFIC

#### Asia Pacific Office

Suites 3707-14, 37th Floor  
Tower 6, The Gateway  
Harbour City, Kowloon  
Hong Kong  
Tel: 852-2401-1200  
Fax: 852-2401-3431

#### Australia - Sydney

Tel: 61-2-9868-6733  
Fax: 61-2-9868-6755

#### China - Beijing

Tel: 86-10-8528-2100  
Fax: 86-10-8528-2104

#### China - Chengdu

Tel: 86-28-8665-5511  
Fax: 86-28-8665-7889

#### China - Fuzhou

Tel: 86-591-8750-3506  
Fax: 86-591-8750-3521

#### China - Hong Kong SAR

Tel: 852-2401-1200  
Fax: 852-2401-3431

#### China - Qingdao

Tel: 86-532-8502-7355  
Fax: 86-532-8502-7205

#### China - Shanghai

Tel: 86-21-5407-5533  
Fax: 86-21-5407-5066

#### China - Shenyang

Tel: 86-24-2334-2829  
Fax: 86-24-2334-2393

#### China - Shenzhen

Tel: 86-755-8203-2660  
Fax: 86-755-8203-1760

#### China - Shunde

Tel: 86-757-2839-5507  
Fax: 86-757-2839-5571

#### China - Wuhan

Tel: 86-27-5980-5300  
Fax: 86-27-5980-5118

#### China - Xian

Tel: 86-29-8833-7250  
Fax: 86-29-8833-7256

### ASIA/PACIFIC

#### India - Bangalore

Tel: 91-80-4182-8400  
Fax: 91-80-4182-8422

#### India - New Delhi

Tel: 91-11-4160-8631  
Fax: 91-11-4160-8632

#### India - Pune

Tel: 91-20-2566-1512  
Fax: 91-20-2566-1513

#### Japan - Yokohama

Tel: 81-45-471-6166  
Fax: 81-45-471-6122

#### Korea - Gumi

Tel: 82-54-473-4301  
Fax: 82-54-473-4302

#### Korea - Seoul

Tel: 82-2-554-7200  
Fax: 82-2-558-5932 or  
82-2-558-5934

#### Malaysia - Penang

Tel: 60-4-646-8870  
Fax: 60-4-646-5086

#### Philippines - Manila

Tel: 63-2-634-9065  
Fax: 63-2-634-9069

#### Singapore

Tel: 65-6334-8870  
Fax: 65-6334-8850

#### Taiwan - Hsin Chu

Tel: 886-3-572-9526  
Fax: 886-3-572-6459

#### Taiwan - Kaohsiung

Tel: 886-7-536-4818  
Fax: 886-7-536-4803

#### Taiwan - Taipei

Tel: 886-2-2500-6610  
Fax: 886-2-2508-0102

#### Thailand - Bangkok

Tel: 66-2-694-1351  
Fax: 66-2-694-1350

### EUROPE

#### Austria - Wels

Tel: 43-7242-2244-39  
Fax: 43-7242-2244-393

#### Denmark - Copenhagen

Tel: 45-4450-2828  
Fax: 45-4485-2829

#### France - Paris

Tel: 33-1-69-53-63-20  
Fax: 33-1-69-30-90-79

#### Germany - Munich

Tel: 49-89-627-144-0  
Fax: 49-89-627-144-44

#### Italy - Milan

Tel: 39-0331-742611  
Fax: 39-0331-466781

#### Netherlands - Drunen

Tel: 31-416-690399  
Fax: 31-416-690340

#### Spain - Madrid

Tel: 34-91-708-08-90  
Fax: 34-91-708-08-91

#### UK - Wokingham

Tel: 44-118-921-5869  
Fax: 44-118-921-5820

12/08/06

## Looking for pricing, stock, or lifecycle information?

Click below to explore more details on WIN SOURCE:

 [View PIC16F913-I/SS](#) on WIN SOURCE

 [Microchip Technology](#) Information

## Optimize Your Supply Chain with WIN SOURCE Solutions

-  Global Sourcing Solution
-  Obsolete Management
-  Cost Control Management
-  Shortage Management
-  Alternative Solution
-  Excess Inventory Management